



## **In Their Own Words:**

### **Translations from Chinese source documents**

# **Basic Issues of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era**

## **In Their Own Words**

The “In Their Own Words” series is dedicated to translations of Chinese documents in order to help non-Mandarin speaking audiences access and understand Chinese thinking. CASI would like to thank all of those involved in this effort.

In the “In Their Own Words” series, CASI and its collaborators aim to provide Chinese texts that illustrate thoughtful, clearly articulated, authoritative foreign perspectives on approaches to warfare at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels.

This translation and publication does not constitute approval by any U.S. Government organization of the contents, inferences, findings and conclusions contained therein. Publication is solely for the exchange and stimulation of ideas.

Printed in the United States of America by the China Aerospace Studies Institute

To request additional copies, please direct inquiries to  
Director, China Aerospace Studies Institute,  
Air University, 55 Lemay Plaza, Montgomery, AL 36112

All photos licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International license, or under the Fair Use Doctrine under Section 107 of the Copyright Act for nonprofit educational and noncommercial use.

E-mail: [Director@CASI-Research.ORG](mailto:Director@CASI-Research.ORG)  
Web: <http://www.airuniversity.af.mil/CASI>  
[@CASI\\_Research](https://twitter.com/CASI_Research)  
<https://www.facebook.com/CASI.Research.Org>  
<https://www.linkedin.com/company/11049011>

#### Disclaimer

The views expressed in this academic research paper are those of the authors and do not necessarily reflect the official policy or position of the U.S. Government or the Department of Defense. In accordance with Air Force Instruction 51-303, *Intellectual Property, Patents, Patent Related Matters, Trademarks and Copyrights*; this work is the property of the U.S. Government.

#### Limited Print and Electronic Distribution Rights

Reproduction and printing is subject to the Copyright Act of 1976 and applicable treaties of the United States. This document and trademark(s) contained herein are protected by law. This publication is provided for noncommercial use only. Unauthorized posting of this publication online is prohibited. Permission is given to duplicate this document for personal, academic, or governmental use only, as long as it is unaltered and complete however, it is requested that reproductions credit the author and China Aerospace Studies Institute (CASI). Permission is required from the China Aerospace Studies Institute to reproduce, or reuse in another form, any of its research documents for commercial use. For information on reprint and linking permissions, please contact the China Aerospace Studies Institute.

Cleared for Public Release; Distribution Unlimited.

CASI would like to acknowledge the work and effort of the team at BluePath Labs for their help with this translation.

Basic Issues of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era

[习近平新时代中国特色社会主义思想基本问题]  
(XI JINPING XINSHIDAI ZHONGCUO TESE SHEHEIZHUYI JIBEN WENTI)

Party School of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China (National Academy of  
Administration)  
[中共中央党校（国家行政学院）]

People's Publishing House  
[人民出版社]  
Central Party School Press  
[中共中央党校出版社]

## Preface

Attaching importance to ideological party building and strengthening the party in theory is our party's valuable experience. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the most fundamental thing to strengthen the party's ideological and theoretical construction is to learn to understand and implement Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, so as to achieve the unity of learning and thinking, and knowledge and belief.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has put forward a series of new concepts, ideas and strategies of pioneering significance in response to the changes of the times, the tide of the times, and the voice of the times, in the great practice of uniting and leading the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, and created Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. This contemporary Chinese Marxism and 21st century Marxism have led the Party and the country to historic achievements and historic changes. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the inheritance and development of Marxism-Leninism, Mao Zedong Thought, Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents" and the scientific outlook on development, the latest achievement of the Sinicization of Marxism, the crystallization of the practical experience and collective wisdom of the Party and the people, an important part of the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and the action guide for the whole Party and the people of the whole country to strive for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Strengthening the Party's theoretical education and Party spirit education is the main course of the Central Party School (State Administration Academy). Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Central Party School has closely followed the party's theoretical innovation process and made it a top priority to learn and apply well Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. According to the unified deployment of the Party Central Committee, together with the Organization Department of the Central Committee, since November 2013, seven seminars for provincial and ministerial-level cadres on "studying and implementing the spirit of General Secretary Xi Jinping's series of important speeches" have been held, and after the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, they have focused on "studying and implementing Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era and the spirit of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China" , once again held seven consecutive special seminars for provincial and ministerial-level cadres, opened a senior seminar for provincial and ministerial-level cadres Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, opened a special topic and theoretical study class on Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era in the department-bureau-level cadre training class, and further highlighted the teaching content of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era in training courses and various classes for young and middle-aged cadres, basically achieving full coverage of the "key minority." At the same time, we have continuously optimized the teaching layout, improved the curriculum system, formed a "1+N" teaching framework, and continuously increased the proportion of teaching of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. At present, the relevant teaching content has accounted for more than 70% of the theoretical course teaching in each shift.

There is a process of continuous deepening to study and understand Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, and there is also a process of continuous deepening in studying and interpreting this thought. The Central Party School (National Academy of Administration) Committee organized an in-depth study of the basic issues of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, which began after the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China and has been consistent and continuous in the past eight years, with the aim of providing a study material with in-depth research and interpretation for deepening the party's theoretical education.

The Central Party School has good traditions and good experiences, and has organized and compiled a series of "three basics" textbooks entitled "Basic Issues of Marxism-Leninism," "Basic Issues of Mao Zedong Thought," and "Basic Issues of Deng Xiaoping Theory," which have produced good training results and social influence, and are still the basic teaching materials for education and training in the party school system. The compilation of "Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era" is a powerful measure to inherit and carry forward the good traditions and good experience of party schools, and it is also a practical action to deeply promote the study and education of the party's theoretical innovation achievements.

The basic idea of compiling this book is to focus on comprehensively and accurately grasping the connotation of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, and mainly highlight two aspects: First, focus on clarifying the basic issues that constitute this thought. According to the internal logic of this thought, it closely revolves around the basic issues that are fundamental and play the role of "four beams and eight pillars", revealing and explaining the foundation, background of the times, the main theme of this thought, the historical contribution, as well as the fundamental position, essential characteristics, overall layout, strategic arrangement, fundamental driving force, important guarantee, political guarantee, etc. of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, so as to better display the basic context of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. The second is to focus on clarifying the original contribution of this idea. On the basis of fully absorbing the existing research results in the ideological and theoretical circles, we will focus on in-depth research and exposition of the original major viewpoints and theories of this idea from the academic theory, and clearly explain the location and inner meaning of innovation from the perspectives of theoretical origin, historical context, practical results, and international comparison, so as to show the fundamentals and highlight the key points, so as to achieve the combination of points and surfaces, and bring the areas with points. This is also the starting point and focus of the layout of this book.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is a majestic theoretical peak and a rich treasure trove of ideas that needs to be constantly explored. This book is only a phased research result.

The Central Party School (National Academy of Administration) will continue to promote the study and interpretation of Xi Jinping's Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

School (Academy) Committee of the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration)  
August 2020

# Contents

<b>Introduction: Marxism in Contemporary China and Marxism in the 21st Century.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1. The background in which Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era was formed .....	1
2. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has opened up a new realm of Marxism.....	7
3. The scientific system of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era.....	14
4. Comrade Xi Jinping is the main founder of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era .....	18
<b>Chapter I: Socialism with Chinese Characteristics Enters a New Era.....</b>	<b>23</b>
Section 1: The basic basis for socialism with Chinese characteristics to enter a new era .....	23
Section 2: The scientific connotation of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era .....	30
Section 3: The great significance of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era.....	37
Section 4: The new era is the age of strivers.....	43
<b>Chapter II: Better Upholding and Developing Socialism with Chinese Characteristics.....</b>	<b>49</b>
Section 1: Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is the fundamental direction of development and progress in contemporary China .....	49
Section 2: The Core Essence of Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era.....	56
Section 3: Realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation on the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics .....	64
Section 4: Take charge of the "four greatness", make overall plans to promote the "five-in-one" overall layout, and coordinate the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout.....	70
<b>Chapter III: The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics.....</b>	<b>77</b>
Section 1: The party's leadership is the most fundamental law summary for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics.....	77
Section 2: The Party is the supreme political leading force .....	86
Section 3: Resolutely achieve "two maintenances".....	92
Section 4: Establish and improve the institutional mechanism for the party's comprehensive leadership .....	97
<b>Chapter IV: Adhere to the fundamental position of centering on the people.....</b>	<b>104</b>
Section 1: Taking the people as the center is the essential embodiment of the materialist view of history .....	104
Section 2: The people's yearning for a better life is the party's goal .....	109
Section 3: Steadily advancing in the direction of common prosperity for all the people .....	115
Section 4: Continuously promote the all-round development of the human person.....	119
<b>Chapter V: Adhere to the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing.....</b>	<b>126</b>
Section 1: Scientific guidance that conforms to the trend of the times and reflects the law of development .....	126
Section 2: It has enriched and developed the Marxist outlook on development .....	133
Section 3: Adhere to the new development concept to lead the overall development situation .....	140
<b>Chapter VI: Embark on a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way.....</b>	<b>147</b>
Section 1: Attaching importance to strategic arrangements is an important experience of the CPC in governing the country .....	147
Section 2: Comprehensively grasp the strategic connotation and characteristics of a modern and powerful socialist country.....	153
Section 3 Firmly implement the strategic arrangement for building a modern socialist country in an all-round way .....	160
<b>Chapter VII: Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform and Comprehensively Opening Up.....</b>	<b>167</b>
Section 1: Reform and opening up is a new great revolution.....	167
Section 2: Persist in comprehensively deepening reform.....	174
Section 3: Adhere to comprehensive openness .....	183
Section 4: Persist in using scientific methods to promote reform and opening up.....	189
<b>Chapter VIII: The New Normal of Economic Development and Achieving High-Quality Development.....</b>	<b>196</b>
Section 1: Economic development has entered a new normal .....	196
Section 2: Deepen supply-side structural reform .....	204
Section 3: Promoting high-quality economic development .....	211
<b>Chapter IX: Upholding and Developing Socialist Democratic Politics.....</b>	<b>224</b>
Section 1: Follow the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics.....	224
Section 2: Improve the institutional system in which the people are masters of their own affairs .....	233
Section 3: Comprehensively advancing the rule of law .....	243
<b>Chapter X: Building a Socialist Cultural Power.....</b>	<b>252</b>
Section 1: Strengthens cultural self-confidence .....	252



Section 2: Promote the prosperity of socialist culture.....	259
Section 3: firmly grasps the leadership of ideological work .....	269
<b>Chapter XI: Strive to make life better for the people.....</b>	<b>279</b>
Section 1: The situation and requirements for promoting social construction in the new era .....	279
Section 2: Ensuring and improving people's livelihood in the course of development .....	285
Section 3: Strengthen and innovate social governance .....	295
<b>Chapter XII: Towards a New Era of Ecological Civilization.....</b>	<b>304</b>
Section 1: Relating to the fundamental plan for the sustainable development of the Chinese nation .....	304
Section 2: Firmly establish the concept of socialist ecological civilization .....	314
Section 3: The practical path of building a beautiful China .....	322
<b>Chapter XIII: A Strong Guarantee for National Rejuvenation.....</b>	<b>332</b>
Section 1: Adhere to the overall concept of national security .....	332
Section 2: Continuously open up a new situation of strengthening the army and rejuvenating the army .....	340
Section 3: Promoting the complete reunification of the motherland .....	347
<b>Chapter XIV: Building a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind.....</b>	<b>359</b>
Section 1: China's Plan for Human Development and the Future of the World .....	359
Section 2: Responsibilities and Responsibilities of Great Power Diplomacy in the New Era.....	367
Section 3: The Belt and Road Initiative is an important platform for building a community with a shared future for mankind...	373
<b>Chapter XV: Unswervingly Promoting Comprehensive and Strict Party Management.....</b>	<b>383</b>
Section 1: Comprehensively and strictly administering the party is always on the way .....	383
Section 2: The political building of the Party is the fundamental building of the Party .....	391
Section 3: Courageous to self-revolution .....	397
Section 4: Building the world's most powerful party .....	405
<b>Conclusion: The guiding ideology that the party and the state must adhere to for a long time.....</b>	<b>413</b>
1. Deeply grasp the great significance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era as the guiding ideology of the Party and the state .....	413
2. Strive to master the Marxist standpoints and viewpoints that run through it .....	420
3. Promote the study and implementation of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era and continuously achieve practical results.....	425
4. Continuously enrich and develop Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era in the great practice of the new era .....	428
<b>Postscript.....</b>	<b>432</b>

## Introduction: Marxism in Contemporary China and Marxism in the 21st Century

Marxism is the fundamental guiding ideology of the CPC in building the party and the state. Keeping pace with the times is the theoretical character of Marxism. In the 19th century there was Marxism in the 19th century, Marxism in the 20th century in the 20th century, and of course there must be Marxism in the 21st century. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is contemporary Chinese Marxism and 21st century Marxism. The formation and establishment of this ideology as the guiding ideology that the Party and the state must adhere to for a long time, held high the spiritual banner for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, provided a Chinese solution for world peace and human progress, and was of landmark significance in the history of the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, the history of the development of Marxism and the progress of human society.

### 1. The background of the times in which Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era was formed

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era was put forward to answer the questions of the times under the historical conditions of the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics and complex and profound changes in the world, national and party conditions.

#### (1) The world is in a major change unprecedented in a century

Today's world is undergoing major changes unprecedented in a century, which is a major strategic judgment put forward and repeatedly emphasized by Comrade Xi Jinping after the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China by scientifically analyzing the development and changes of the world situation.

Against the background of historic changes in the relations between contemporary China and the world, and the closer connection between the future and destiny of contemporary China and the future and destiny of the world, a profound understanding of this great change will help the whole party and the people of the whole country better grasp the trend of the times and the general trend of the world, better grasp the historical opportunities and risks and challenges, and win the initiative and win advantages in the great changes. This is an important foothold of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era.

The most important trend of the great changes in the world is that the international order and the balance of international power are undergoing fundamental changes. Looking back at history, today's world pattern is the result of the gradual evolution of the international order after the First World War. After the First World War, through the Paris Peace Conference and the Washington Conference, the imperialist powers established the "Versailles-Washington system", which established the imperialist ruling order in Europe, West Asia, Africa, East Asia and the Pacific, and the United States gradually replaced Britain as the leader of the Western camp and the leader of the world order. After the Yalta system after World War II, the drastic changes in Eastern Europe after the Cold War, the disintegration of the Soviet Union, and the continuous reconstruction of the global order, the United States gradually achieved world domination. Since the beginning of the 21st century, with the development of world multipolarization, economic globalization, social informatization and cultural diversification, emerging market countries and a large number of developing countries have risen rapidly, international influence has been continuously enhanced, the world dominance of Western developed countries has continued to weaken, and the international pattern has shown a relatively balanced development trend. This was the most revolutionary change in the international order and the balance of power in more than a hundred years after World War I.

The new round of scientific and technological revolution and industrial revolution has promoted the rapid development of productive forces in today's world, which is an important factor causing great changes in the world. After the first industrial revolution, the second industrial revolution and the third industrial revolution, human society has entered an unprecedented period of innovation and activity. Original breakthroughs in the fields of information, life, manufacturing, energy, space, and oceans have provided more sources of innovation for cutting-edge technologies and disruptive technologies, the transformation speed of scientific and technological achievements has accelerated significantly, the form of industrial organization is undergoing new major changes, and the reconstruction of the global innovation map and the reshaping of the global economic structure have become more prominent. Science and technology have never been as profound as they are today, profoundly affecting the future and destiny of all countries in the world, the production and life of the people, and profoundly affecting the rise and fall of the strength of various countries.

In today's world changes, the governance deficit, trust deficit, peace deficit and development deficit are particularly prominent. On the centenary of the end of World War I, the world stepped into the era of strategic competition between great powers.

The battle for geostrategy, the battle for high technology, the dispute over "new frontiers" such as the deep sea, polar regions, outer space, and the Internet, the dispute over the dominance of international regulation, and the dispute over national governance models are in full swing. Regional conflicts and local wars are emerging one after another, security threats are becoming increasingly complex and integrated, and the international arms control, disarmament and non-proliferation system is facing new challenges. The process of informatization has reshaped the social and political ecology of various countries, widened the digital divide and gap between the rich and the poor, spread extremism and terrorism, and raised global challenges such as cybersecurity, major infectious diseases, and climate change. Protectionism and unilateralism are on the rise, the global pandemic of the new crown pneumonia epidemic has caused economic globalization to encounter greater headwinds and waves of reversal, and the world economy has fallen into a deep recession. Countries face many common threats, live in a more unstable and uncertain world, no country can cope with it alone or alone, and the world's expectations for a new global architecture are becoming more and more urgent.

With a history of more than 5,000 years of civilization, China is the world's largest developing country and the largest socialist country. Since the founding of New China, especially since the reform and opening up, China has gradually moved towards the world. The process of going global is also a process of China's sustained and rapid development. With the development and growth of economic strength and scientific and technological strength, China's international status has been significantly improved, its international influence has been significantly enhanced, and it has increasingly approached the center of the world stage. Since the international financial crisis in 2008, China has contributed more than 30% to world economic growth for many consecutive years, becoming the main source of world economic growth. China has become a decisive factor in the changes in the world pattern and an important stabilizing force in the world's great uncertainty.

At this time of great development, great change and great adjustment, China is changing, the world is changing, and the relationship between China and the world is also changing. How should China better develop itself and how should it make new and greater contributions to human society? The questions of the times arising from the great changes require scientific answers from contemporary Chinese communists. Standing at the height of world history and human civilization, Comrade Xi Jinping accurately grasps the pulse of the world's general trend with a correct view of history, the overall situation and the role, deeply analyzes the law of the evolution of the international pattern, and puts forward a series of pioneering new concepts, ideas and strategies around the questions of the times, providing Chinese wisdom, Chinese ideas and Chinese solutions for the better future of the world.

(2) Today, China is in a critical period from becoming rich to strong

When the world is in a major change unprecedented in a century, China's development is in the best period since modern times.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era. After the sustained development since the founding of New China, especially since the reform and opening up, China's social productive forces, comprehensive national strength, and people's living standards have achieved a historic leap, and its economic strength, scientific and technological strength, and national defense strength have entered the forefront of the world, and it has become the world's second largest economy, the largest manufacturing country, the largest country in goods trade, the second largest country in commodity consumption, and the second largest country in the flow of foreign capital, and its foreign exchange reserves have ranked first in the world for many consecutive years. Today's China has long bid farewell to the era of poverty and weakness and the era of material shortage; the people's living standards have achieved a great leap from insufficient food and clothing to moderate prosperity; the country as a whole has advanced to the period of "after development" pointed out by Comrade Deng Xiaoping, and is on the road of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and starting a new journey of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way. There is no doubt that we are closer, more confident and capable of realizing the goal of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation than at any time in history, and we are more confident and capable of making greater contributions to world peace and human progress than at any time in history.

China's social changes are historic, and China's development achievements are historic, but the basic national conditions in which China is still in the primary stage of socialism and will remain for a long time remain unchanged, and China's international status as the world's largest developing country has not changed. There is a long way to go to persist in developing the party's primary task of ruling and rejuvenating the country, persist in taking economic construction as the central task of the party and the country, and comprehensively build a moderately prosperous society, basically realize socialist modernization, and then comprehensively build a modern and powerful socialist country in the course of deepening reform and opening up. It should also be noted that the main contradiction in our society has been transformed into a contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development. On the one hand, the people's needs are becoming more and more extensive, not only putting forward new and higher requirements for material and cultural life, but also putting forward more and higher requirements for democracy, rule of law, fairness, justice, security, environment, etc.; on the other hand, unbalanced and insufficient development has become more prominent, which has become the main constraint to meeting the people's growing needs for a better life. Such characteristics of the times have set new and higher demands on the work of the party and the state in all fields.

Looking further, the boat to the middle wandering is more urgent, and the road to the mid-level is steeper. The new era is also a critical period for China's development, a period of tackling difficult problems in reform and a period of prominent contradictions. The task of reform, development and stability is unprecedentedly heavy, the number of contradictions, risks and challenges is unprecedented, and the test of governing the country is also unprecedented. Many old problems have not yet been fully solved, new ones are emerging, and other countries have no ready-made experience to draw from. Achieving socialist modernization in a country with a population of 1.4 billion is an unprecedented feat in human history.

Realizing the "two centenary goals" and the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation will once again create an earth-shaking development miracle in the history of human development. In the face of such tasks, challenges, and tests, China's reform needs to "wade into deep waters" and "break through dangerous shoals," need to overcome the "middle-income trap," "Tacitus trap," and "Thucydides trap," and need to guard against and defuse various major risks such as the "black swan" and "gray rhino" incidents.

Standing at the intersection of history, the Communist Party of China and the Chinese urgently need scientific theories that keep pace with the times to raise the flag and illuminate the future. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is precisely the ideological guide and spiritual weapon for us to make new achievements and contributions in the new era.

### (3) The Communist Party of China Faces a New "Rush Test" in the New Era

"Catching up for the exam" is an important point of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era. In July 2013, Comrade Xi Jinping went to Xibaipo to investigate, and in a discussion with rural cadres and the masses in the county, he said: "When the Party Central Committee left Xibaipo, Comrade Mao Zedong said that 'going to Beijing to catch up with the exam'. More than 60 years have passed, we have made great progress, Chinese people have stood up and become rich, but the challenges and problems we face are still severe and complex."<sup>1</sup>

The Communist Party of China is indeed facing a new "rush test" in the new era. As the world's largest party with more than 90 million members and more than 4.6 million grassroots party organizations, and as a party that has been in power for a long time in a large country with a population of 1.4 billion, whether or not it can always maintain its advanced nature and purity, and whether it can always maintain leadership and ruling ability consistent with the mission of ruling and rejuvenating the country is directly related to the prospects for realizing the "two centenary goals" and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

In the second decade of the 21st century, the Communist Party of China has gone through a glorious course of more than 90 years. The scale of Party members has been continuously expanded, the structure has been continuously improved, and the quality has been continuously improved, and the vanguard and exemplary role of Party members and the role of Party organizations as fighting fortresses have been effectively brought into play. At the same time, there were structural changes in the party's cadre ranks, cadres born before the founding of New China gradually withdrew from leading posts, and cadres born in the 60s and even 70s of the 20th century became the main body of the cadre ranks.

---

<sup>1</sup> "The Party's Face of 'Rushing Exam' Is Far from Over: Xi Jinping's Revisit to Xibaipo," People's Daily, July 14, 2013.

This change of cadres between the old and the new ensures that the cause of the party and the country is passed on from generation to generation and that the party is vigorous and vigorous. However, we should also realize that the vast number of middle-aged and young cadres generally lack the experience of weathering storms and seeing the world in major struggles, and whether they can have the corresponding fighting spirit and ability to fight in the great struggles with many new historical characteristics is a major issue that needs to be solved. In particular, profound changes have taken place in the ruling environment and social conditions facing the party; the tests of ruling, reform and opening up, market economy, and external environment are long-term, complex, and severe; and the dangers of mental slackness, lack of ability, separation from the masses, and negative corruption are more acutely placed before the whole party. How to maintain the party's advanced nature and purity, and how to ensure that the party always walks in the forefront of the times and can withstand the tests of various storms and waves, is a major issue that the CPC has always faced in winning the "catch up with the exam" in the new era.

Adhering to strict party management and courage in carrying out self-revolution is the secret of the CPC's evolution from weak to strong and constantly moving from victory to victory. However, for some time now, in some localities and departments, there have been problems of lax and soft management of the party and party management; some party organizations have been weak and lax in discipline; some party-member cadres have found it difficult to be supervised; and there have been many cases of lack or failure to manage the contingent; some party-member leading cadres have serious problems such as unhealthy work style, wavering beliefs, ideological slippage, moral aberrations, and corruption, and even violate discipline and law to seize profits, which the masses of the people deeply loath. If this situation is not changed, it will weaken the party's ability to govern and shake the party's ruling foundation. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "If the management of the party is not effective and strict, and the prominent problems within the party that the people strongly reflect cannot be solved, then sooner or later our party will lose its qualification to govern and will inevitably be eliminated by history."<sup>1</sup>

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has led the whole party to carry out a new "rush examination" with a strong sense of distress, promoted the comprehensive and strict management of the party with firm determination, tenacious will and unprecedented strength, adopted a series of major measures and made arduous efforts, and promoted the profound transformation of party management from "loose and soft" to "strict and hard", so that the party has rejuvenated new vitality in the revolutionary forging. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is a theoretical summary and ideological crystallization of comprehensively administering the party strictly, deepens the understanding of the law of Marxist ruling party building, and demonstrates the high consciousness and superb ability of the Marxist ruling party in the new era of self-purification, self-improvement, self-innovation and self-improvement.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 43.

## 2. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has opened up a new realm of Marxism

A history of the development of Marxism is a history of the continuous development of Marx, Engels and their successors in accordance with the development of the times, practice and understanding, and the history of constantly absorbing all the excellent ideological and cultural achievements in human history to enrich themselves.

The Communist Party of China persists in taking Marxism as its guide, persists in integrating the basic tenets of Marxism with China's specific conditions in the process of leading China's revolution, construction and reform, constantly promotes the Sinicization of Marxism, and constantly opens up new realms of Marxism in the course of advancing with the times. After the birth of the Communist Party of China, it united and led the people to complete the new democratic revolution and socialist revolution through a long struggle, realizing the great leap of the Chinese nation from being the "sick man of East Asia" to standing up. In the process of realizing this leap, Mao Zedong Thought, the theoretical achievement of the first historical leap in the Sinicization of Marxism, was created. Since the reform and opening up, the Party has united and led the people to carry out the new great practice of building socialism with Chinese characteristics, enabling China to make great strides to catch up with the times and realize the great leap of the Chinese nation from standing up to becoming rich. The theoretical achievement of this great leap is the realization of the second historical leap in the Sinicization of Marxism and the formation of a theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, including Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents" and the scientific outlook on development.

In the new era, the Communist Party of China has integrated the basic tenets of Marxism with China's specific conditions in the new era, united and led the people to carry out great struggles, build great projects, advance great causes, realize great dreams, and promote historic achievements and changes in the cause of the party and the country. The theoretical achievement of this great leap is to realize another new leap in the Sinicization of Marxism and create Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the inheritance and development of Marxism-Leninism, Mao Zedong Thought, Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents" and the scientific outlook on development.



It is the latest achievement of the Sinicization of Marxism, the crystallization of the practical experience and collective wisdom of the Party and the people, an important part of the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and a guide to action for the whole Party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to strive for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. This ideology adheres to the world outlook methodology of dialectical materialism and historical materialism, adheres to the people's stand, adheres to the ideological line of seeking truth from facts, and adheres to the ideals and convictions of communists, and is a model for adhering to Marxism. This idea is also a model of innovative development of Marxism, which understands and grasps a series of major strategic issues facing contemporary China's development with a broad and long-term perspective, and constantly expands new horizons in theory. He made new generalizations and said many "new words" that had not been said before, and made a major original contribution to the development of Marxism. These original contributions are profound and systematic, running through the three major components of Marxist philosophy, political economy and scientific socialism, covering all aspects of the cause of the party and the country, deepening the understanding of the law of the Communist Party's ruling power, the law of socialist construction and the law of the development of human society with a new vision, and writing a new chapter in contemporary Chinese Marxism and Marxism in the 21st century.

(1) It has deepened the understanding of the law governing the Communist Party

Marx and Engels founded the theory of proletarian parties, but due to the limitations of historical conditions, they did not lead the practice of ruling the Communist Party. The Communist Party of the Soviet Union ushered in a brand-new history of a Marxist party holding national political power and gained a lot of experience in ruling power in practice, but it did not fundamentally solve such major historical issues as what socialism is, how to build socialism, what kind of party to build, and how to build the party, and made many major mistakes, including major historical mistakes, resulting in the loss of power after 74 years in power. Practice has proved that it is not easy for a Marxist party to seize political power, it is even more difficult to consolidate political power, and it is especially difficult to hold power for a long time.

Since the Communist Party of China came to power, it has always regarded jumping out of the historical cycle rate of "its prosperity is also vigorous, and its death is also sudden" as a historical topic that must be solved well in the party's long-term ruling power, and has continuously expanded its understanding of the law governing the Communist Party in the practice of administering the party and the country. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, focusing on achieving the long-term ruling goal, Comrade Xi Jinping, with the political consciousness that "iron must be hard by itself," has continuously deepened theoretical exploration and practical creation of the CPC's ruling law, put forward a series of new concepts, new ideas and new strategies for party building, enriched and developed Marx's theory on political parties, and guided the practice of comprehensively administering the party strictly to achieve great achievements.

This idea creatively puts forward that the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the party is the highest political leading force of the country. This fundamentally and highly expounds the party's historical position and core role in leading the development of the socialist cause, profoundly reveals the most fundamental and important issue in the ruling law of the Communist Party of China, and clarifies the ambiguous understanding that has existed inside and outside the party on the issue of party leadership for some time.

This ideology creatively puts forward the need to uphold and strengthen the party's comprehensive leadership, stressing the need to enhance political awareness, awareness of the overall situation, core awareness, and awareness of alignment, and consciously safeguarding the authority of the party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership; stressing the need to improve the party's leadership system and mechanism, enhance the party's ability and determination to set the direction, seek the overall situation, formulate policies, and promote reform, and ensure that the party always controls the overall situation and coordinates all parties. This is not only a profound summary of the historical experience of the Communist Party of China, but also a systematic exposition of the fundamental requirements, practical path, and goal orientation of upholding and strengthening the party's leadership in the connection between history and reality.

This idea creatively puts forward that the courage of self-revolution is the most distinctive character of the Communist Party of China and is also the greatest advantage of the Party; it emphasizes that all comrades in the Party must maintain the revolutionary spirit and revolutionary fighting spirit, and use the Party's self-revolution to promote the great social revolution led by the Party to the people. This profoundly expounds the dialectical relationship between the Party's self-revolution and the social revolution that complement each other and organically unifies, and reveals the internal logic of Marxism's unity in transforming the objective world and transforming the subjective world.

This ideology creatively puts forward the idea of comprehensively administering the party strictly, stressing that the core of comprehensively administering the party strictly lies in strengthening the party's leadership, the foundation is comprehensive, the key is strict, and the key is in ruling the key points; it emphasizes that comprehensively administering the party strictly is always on the road, and it is necessary to really manage the party strictly, dare to manage the party strictly, and manage the party for a long time. This is not only the historical inheritance of the fine tradition of party building, but also a sober understanding of the problems existing in the party in the new era and a scientific grasp of the party's ruling mission and ruling methods.

This ideology creatively puts forward that the party's political building is the fundamental building of the party and determines the direction and effect of party building; it emphasizes putting the party's political building in the first place and using the party's political construction to guide all aspects of party building in the new era. This further highlights the fundamental political nature of the Marxist ruling party and is the development and innovation of Marxist party building theory.

This ideology creatively puts forward the general requirements for party building in the new era, further clarifies that the main line of party building is to strengthen the party's long-term ruling capacity building and the building of its advanced nature and purity, the foundation is to strengthen ideals and convictions, the key is to take political construction as the command, and the focus is to mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative, and creativity of the whole party; it further clarifies that the general layout of party building is to comprehensively promote the party's political, ideological, organizational, and work style building. It further clarifies that the general goal of party building is to continuously improve the quality of party building and to build the party into a Marxist ruling party that is always in the forefront of the times, wholeheartedly supported by the people, brave in self-revolution, and able to withstand the tests of all kinds of storms, and full of vigor. This scientifically answers the fundamental question of what kind of party to build and how to build the party in the new era, and injects the connotation of the new era into the theory of party building.

These new concepts, ideas and strategies for managing the party and ruling the party put forward by Comrade Xi Jinping have expanded the vision, layout and pattern of party building, innovated party building methods, paths and measures, and enriched and developed the Marxist theory of ruling party building. These theoretical explorations and innovations have been successfully applied and tested in the great practice of guiding the CPC to comprehensively and strictly administer the party, greatly enhancing the party's creativity, cohesion and combat effectiveness, and promoting the party's new strong vitality in the revolutionary forging.

(2) It has deepened the understanding of the law governing socialist construction

Over the past 500 years, socialism has undergone the evolution from utopia to science, from theory to practice, and from the practice of one country to the practice of many countries, which has profoundly changed the development process of world history. In the late 80s and early 90s of the 20th century, with the drastic changes in Eastern Europe and the disintegration of the Soviet Union, world socialism suffered serious setbacks. Once upon a time, the so-called "conclusion of the end of history," "theory of the defeat of socialism," and "theory of the collapse of China" were very popular. Thirty years have passed, with the vigorous development of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the world has witnessed the end of the "conclusion of the end of history", the collapse of the "theory of the collapse of China", and the failure of the "theory of the defeat of socialism"; the contest between the two roads, two systems and two isms in the world is undergoing profound changes in favor of socialism and Marxism, and scientific socialism has radiated strong vitality in China in the 21st century. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era uses Marx's position and viewpoint method, adheres to what we are doing as the center, adheres to problem awareness and problem orientation, condenses the essence of the times, and summarizes practical experience.

He has put forward many important ideas, important viewpoints, and important theories in reform, development, and stability, internal and foreign affairs, national defense, and the management of the party and the country, and the army, systematically answering the major questions of the times about what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to uphold and develop in the new era and how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, raising the understanding of socialism with Chinese characteristics to a new scientific level, and further enriching and developing the theory of scientific socialism.

On the question of the essence of socialism, this thinking attributes the most essential characteristics of socialism with Chinese characteristics and the greatest advantages of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics to the leadership of the Communist Party of China, deepens our understanding of the most essential law of socialism, and enables us to reach a new level of understanding of the basic Marxist principle that the leadership of the Communist Party and the cause of socialism are inseparable, complementary and intrinsically unified.

In terms of the basic connotation of socialism, this idea proposes that socialism with Chinese characteristics is composed of "four in one" of road, theory, system and culture, and requires the whole party to strengthen self-confidence in the road, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics, emphasizing that cultural self-confidence is a more basic, broader and deeper self-confidence, and a more basic, deeper and more lasting force. This profoundly reveals the intrinsic unity relationship between the practice, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and enriches and expands the connotation and extension of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

In terms of the value stand of socialism, this ideology clearly puts forward the need to always adhere to the fundamental position of taking the people as the center, always put the people in the highest position in our hearts, take the people's yearning for a better life as the party's goal, constantly promote the all-round development of people, and gradually realize the common prosperity of all the people. This has established the CPC's outlook on the people in the new era, further demonstrated the fundamental value stand of Marxism for the interests of the people, and deepened the understanding of socialist values and goals.

In the stage of socialist development, this thinking has made a major political conclusion on the basis of accurately judging that the main contradiction in our society has been transformed into the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development. This has further enriched and developed the Marxist outlook on the times and injected a new connotation of the times into the CPC's theory of the initial stage of socialism.

In terms of the development goal of socialism, this idea puts forward that the goal of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era is to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation; it puts forward that the Chinese dream is the dream of the country, the national dream, and the dream of every Chinese sons and daughters; and points out that to realize the Chinese dream, we must follow the Chinese road, carry forward the Chinese spirit, and unite China's strength. This organically combines the class mission of realizing socialism and communism with the national mission of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, embodies the dual mission and distinctive characteristics of the Communist Party of China, finds the greatest common divisor of the unity and struggle of the Chinese nation, and deepens the understanding of the common ideal of socialism with Chinese characteristics and the lofty ideal of communism.

In terms of the socialist development concept, this idea puts forward a new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, which epitomizes the party's profound insight and scientific grasp of the basic characteristics of social development in the new era. This has raised the CPC's understanding of the law of economic and social development to a new height and enriched and developed Marxist political economy.

In terms of the development momentum of socialism, this idea creatively puts forward the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform is to improve and develop the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and foresight proposes to take the initiative to participate in and promote the process of economic globalization, develop a higher-level open economy, and promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up. This has further enriched and developed Marxist thinking on the movement of basic contradictions in society and deepened the understanding of the driving force of socialist development.

In terms of the layout of socialist construction, this idea puts forward the overall layout of "five-in-one" economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction, and coordinates the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout of comprehensively building a moderately prosperous society, comprehensively deepening reform, comprehensively governing the country according to law, and comprehensively administering the party strictly. This has deepened the systematic grasp and strategic planning of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and raised the understanding and practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics to a new scientific level.

In terms of the strategic arrangement of socialist modernization, this idea clearly proposes to take two steps on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, basically realize socialist modernization by 2035, and build China into a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist power by the middle of this century. This has more clearly designed the timetable and road map for building a modern socialist power, enriched and expanded the connotation of the times of a modern socialist power, and further deepened the understanding of the law governing social modernization.

Standing at a new historical starting point, Comrade Xi Jinping deepened his understanding of the law of socialist construction with a new vision, not only guiding China to usher in unprecedented bright prospects, but also expanding the ways for developing countries to modernize with creative exploration, so that the banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics is flying high in today's world.

(3) It has deepened the understanding of the law governing the development of human society

Marxism adheres to the materialist view of history and the theory of surplus value, scientifically reveals the general law of the development of human society and the special law of the development of capitalist society, makes scientific conclusions of "two inevitable" and "two never", and points out the correct direction of the development of human society and the realistic path to realize the free emancipation of man. Although the present era has undergone tremendous and profound changes compared with Marx's time, the general trend of human historical development expounded by Marxism has not changed.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era adheres to the Marxist understanding of the laws of the development of human society, adheres to the communist ideal and belief in socialism with Chinese characteristics, and takes this as the political soul of communists and the spiritual pillar that can withstand any test. This thinking looks at the overall situation and the general trend from the perspective of the development of the times and human progress, has an insight into the logic of historical progress and the trend of world development, and puts forward a series of creative ideas and propositions around promoting the establishment of a new type of international relations, promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind and building a better world, pointing out the correct development direction for human society that is experiencing great changes unprecedented in a century, and contributing Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to the development and progress of the world.

China's proposal on global governance. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era advocates the global governance concept of consultation, co-construction and sharing, advocates the common values of peace, development, fairness, justice, democracy and freedom, advocates a new civilization concept of equality, mutual learning, dialogue and inclusiveness, and advocates the correct concept of justice and justice, equal treatment, mutual benefit and win-win results, and common development. Guided by this concept, China has actively promoted the establishment of multilateral financial frameworks such as the Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank, the BRICS New Development Bank, and the Silk Road Fund, promoted the construction of the "Belt and Road" international cooperation mechanism, and actively participated in multilateral international cooperation platforms such as the G20, Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC), the Shanghai Cooperation Organization, the BRICS Summit, and the Conference on Interaction and Confidence-Building Measures in Asia, providing effective guidance for optimizing global governance.

On the Chinese plan to enhance trust. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era advocates putting mutual respect and trust in the forefront, emphasizing the need to persist in seeking common ground while reserving differences, gathering and assimilating differences, and enhancing strategic mutual trust and reducing mutual suspicion through frank and profound dialogue and communication. It is proposed to adhere to the correct concept of righteousness and benefit, put righteousness first, take both righteousness and benefit into consideration, and build a global partnership with a common destiny; strengthen exchanges and dialogues among different civilizations, deepen mutual understanding and mutual recognition, and let the people of all countries know each other, trust and respect each other, etc., so as to provide the correct guidelines for all countries in the world to trust each other, move forward side by side, and jointly build a better world.

China's plan for world peace. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era puts forward the concept of international exchanges based on dialogue rather than confrontation and partnership rather than alliance, a new security concept of common, comprehensive, cooperative and sustainable, a new type of international relations featuring mutual respect, fairness and justice, and win-win cooperation, and a new type of major-country relationship based on non-conflict, non-confrontation, mutual respect and win-win cooperation, contributing China's strength to safeguarding world peace, promoting common development and reconstructing the world security order.

China's program on world development. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era advocates an open, inclusive, balanced and win-win new type of globalization, advocates the development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, advocates the concept of open, integrated, mutually beneficial and win-win cooperation, and puts forward the "Belt and Road" initiative, etc., making positive contributions to safeguarding world peace and development, innovating global development concepts, accelerating world economic recovery, and firming the direction of globalization development.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is such a big country with a broad world vision, broad world sentiments, and frank responsibilities, not only seeking happiness for the Chinese and the people, seeking rejuvenation for the Chinese nation, but also seeking peace for mankind and development for the world; it not only clearly outlines the future and destiny of China and socialism in the 21st century, but also points out the direction for the world ship at the crossroads, and greatly deepens the understanding of the law of human social development.

### 3. The scientific system of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era

To judge whether a theory has become a scientific system, it mainly depends on whether it contains a distinct theme, whether it systematically answers a series of basic questions raised by its era, whether it has rigorous logic and complete structure, and continues to open up and develop.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is such an open scientific system that integrates epochality, systematization and originality.

(1) It systematically answers the major issues of the times in adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era

Engels pointed out: "The theoretical thinking of every era, including that of our time, is a product of history, which has completely different forms and at the same time completely different contents in different eras. "<sup>1</sup> The historical mission to be fulfilled by a political party in a period and the issues of the times to be solved by a generation of leaders at a stage are all determined by the requirements of the times and the wishes of the people at that time. Since the reform and opening up, the CPC's innovative theory has always focused on answering major questions of the times, from "what is socialism and how to build socialism", to "what kind of party to build and how to build the party", to "what kind of development to achieve and how to develop." The basic issues affecting the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics as it enters a new era boil down to what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to uphold and develop, and how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics. This is undoubtedly a new topic in the new era.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, based on the new era, profoundly answers what banner the Communist Party of China raises, what road to take, what mental state it takes, and what historical mission it undertakes from the perspective of the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country, and from the perspective of the future and destiny of socialism. A series of fundamental questions, such as what kind of goal to achieve, once again show the world that China will neither follow the old road of closure and rigidity, nor follow the evil path of changing the banner, but will unswervingly take the clear position of taking the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, pointing out the way forward for China in the new era.

—Profoundly answered the question "where did socialism with Chinese characteristics come from." It is further emphasized that socialism with Chinese characteristics is the dialectical unity of the theoretical logic of scientific socialism and the historical logic of China's social development.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 873.



It is scientific socialism rooted in the Chinese land, reflecting the will of the Chinese people, and adapting to the development and progress requirements of China and the times.

—Profoundly answered the question "what is the nature of socialism with Chinese characteristics?" It has further clarified the firm political stand of the Communist Party of China, clearly emphasized that socialism with Chinese characteristics is first and foremost socialism and not any other ism, unswervingly adhered to the direction of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and must not make subversive mistakes on fundamental issues.

—Profoundly answered the "where are the characteristics" of socialism with Chinese characteristics? It further explained the practical, theoretical, national and contemporary characteristics of socialism with Chinese characteristics, systematically summarized the 13 significant advantages of China's state system and national governance system, and emphasized that these significant advantages are the basic basis for strengthening self-confidence in the road, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

—Profoundly answered the question of "where to go" socialism with Chinese characteristics. It further emphasized the need to continue to write a new great chapter of socialism with Chinese characteristics, put forward the overall goal of adhering to and improving the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, comprehensively promoting the historical exploration of the second half of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and constantly forging ahead towards the realization of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and the lofty ideal of communism.

(2) It has formed a systematic and interconnected ideological system

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has a distinct theme and goal, provides all-round and three-dimensional answers to a series of important questions from the combination of history and reality, theory and practice, domestic and international, and forms systematic ideological views in all fields and aspects, which is a rich connotation, systematic and complete, interconnected and logical ideological system. The report of the 19th CPC National Congress summarized the main contents of this ideological system with "Eight Definites" and "Fourteen Persistences."

The "Eight Definites" and "Fourteen Persistences" epitomize the CPC's all-round thinking from theoretical consciousness to practical consciousness. The "eight clear" is the most important and core content of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, which mainly answers the question of what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to build and develop from the theoretical level. As the basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, the "Fourteen Persistences" is an important content of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

It mainly answers the question of how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics from the practical level. In other words, "Eight Definites" answers the question of "what", and "fourteen insistence" answers the question of "what to do." One is the "four beams and eight pillars" that support the entire ideological system, and the other is the "road map" and "methodology" for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. The two are integrated and organically unified, and together constitute the main content of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is systematic and complete. This thinking closely revolves around the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, runs through Marxist philosophy, political economy, scientific socialism and other disciplines, covering reform, development and stability, internal and foreign affairs, national defense, party governance, country and military, etc., including a comprehensive and profound exposition of the general goals, general tasks, overall layout, strategic layout and development direction, development mode, development momentum, strategic steps, external conditions, political guarantees and other basic issues of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Theoretical analysis and policy guidance in various fields such as politics, rule of law, science and technology, culture, education, people's livelihood, ethnicity, religion, society, ecological civilization, national security, national defense and the armed forces, "one country, two systems" and the reunification of the motherland, united front, diplomacy, party building and other fields.

Xi Jinping's Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is interconnected. The "eight clear" and "Fourteen Persistences" not only put forward the fundamental viewpoint of understanding the world and analyzing problems, but also provide scientific methods for solving problems and guiding practice, and embody the integration of world outlook and methodology; they not only pay attention to the pulse of the development of the times, but also conform to the wishes and expectations of the people, and embody the continuity of truth and value; they are theoretical innovations based on practice, and they also guide new practice with innovative theories, embody the integration of theory and practice; and focus on the overall situation, long-term nature, and The planning of overall major issues also pays attention to the specific path and practical process of solving problems, which embodies the integration of strategy and tactics; emphasizes the solution of practical problems and puts forward grand goals, which embodies the integration of problem awareness and goal orientation; it not only pays attention to the future and destiny of the Chinese nation and the Chinese people, but also emphasizes the struggle for the cause of human progress, reflecting the connection between China and the world.

#### 4. Comrade Xi Jinping is the main founder of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the crystallization of the practical experience and collective wisdom of the Party and the people, and its main founder is Comrade Xi Jinping, as the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party. In the great practice of leading the whole party, the whole army and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to promote the development of the cause of the party and the country, Comrade Xi Jinping, with the profound insight, keen judgment and determination of Marxist politicians, theorists and strategists, put forward a series of groundbreaking new ideas, ideas and strategies, which played a decisive role and made decisive contributions to the establishment of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era.

(1) Comrade Xi Jinping's firm political belief and simple people's feelings have injected powerful spiritual genes into this thinking

All great ideas carry their founder's own value stance and value judgment, reflecting his deeply rooted beliefs and ideals. Great ideas run through the sincere and ardent pursuit of faith, exude simple and rich humanistic care, and thus inspire, inspire and unite people. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is such a great idea

Comrade Xi Jinping has the red foundation of firm faith. He was born in a revolutionary family with a red family style tutor and received a strict revolutionary traditional education from an early age, which enabled him to establish a firm belief in communism and socialism and a heroic feeling that "revolutionary ideals are higher than heaven." The power of his parents' example and example made him unwavering in his original intention and beliefs even when his life was most difficult. He has written 8 applications for the People's League and 10 applications for the People's Party, so that many foreigners lament that "Xi Jinping has the genes of patriotism and loyalty to faith."

Comrade Xi Jinping has the feeling of being close to the people and loving the people. At the age of 15, he went to Liangjiahe on the northern Shaanxi plateau to join the queue, and his father and fellow villagers in northern Shaanxi accepted him with warm arms and influenced him with his simple and simple qualities, which made him personally feel the simplicity, kindness, integrity and selflessness of the people when he was a teenager, and set up the youthful aspiration to do something practical for the masses and change the poor and backward appearance of Liangjiahe.

The tempering of his career as a young person has enabled Comrade Xi Jinping to understand the national conditions, but also the hearts of the people, and harvest a treasure book of life that can be used for life without writing a word. He once recalled, "As a public servant of the people, the Northern Shaanxi Plateau is my roots, because it has cultivated my unchanging belief: to do practical things for the people!" In 1982, he resolutely gave up his work in the central organs, went down to the grassroots level, and returned to the masses. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has clearly put forward the people-centered development thinking and taken the yearning of all the people for a better life as the party's goal. This is not only the natural expression of his consistent feelings for the people, but also his greatest political confidence in not forgetting his original intention and forging ahead.

(2) Comrade Xi Jinping's rich cultural accumulation and solid philosophical literacy have laid a profound theoretical foundation for this thought

Throughout the ages, any great theory has been full of the penetrating power of thought, the vitality of logic, and the appeal of words, which can inspire people, give people warmth, and give people strength. The reason why Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era exudes infinite charm is closely related to the rich cultural accumulation and solid philosophical literacy of its founder.

Comrade Xi Jinping has a profound cultural heritage. He has a deep affection for traditional Chinese culture, and always conveys his thoughts with classic phrases that are natural and human. He has a wide range of foreign masterpieces, including famous writers and literary masterpieces in Russia, the United States, France, Germany, Britain, India and other countries. "Thousands of miles are not a day's work." Comrade Xi Jinping said that his biggest hobby is reading. At the age of 15, he put forward to himself the requirements of reading and self-cultivation that "I don't know anything and I am deeply ashamed." When he went to Liangjiahe to cut the queue, he brought two "dead and dead" book boxes, and under the kerosene lamp in the dead of night, he could always be seen immersed in reading. After entering politics, he still maintained the good habit of reading, not only regarded reading as a way of life, but also strongly advocated to love, read, and read well. It is this kind of persistent mass reading and deep thinking that cultivates his rich knowledge and profound insights, giving his thoughts a broad vision and profound foundation.

Comrade Xi Jinping has solid philosophical literacy. When he joined the queue in northern Shaanxi, he became deeply interested in philosophy, often holding the "brick-thick" Marxist classics to study diligently, and devoted great efforts to studying dialectical materialism and historical materialism.

When he studied Capital, he wrote a full 18 notebooks. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, he has issued a call to the whole party to "study philosophy and use philosophy," regard Marxist philosophy as the housekeeping skill of the Chinese communists, lead the Politburo of the Central Committee to collectively study dialectical materialism and historical materialism, and set an example for the whole party. It is precisely because of the long-term study and study of philosophy, especially Marxist philosophy, that Comrade Xi Jinping has developed keen and profound philosophical thinking, mastered systematic and complete philosophical methods, and successfully used them to guide the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Whether it is works such as "Knowing the Deepest Love," "Getting Out of Poverty," "Walking in the Forefront in Practical Practice," and "Zhijiang Xinyu" when working at the local level, or a series of important speeches made after working in the Central Committee, especially since the 18th CPC National Congress, all of them run through the world outlook and methodology of dialectical materialism and historical materialism, and all shine with the light of wisdom of Marxist philosophy.

(3) Comrade Xi Jinping's long-term hard work and solid political experience have accumulated sufficient practical nutrients for this thinking

The process of the emergence of the leaders of the proletarian party is a process of historical selection, as well as a process of constantly shaping and testing the character qualities of individuals. Only those who have the whole world in mind, care for the people, and have the feelings of home and country, those who are strategic, full of wisdom and strategic, can withstand the severe test of adversity, be pampered, calm in their dealings, stand out in the torrent of the times, and be chosen by history and the people. Comrade Xi Jinping's long-term hard work at the grassroots level and solid political experience at multiple levels and positions have accumulated sufficient practical nutrients for the establishment of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era.

Comrade Xi Jinping is the leader of our Party who grew up in the face of adversity. Xi Jinping was 9 years old when Comrade Xi Zhongxun was wronged in 1962. During his father's mistreatment, he was criticized, starved and even wandered, and at the age of 15, he took the initiative to join the team in northern Shaanxi to become a farmer, and worked for seven years. Among the "old three" educated youth, Comrade Xi Jinping is one of the very few educated young people who are the youngest, go to the most difficult places, and have spent the longest time in the countryside. In the face of such an environment, he experienced self-cultivation in the arduous struggle, cultivated a tenacious, persevering and strong character, and forged a feeling of self-improvement and lofty ambitions. Years of grinding in the countryside have allowed Comrade Xi Jinping to complete the first transformation in his life, allowing him to truly understand what is practical, what is seeking truth from facts, and what is called the masses."

Comrade Xi Jinping is a leader of our Party who has been trained in the practice of politics in many fields and at multiple levels. Judging from the growth process of Comrade Xi Jinping, the seven years of knowing youth are the "origin" of his original aspiration for the people and the formation of his thoughts. The three years of Zhengding, an agricultural county in the central Hebei Plain, was a "test field" for him to display his political talents and show his historical responsibility. The series of ideas and measures he put forward at that time fully reflected his innovative spirit, pragmatic style and responsibility, and became the practical foundation and ideological source accumulated in Xi Jinping's Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. In the political practice of Fujian, a southeast coastal province for more than 17 years, his political ability and governance ability have been comprehensively experienced and displayed, focusing on "getting rid of poverty" when he was in Ningde, blowing the "clarion call" for state-owned enterprise reform when he was in Fuzhou, and putting forward the strategic concept of "ecological province" construction and "digital Fujian" when he was governor, etc., so many innovative actions constitute an important practical foundation and important source of thought for Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era. The six years in charge of Zhejiang and Shanghai were a crucial period for Comrade Xi Jinping's politician quality to be comprehensively improved, and also a crucial period for the formation of his thinking on governing the country. From proposing the implementation of the "Eight-Eight Strategy" to bring Zhejiang on the fast track of development to deepening the people's promotion of Shanghai's reform and opening up, these strategic and overall thinking and practices have fully prepared and tested him for planning the great chess game of national development in the future.

(4) Comrade Xi Jinping's extraordinary political boldness and superb political wisdom have opened up a broad vision for this thought

Times make heroes. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has taken up the burden of leaders of major countries with extraordinary political courage, superb political wisdom and excellent political ability, and has become the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, which has provided a broad practice for the establishment of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Comrade Xi Jinping has extraordinary political boldness. "The true colors of heroes are revealed through the sea." Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has led the whole Party and the people of the whole country to carry out great struggles with many new historical characteristics. In the face of reform, Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that deepening reform will inevitably touch the "cheese" of some people, and it is impossible for everyone to be happy when encountering the fetters of various complex relationships. He personally served as the main person in charge of the central leading institution for comprehensively deepening reform, and promoted the reform to achieve historic results.

In the face of corruption, he stressed that "there is no exoneration; there is no iron coupon, and there is no 'iron hat king'."<sup>1</sup> With the determination to eliminate the problem with strong medicine and to remedy chaos, and with the courage of scraping bones to cure poison and breaking the wrists of strong men, they have "fought tigers," "flapping flies," and "hunting foxes," and promoted a marked improvement in the party's political ecology. In the face of environmental pollution, he stressed the need to settle the big account, the long-term account, the overall account, the comprehensive account, and resolutely start the battle against pollution, and so on. With his selfless and fearless historical responsibility, Comrade Xi Jinping has solved many difficult problems that he has wanted to solve for a long time but has not solved, accomplished many major things that he wanted to do but failed to do in the past, and promoted socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era.

Comrade Xi Jinping has superb political wisdom. He has established a clear understanding of China's national conditions in various fields and at multiple levels, accumulated rich political experience, cultivated a broad vision pattern through persistent and unremitting study and thinking, and mastered scientific thinking methods and working methods. These practical accumulations and theoretical reflections have been transformed into the superb political wisdom of Marxist politicians, theorists, and strategists. In order to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, he made overall plans to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one" and coordinated the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout; he kept the overall situation in mind and grasped the key points, not only persisted in comprehensively deepening reform, but also emphasized that the reform of the economic system was the focus, and both insisted that the party would always be on the road to administering the party strictly in an all-round way, and also stressed that the party's political construction should lead the party's building in all aspects; he was not shocked and resolute in every situation, so as to see Ye Zhiqiu's keenness. Scientific and rigorous deployment, command and response to a series of major risks and challenges such as the new crown pneumonia epidemic; he led the rudder and strategized, from the strategic arrangement of building a modern socialist power in an all-round way to the implementation of the new development principle, building a world-class army, and launching great power diplomacy in the new era, and so on.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Strict Party Discipline and Rules", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016, p. 87.

## Chapter I: Socialism with Chinese Characteristics Enters a New Era

Scientifically judging the historical orientation and formulating lines, principles, and policies based on this is the valuable experience accumulated by the CPC's long-term struggle. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, in the face of profound changes in the conditions of the world, the country and the party, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to overcome difficulties and struggle, opening a new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era scientifically marks the new historical orientation of the primary stage of socialism in China, gives the party's historical mission, theoretical follow-up, goals and tasks a new connotation of the times, and provides the coordinates of the times for deeply grasping Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era.

### Section 1: The basic basis for socialism with Chinese characteristics to enter a new era

The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era is based on the characteristics of different stages in the process of socialist social development, marking a new stage in the process of the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and reflecting the new progress of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The new era is a new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, not some other new era."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 70.



The new era is one stage in the initial stage of socialism, not any other stage. Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era with a solid historical foundation and sufficient practical basis.

## 1. Solid historical foundation

Socialism with Chinese characteristics was founded in a new period in the history of reform and opening up, and was built on the basis of the long-term struggle of the Communist Party of China in the past century, and its origins in ideology, theory and practice can be traced back even further. When combing and reviewing the 500-year history of world socialism, Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that socialism with Chinese characteristics did not fall from the sky, but was a fundamental achievement achieved by the Party and the people through thousands of hardships and at various costs, with profound historical origins and practical foundations. The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era was realized in the continuous struggle of several generations of Chinese communists to establish a new China, open a new era, cross the new century, and stand at a new starting point.

The Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Mao Zedong, integrated the basic tenets of Marxism-Leninism with the concrete practice of the Chinese revolution, founded Mao Zedong Thought, united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, completed the new democratic revolution, established New China, established the basic socialist system, successfully realized the most profound and greatest social reform in Chinese history, and laid the fundamental political prerequisite and institutional foundation for all development and progress in contemporary China. In the process of exploring the road of socialist construction in China, although there have been twists and turns, the original theoretical achievements and tremendous achievements made by the Party in socialist revolution and construction have provided valuable experience, theoretical preparation and material foundation for the creation of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new historical period.

After the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee, the Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Deng Xiaoping, united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to profoundly sum up the positive and negative experiences of China's socialist construction, draw on the historical experience of socialism in the world, creatively answer the major questions of what socialism is and how to build socialism, create Deng Xiaoping Theory, and make a decision to shift the focus of the work of the party and the state to economic construction. The historic policy decision to implement reform and opening up has profoundly revealed the nature of socialism, established the basic line for the initial stage of socialism, clearly proposed to follow its own path and build socialism with Chinese characteristics, scientifically answered a series of basic questions on building socialism with Chinese characteristics, formulated a development strategy for basically realizing socialist modernization in three steps by the middle of the 21st century, and successfully opened a new period of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

After the Fourth Plenary Session of the 13th CPC Central Committee, the Chinese Communists with Comrade Jiang Zemin as the main representative united and led the whole party and the people of all nationalities throughout the country, adhered to the party's basic theory and basic line, deepened their understanding of what socialism is, how to build socialism, what kind of party to build, and how to build the party, and formed the important thinking of "three represents." In the face of the severe test of the very complicated situation at home and abroad and the serious twists and turns of socialism in the world, we have defended socialism with Chinese characteristics, established the reform objectives and basic framework of the socialist market economic system, established the basic economic system and distribution system in the initial stage of socialism, opened up a new situation of comprehensive reform and opening up, promoted the new great project of party building, and successfully pushed socialism with Chinese characteristics into the 21st century.

After the 16th CPC National Congress, the Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Hu Jintao, united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, persistently took Deng Xiaoping Theory and the important thinking of the "three represents" as their guide, profoundly understood and answered major questions such as what kind of development to achieve and how to develop in accordance with the new development requirements, and formed a scientific outlook on development that is people-oriented and comprehensively coordinates sustainable development. Seize the period of important strategic opportunities, promote practical innovation, theoretical innovation and institutional innovation in the process of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, adhere to people-oriented, comprehensively coordinated and sustainable development, form the overall layout of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, focus on ensuring and improving people's livelihood, promote social fairness and justice, promote the construction of a harmonious world, promote the building of the party's ruling capacity and advanced nature, and successfully adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics at a new historical starting point.

Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics requires Chinese communists to keep pace with the times, constantly create new things in theory, and show new achievements in practice. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is a big article, Comrade Deng Xiaoping has defined the basic ideas and basic principles for it, and the third generation of the party's central leading collective with Comrade Jiang Zemin as the core and the party Central Committee with Comrade Hu Jintao as general secretary have written wonderful chapters on this big article." Now, the task of our generation of communists is to continue to write this big article."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014, p. 114.

## 2. Historic achievements and historic changes

The 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China opened a new journey for the cause of the Party and the country, and opened a new chapter in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics. In the face of profound and complex changes in the domestic and international situation, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core, with great political courage and strong responsibility, has raised the banner and directed itself, strategized, scientifically grasped the general development trend of today's world and contemporary China, taken charge of great struggles, great projects, great undertakings and great dreams, coordinated the promotion of the overall layout of "five-in-one" economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction, coordinated the construction of a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, comprehensively deepened reform, and comprehensively governed the country according to law. Comprehensively administering the party's "four comprehensive" strategic layout, adhering to the general tone of seeking progress while maintaining stability, and comprehensively opening up a new situation in the cause of the party and the country. In the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping made a comprehensive summary of the development of the cause of the Party and the country since the 18th National Congress, which was summarized as follows: "historic achievements" and "historic changes."

What can be called historic achievements and historic transformations are extraordinary achievements that are extremely far-reaching, extremely unusual and able to leave a mark on history. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, it is precisely such achievements and changes that socialism with Chinese characteristics has presented a new historical atmosphere.

Let's start with historic achievements. In the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping summarized the important progress made by our country in the past five years into ten aspects: major achievements in economic construction, major breakthroughs in comprehensively deepening reform, major strides in the construction of democracy and rule of law, major progress in ideological and cultural construction, continuous improvement of people's lives, remarkable results in the construction of ecological civilization, new progress in strengthening the army and rejuvenating the army, new progress in the work of Hong Kong, Macao and Taiwan, a comprehensive diplomatic layout has been carried out in depth, and outstanding results have been achieved in comprehensively administering the party strictly. These major achievements cover reform, development, stability, internal and foreign affairs, national defense, and the management of the party and the country, and the military. At the same time, these major achievements are groundbreaking and have had and will continue to have a profound impact on China's social development. For example, it creatively proposed to let the poor people and poor areas join the whole country in a well-off society in all respects, adhere to targeted poverty alleviation and targeted poverty alleviation, and launch an unprecedented anti-poverty struggle in human history, so that more than 93 million poor people can be stably lifted out of poverty, and the problem of absolute poverty that has plagued the Chinese nation for thousands of years is about to come to a historic end.

Another example is the creation of socialism with characteristics, which creatively proposes that green waters and green mountains are gold and silver mountains, and promotes the dual promotion of economic development and ecological protection. Another example is creatively proposing to promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind and the construction of the "Belt and Road", contributing Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to global governance. This series of all-round and groundbreaking historical achievements has pushed China closer to the center of the world stage than ever before, to the goal of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation as never before, and to have unprecedented ability and confidence to achieve this goal.

Let's look at historic change. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, the CPC Central Committee has put forward a series of new concepts, ideas, and strategies, introduced a series of major principles and policies, introduced a series of major measures, promoted a series of major tasks, solved many difficult problems that have been wanted to be solved for a long time but have not been solved, accomplished many major things that were wanted to be done in the past but failed to accomplish, and promoted historic changes in the cause of the party and the country. These historic changes are profound and fundamental, and can only be achieved with extraordinary efforts and extraordinary efforts. For example, in the face of the continuous downturn in the world economy and the new situation of the "three-phase superposition" of the domestic economy, the Party Central Committee made a major conclusion that China's economic development has entered the new normal, put forward a new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, accelerated the improvement of the institutional mechanism that makes the market play a decisive role in resource allocation and better play the role of the government, unswervingly promotes supply-side structural reform, and promotes the construction of the "Belt and Road", the coordinated development of Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei, the development of the Yangtze River Economic Belt, the construction of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area, the integrated development of the Yangtze River Delta, Major strategies such as ecological protection and high-quality development of the Yellow River Basin have promoted profound changes in development concepts and development methods. Another example is that in the face of the reform period and the deep-water area, we resolutely promote the comprehensive deepening of reform, wade into deep water, break through dangerous shoals, gnaw hard bones, and promote breakthroughs in reform in important fields and key links with unusual intensity, breadth and depth. Another example is to make a historic decision to comprehensively deepen the reform of national defense and the armed forces in view of the many institutional obstacles and structural contradictions existing in national defense and army building, as well as unhealthy tendencies and corruption within the armed forces, persist in reforming and strengthening the armed forces, and promote the revolutionary reshaping of the organizational structure and force system of the people's army. In particular, in the face of the major risks and tests facing the party and the conspicuous problems existing within the party, we should comprehensively strengthen the party's leadership and party building, resolutely change the lax and soft situation of managing the party and the party, eliminate serious hidden dangers within the party and the state with tenacious will and quality, uphold discipline and fight corruption, eliminate serious hidden dangers within the party and the state, update the weather in the party's political life, markedly improve the party's political ecology, markedly enhance the party's creativity, cohesion, and combat effectiveness, consolidate the party's unity and unity, markedly improve the relationship between the party and the masses, and become stronger in the revolutionary forging, and so on.

The changes promoted by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping at the core are of pioneering significance in the history of the Party, the development of New China and the development of the Chinese nation.

The historic achievements and changes since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China have covered all aspects from productive forces to production relations, from the economic base to the superstructure, promoted the realization of the historic development and historic leap of society as a whole, greatly changed the face of the Communist Party of China, the country, the people, the army, and the Chinese nation, and pushed socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new historical stage.

### 3. Historic transformation

Historic achievements and changes will inevitably have a historic impact and bring about historic changes. The most concentrated influence and change is to promote the historical transformation of the main contradictions in our society. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China made the statement that "the main contradiction in our society has been transformed into a contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development."<sup>1</sup> This major political judgment embodies the dialectical unity of contradictory movements and social changes, is a profound reflection of historic achievements and historic changes, and is a major achievement of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

Contradiction is the source and driving force of the development of things. Human society is constantly moving forward in the course of the movement of basic social contradictions. Every era has major social contradictions corresponding to the nature and situation of basic social contradictions. The Communist Party of China attaches importance to the use of the Marxist theory of contradiction to analyze and judge the main contradictions in society, and to determine the party's guiding principles, strategic objectives and policy measures accordingly, so as to promote the continuous development of Chinese society. After the establishment of the basic socialist system, the Eighth National Congress of the Communist Party of China in 1956 clearly put forward and explained for the first time the main contradictions in our society:

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 9.

"The main contradiction in our country is already the contradiction between the people's demand for the establishment of an advanced industrial country and the reality of a backward agricultural country, and the contradiction between the people's need for rapid economic and cultural development and the current situation in which the economy and culture cannot meet the people's needs."<sup>1</sup> After careful discussion and study in the early stage of reform and opening up, the "Resolution on Several Historical Issues Concerning the Party Since the Founding of the People's Republic of China" adopted by the Sixth Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee further defined the main contradiction in our society: "After the socialist transformation is basically completed, the main contradiction to be resolved in our country is the contradiction between the people's growing material and cultural needs and backward social production."<sup>2</sup> This judgment, on the one hand, inherits the judgment of the Eighth National Congress of the Communist Party of China, and on the other hand, it is more in line with China's reality, and it is more concise and clear, and was confirmed at the 12th National Congress of the Communist Party of China. From then until the 19th Party Congress, our Party has continued to use this judgment and expression.

Marxism tells us that the transformation of the main contradictions in society is closely related to the level of development of the social productive forces and is not subject to human will. From the perspective of social production, after more than 40 years of rapid development through reform and opening up, fundamental changes have taken place in the long-standing shortage economy and insufficient supply; China has steadily solved the problem of food and clothing for more than one billion people; the people's living standards have generally achieved moderate prosperity, and a moderately prosperous society will soon be built in an all-round way; China's social development has taken on new phased characteristics; and generally speaking, "backward social production" no longer conforms to today's reality. From the perspective of social needs, with the significant improvement of people's living standards, people's needs are not only becoming more and more extensive and diversified, but also the level of demand has been significantly improved, and has been upgraded from the need for material culture to the need for a better life. People not only put forward higher requirements for material and cultural living standards, but also put forward more and higher requirements for democracy, rule of law, fairness, justice, security and the environment, and pursued all-round human development and social progress. Talking only about "growing material and cultural needs" can no longer truly reflect the changing needs of the masses. It should also be noted that after long-term efforts, the level of China's social productive forces has been markedly improved on the whole, and the social productive capacity has entered the forefront of the world in many aspects. Unbalanced development mainly refers to the lack of balance in all aspects of development in various regions and fields; insufficient development mainly refers to the problem of underdevelopment in some regions, some fields and some aspects, and the task of development is still arduous.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Founding of the People's Republic of China, Volume 9, Central Literature Publishing House, 1994 edition, page 341.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Third Plenary Session (Part II), People's Publishing House, 1982 edition, p. 839.

Unbalanced and inadequate development has become a major constraint to meeting people's growing needs for a better life. Therefore, the previous expression of the main contradictions in domestic society can no longer reflect the changed objective reality, and it is necessary to make new judgments and expressions based on the historical orientation of China's social development. The 19th CPC National Congress comprehensively analyzed various situations and clearly pointed out that "the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development" is the main contradiction in Chinese society in the new era, which is scientifically correct and very timely.

The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era is precisely the phased presentation of the changes in the main contradictions in society. It must be pointed out that the historical change of the main contradictions in society has not changed the basic national conditions of our country, which is still in the initial stage of socialism. The new era still belongs to one stage of development of the primary stage of socialism, and not to other stages of development external to the primary stage of socialism. In the new era, although profound changes have taken place in our development stage and development tasks, work objects and working conditions, China's level of development is still relatively low on the whole compared with the developed countries in the world, and its per capita GDP still ranks seventy or eighty in the world. We must firmly adhere to the party's basic theory, basic line, and basic strategy in the initial stage of socialism, firmly grasp the development of the party, the most important task of ruling and rejuvenating the country, and must always grasp the central task of economic construction without wavering; this is the fundamental stand that we must adhere to in grasping the main contradictions in domestic society in the new era.

## Section 2: The scientific connotation of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era

The major political judgment of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era has rich and profound ideological connotations. In the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping revealed the scientific connotation of the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics from five dimensions, comprehensively described the beautiful prospects of China in the new era from the perspective of the continuity of history and reality, the combination of goals and approaches, and the connection between domestic and international, and clarified the direction of efforts to win new victories of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

1. The new era is an era of carrying forward the past and forging ahead into the future, and continuing to win the great victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics under new historical conditions

The connotation of the new era of this dimension focuses on the historical development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, bases itself on today's reality, plans the positioning of future development, clarifies the historical context of the new era, and highlights the temporal and spatial nature of the new era.

Only by not forgetting the original and absorbing foreign countries can we face the future. Socialism with Chinese characteristics, bearing the ideals and explorations of generations of Chinese communists, the long-cherished wishes and expectations of countless people with lofty ideals, and embodying the struggle and sacrifice of hundreds of millions of people, is the inevitable choice of China's social development since modern times, and is the fundamental achievement of the party and the people in the past hundred years of struggle, creation and accumulation. China's historical development since 1840 has proved that only socialism and no other doctrine can save China; the historical practice of China's socialist construction proves that China cannot develop China by following the old road of closure and rigidity; the historical lessons of the drastic changes in Eastern Europe and the disintegration of the Soviet Union prove that taking the evil road of changing the banner will inevitably bury socialism; and the latest practice since the beginning of reform and opening up has proved that only socialism with Chinese characteristics can develop China. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, our party has led the people to adhere to their own path and adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, which has greatly stimulated the creativity of the Chinese people, greatly liberated and developed the social productive forces, greatly enhanced social vitality, and enabled China to develop and grow at an unprecedented speed.

In the new era, adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is the fundamental guarantee for us to open up the future. To promote the development of the cause of the party and the country, we must persistently hold high the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Our generation has inherited the cause of our predecessors, carried out today's struggle, and opened up tomorrow's road."<sup>1</sup> To continue to win the great victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics under the new historical conditions, we must, as always, closely focus on the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, which is the party's entire theory and practice, unite and lead the people to strive to achieve the "two centenary goals", so that socialism can show strong vitality in China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Press 2017 edition, p. 57.



## 2. the new era is an era of decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way

The connotation of the new era of this dimension, focusing on the national development goals, based on the existing foundation of struggle, makes strategic planning for the steps of socialist modernization, clarifies the practical path of the new era, and highlights the practical nature of the new era.

In the early days of reform and opening up, our party made strategic arrangements for China's socialist modernization drive and put forward a "three-step" development strategy, in which the two goals of solving the problem of food and clothing for the people and achieving a moderately prosperous level of living standards on the whole have been achieved ahead of schedule. On this basis, our party has put forward the "two centenary goals." Focusing on the realization of the "two centenary goals", the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China made strategic arrangements for economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction, ecological civilization construction and party building, which are highly strategic, forward-looking and targeted.

Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way by 2020 is a solemn commitment made by the Communist Party of China to the people and to history. According to the actual completion of various indicators of economic and social development, we are fully confident that we will build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way by 2020 and achieve the first centenary goal as scheduled. From the 19th CPC National Congress to the 20th CPC National Congress, it is a period of historical convergence of the "two centenary goals." We must not only build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and achieve the first centenary goal, but also take advantage of the situation to start a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way. Building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way is the goal of the second centenary struggle. From the perspective of world development history, most of the countries and regions that have achieved modernization have experienced nearly 300 years since the industrial revolution to gradually complete, and China will take 100 years to complete the modernization process that developed countries have gone through for hundreds of years, which is not only extraordinary in speed and scale, but also extraordinary in the breadth, depth and difficulty of change.

Comprehensively analyzing the international and domestic situations and China's development conditions, the 19th CPC National Congress clearly made a new strategic arrangement of "two steps," that is, basically realizing socialist modernization by 2035 and building China into a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious, and beautiful modern socialist power by the middle of this century.

Compared with the requirements of the third step in the original "three-step" strategy, the "two-step" strategic arrangement has a fuller connotation, more comprehensive content and more ambitious goals. What we want to achieve is not modernization in the ordinary sense, but to build a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist power. Comrade Deng Xiaoping once said, "In the end, convincing those who do not believe in socialism depends on our development." If we reach the level of moderate prosperity within this century, we will be able to sober them up a little; by the middle of the next century when we build a moderately developed socialist country, we will be able to convince them further."<sup>1</sup> Comrade Xi Jinping further pointed out: "Big does not equal strong, and weight does not equal strong."<sup>2</sup> If you are strong in all aspects, you are a strong country. The new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics is essentially an era that highlights the superiority of socialism with Chinese characteristics and an era in which China becomes stronger.

### 3. the new era is an era in which the people of all ethnic groups in the country unite and struggle, continuously create a better life, and gradually realize the common prosperity of all the people

The connotation of the new era of this dimension, focusing on the essential requirements of socialism, based on the direction of struggle, makes plans for the future life of the people, clarifies the value orientation of the new era, and highlights the people's nature in the new era.

Socialism is the cause of happiness for the vast majority of people. To build socialism, the fundamental thing is to liberate the productive forces, develop the productive forces, eliminate exploitation, eliminate polarization, and ultimately achieve common prosperity. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that we must always take the realization, safeguarding and development of the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people as the starting point and foothold of all work, and have stressed on many occasions: "The people's yearning for a better life is our goal."<sup>3</sup> The CPC leads the people in revolution, construction, and reform in order to enable the people to live a good life. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, our party regards the continuous creation of a better life and the gradual realization of common prosperity of all the people as the goal and destination of development, embodies the people-centered development thinking, embodies the fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly, and embodies the essential requirements of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 204.

<sup>2</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Scientific and Technological Innovation, Central Literature Press, 2016, p. 26.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature 2014 Edition, p. 70.

After rapid development since the reform and opening up, the living standards of our people have improved markedly and their prosperity has continued to increase. In the new era, on the one hand, the needs of the people are characterized by diversification, multi-level and multi-faceted characteristics, and the people's yearning for a better life is stronger, looking forward to better education, more stable work, more satisfactory income, more reliable social security, higher level of medical and health services, more comfortable living conditions, a more beautiful environment, a richer spiritual and cultural life, and so on. On the other hand, with the continuous expansion of the "cake" of China's economic development, the problem of unfair distribution has gradually become prominent, the gap between income and the level of public services in urban and rural areas is large, and achieving common prosperity and promoting social fairness and justice have become urgent requirements.

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Sharing the fruits of reform and development by the broad masses of the people is the essential requirement of socialism and an important embodiment of our party's fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly."<sup>1</sup> The development we pursue is development that benefits the people, and the prosperity we pursue is the common prosperity of all the people. In the new era, the major task of the Communist Party of China is to focus on solving the needs and expectations of the people, pay more attention to the people's new and diversified needs for a better life, respect the people's status as the main body, respect the people's will, the experience they have created, and the rights they have in their practical activities. The role played by it fully stimulates the creative power hidden in the people, regards the realization of all-round human development as the noble realm of a better life, and better meets the people's growing needs for a better life; pays more attention to enabling all people to share the fruits of economic, political, cultural, social, ecological and other aspects of development, so that the people's sense of gain, happiness and security is more perfect, more sustainable, and more sustainable. More secure; pay more attention to social fairness and justice, unite and lead all the people, and continuously guarantee and improve the people's livelihood with their own hard work and unremitting efforts, so that the results of reform and development can benefit all the people more equitably, so that all the people can enjoy a happier and healthier life, and continue to make real new progress in realizing common prosperity for all the people.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 34-35.

#### 4. the new era is an era in which all the sons and daughters of China work together to realize the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation

The connotation of this dimension of the new era, focusing on the historical mission of the communists, based on unity and struggle, expounds the development vision of the Chinese nation, clarifies the national characteristics of the new era, and highlights the national nature of the new era.

Realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is the greatest dream of the Chinese nation in modern times, and it embodies the long-cherished wish of several generations of Chinese. Once founded, the Communist Party of China has no hesitation in shouldering the historical mission of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. The founding of New China laid a solid foundation for national rejuvenation. The new great revolution of reform and opening up has injected new strong vitality into national rejuvenation, enabled the Chinese nation to gradually realize the great leap from standing up to becoming rich, and laid the basic conditions for becoming strong. Under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, China, the world's largest developing country, has created an earth-shaking development miracle in the history of human social development, and the Chinese nation has radiated new vigor.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, under the strong leadership of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core, the Chinese nation has ushered in a great process of becoming stronger, its comprehensive national strength has been greatly enhanced, the people's living standards have been further improved, and the realization of the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation has become the "greatest common divisor" that inspires the sons and daughters of China at home and abroad. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, we are closer than ever before, more confident and capable of realizing the goal of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

He who travels a hundred miles is half ninety. The great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is by no means easy and can be achieved by banging gongs and drums. To realize the great dream of the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, the party must unite all forces that can be united, mobilize all the enthusiasm that can be aroused, arouse all the spirit and spirit that can be aroused, concentrate on construction, devote oneself to development, and be prepared to make even more arduous and arduous efforts with high fighting spirit and fearless spirit. If the Chinese Communists in the new era lead the Chinese people to continue to take the new Long March, they will certainly be able to achieve the grand goal of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

## 5. the new era is an era in which China is moving closer to the center of the world stage and constantly making greater contributions to mankind

The connotation of the new era of this dimension, focusing on the responsibility of major countries, based on its own development, makes a forward-looking description of China's role in the world, clarifies China's positioning in the world in the new era, and highlights the cosmopolitan nature of the new era.

China is the China of the world, China's development is inseparable from the world, and the development of the world also affects China. In the profound adjustment of the international system and international order, China plays an important role. For a long time in the past, China was not the protagonist of the international community, and China's international influence and role were relatively limited. After long-term efforts, especially the historic achievements made since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China's role as a responsible major country has been fully played and has become the main stabilizer and power source of world economic growth; China actively participates in and leads global governance, and China's initiatives are increasingly translated into international consensus and global actions, especially focusing on jointly building the "Belt and Road", and working with all parties to build a new platform for international cooperation, adding new impetus to the common development of the world. This series of major achievements and measures shows that China is an important player that has attracted global attention, greatly improved its international influence, appeal and shaping power, and has become a leader in globalization, an important promoter of global governance system reform, and an active advocate of a community with a shared future for mankind, and is increasingly approaching the center of the world stage.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The Communist Party of China is a political party that seeks happiness for the Chinese and the people, and it is also a political party that strives for the cause of human progress. The Communist Party of China has always regarded making new and greater contributions to mankind as its mission."<sup>1</sup> In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, in the face of the deep adjustment of the international pattern and international relations, and in the face of the external environment in which local conflicts and turbulence are frequent and mankind needs to cope with many common challenges, we must, on the basis of practicing "internal strength", give full play to the wisdom and talents of the Chinese people, and contribute Chinese wisdom and provide Chinese solutions for the healthy and sustainable development of the international community.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 46.

In the new era, China will unswervingly follow the path of peaceful development, pursue an open strategy of mutual benefit and win-win results, and firmly safeguard multilateralism and the international system with the United Nations at its core. Actively participate in the reform and improvement of the global governance system, unswervingly safeguard an open world economy, and promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind. Strengthen communication, dialogue, coordination and cooperation with major powers, deepen relations with neighboring countries, and expand mutually beneficial cooperation with developing countries. Actively provide more constructive solutions for properly responding to global challenges and resolving regional hotspot issues. We will work hand in hand with other countries and work together to always be a builder of world peace, a contributor to global development and a defender of international order. Historically, China has made outstanding contributions to human civilization. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, China will certainly be able to make new and greater contributions to promoting lasting peace and common development in the world and promoting the prosperity and progress of mankind.

### Section 3: The great significance of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era means that the Chinese nation, which has suffered for a long time in modern times, has ushered in a great leap from standing up, getting rich to becoming strong, and ushered in the bright prospect of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation; it means that scientific socialism has radiated strong vitality in China in the 21st century and held high the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the world; it means that the path, theory, system, and system of socialism with Chinese characteristics have been brought high. The continuous development of culture has expanded the way for developing countries to modernize, provided new choices for countries and nations in the world that want to accelerate development while maintaining their independence, and contributed Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to solving human problems."<sup>1</sup> These "three meanings" profoundly expound the historical, political and world significance of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing Edition, p. 819.

## 1. The great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation ushered in bright prospects

Peoples that have created glorious things better understand the meaning of rejuvenation; nations that have experienced hardship are more eager to realize rejuvenation. With a long history of more than 5,000 years and splendid culture, the Chinese nation has been at the forefront of the world for a long time and has made indelible contributions to the progress of human civilization. From the end of the Ming Dynasty and the beginning of the Qing Dynasty, due to the ideological imprisonment of the ruling class and the obstacles of the feudal social system, the Chinese nation gradually entered the modern history of humiliation after experiencing the prosperity of the Kang Qian era. After the Opium War, China gradually degenerated into a semi-colonial and semi-feudal society. From the cry of the enlightenment thinkers to "master and destroy with great skill", to the attempts of bourgeois reformists to restore and change the law, to the Xinhai Revolution of the bourgeois revolutionaries to overthrow the feudal monarchy, it has not changed the miserable situation of modern China. It was not until Marxism spread to China and the Communist Party of China entered the historical stage that the Chinese nation truly found the backbone of seeking national independence, the people's liberation, the country's prosperity and strength, and the people's happiness, and that the Chinese people changed from passive to active spiritually.

The birth of the Communist Party of China was a "groundbreaking event" and a major milestone in realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation in modern times, profoundly changing the direction and course of the development of the Chinese nation after modern times, and profoundly changing the future and destiny of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation. Just as Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: After the birth of the Communist Party of China, it united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to complete the new democratic revolution and socialist revolution through protracted struggle, established the People's Republic of China, established the basic socialist system, and realized the great leap of the Chinese nation from being the sick man of East Asia to standing up; since the reform and opening up, the Chinese Communists have united and led the people to carry out the new great practice of building socialism with Chinese characteristics, enabling China to catch up with the times in great strides and realize the great leap of the Chinese nation from standing up to becoming rich; since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Chinese Communists have united and led the people in great struggles, building great projects, advancing great causes, realizing great dreams, promoting all-round and groundbreaking historical achievements in the cause of the party and the country, and taking place profound and fundamental historical changes, the Chinese nation has ushered in a great leap from prosperity to strength.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "Speech at the Commemoration of the 200th Anniversary of Marx's Birth," *People's Daily*, May 5, 2018.

The successive three great leaps are the "trilogy" in which the Communist Party of China has led the people to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation in modern times.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, opening a new chapter in the third part of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and ushering in a new journey for the Chinese nation from prosperity to strength. The new era is a fundamental leap period to realize national rejuvenation from quantitative change to qualitative change, and a period of historical transformation of China from a big country to a strong country. This leap is not simply the improvement of the total amount of material wealth, but also the process of overall leap in comprehensive strength such as economic strength, national governance ability, cultural soft power, social development level, ecological civilization level, military and national defense strength, scientific and technological innovation ability, international discourse power and world influence, political party leadership ability and governance level, and it is also the decisive process of the final realization of the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Focusing on achieving the goal of the new era, under the guidance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, the Chinese Communists have systematically planned, made overall layouts and all-round efforts in various fields such as economy, politics, culture, society, ecological civilization, military national defense, motherland reunification, diplomacy and party building, and promoted the comprehensive national strength and international influence, and the Chinese nation has taken more solid steps on the journey of becoming stronger. By the middle of the 21st century, China will be built into a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country in an all-round way, material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilizations will leap forward in an all-round way, becoming a country with leading comprehensive national strength and international influence, and the Chinese nation will stand tall among the nations of the world with a more lofty attitude.

## 2. scientific socialism has radiated strong vitality in China in the 21st century

Faced with the low tide of world socialism in the late 80s and early 90s of the 20th century, Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "I firmly believe that there will be more people in favor of Marxism in the world, because Marxism is a science."<sup>1</sup> "As long as socialism in China does not fall, socialism will always stand in the world."<sup>2</sup> Under the strong leadership of the Communist Party of China, China, which accounts for one-fifth of the world's population, has not only adhered to and defended the largest position of socialism in the East and retained the inextinguishable fire of socialism, but also successfully explored a path of socialist development with Chinese characteristics by integrating the basic tenets of Marxism with China's specific conditions.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 382.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 346.



Instead of collapsing, China's comprehensive national strength is increasing day by day, and "the scenery is unique here." The "Chinese miracle" created by more than 40 years of reform and opening up has revitalized socialism, which was once at a low point, and revived people's confidence in socialism around the world.

After the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping made a systematic review of the 500-year historical development of world socialism in the "Speech at the Seminar for New Members and Alternate Members of the Central Committee to Study and Implement the Spirit of the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China", dividing the historical process of socialist thought from its inception to the present into six time periods: the emergence and development of utopian socialism; Engels founded the theoretical system of scientific socialism; Lenin led the October Revolution to victory and practiced socialism; the Soviet model gradually took shape; the Communist Party of China explored and practiced socialism after the founding of New China; and our party made the historic decision to carry out reform and opening up, and created and developed socialism with Chinese characteristics. The division of these six stages clearly defines the position of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the history of socialist development, and also clarifies the relationship between socialism with Chinese characteristics and scientific socialism that is consistent, consistent and advancing with the times.

In the new era, the world is undergoing major changes unprecedented in a century, China is experiencing extremely extensive and profound social changes in history, and is also carrying out the most grand and unique practical innovation in human history. Comrade Xi Jinping demanded that the Chinese Communists neither follow the old road of closure and rigidity, nor take the evil path of changing the banner, but also adhere to the basic principles of scientific socialism and give it distinctive Chinese characteristics according to the conditions of the times, enrich and develop the connotation of the times of socialism with Chinese characteristics from both theoretical and practical aspects, and open up a new journey of socialism with Chinese characteristics from a big country to a strong country. The basic principles and value pursuit of scientific socialism have been fully demonstrated in China in the new era, and the theoretical vitality and institutional superiority of scientific socialism have been best proved in China in the new era. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The success of scientific socialism in China is of great significance to Marxism and scientific socialism and to world socialism."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, vol. 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 70.

At the meeting to commemorate the 200th anniversary of Marx's birth, Comrade Xi Jinping further emphasized: "In the new era, the communists who rush to the country should still study Marx, study and practice Marxism, constantly draw scientific wisdom and theoretical strength from it, and adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era with more determination, confidence and wisdom in the overall layout and coordinated advancement of the five-in-one and the four comprehensive" strategic layout, so as to ensure that the giant ship of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation always moves forward along the correct course and breaks the waves."<sup>1</sup>

### 3. socialism with Chinese characteristics has broadened the way for developing countries to move toward modernization

Generally speaking, modernization is the process of transforming from traditional agricultural society to modern industrial society, and it is a process of achieving a leap in the development of human civilization. The historical process of modernization began in Europe and the United States. Therefore, relying on their own hegemony in discourse, Western countries have tried their best to advocate the "universality" of their modernization path, and "Western-centrist" people even describe the modernization path that began in Europe as the only successful and correct development path, believing that modernization is equal to Westernization. Affected by this, after World War II, many developing countries either passively or actively chose the path of Western modernization. Decades on, however, most countries that had pinned their hopes on the Western model of modernization have not ushered in the bright prospects they wanted. On the contrary, many countries have developed slowly, with many difficulties, and some even have constant wars and people's livelihoods, and even if a few countries have achieved modernization with Western assistance, they have to sacrifice political autonomy and bury hidden dangers for long-term development. In recent years, due to the intensification of the inherent contradictions in capitalist society, some old capitalist countries have also suffered from development crises repeatedly, and the authority and influence of Western modernization theory have continued to decline.

In sharp contrast, under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, New China has embarked on a development path of independently exploring socialist modernization. In 1959, Comrade Mao Zedong for the first time put forward the development goals of building socialist industrial modernization, agricultural modernization, scientific and cultural modernization, and national defense modernization. In 1964, Comrade Zhou Enlai followed Comrade Mao Zedong's instructions and wrote it into the "Government Work Report" of the First Session of the Third National People's Congress.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 Edition, p. 428.

Under the guidance of this goal, China has gradually established an independent and relatively complete industrial system and national economic system, laying an important material foundation for modernization. After the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee, Comrade Deng Xiaoping clearly put forward the idea of "Chinese-style modernization" and opened the relay exploration of building socialist modernization with Chinese characteristics. The 13th CPC National Congress made a "three-step" strategic arrangement for socialist modernization. The 18th CPC National Congress further put forward the "two centenary goals." While making decisions and arrangements for the first centenary goal of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, the 19th CPC National Congress made two-stage strategic arrangements for the second centenary goal, thus opening a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way.

In terms of guiding ideology, the path of socialist modernization with Chinese characteristics adheres to the guiding position of Marxism and the practice of using the developing Marxism to guide practice, which not only adheres to the ideological and theoretical advancement with the times, but also ensures a high degree of ideological unity between the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country; in the political aspect, it adheres to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics, adheres to the party's leadership, the people are masters of their own country, and The organic unity of governing the country according to law, centering on adhering to and improving the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, continuously promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity; in the economic aspect, unswervingly taking development as the primary task of the party's governance and rejuvenating the country, implementing the basic economic system with public ownership as the main body and the common development of various ownership economies, insisting on making the market play a decisive role in the allocation of resources and giving better play to the role of the government, and constantly building a modern economic system, • Promote the realization of high-quality development; in terms of culture, adhere to the direction of progress of advanced socialist culture, adhere to the position of Chinese culture, and develop a national, scientific, and popular socialist culture oriented to modernization, the world and the future; in the social aspect, we always put the interests of the people in the supreme position, persist in ensuring and improving the people's livelihood in the process of development, constantly meet the people's growing needs for a better life, and constantly promote social fairness and justice, so that the people's sense of gain, happiness and security will be more fulfilling and more secure. More sustainable; in terms of ecological civilization, adhere to the principle of giving priority to conservation, protection and natural restoration, form a spatial pattern, industrial structure, production mode and lifestyle that conserve resources and protect the environment, and strive to achieve harmonious coexistence between man and nature. This road of modernization "is not a simple continuation of the master version of China's history and culture, it is not a simple application of the template conceived by the classic writers of Marxism, it is not a reprint of the socialist practice of other countries, nor is it a copy of the modernization development abroad."

<sup>1</sup> Instead, proceeding from China's reality and striving to realize comprehensive modernization, it is the road of seeking modernization independently and self-reliantly. In particular, the path of socialist modernization with Chinese characteristics is a path of seeking modernization through peaceful development, which is fundamentally different from the Western modernization path of accumulating the foundation of modernization by colonial plunder and relying on power politics to engage in development models and value export.

The entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era indicates the historical orientation of China's comprehensive realization of modernization, the degree of modernization will leap from a lower level to a higher level, the scope of modernization will be from some fields and some regions to all fields and all-round coverage, and the connotation of modernization will extend from the material level to the spiritual level and human literacy. Achieving this goal of the times means that the largest developing country, which surpasses the total population of the existing developed countries, will enter the ranks of modernization, and it also means that the world's largest socialist countries will modernize people. The success of socialist modernization with Chinese characteristics has broken the "path dependence" of developing countries on Western modernization, and "China's development has provided successful experience and bright prospects for the vast number of developing countries to modernize, is a powerful force for promoting world peace and development, and is a major contribution of the Chinese nation to the progress of human civilization."<sup>2</sup>

## Section 4: The new era is the age of strivers

Socialism with Chinese characteristics is a struggle, and adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era also requires struggle. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed, "We must persist in taking the people's yearning for a better life as our goal, always make unremitting efforts for the people, work together with the people, and earnestly implement the spirit of struggle in the whole process of carrying out great struggles, building great projects, advancing great causes, and realizing great dreams, forming a vivid situation of competing and fighting in unity."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 344.

<sup>2</sup> "Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress" (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 204th Edition, p. 729.

<sup>3</sup> "Xi Jinping's Exposition on "Not Forgetting the Original Intention, Remembering the Mission", Party Building Reading, Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 242.

## 1. always maintain the fundamental motivation to never forget the original intention and keep the mission in mind

To carry out great struggles, build great projects, advance great causes, and realize great dreams require long-term struggle, relay struggle, and common struggle. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "The original aspiration and mission of the Chinese communists is to seek happiness for the Chinese people and rejuvenation for the Chinese nation. This original intention and mission is the fundamental motive force that motivates the Chinese Communists to keep advancing."<sup>1</sup>

The original aspiration and mission of the Chinese Communists are determined by the nature of the Party and the Party's guiding ideology. The original intention is the purpose of the original departure, that is, why the departure, the goal to be achieved or the task to be completed. Marx and Engels pointed out in the Communist Manifesto: "The movement of the proletariat is an independent movement of the overwhelming majority of the people, for the interests of the overwhelming majority of the people."<sup>2</sup> Communists "have no interests different from those of the proletariat as a whole."<sup>3</sup> That is to say, the original intention and mission of Marxism and the communists under its guidance is to seek the interests of the overwhelming majority of the people. After its founding, the Communist Party of China took Marxism as its guiding ideology, regarded the realization of communism as the party's highest ideal and ultimate goal, shouldered the historical mission of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation without hesitation, united and led the people in an arduous struggle, and composed a magnificent epic that swallowed mountains and rivers.

As a political organization, the original mission of the Communist Party of China was to follow the path guided by Marxism and seek the independence and prosperity of the country and the freedom and happiness of the people. We reaffirm the original intention of the Party and the historical mission of the Chinese Communists in the new era, that is, to enable more than 90 million Party members to continuously gain strong primary impetus from it. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "Our party requires all comrades in the party not to forget their original intention and remember their mission, that is, to remind all comrades in the party that the party's original intention and mission are the concentrated embodiment of the party's nature, purpose, ideals and beliefs, and fighting goals, and the longer they stay in power, the more they must not lose the true colors of a Marxist political party, the more they must not forget the party's original intention and mission, and the more they must not lose their self-revolutionary spirit."

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 411.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 413.

<sup>1</sup> No matter how far we go and how great our achievements are, we must not forget the road we came from, the history written by the Party with blood, sweat, and tears, why we set out, the goal of achieving the prosperity and strength of the country, the rejuvenation of the people, and the lofty ideal of communism. Whether in the revolutionary years of the blazing flames, or in the years of vigorous construction and the period of magnificent reform, the unchanged original intention is the spiritual code of uniting and condensing the communists to continue their struggle, and is the key to the success of the party from victory to new victory.

In July 2013, Comrade Xi Jinping went to Xibaipo, Hebei Province to conduct research, revisit the "two musts" and issue a call to the whole party to "catch up for the exam"; only one week after the conclusion of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping led the new Politburo Standing Committee members to Shanghai and Jiaxing, Zhejiang Province to visit the site of the First Congress and the Red Boat on Nanhu, review the history of the founding of the Party, relive the oath of the People's Party, and declare the firm political conviction of the new leadership of the Party Central Committee. According to the arrangements of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, starting from June 2019, the theme education of "not forgetting the original intention and remembering the mission" will be carried out in two batches from top to bottom in the whole party, promoting the whole party to firmly grasp the general requirements of "keeping the original intention, undertaking the mission, finding the gaps, and grasping implementation", and strive to achieve the specific goals of gaining gains in theoretical study, being baptized ideologically and politically, daring to take responsibility for entrepreneurship, serving the people and solving problems, and setting an example of honesty and integrity. The Fourth Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee proposed that we should establish a system that does not forget our original aspiration and keep our mission firmly in mind, and regard not forgetting our original aspiration and keeping our mission in mind as an eternal task for strengthening party building and a lifelong task for all party members and cadres. All this is to tell the world that the Communist Party of China will always maintain the spirit of struggle in the revolution and always maintain its heart for the people. This fully demonstrates the firm determination of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core to never forget its original intention and strive forever.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Ideals and beliefs are the spiritual calcium of communists, and if the ideals and beliefs are firm, the bones will be hard; without ideals and beliefs, or if the ideals and beliefs are not firm, the spirit will be 'calcium deficient', and you will get: cartilage."<sup>2</sup> He also emphasized:

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Remember the original mission, promote self-revolution", Qiushi, No. 15, 2019.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 339.

"History and practice have repeatedly proved that if a political party has lofty ideals and lofty pursuits, it will be strong, invincible, and invincible, and will be able to withstand setbacks again and again and rise up again and again; if a cadre has firm ideals and convictions, he will be able to stand tall and broad-minded, and he will be able to adhere to the correct political orientation and be as calm as a mountain without moving through storms."<sup>1</sup> The ideals and beliefs of the Chinese Communists have never been ethereal, but have always been embodied in their original aspiration and mission of seeking happiness for the Chinese people and rejuvenation for the Chinese nation. We must adhere to the Marxist faith and the lofty ideals of communism, engrave in our hearts the original intention of the Party and the mission of the Party, build a solid foundation of faith, replenish the calcium of the spirit, stabilize the rudder of thinking, always breathe with the people, share a common destiny, and link hearts with each other, always regard the people's yearning for a better life as the goal of struggle, and continue to forge ahead courageously towards the grand goal of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation with an unremitting mental state and an indomitable attitude of struggle.

## 2. Always maintain the spirit of having the courage to assume responsibilities and dare to struggle

The eyes are difficult and difficult, and the jade is successful. The more difficulties and contradictions stand in the way, the more it is necessary to rely on responsibility and struggle to overcome difficulties and keep innovation upright. Strong historical responsibility and fighting spirit are the spiritual characteristics of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has taken the lead in setting an example, clearly pointing out the ruling philosophy of "serving the people and shouldering the responsibilities that should be shouldered", clearly putting forward that "I will live up to the people without myself", and repeatedly emphasizing that "the ministry must have a responsibility, how much responsibility can do how much cause, how much responsibility can make great achievements", and "push forward socialism with Chinese characteristics with a new mental state and fighting attitude."

Our party is a party that is born, grows and grows in the course of struggle. After nearly a century of struggle, the spirit of struggle has long been in the bloodline of the Party and runs through all periods of revolution, construction and reform. Today, the Chinese nation is in a crucial period of great rejuvenation, reform and development are in an important stage of overcoming difficulties and conquering difficulties, and the road ahead cannot be smooth. This is the time when the struggle is most needed, and it is also the time when the responsibility is most tested. In the face of the new mission, we must fully understand the protracted, complex, and arduous nature of the struggle, and we must carry forward the spirit of having the courage to assume responsibilities and dare to struggle.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 519.

Only by taking the posture of opening up roads every mountain and building bridges when encountering water, and with abundant and tenacious fighting spirit, can we cross the "snowy mountains" and "meadows" on the new Long March, conquer the "Loushan Pass" and "Laozikou" on the new journey, and constantly win new victories in the great struggle of the new era.

Big things are difficult to bear, and major risks especially need to be fought for. At present, the international situation is turbulent, the surrounding environment is complex and sensitive, the tasks of reform, development and stability are heavy, various problems are superimposed, various contradictions are prominent, various ideologies and interests are stirring each other, and various risks and challenges are coming one after another. In particular, it is necessary to dare to take responsibility and fight well in preventing and resolving major risks. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must always maintain a high degree of vigilance, both the black swan 'incident' and the gray rhino 'incident; we must have the first hand to prevent risks, and we must also have the high tactics to deal with and resolve risk challenges; we must fight a prepared battle to prevent and resist risks, and we must also fight a strategic initiative battle to turn dangers into opportunities and turn crises into opportunities."<sup>1</sup> We must fully understand the importance and urgency of preventing and defusing major risks, maintain the spirit of struggle, strengthen the experience of struggle, constantly undergo strict ideological tempering, political experience, and practical tempering, do not bow our heads in the face of difficulties, do not shrink in the face of challenges, do not trade principles, and constantly improve our fighting skills in the midst of strong winds and waves and in the tempering of practice. At the same time, we should dare to show our sword in the face of major right and wrong, dare to face difficulties in the face of contradictions, dare to stand up in the face of crises, dare to stand up in the face of crises, and dare to resolutely struggle in the face of unhealthy tendencies and evil tendencies, so as to "step on the bumpy road and fight against hardships and dangers again." 's tenacious will, coping well with every major risk and challenge, and pushing forward the cause of the party and the people without hesitation.

### 3. Always maintain the practical character of integrating knowledge with action and doing solid work

Struggle cannot be shouted in vain, it must be translated into action. The unity of knowledge and action and real work are the distinctive qualities of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that "empty talk misleads the country, practical work rejuvenates the country"; he stressed that the Communist Party of China started and developed by seeking truth from facts, and that adhering to seeking truth from facts can rejuvenate the party and the country, and violating the truth from facts will lead to misleading the party and the country;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 219-220.



He stressed that it is necessary to persist in the persistence of the political elite, establish that success does not have to be carried out in my thinking, and work through to the end with a blueprint, and do not engage in things that are divorced from reality, divorced from the masses, and labored and the people and hurt money. At the opening ceremony of the 2019 spring semester training course for young cadres at the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration), Comrade Xi Jinping encouraged the vast number of cadres, especially young cadres, to adhere to the unity of knowledge and action, really grasp practical work, be actors who start and do, talk about things without sitting and talking, be strugglers who overcome difficulties, and bodhisattvas who should not be afraid of wind and rain. These important expositions are earnest, demonstrating Comrade Xi Jinping's political character of integrating knowledge with action and doing real work.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the reason why the party and the country have been able to establish a new wind and open up a new situation is closely related to Comrade Xi Jinping's efforts to integrate knowledge with action and really do solid work. As the leader of the party and the state, Comrade Xi Jinping not only pays attention to systematic thinking and scientific planning on internal and foreign affairs, national defense, party and military management, world development and global governance, but also pays attention to promoting practical innovation with theoretical innovation, testing and promoting theoretical innovation with practical innovation, and comprehensively promoting the "four greats", so as to promote historic achievements and changes in the development of the cause of the party and the country.

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Great dreams are not something that can be waited for and shouted about, but spelled out and done." "We must show the tenacity to grasp the traces of iron and step on stones, grasp the implementation with the spirit of nails, and ensure that all major reform measures are implemented."<sup>1</sup> Today, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has become the guiding ideology of the Party and the country, and the goal and task of winning the victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way have been clear, and the most important thing is "action, action, and action" and "implementation, implementation, and implementation." It is necessary to establish a correct outlook on undertakings and political achievements, do practical things without seeking false prestige, seek practical results and do not do false merits, do more work to lay a foundation and benefit the long term, let it become a common practice to bury one's head in hard work and really grasp solid work, and strive to create achievements that can stand the test of practice, the people, and history.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 Edition, p738, 736.

## Chapter II: Better Upholding and Developing Socialism with Chinese Characteristics

Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is the theme of all the party's theories and practices since the reform and opening up, and it is also the theme of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. To realize the party's historical mission in the new era, we must strengthen the "four self-confidences", unify the "four greatness", make overall plans to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one", coordinate the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, and realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation in the great practice of better adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics.

### Section 1: Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is the fundamental direction of development and progress in contemporary China

Socialism with Chinese characteristics is the only way to develop China, stabilize China, make China prosperous and prosperous, and also the only way to realize China's modernization. Only by unswervingly adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics can we smoothly advance the process of China's socialist modernization and constantly open up a new horizon for China's development and progress.

#### 1. Socialism with Chinese characteristics is the only way to realize socialist modernization

Modernization is the product of the development of human social productive forces to a certain stage, an important symbol of the progress of human social civilization, the embodiment of the law of the development of human society, and a worldwide historical process.

Modernization originated in Western capitalist countries and was led by the West for a long time, mainly due to the development of Western capitalism and the rise of the bourgeoisie, which gradually dominated and dominated the life of the state and society. It is precisely because the modernization process of human society first began in Western countries, so in a long historical period, modernization through the development of capitalism has become the choice of many countries.

The changes of times and history have made China choose a path of modernization different from that of Western countries, that is, to achieve modernization by taking the socialist road on the basis of the new democratic revolution. Before the Opium War, there was already a budding capitalism within Chinese society, and the invasion of Western powers pulled China into the world capitalist system and accelerated the growth of capitalist factors. However, the human invasion of Western countries is to extract resources by colonizing China, not to promote China's modernization. In the face of the country's internal and external troubles, some benevolent people who advocate following the example of Western countries have made attempts at modernization, but they have not succeeded. When China's social development was in a difficult situation, the victory of socialism in Russia made the advanced elements who were struggling to find a way out for China see new hope and gradually decided that China's way out could only be socialism. After the founding of the Communist Party of China, it clearly put forward the idea of using socialism to save China, and explored and opened up a revolutionary road from new democracy to socialism. After the establishment of the socialist system, the Party finally created socialism with Chinese characteristics after long-term exploration, making the development of socialism in China and China's modernization a closer integration cause and integration process.

The modernization goal of China's socialist development and the socialist nature of China's modernization have always been the political principles adhered to by the Communist Party of China. Comrade Mao Zedong clearly pointed out: "China's future is to engage in socialism" and "only socialism can save China."<sup>1</sup> He repeatedly stressed that one of the arduous historical tasks shouldered by the Communist Party of China is to build poor and backward China into a prosperous and powerful modern country. "We will definitely build a socialist country with modern industry, modern agriculture, and modern science and culture."

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, Volume 7, People's Publishing House, 1999, p. 124, 214.

<sup>1</sup> Later, the Communist Party of China clearly put forward the goal and strategic concept of realizing the "four modernizations", led the people to gradually establish an independent and relatively complete industrial system and national economic system, laid an important material and technological foundation for promoting China's modernization, and accumulated valuable experience in socialist construction.

In the process of creating socialism with Chinese characteristics, the Communist Party of China has continuously deepened its understanding and grasp of the law of organic unity between socialist development and modernization based on the new changes in the world and national conditions. Comrade Deng Xiaoping stressed: "Whether or not we can realize the four modernizations determines the fate of our country and the destiny of our nation."<sup>2</sup> "If you do not take the socialist road, China will have no future."<sup>3</sup> Only by "building our country into a modern and powerful socialist country can we more effectively consolidate the socialist system."<sup>4</sup> Comrade Jiang Zemin proposed: "In the new situation, we attach greater importance to taking advantage of favorable international conditions and persistently opening up to the outside world in order to accelerate China's socialist modernization drive."<sup>5</sup> Comrade Hu Jintao stressed: "China's socialist modernization drive is carried out on the basis of China's specific national conditions and under the conditions of the development of the times, which requires us to profoundly understand and grasp both the general law of modernization and the general law of socialist modernization, as well as the special law of China's socialist modernization."<sup>6</sup> Socialism with Chinese characteristics is not only a new way for China to adhere to and develop socialism, but also a new way for China to realize modernization. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, the party's national congresses have gradually drawn up a grand blueprint for China's realization of socialist modernization around the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Combining and unifying socialism with modernization is the great practice and great creation of the Communist Party of China in contemporary China and the world today.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 7, People's Publishing House, 1999, p. 268.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 162.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 311.

<sup>4</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 494 edition, p. 86.

<sup>5</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Thirteenth National Congress (middle), People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 616.

<sup>6</sup> "Continue to Explore and Grasp the Law of Socialist Modernization to Better Advance Socialist Modernization," People's Daily, September 10, 2009.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics contains the basic principles of scientific socialism, contains the basic requirements of modernization, and embodies the particularity of China's social development process. The reason why socialism with Chinese characteristics is groundbreaking is that it has always deployed and promoted socialist construction in accordance with the process and goals of China's modernization, and has always planned the consolidation and development of the socialist system in China from the macro process of modernization.

Today's China is approaching the center of the world stage, and has grown from a participant in economic globalization to an important force promoting the development of the world economy, and has changed from a catcher of the trend of the times to a leader of the trend of the times. Socialism with Chinese characteristics has profoundly influenced the world with its own development. Seventy years ago, China was still the object of slaughter, Chinese called the "sick man of East Asia"; 40 years ago, China had not yet got rid of poverty and the people had not yet solved the problem of food and clothing; and now, an increasingly prosperous China is rising, and the Chinese people are entering the world with a new image. The reason for this change boils down to the fact that the Communist Party of China has created, adhered to and developed socialism with Chinese characteristics. As Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly pointed out: "The direction determines the future, and the road determines the destiny." If we want to take our destiny into our own hands, we must have the firmness of unchanging our will and the same way. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, the theme of all our party's theories and practices has been to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics. In China, a large country with a history of more than 5,000 years of civilization and a population of more than 1.3 billion, there is no textbook that can be regarded as the golden rule, and there is no teacher who can command the Chinese people. "The road of socialism with Chinese characteristics is a broad road for contemporary China to make great strides to catch up with the times and lead the development of the times, and we must unswervingly follow it."<sup>1</sup>

## 2. Strengthen self-confidence in the path, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics

Socialism with Chinese characteristics includes four aspects: road, theory, system and culture. The road is the way to realization, theory is the guide to action, system is the fundamental guarantee, and culture is the spiritual force, these four aspects are unified in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 Edition, p 732.

Confidence in the path, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics stems from the great achievements made in the practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics and from the CPC's firm belief in adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "In today's world, if any political party, country or nation can be confident, then the Communist Party of China, the People's Republic of China and the Chinese nation have the most reason to be confident."<sup>1</sup> Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics requires that Communist Party members, especially leading Party cadres, must be confident in their road, theory, system and culture.

Firm confidence in the road is because the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics has led China to achieve world-renowned achievements and opened up broad prospects for promoting China's development and progress. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The path of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the only way to realize China's socialist modernization and create a better life for the people."<sup>2</sup> He also particularly emphasized: "The road determines destiny, how difficult it is to find a right path, we must unswervingly follow it."<sup>3</sup> The historical process of contemporary China has indisputably proved that the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics is plausible, correct and good. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that this path is neither "traditional" nor "foreign", nor "Westernized", but our "original." In the new era, taking the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics has an incomparably broad stage, an incomparably profound historical heritage, and an incomparably strong determination to advance. We can neither follow the old road of closure and rigidity, nor can we follow the evil road of changing the banner and changing the banner, and we must unswervingly follow the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Strengthening theoretical self-confidence is because the theory of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the correct theory to guide the Party and the people to continuously advance along the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics and realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, and it is a scientific theory that stands at the forefront of the times and advances with the times. The theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, composed of Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents", the Scientific Outlook on Development and Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, has written a new chapter in scientific socialism, condensed the wisdom and painstaking efforts of several generations of Chinese communists in uniting and leading the people in unremitting exploration, is the theoretical innovation achievement of the Communist Party of China in promoting the Sinicization of Marxism since the reform and opening up, is the most valuable political and spiritual wealth of the party, and is the common ideological basis for the people of all ethnic groups in the country to unite and struggle.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 75.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 36.

This theoretical system, rooted in the great practice of reform, opening up and socialist modernization, conforms to the fundamental interests of the Chinese people, conforms to the development trend of today's world and contemporary China, and has a distinct scientific, people's nature, practical and open nature. In contemporary China, adhering to Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is truly adhering to Marxism.

Strengthening institutional self-confidence is because the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is an advanced system with distinctive Chinese characteristics, obvious institutional advantages and strong self-improvement ability. The socialist system with Chinese characteristics includes a series of fundamental systems, including the fundamental system of upholding the party's centralized and unified leadership and comprehensive leadership, the fundamental system of the people's congress system, the fundamental system of upholding the guiding position of Marxism in the ideological field, and the fundamental system of upholding the party's absolute leadership over the people's army; the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the system of regional ethnic autonomy, the system of grassroots mass autonomy, the public ownership as the mainstay, the common development of various ownership systems, and distribution according to work as the mainstay. A variety of distribution methods coexist, a series of basic systems such as the socialist market economic system, and important systems such as legal rule of law, administrative management, cultural construction, people's livelihood security, social governance, ecological civilization, "one country, two systems", foreign affairs, party and state supervision, etc. This complete set of systems and governance systems is guided by Marxism, rooted in the Chinese land, has a profound Chinese cultural foundation, and is deeply supported by the people, a system and governance system with strong vitality and great superiority, and a system and governance system that can promote the progress and development of a country with a population of 1.4 billion and ensure that the Chinese nation, which has a civilization history of more than 5,000 years, can achieve the "two centenary goals" and then achieve great rejuvenation. Of course, with the continuous development of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, we must also continue to promote institutional innovation to ensure that by the 100th anniversary of the founding of our party, obvious results will be achieved in making all aspects of the system more mature and more stereotyped; by 2035, all aspects of the system will be more perfect, and the national governance system and governance capacity will be basically modernized; by the 100th anniversary of the founding of New China, the national governance system and governance capacity will be fully modernized, so that the socialist system with Chinese characteristics will be more consolidated and its superiority will be fully displayed.

Strengthening cultural self-confidence is because socialist culture with Chinese characteristics is based on the excellent traditional Chinese culture, guided by Marxism, with socialist core values as the soul, and advanced socialist culture as the main content and essential characteristics, which is the fundamental spiritual driving force for enhancing China's self-confidence and realizing the "two centenary goals."

To strengthen cultural self-confidence is to have a high degree of cultural identification with socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Cultural self-confidence is a more basic, broader and deeper self-confidence."<sup>1</sup> Only by strengthening cultural self-confidence can we make the road, theory, and system more firm. We should run cultural self-confidence through the whole process of road expansion, theoretical development and institutional improvement, and give full play to the soulful guiding and promoting role of socialist culture with Chinese characteristics in the practice of socialist construction with Chinese characteristics.

### 3. Constantly write a new chapter in socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era

Socialism with Chinese characteristics is a pioneering cause and a historical process that is constantly advancing. The Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Xi Jinping, have promoted historic achievements and changes in the cause of the Party and the country with great political courage and strong responsibility, so that China's development will stand at a new historical starting point. China's economy has sustained and stable growth, the economic structure has been gradually optimized and upgraded; the coordination of development has been continuously enhanced, the development gap between urban and rural areas and between regions has gradually narrowed; the people's living standards and quality of life have been significantly improved, and the people's sense of gain has been increasing; the comprehensive national strength has been continuously enhanced, and the international influence has been significantly enhanced. Socialism with Chinese characteristics has shown more and more beautiful development prospects, which has not only won unprecedented international status and influence for China, but also won unprecedented dignity and self-confidence for the Chinese people. This is an important embodiment of writing a new chapter of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and it is also a firm foundation for striving for good governance and forging ahead into the future.

Practice is unfolding at a new stage of development, and theoretical innovation must inevitably be elevated to a new level. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core focuses on the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, has a profound insight into the trend of the times with the strategic thinking of Marxist politicians, answers the new issues facing the development of the times and practice with superb political wisdom and a high degree of theoretical consciousness, puts forward a series of innovative new concepts, ideas and strategies, and creates Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, which provides us with guiding ideology and a program of action for understanding and solving new contradictions and problems in practice.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 Edition, page 349.



Adhering to the guidance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is an inevitable requirement for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, and also an inevitable requirement for writing a new chapter of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics is still in practice. Whether it is now or in the future, there are many new questions that need to be explored and answered, requiring us to make unremitting efforts in "keeping the right and making new things." Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Our understanding of socialism and our grasp of the law of socialism with Chinese characteristics have reached an unprecedented new height, which is beyond doubt. At the same time, we must also realize that socialism in our country is still in its initial stage, we are still facing many problems that have not yet been clarified and difficult problems to be solved, and there is no doubt that our understanding and handling of many major issues are still in the process of deepening."<sup>1</sup> We must think about and grasp a series of major issues facing the country's future development with a broader vision and a longer-term perspective, improve our ability of strategic thinking, more accurately grasp the changing characteristics of the initial stage of socialism in our country, continuously enhance the principled, systematic, foreseeable and creative nature of our work, improve the development strategy and various policies, do a good job in reform, development and stability, and push forward socialism with Chinese characteristics with a new mental state and fighting attitude.

## Section 2: The Core Essence of Socialism with Chinese Characteristics in the New Era

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China used "eight clear" and "Fourteen Persistences" to systematically summarize and deeply explain Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. The "Eight Clarifications" are the action guide for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, focusing on answering what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to adhere to and develop; the "Fourteen Persistences" is the program of action for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, focusing on answering how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014, p. 114.

The "eight clear" and "Fourteen Persistences" constitute the core essence of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

1. The "Eight Clear" are the action guide for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics

The core content of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the "Eight Clear". It is clear that the general task of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is to realize socialist modernization and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, and on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, we should take two steps to build a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country by the middle of this century; make it clear that the main contradiction in our society in the new era is the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development. Common prosperity for all the people; it is clear that the overall layout of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics is "five-in-one" and the strategic layout is "four comprehensive", emphasizing firm confidence in the road, theory, system and culture; it is clear that the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform is to improve and develop the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity; it is clear that the overall goal of comprehensively promoting the rule of law is to build a socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics. Build a socialist country ruled by law; make it clear that the party's goal of strengthening the army in the new era is to build a force that obeys the party's command and can win battles. It is clear that the people's army with excellent work style will build the people's army into a world-class army; it is clear that the diplomacy of major countries with Chinese characteristics should promote the construction of a new type of international relations and promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind; it is clear that the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the party is the highest political leading force, put forward the general requirements for party building in the new era, and highlight the important position of political construction in party building.

These "Eight Definites" scientifically expounded a series of basic issues on adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and provided ideological guidance for the party and the people to better adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics.

First, it clarifies the general task for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. This general task is to realize socialist modernization and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and build a modern and powerful socialist country.

Realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and building a modern and powerful socialist country is a great goal established by the Communist Party of China. The Chinese Communists have worked hard for a century and successfully opened up a path of socialist modernization with Chinese characteristics that is different from the West. Standing at a new height in the overall development of the cause of the party and the country, the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China formulated a grand blueprint for building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, and made brand-new strategic arrangements for realizing the "two centenary goals": by 2020, build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way; basically realize socialist modernization by 2035; and build a modern and powerful socialist country by 2050 to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. This strategic arrangement is not only inspiring and urging people to forge ahead, but also scientific, rational and in line with reality, and is a powerful spiritual driving force that inspires the Chinese communists and Chinese people to continue to struggle for a better life.

Second, for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, it has clarified the fundamental strategic arrangements formulated for accomplishing the overall tasks and achieving the overall goals, which must be based on an accurate judgment of the reality of national development and the main contradictions in our society. The report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly pointed out that the main contradiction in our society has been transformed into a contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development. This transformation of the main contradiction in society reflects the tremendous progress of China's social development and the new changes in stages of development, reflects the new requirements for the development of the cause of the party and the country, and is an important basis for determining the strategic deployment of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Only by clarifying this main contradiction can we grasp the overall situation of development and clarify the direction, tasks and key points of development.

Third, it has clarified a new layout for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Based on the new historical orientation, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era clearly points out that the overall layout for promoting the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era is "five-in-one" and the strategic layout is "four comprehensive." The overall layout of the "five-in-one" clarifies the overall deployment for promoting national modernization in the new era, that is, the comprehensive advancement of economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction. The "four comprehensive" strategic layout has clarified the important aspects that have overall driving and leading significance in the development of the party and the country in the new era, that is, comprehensively building a moderately prosperous society, comprehensively deepening reform, comprehensively governing the country according to law, and comprehensively administering the party strictly. Promote the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics in an overall layout, and take the strategic layout as the strategic goal and strategic measure of all work;

It has established the strategic direction, key areas and main targets for the development of the cause of the party and the country in the new era, made top-level design and strategic deployment for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, and also provided more scientific layout arrangements.

Fourth, it has defined new requirements for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. The Third Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China proposed that the overall goal of China's comprehensive deepening reform is to improve and develop the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. This is to continuously promote the maturity and improvement of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics by comprehensively deepening reform, improving the system and updating the institutional mechanism, and promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. On the basis of summing up China's historical experience, especially the lessons learned from the governance of socialist countries, Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "the national governance system and governance capacity are a concentrated embodiment of a country's system and system implementation ability."<sup>1</sup> This important thesis shows that through comprehensively deepening reform, improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, it provides an endogenous driving force and institutional guarantee for promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and promotes the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity to prepare supporting forces and innovative ways for the improvement and development of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics.

Fifth, it clarifies the guarantee of the rule of law for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era clearly states that the overall goal of comprehensively promoting the rule of law is to build a socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics and a socialist country under the rule of law. "Law is the most important instrument of governance, and the rule of law is an important support for the national governance system and governance capacity. Comprehensively promoting the rule of law is the fundamental requirement for solving a series of major problems facing the development of the cause of the party and the country, liberating and enhancing social vitality, promoting social fairness and justice, maintaining social harmony and stability, and ensuring the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country. In order to promote the sustained and healthy development of China's economy and society and continuously open up broader development prospects for the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, we must comprehensively promote the construction of a socialist country under the rule of law and provide institutionalized solutions to these problems from the perspective of the rule of law."<sup>2</sup> Governing the country according to law in an all-round way is a strategy for governing the country, an essential requirement and important guarantee for socialism with Chinese characteristics, and a profound revolution in national governance.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 91.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "Explanation on the Decision of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China on Several Major Issues on Comprehensively Promoting the Rule of Law," People's Daily, October 29, 2014.

We must adhere to the path of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics, improve the socialist legal system with Chinese characteristics with the Constitution as the core, and better play the role of the rule of law as a guarantee for solidifying the foundation, stabilizing expectations, and benefiting the long term.

Sixth, it has clarified the strategic support for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. A strong country must strengthen its military. Comprehensively promoting the modernization of national defense and the armed forces, adhering to the road of strengthening the military with Chinese characteristics, and building a world-class army are not only important tasks for the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, but also an important foundation and strategic support for safeguarding the stable development of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics. In the face of the requirements of the times to strengthen the country and the army, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has formed Xi Jinping's thinking on strengthening the army around the major issue of "what kind of strong people's army to build in the new era and how to build a strong people's army." Xi Jinping Thought on Strengthening the Army profoundly grasps the new requirements for national defense and army building put forward by the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and clarifies that the party's goal of strengthening the army in the new era is to build a people's army that obeys the command of the party, can win battles and has excellent work style, and builds the people's army into a world-class army, providing a strong guarantee for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

Seventh, it clarifies the diplomatic goal for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has focused on the development trend of human society, continued to answer major issues related to national development and the future and destiny of mankind, such as "what kind of world to build and how to build this world", put forward the proposition of building a community with a shared future for mankind, and included "persisting in promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind" into the basic strategy of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, so as to achieve the common development of human society. Continued prosperity has charted a new blueprint and provided Chinese solutions to the complex problems facing humanity. Promoting the construction of a new type of international relations with win-win cooperation as the core is a strategic choice made by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core based on the development trend of the times and the fundamental interests of our country, which has created a more favorable international environment for maintaining and extending the period of important strategic opportunities for China's development, and for promoting the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics and realizing the goal of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Eighth, it has clearly defined the political guarantee for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, and the environment facing China's development has become more complicated.

New changes have taken place in the international balance of forces, domestic reform has entered the deep water area, and the task of comprehensively administering the party strictly remains arduous. It is clear that the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, which provides a strong political guarantee for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics under complex historical conditions. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, based on historical experience and practical requirements, further clearly emphasizes the party's core position and leading role in the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and provides a fundamental political guarantee for the new victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

Based on the new historical orientation and historical starting point, these "Eight Definites" form a systematic, complete and logical scientific theoretical system, which concentrates on the new development of Marxism in contemporary China and the 21st century.

2. the "Fourteen Persistences" are a program of action for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics

Proceeding from the practical requirements of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, the "Fourteen Persistences" constitute the basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, profoundly answer the major practical topic of "how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics" in the new era, and are the concrete manifestation of the "eight clear" ideological propositions in practice. It is organically unified with the "eight clear" and together constitute an important part of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era.

The "Fourteen Persistences" include: upholding the party's leadership over all work, adhering to the people-centered, persisting in comprehensively deepening reform, adhering to the new development concept, adhering to the people as masters of the country, adhering to the comprehensive rule of law, adhering to the socialist core value system, adhering to ensuring and improving people's livelihood in the process of development, adhering to the harmonious coexistence between man and nature, adhering to the overall concept of national security, upholding the party's absolute leadership over the people's army, adhering to the "two countries, two systems" and promoting the reunification of the motherland, persisting in promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind, and adhering to comprehensively and strictly administering the party. As the basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, these "14 persistences" are a summary and enhancement of our party's basic program, basic experience and basic requirements since the reform and opening up.

First, the "Fourteen Persistences" answer the question of "who will lead" in the practice of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. A prominent feature of the superiority of China's political system is that it has always adhered to the party's leadership position of controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties. During the period of socialist construction, Comrade Mao Zedong stressed: "In the seven aspects of industry, agriculture, commerce, study, soldiers, government, and the party, the party leads everything."<sup>1</sup> In the new era, Comrade Xi Jinping further proposed on the basis of summing up the historical experience of socialism: "Adhere to the party's leadership over all work."<sup>2</sup> It clearly answers the question of "who will lead" in adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the choice of history and the choice of the people; it is the fundamental and lifeline of the country and the nation, and the interests and happiness of the people of the whole country are related. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, in the face of the new situation and new tasks, ensuring the party's role as the core of leadership has put forward new requirements for the party's self-building, and "persisting in comprehensively and strictly administering the party" has become the top priority. Such a basic strategy is based on the party's scientific analysis of its own development experience, correct judgment of the international and domestic situation, and always adhere to the original mission. The Communist Party of China is China's supreme political leading force, and all fields and aspects must consciously uphold the party's leadership, including "upholding the party's absolute leadership over the people's army." Only by always adhering to the party's leadership over all work can we achieve ideological unity, political unity and unity in action of the whole party and society at a higher level, further enhance the party's creativity, cohesion and combat effectiveness, and ensure the success of socialist construction.

Second, the "Fourteen Persistences" clarify the question of "for whom and on whom" in the practice of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. The great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics has the most profound and extensive people's character. First, it has always regarded the realization, safeguarding and development of the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people as its value orientation; second, it has always taken the broadest masses of the people as the main body of practice. Important strategies such as "persisting in taking the people as the center", "upholding the people as masters of the country" and "persisting in ensuring and improving people's livelihood in the course of development" show that building socialism with Chinese characteristics is an unprecedented great cause, and it is necessary to closely unite and highly unite the strength of the whole nation and fight unremittingly for it with one heart and one mind.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Documents of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China, vol. 50, People's Publishing House, 2013, p. 203.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 16.

Comrade Mao Zedong once said: "The concept of the people has different contents in different countries and in different historical periods of each country."<sup>1</sup> In contemporary China, all classes, strata and social forces that support, support and participate in the construction of socialism with Chinese characteristics belong to the category of the people and are all relying forces for the cause of building socialism with Chinese characteristics. Our party must ensure that development is for the people, development depends on the people, and the fruits of development are shared by the people.

Third, the "Fourteen Persistences" respond to the question of "how to promote development" in the practice of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. As socialism with Chinese characteristics enters a new era, major changes have taken place in the main contradictions in our society, but the basic national conditions of our country in the initial stage of socialism have not changed, and our international status as the world's largest developing country has not changed. This determines that development remains the foundation and key to solving all our problems. "How to promote development" has become a question that the ruling party must answer. "Persisting in comprehensively deepening reform" shows that reform and opening up is a key measure and powerful driving force for promoting the realization of the "two centenary goals" and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. In contemporary China, only reform and opening up can develop China, socialism and Marxism. "Reform and opening up is only carried out when it is not completed."<sup>2</sup> Adhering to the new development concept of "innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing" reflects the party's new thinking and understanding of the law of economic and social development, points out China's development ideas, development directions, and development focuses, and is an important follow-up that must be adhered to for a long time in building socialism with Chinese characteristics. "Adhering to the harmonious coexistence of man and nature" reflects a major change in China's development mode, further enriches the connotation of development, expands the vision of development, clarifies new requirements for development, and has both theoretical innovation and practical breakthroughs.

Fourth, the "Fourteen Persistences" respond to the question of "how to provide effective guarantees" in the practice of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Under the new historical conditions, to smoothly advance the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, it is necessary to provide effective guarantees and favorable conditions. "Adhering to the socialist core value system" fully embodies the powerful goal and guiding role of the lofty ideal of communism and the common ideal of socialism with Chinese characteristics in promoting the development of the cause, and embodies the profound nourishing role of China's excellent traditional culture and the spiritual guiding role of revolutionary culture and advanced socialist culture.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 7, People's Publishing House, 1999 edition, p. 205.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 69.



"Adhering to the comprehensive rule of law" is the essential requirement for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, an inevitable requirement for realizing the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and is related to the party's ruling and rejuvenating the country, the people's happiness and well-being, and the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country. "Adhering to the overall concept of national security" and taking national security as an important cornerstone of stability and stability are in the fundamental interests of the people of all ethnic groups in the country, and it will ensure the smooth progress of the practical process of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. "Persistently promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind" has drawn a blueprint for human society to achieve common development, sustained prosperity and long-term stability, pointed out the way forward, and also created a good external environment for China's development. "Upholding one country, two systems" and promoting the reunification of the motherland" is an inevitable requirement for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and is also where the fundamental interests of the Chinese nation lie.

The "14 Adherence Principles" basic strategy makes top-level designs for economic, political, cultural, social, ecological and rule of law, national security, national defense and the military, "one country, two systems" and the motherland's reunification, united front, diplomacy, party building and other aspects, clarifies the major policies for the development of various undertakings in the new era, points out the goals, paths and methods for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and is the "road map" for realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation .

### **Section 3: Realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation on the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics**

The Communist Party of China is the vanguard of the Chinese working class, as well as the vanguard of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation. The Party takes the realization of socialism and communism as its goal and undertakes the historical mission of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics epitomizes the organic combination of realizing socialism and communism and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. To realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation on the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, generations of Chinese communists need to lead the people to continue to struggle.

## 1. Realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is the historical mission of the Chinese Communists

Leading the Chinese nation toward rejuvenation is not only the historical mission entrusted to the Chinese Communists by the development of China's modern history, but also the conscious choice and initiative of the Chinese Communists. Since its birth, the Communist Party of China has regarded seeking happiness for the Chinese people and rejuvenation for the Chinese nation as its original aspiration and mission. The nature, ideals and purposes of the Party doom it to take the realization of national independence and the prosperity and strength of the country as her own responsibility, to devote all her wisdom and painstaking efforts to the realization of national rejuvenation, and to the fact that she must closely unite and rely on the broadest masses of the people and gain from them the tremendous strength to promote historical progress.

In order to realize the historical mission of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, whether it is weak or strong, whether in good times or bad, the Communist Party of China has never changed its original intention and unswervingly determined, dared to overcome any difficulties, is willing to make any sacrifice, has the courage to correct any mistakes, unites and leads the Chinese people to carry out the new democratic revolution, socialist revolution, socialist construction, reform and opening up, and the Chinese nation has ushered in a great leap from standing up, getting rich to becoming strong. Facts have eloquently proved that it is precisely under the leadership of the Communist Party of China that the Chinese nation has completely shaken off the miserable situation of being slaughtered by others, and that the Chinese people have completely bid farewell to the weak state of poverty and backwardness; in contemporary China, only the Communist Party of China and no other political force can lead the Chinese people to realize the great historical cause of national rejuvenation.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has taken over the baton of history, united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one" and the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, promoted the historic achievements and changes in the cause of the party and the country, entered a new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and entered the decisive stage of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation ushered in unprecedented bright prospects. At the same time, China's reform into the "deep water area" is faced with "hard bones" that are difficult to gnaw; development has entered a period of concave contradictions between people, and various risks and tests are intertwined and superimposed. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "What we are now in is a time when the boat is wandering more urgently, and the road to the middle of the mountain is steeper, and it is a time when it is more and more difficult to advance, more and more dangerous, and if you do not advance, you must retreat, you must enter."

<sup>1</sup> At this critical historical juncture, only the Communist Party of China can play its role as the "backbone" ideologically and politically, maintain the political determination not to follow the old road and not to take the evil road, unite the invincible and majestic strength of the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, and continue to forge ahead courageously towards the goal of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

## 2. the essence of the Chinese dream is national prosperity and strength, national rejuvenation and people's happiness

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "Realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is the greatest dream of the Chinese nation in modern times."<sup>2</sup> This great dream, with profound historical accumulation and rich ideological connotation, embodies the long-cherished wishes of several generations of Chinese, embodies the overall interests of the Chinese nation and the Chinese people, and is the common aspiration of every Chinese sons and daughters. In November 2012, when Comrade Xi Jinping led all the comrades of the Standing Committee of the 18th Politburo and the Secretariat of the CPC Central Committee to visit the exhibition "The Road to Rejuvenation", he first proposed the concept of the Chinese Dream. In March 2013, in his speech at the first session of the 12th National People's Congress, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To realize the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is to realize the prosperity and strength of the country, national rejuvenation and people's happiness, which not only deeply embodies the ideals of today's Chinese, but also deeply reflects the glorious tradition of our ancestors in their unremitting pursuit of progress",<sup>3</sup> further clarifying the basic connotation of the Chinese dream.

The most distinctive feature of the Chinese dream is that it closely links the destinies of the country, the nation and the people, and integrates the pursuit of the country, the yearning of the nation and the expectations of the people. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "History tells us that everyone's future and destiny are closely linked to the future and destiny of the country and the nation. If the country is good and the nation is good, everyone will be good."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 524.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 11.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 234.

<sup>4</sup> "Xi Jinping's Exposition on the Chinese Dream of Realizing the Great Rejuvenation of the Chinese Nation", Central Literature Press, 2013, p. 3-4.

From the national level, the Chinese dream is the dream of a strong country, and it is necessary to completely shake off the country's poverty and weakness and build a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way; from the national level, the Chinese dream is the dream of rejuvenation, to completely shake off backwardness, so that the Chinese nation can stand stronger and more on its own feet among the nations of the world and make greater contributions to the noble cause of pursuing peace and progress of mankind; from the people's level, the Chinese dream is the dream of prosperity, and it is necessary to completely shake off poverty and strive to live a better life.

The Chinese dream is the dream of the country and the nation, but in the final analysis, it is the dream of the people. The people are the main body of the Chinese Dream, the creators and enjoyers of the Chinese Dream. The deepest foundation of the Chinese dream lies in the hearts of the Chinese people, and we must rely closely on the people to realize it. The realization of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is not the dream of any one person or part of the people, but the common pursuit of all Chinese people; the realization of the Chinese dream is not the achievement of any one person or part of the people, but the benefit of all the people. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that all people who are interested in this great cause can make great achievements, and should "consciously integrate life ideals and family happiness into the great cause of national prosperity and national rejuvenation, and closely link personal dreams with Chinese dreams."<sup>1</sup> Everyone is a participant and writer of the Chinese Dream, and enjoys the opportunity to shine in life; everyone's continuous efforts towards the dream are also a force for realizing the great Chinese Dream.

The dreams of the Chinese people are closely related to the dreams of the people of all countries. The Chinese dream is a dream of peace, development, cooperation and win-win results. In the process of realizing the Chinese dream, China will work with other countries to promote the people of all countries to better realize their dreams. The realization of the Chinese Dream is inseparable from a peaceful international environment and a stable international order, as well as the understanding, support and assistance of the people of all countries. In the process of realizing the Chinese Dream, "we will unswervingly follow the path of peaceful development, unswervingly pursue a mutually beneficial and win-win opening strategy, not only devote ourselves to China's own development, but also emphasize our responsibility and contribution to the world; not only benefit the Chinese people, but also benefit the people of the world."<sup>2</sup> China's development is the growth of the world peace force and the positive energy of friendship. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out:

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping's Exposition on the Chinese Dream of Realizing the Great Rejuvenation of the Chinese Nation", Central Literature Publishing House, 2013, p. 15-16.

<sup>2</sup> "Xi Jinping's Excerpt on the Chinese Dream of Realizing the Great Rejuvenation of the Chinese Nation", Central Literature Press, 2013, p. 70.

"China's development will surely be embedded in the trend of world development, and will also inject more vitality and bring more opportunities for the common development of all countries in the world."<sup>1</sup> History will prove that the realization of the Chinese dream brings to the world opportunities rather than threats, peace rather than turmoil, and progress rather than retrogression.

### 3. to realize the Chinese dream, we must adhere to the Chinese path, carry forward the Chinese spirit, and unite China's strength

In his speech at the first session of the 12th National People's Congress, Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that to realize the Chinese dream, we must take the road of China as a country, carry forward the Chinese spirit, and unite China's strength.

The Chinese road is the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics. History and reality tell us that the road determines destiny, and it is extremely difficult to find a correct path. Since the reform and opening up, the Communist Party of China has summed up historical experience, made continuous arduous explorations, and finally found the correct path to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, which is the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The path of socialism with Chinese characteristics is to base on the basic national conditions under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, take economic construction as the center, adhere to the four basic principles, adhere to reform and opening up, liberate and develop social productive forces, build a socialist market economy, socialist democratic politics, advanced socialist culture, socialist harmonious society and socialist ecological civilization, promote all-round human development, gradually realize common prosperity for all the people, and build a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country. The connotation and orientation of this road are completely consistent and highly unified with the grand goal of realizing national rejuvenation. Practice has also fully proved that this is a bright road suited to China's national conditions and guiding China's development and progress, and is of decisive significance to realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. This road has enabled the Chinese nation to make great strides to catch up with the advancing trend of the times and enabled the Chinese people and the Chinese nation to make more and more contributions to world peace and development.

The Chinese spirit is the national spirit with patriotism as the core and the spirit of the times with reform and innovation as the core. People cannot stand without spirit, and the spirit of the country is not strong.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "Jointly Advocating Openness, Inclusiveness and Promoting Peaceful Development - Speech at the City of London Dinner", People's Publishing House, 2015 edition, p. 7.

The Chinese spirit is the soul of rejuvenating the country and the soul of strengthening the country that condenses the strength of the Chinese nation. The great national spirit is fostered, inherited and developed by the Chinese people in their long-term struggle, and its core is patriotism, the main content of which is unity and unity, peace-loving, industriousness and courage, and unremitting self-improvement, which is embodied in the spirit of great creation, great struggle, great unity and great dream. It is precisely with the great national spirit that the Chinese nation has created and developed the splendid traditional Chinese culture and provided a strong spiritual impetus for China's development and the progress of human civilization. The timeless great national spirit is the foundation for strengthening the "four self-confidences" and the fundamental force for China's march forward. Since the reform and opening up, the Party has injected a new connotation of the times into the Chinese spirit in the innovative practice of leading the people, which is the spirit of the times with reform and innovation as the core. The opening up of the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the formation of the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the continuous improvement of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and the continuous development of socialist culture with Chinese characteristics shine everywhere with the light of the spirit of the times. The spirit of reform and innovation of the times has become the most important character of socialism with Chinese characteristics and the foundation of the vigorous vitality of socialism with Chinese characteristics. On the new journey of realizing the Chinese dream, only by vigorously carrying forward the great national spirit and the spirit of the times, making the Chinese spirit an internal spiritual support for promoting social development and progress, and becoming a spiritual bond to strengthen the unity and struggle of the people of the whole country and a spiritual driving force for unceasing self-improvement, can we compose a wonderful movement of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

China's strength is the strength of the great unity of the Chinese people of all ethnic groups. Among them, the Communist Party of China is the core force. Without the leadership of the Communist Party, an advanced Marxist political party, the Chinese people of all ethnic groups would have no "backbone" and would find it difficult to form cohesion. To pool China's strength, we must, under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, consolidate and develop the broadest patriotic united front, unite all forces that can be united, mobilize all positive factors that can be mobilized, fully stimulate everyone's enterprising spirit and creativity, and fully mobilize the initiative and creativity of all social strata and social groups. The masses of the people are the main force, and China's strength is fundamentally the strength of the people of all ethnic groups in China to unite and struggle, and the strength of the 1.4 billion Chinese to think and work hard in one place. The people's yearning for a better life, their desire for brilliant opportunities in life, and their pursuit of making their dreams come true contain endless potential for struggle and creative vitality. The strength of the Chinese people to realize their dreams will be incomparably strong, and everyone's efforts to realize their dreams will have broad space, and the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation will certainly be realized.

## Section 4: Take charge of the "four greatness", make overall plans to promote the "five-in-one" overall layout, and coordinate the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout

To better adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, we must take charge of the "four greatness", make overall plans to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one", and coordinate the promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, which is the overall plan of the Communist Party of China to promote the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics and the top-level design of the party to realize socialist modernization.

### 1. the "four greatness" are closely linked, interconnected and interact

The proposal of the "four greatness" as a whole is a major theoretical innovation, which clarifies the party's general strategy for governing the country in the new era and the general blueprint for leading the overall situation, embodies the high degree of unity of the goal of struggle, the path to realization, and the driving force for progress, embodies the high degree of unity of historical inheritance, practical tasks, and future direction, embodies the high degree of unity of the party's future and destiny, the country's future and destiny, and the nation's future destiny, and profoundly answers what is the party's historical mission in the new era. The major theoretical and practical issue of how to realize the party's historical mission in the new era has brought the party's understanding of its own historical mission to a new height.

Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "The great struggle, the great project, the great cause, and the great dream are closely linked, interconnected and interacting, and the decisive role is the new great project of party building."<sup>1</sup> This is of crucial significance for the correct understanding of the "Four Greats."

The "four greatness" are an organic and unified whole.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People, 2017 Edition, p. 14.

Great dreams guide the correct direction and provide the course for great struggles, great projects, and great causes; great struggles show the spirit of responsibility and provide traction for great projects, great causes, and great dreams; great projects forge leading forces and provide a strong guarantee for great struggles, great causes, and great dreams; and great causes declare the banner of the road and open up a path of advance for great struggles, great projects, and great dreams. The "Four Greats" epitomize the new concepts, ideas and strategies of the Party Central Committee in governing the country with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, highlight the historical mission and grand goal of the Communist Party of China under the new historical conditions, and form the overall framework of the Party Central Committee's governance of the country. The historic changes in the party and the country were achieved precisely under the correct leadership of the Communist Party of China in the great struggle with many new historical characteristics, were guaranteed by the new great project of party building, advanced in the direction of the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and were inspired by the dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Great projects play a decisive role in the "four greats." To administer the country, we must first administer the party, and we must administer the party strictly; this is the profound conclusion drawn by the CPC in its own construction. Deepening the people's promotion of the new great project of party building is an inevitable requirement for maintaining the party's advanced nature and purity, for improving the party's ruling ability and level, and for ensuring the party's comprehensive leadership. The reason why the great project plays a decisive role is because the Communist Party of China is the leading body of the great cause, the great struggle and the great dream: advancing the great cause cannot be separated from the party, the strong core of leadership; the party, the backbone of the people of the whole country, cannot be separated from the party as the backbone of the people of the whole country to carry out the great struggle; and the realization of the great dream is even more inseparable from the party, the vanguard that will always walk in the forefront of the times. The iron must be its own. In order to unite and lead the people in waging great struggles, advancing great causes, and realizing great dreams, the party must unswervingly uphold and improve the party's leadership, unswervingly promote the comprehensive and strict management of the party, and build the party into a stronger and more powerful party. As long as the party builds itself well and strongly, it will certainly be able to lead the ship carrying the great dream of the Chinese nation to travel steadily and far.

## 2. make overall plans to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one"

The overall layout of the "five-in-one" economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction involves all links of productive forces and production relations, economic foundation and superstructure



Penetrating all aspects of socialist modernization is a scientific summary of the CPC's practical experience in socialist construction.

The overall layout of the "five-in-one" is a major achievement of the party's deepening understanding of the law governing socialist construction. Before the victory of the Chinese revolution, Comrade Mao Zedong proposed that the new country and society we want to build must not only have a new politics and a new economy, but also a new culture. After the founding of New China, the party united and led the people to carry out the comprehensive construction of socialism and carried out profound explorations on the layout and construction methods of socialist construction. In the new period of reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping, on the basis of summing up the experience of socialist construction, put forward the idea of taking economic construction as the center and promoting all-round social development and all-round progress. In accordance with this important thought of Comrade Deng Xiaoping, the Sixth Plenary Session of the 12th CPC Central Committee put forward for the first time the concept of "the overall layout of socialist modernization" and preliminarily established the overall layout of China's socialist modernization construction, namely: "With economic construction as the center, unswervingly carry out economic structural reform, unswervingly carry out political structural reform, unswervingly strengthen the building of spiritual civilization, and make these aspects cooperate and promote each other."<sup>1</sup> Economy, politics and culture have become important contents of building socialism with Chinese characteristics. The 15th and 16th National Congresses of the Communist Party of China further clarified the goals and requirements for the comprehensive economic, political and cultural construction and all-round development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and deepened the understanding of the overall layout. After the 16th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party put forward the task of social construction, so that the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics has developed more clearly from the "trinity" to the "four-in-one." The 17th National Congress of the Communist Party of China further put forward the construction of ecological civilization as a new requirement for achieving the goal of a moderately prosperous society in all respects. The 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China formally established the overall layout of the "five-in-one" construction of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era profoundly expounds the goals, directions and strategic deployment of the overall layout of the "five-in-one."

——In economic construction, it is to adapt, grasp and lead the new normal of economic development and adhere to the new development concept;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Twelfth National Congress (Part II), People's Publishing House, 1988 edition, p. 1173-1174.

Vigorously promote supply-side structural reform, optimize the economic structure, accelerate the construction of a modern economic system, build an innovative country, promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up, and achieve high-quality economic development.

-- In political construction, it is to adhere to the organic unity of the party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country, and the rule of law, improve the system of the people being the masters of the country, improve the grassroots democratic system, improve the consultative democratic system, consolidate and develop the patriotic united front, improve the supervision system of the party and the state, strengthen the restraint and supervision of power, and comprehensively promote the rule of law.

-- In terms of cultural construction, it means strengthening cultural self-confidence, firmly grasping the leadership of ideological work, cultivating and practicing the core socialist values, strengthening ideological and moral construction, prospering and developing socialist literature and art, promoting the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries, and building a socialist cultural power.

-- In terms of social construction, it is to ensure and improve people's livelihood, solve the most direct and practical interests of the people, strengthen and innovate social governance, create a social governance pattern of joint construction, co-governance and sharing, and effectively safeguard national security.

——In the construction of ecological civilization, it is to promote green development, build a beautiful China, strengthen the construction of ecological civilization system, increase the protection of ecosystems, focus on solving prominent environmental problems, and form a spatial pattern, industrial structure, production mode and lifestyle that conserves resources and protects the environment.

The formation and deepening of the overall layout of the "five-in-one" in the new era reflects the continuous accumulation of experience and sublimation of understanding of the Communist Party of China in promoting socialist construction, and enables us to have a more comprehensive and profound understanding of the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

### 3. Coordinate and promote the "four comprehensive" strategic layout

In the new era, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has formed a "four comprehensive" strategic layout based on the overall situation of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, basing itself on the actual development of contemporary China, and conforming to the new expectations and new requirements of the people.

"The strategic layout of the 'four comprehensives' is derived from the actual needs of China's development and from the ardent expectations of the masses

It is also put forward to promote the resolution of the outstanding contradictions and problems we are facing. "<sup>1</sup> In November 2012, the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed to build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way; In November 2013, the Third Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee proposed to comprehensively deepen reform; in October 2014, the Fourth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee proposed to comprehensively promote the rule of law; in October 2014, Comrade Xi Jinping proposed at the summary meeting of the party's mass line education practice activities to comprehensively promote strict party management; In November 2014, when Comrade Xi Jinping visited Fujian for inspection and investigation, he proposed " In December 2014, during his investigation in Jiangsu, Comrade Xi Jinping raised the "three comprehensives" to "four comprehensives", that is, "coordinating and promoting the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society, comprehensively deepening reform, comprehensively governing the country according to law, comprehensively administering the party strictly, and promoting reform, opening up, and socialist modernization to a new level." Thus, the term "four comprehensives" was formally formed.

The "four comprehensive" strategic layout has expanded the new vision of the development strategy of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, "both strategic goals and strategic measures, each 'comprehensive' has great strategic significance." Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way is our strategic goal, and "comprehensively deepening reform, comprehensively governing the country according to law, and comprehensively administering the party strictly are the three major strategic measures."<sup>2</sup> The "four comprehensive" strategic layout is a strategic layout that organically integrates goals and measures, and a top-level design that connects strategy and tactics, reflecting the party's inheritance and development of strategic thinking, and the organic unity of persistence and innovation.

Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way is a development goal and is in a leading position. On the basis of summing up the achievements and experiences in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, the 18th CPC National Congress clearly put forward the grand goal of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way. To build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, including sustained and healthy economic development, continuous expansion of people's democracy, significant enhancement of cultural soft power, comprehensive improvement of people's living standards, and major progress in the construction of a resource-saving and environment-friendly society. "Achieving this goal is a crucial step in realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation."

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 24.

<sup>2</sup> "Xi Jinping's Exposition on Coordinating and Promoting the "Four Comprehensive" Strategic Layout", Central Literature Press, 2015 edition, page 17.

<sup>1</sup> It represents the pursuit of the Party and the aspirations of the people, strengthens the ideological foundation of the Party and the people in unity and struggle, and plays a strategic leading role in the development of the cause of the Party and the country at the present stage. After the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society is realized as scheduled in 2020, it will be followed by the comprehensive construction of a modern socialist power, which still plays a leading role in the "four comprehensive" strategic layout.

Comprehensively deepening reform is the fundamental driving force. To build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then build a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, we must comprehensively deepen reform, further eliminate all ideological concepts and institutional mechanisms that hinder scientific development, build a systematic, scientific, standardized, and effective institutional system, and make all aspects of the system more mature and more formalized. To realize socialist modernization and realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, the most fundamental and urgent task is still to further liberate and develop the social productive forces. The purpose of comprehensively deepening reform is to let the vitality of all labor, knowledge, technology, management, capital and other elements burst out and let all the sources of creating social wealth fully flow. It is necessary to focus on the reform of the economic system, give play to the leading role of the reform of the economic system, and at the same time adhere to the direction of the reform of the socialist market economy and constantly improve the socialist market economic system.

Comprehensively governing the country according to law is an important guarantee. To build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then build a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, the rule of law is needed as a reliable guarantee. At present, the development of the cause of our party and country is facing many unprecedented contradictions, risks and challenges, and the position and role of governing the country according to law in the overall work of the party and the country are more prominent and more important. Comprehensively promoting the rule of law is a major strategic issue related to our party's ruling and rejuvenating the country, the happiness and well-being of the people, and the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country, and is an important aspect of improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. Only by comprehensively promoting the rule of law can the state and social life operate in an orderly manner, achieve social harmony and stability, and provide a reliable guarantee for socialist modernization.

Strictly administering the party in an all-round way is the fundamental guarantee. Adhering to the party's leadership is the fundamental guarantee for building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way. Under the new historical conditions, the environment in which the Party finds itself and the tasks shouldered by it have undergone great changes;

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Exposition on Coordinating and Promoting the "Four Comprehensive" Strategic Layout", Central Literature Press, 2015 edition, p. 37.

The party's ideological, political, organizational, and work style building is facing many new situations and problems, and the task of strictly administering the party is heavier and more urgent than ever. Only by strengthening the party's self-building, keeping the party's self-building up with the requirements of the times, continuously improving the party's leadership and ruling level, continuously improving its ability to resist corruption, guard against degeneration, and resist risks, and continuously improve its ability to control the overall situation, resolve contradictions, and cope with risks, can the party's ruling foundation and mass foundation be consolidated and the party's role as the core of leadership in the process of realizing socialist modernization and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation be brought into full play.

To coordinate and promote the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, we must firmly grasp the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Coordinating and promoting the four comprehensive and strategic layouts is the strategic choice of the Party Central Committee to promote reform, opening up and socialist modernization, and adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics under the conditions of the new era to promote reform, opening up and socialist modernization, and adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics under the conditions of the new era."<sup>1</sup> Every aspect of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout embodies the inherent requirements for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, and at the same time injects new connotations into adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "Explanation on Several Guidelines for Inner-Party Political Life in the New Situation and Regulations on Intra-Party Supervision of the Communist Party of China," *People's Daily*, November 3, 2016.

## Chapter III: The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China: "The most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Communist Party of China, and the Party is the highest political leading force."<sup>1</sup> This major political thesis has further deepened the understanding of the law of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, enriched and developed the Marxist party theory and state theory, greatly expanded the theoretical and practical vision of party building in the new era, and reached a new height in grasping the party's leadership and the internal relationship between socialism.

### Section 1: The party's leadership is the most fundamental law summary for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics

After the founding of New China, the party made long-term explorations in socialist construction and accumulated rich experience in both positive and negative aspects. After the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee, a path of socialism with Chinese characteristics was embarked upon, and many understandings of regularity were formed. The most fundamental law summed up is that to build socialism, we must adhere to the leadership of the Communist Party of China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 16.

The party's leadership is the embodiment of the common will and fundamental interests of the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, and the fundamental guarantee for the decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and winning the great victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. Without the leadership of the Party, other laws would become water without source and wood without roots.

### 1. The Party's leadership and the socialist cause are intrinsically unified

The Communist Party regards the realization of socialism as its phased goal and the realization of communism as its highest ideal. Marx and Engels repeatedly expounded a truth in the Communist Manifesto: socialized large-scale production will inevitably lead to the transformation of the means of production into social ownership, laying the material foundation for the advent of socialism, and at the same time inevitably lead the proletariat to form its own party organization. The Communist Party, which provided the political guarantee for the advent of socialism. The proletarian party is not only the product of socialized large-scale production, but also a political tool for realizing the social appropriation of the means of production. "At all stages of development of the struggle between the proletariat and the bourgeoisie, the Communists always represent the interests of the movement as a whole."<sup>1</sup> In other words, socialism is the noble cause of the Communist Party, and the establishment, improvement and consolidation of the socialist system cannot be separated from the Communist Party. To establish the Communist Party is to establish and consolidate the socialist system and uphold and develop socialism. Specific to China, socialism can only be led by the Communist Party of China, and the cause led by the Communist Party of China can only be a socialist cause. Upholding the leadership of the Communist Party of China and upholding socialism are organically unified and mutually reinforcing. Without the leadership of the Communist Party, the socialist cause will lose the necessary political, organizational, and ideological guarantees; without socialism, the Communist Party will not be able to practice its original aspiration and mission.

The intrinsic unity of the Communist Party and socialism has been repeatedly proved by the history of socialism in the world. The success of the October Revolution in Russia marked that socialism as an institutional form under the leadership of the Russian Social Democratic Labour Party first broke through the weak links of imperialism and changed from theory to reality. After the Second World War, socialism expanded from one country to many countries, and the Communist Party became the ruling party of these countries, writing a glorious chapter in the history of human civilization. In the eighties and nineties of the 20th century, Eastern Europe underwent drastic changes, the Soviet Union collapsed, the Communist Party lost power, and the socialist system was subverted in these countries.

---

<sup>1</sup> Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 44.

In sharp contrast, in the course of reform and opening up, China has always adhered to and strengthened the party's leadership and always held high the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics, so that scientific socialism has radiated strong vitality in China. Practice shows that the stronger and more effective the leadership of the Communist Party is, the more steadily the socialist cause will advance in the correct direction; the more prosperous the socialist cause is, the more indestructible the leadership of the Communist Party will be.

This logic of governance and history is particularly fully reflected in China. Chinese and foreign history shows that the key to what kind of doctrine a country practices and what kind of road it takes depends on whether this doctrine and this road can solve the historical issues facing the country; whether this doctrine or this road is good or bad depends on the historical role it plays, depends on its actual results, and is judged by the people.

After the Opium War, the human invasion of the Western powers brought China to the brink of extinction, and China was trapped in a dark situation of broken people, frequent wars, internal and external troubles, and Chinese the people fell into the deep suffering of the people. In order to save the country from peril and realize national rejuvenation, countless people with lofty ideals have designed various political propositions, attracted many "isms", established various political parties, and put forward various national salvation plans, but none of them can fundamentally solve China's problems. The Taiping Rebellion failed; the peasant class was not the representative of the advanced productive forces, could not put forward a system and program that represented the requirements for the development of the advanced productive forces, and the old-style peasant revolution could not defeat the feudal dynasty; the foreign affairs movement failed, the self-help movement of the feudal clique could not resist the Western powers, and the establishment of "foreign affairs" could not revive China; the reform of the law failed, the bourgeois reformists could not defeat the feudal diehards, and the restoration and reform of the law could not save China; the Xinhai Revolution overthrew the rule of the Qing dynasty. After the Xinhai Revolution, the Chinese ruling clique tried the presidential system and parliamentary system, but they did not work, and finally fell under the KMT-Party dictatorship, and the national rejuvenation still did not know where the road was.

History calls for truly qualified mission bearers. In the repeated comparisons of history, in the repeated weighing of various propositions and roads, in the repeated contests of various political forces, in the fierce struggle of the Chinese people against feudal rule and foreign aggression, and in the process of combining Marxism-Leninism with the Chinese workers' movement, the Chinese people finally chose the Communist Party of China and, under the leadership of the Party, finally chose socialism.



From the Chinese Communists with Comrade Mao Zedong as the main representative exploring the socialist road and laying the institutional foundation for socialism, to the Chinese Communists with Comrade Deng Xiaoping as the main representative successfully opening up the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, to the Chinese Communists with Comrade Jiang Zemin as the main representative successfully pushing socialism with Chinese characteristics into the 21st century, to the Chinese Communists mainly represented by Hu Jintao successfully adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics at a new historical starting point, the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics has become more and more extensive under the leadership of the Communist Party of China.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has united and led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to comprehensively examine the new international and domestic situations, and by summarizing practice and looking forward to the future, has profoundly answered the major topic of the times of "what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to adhere to and develop in the new era, how to adhere to and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics", and founded Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, promoting the Party and the country's cause to achieve historic achievements. Historic changes have taken place, and socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era.

It is precisely by relying on the relay struggle of generations of Chinese Communists that China has made great strides along the socialist road to catch up with the times, and the Chinese nation has ushered in a great leap from standing up, getting rich to becoming strong, and ushered in an unprecedented bright prospect of great rejuvenation. In this way, the leadership of the Communist Party of China is closely related to the creation, development and improvement of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and the leadership of the Communist Party of China determines the fate and future of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

## 2. The greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Party

The system manages the fundamentals, the overall situation, and the long term. The socialist system with Chinese characteristics is a scientific system formed by the party and the people in long-term practice and exploration, and it is the fundamental, basic and important systems that play the role of "four beams and eight pillars." This set of institutional systems includes the party's leadership system, the people's mastery system, the socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics, the socialist administrative system and government governance system with Chinese characteristics, the basic socialist economic system, the system for prospering and developing advanced socialist culture, the people's livelihood security system that coordinates urban and rural areas, the social governance system of joint construction, co-governance and sharing, the ecological civilization system, the party's absolute leadership system over the people's army, the "one country, two systems" system, the independent foreign policy of peace, Party and state supervision system.

This system is suitable for China's national conditions, conforms to the trend of the times, has unique advantages, and has played an irreplaceable and important role in the practice of governing the country and achieved remarkable results. The dominant position in this system is the party's leadership system. The party's leadership is the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and the party's leadership system is the fundamental leadership system of our country, which determines the characteristics and advantages of other systems.

First, the Party's leadership ensures that the people enjoy broader and more fulfilling rights and freedoms, and is conducive to mobilizing the people's enthusiasm and creativity to participate in national construction and governance. The fundamental purpose of the Communist Party of China is to serve the people wholeheartedly. The Party leads the people to establish a socialist democratic political system with Chinese characteristics and develop socialist democracy, which is to embody the people's will, protect the people's rights and interests, stimulate the people's creative vitality, use the system to ensure that the people are masters of the country, and realize the organic unity of the party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country and the rule of law. Among them, the party's leadership is the fundamental guarantee for the people to be masters of the country and to govern the country according to law, the people's mastery of the country is the essential feature of socialist democratic politics, and governing the country according to law is the basic way for the party to lead the people to govern the country, and the three are unified in the great practice of socialist democratic politics. Since the reform and opening up, the leadership system of the party and the state has become increasingly perfect, the comprehensive rule of law has been advanced, the socialist legal system with Chinese characteristics has become increasingly perfect, the institutional guarantee and legal guarantee for the people being masters of the country have become more powerful, the cause of human rights has developed in an all-round way, the patriotic united front has been further consolidated, the content of the people's enjoyment and exercise of democratic rights in accordance with the law has become richer, the channels more convenient and the forms more diverse, and the Chinese people have shown unprecedented enthusiasm, initiative and creativity. Practice has proved that socialist democracy with Chinese characteristics is the most extensive, authentic and effective democracy, and it is an institutional arrangement in which the people are masters of their own affairs.

Second, the party's leadership has ensured the effective regulation of major political and economic relations, which is conducive to maintaining a stable and united political situation. Comrade Deng Xiaoping once pointed out: "In a big country like China, it is impossible to conceive of unifying the thinking and strength of hundreds of millions of people to build socialism without a party composed of party members with a high degree of consciousness, discipline and self-sacrifice that can truly represent and unite the masses of the people, and without such a unified leadership of the party."

It will only fall apart and achieve nothing. "<sup>1</sup> Since the reform and opening up, despite all kinds of challenges, risks, resistances and contradictions, China's overall social stability and political situation of stability and unity have always been maintained, and the most important reason behind this is that the party's leadership has ensured the effective regulation of major relations in all aspects. For example, in the relationship between political parties, adhering to the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China not only ensures extensive political participation, fully reflects social conditions and public opinion, and the interests of all strata, but also ensures the unity and harmony of political life and the effective convergence of forces of all aspects, and avoids the drawbacks of party rivalry under the multi-party system in the West. For example, in the relationship between the legislative, executive, and judicial departments, the party insists on controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties, avoiding the situation of fighting and working separately. For example, in terms of different ownership relations, the establishment of a basic economic system with public ownership as the main body and the common development of various ownership economies, the unswerving consolidation and development of the public ownership economy, and the unswerving encouragement, support and guidance of the development of the non-public economy, which not only conforms to the basic national conditions of the initial stage of socialism, but also reflects the development direction of steadily realizing common prosperity. For example, in the relationship between the government, the market and society, we insist on giving play to the decisive role of the market in the allocation of resources, give better play to the role of the government, attach importance to the role of social organizations, and effectively ensure social vitality and order. All these have fundamentally safeguarded the political situation of national stability and unity, social harmony and stability, and the people living and working in peace and contentment.

Third, the party's leadership ensures the overall planning and coordination of forces in all quarters, which is conducive to concentrating forces to do major things. China is a big country, and the Communist Party of China is a big party. To build and develop socialism in a large country with a large population, a weak foundation, and an underdeveloped level of productive forces, a big party must mobilize the enthusiasm of the whole party and the people of all nationalities throughout the country, pool its limited resources and forces, concentrate its forces on doing major things, and concentrate its forces on solving the most direct and realistic interests of the masses of the people. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "Compared with capitalism, the superiority of socialism lies in its ability to play chess in the whole country, concentrate forces, and ensure key points."<sup>2</sup> Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Our biggest advantage is that our socialist system can concentrate on doing great things.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 341-342.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 16-17.

This is an important weapon for us to achieve our career.”<sup>1</sup> Practice has shown that important fields, key industries, and major projects related to the national economy and people's livelihood are difficult to achieve by relying only on the strength of a certain region or department, and must be promoted by the strength of the whole country. It is precisely because we have given full play to the institutional advantages of concentrating forces to do great things that we have completed the "two bombs and one satellite" project, which can be called a historical monument, and successively completed the Three Gorges Project, high-speed railways throughout the country, world-class projects that have attracted worldwide attention, such as the West-to-East Gas Transmission Project, the West-to-East Power Transmission, the South-to-North Water Diversion Project, and the Cross-Sea Bridge; completed high-tech projects such as the "Shenzhou", "Tiangong", "Tianhe", "Jiaolong", quantum communications, and large aircraft. Major natural disasters or major diseases such as major earthquakes, and major livelihood projects such as aid to Tibet, aid to Xinjiang, and targeted poverty alleviation have been effectively implemented. It is precisely because of the institutional advantages of concentrating on major things that we have effectively realized unified leadership, unified command and unified action for the prevention and control of the new crown pneumonia epidemic, formed a strategic pattern of comprehensive mobilization, comprehensive deployment, and comprehensive strengthening of epidemic prevention and control, initially curbed the spread of the epidemic in more than a month, controlled the daily new cases in the local area within single digits in about two months, and achieved the Wuhan defense battle in about three months. The decisive results of the Hubei defense war, the national epidemic prevention and control battle has achieved major strategic results. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The strength of everyone is limited, but as long as we are united in one heart and one mind, there will be no difficulties that cannot be overcome."<sup>2</sup> In a few decades, we have completed the process of industrialization that developed countries have gone through for hundreds of years. In the hands of Chinese people, the impossible becomes possible. This vividly reflects the extraordinary role and great significance of the party's leadership, which is the essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Fourth, the party's leadership ensures the stability and continuity of the country's major policies and policies, which is conducive to safeguarding the fundamental and long-term interests of the country. Doing a good job of current affairs in a down-to-earth manner and strategically planning for long-term development is the consistent leadership method of the Communist Party of China and an important experience of the party in ruling and rejuvenating the country. This is conducive to maintaining the stability and sustainability of the country's major policies, combining current interests with long-term interests, and aligning partial interests with overall interests.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 336-337.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 5.

The reason why the road of rejuvenation of the Chinese nation has been moving fast and steadily, and the reason why the cause of reform and opening up has achieved great success, is inseparable from the work of the Chinese Communists from generation to generation and drawing a blueprint to the end. Focusing on the realization of socialist modernization, Comrade Mao Zedong put forward the "two-step" strategic consideration in 1963; at the beginning of reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping put forward the "three-step" strategic concept; in 1997, Comrade Jiang Zemin put forward the new "three-step" strategic goal at the 15th CPC National Congress and put forward the "two centenary goals" for the first time; and in 2007, Comrade Hu Jintao further perfected the "two centenary goals" at the 17th CPC National Congress. In 2017, Comrade Xi Jinping proposed at the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China to realize the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation in "two steps" after building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way. These major strategies are all top-level designs and practical arrangements focusing on the long-term development of the country, reflecting the ruling character of the Communist Party of China that is both in the same vein and advancing with the times.

Although some ruling parties in Western countries also try to plan for the long-term development of the country, they are bound by the dilemma of interest games and the rotation of political parties, and long-term reforms often become difficult. Political parties fight, focusing only on short-term interests and ignoring long-term interests, focusing only on term goals and ignoring strategic goals, which is the norm in Western multi-party politics. Political parties and politicians compete to curry favor with voters for the sake of votes, and the ballot becomes the baton of the party. Comrade Deng Xiaoping once pointed out sharply: "The United States has blown its system so well, but it was a statement when the president campaigned, a statement just after taking office, a statement in the midterm elections, and another statement when the next general election was approaching." The United States also says that our policy is unstable, and that our policy is much more stable than that of the United States. "<sup>1</sup>

Fifth, the Party's leadership ensures the concrete implementation of the principle of fairness and justice, which is conducive to achieving common prosperity for all the people. Realizing social fairness and justice and achieving common prosperity for all the people are the most fundamental values of the Communist Party of China and the goal of the Chinese Communists. The most fundamental thing for the Party to lead the people to socialize in China is to liberate and develop the productive forces, eliminate exploitation, eliminate polarization, and ultimately achieve common prosperity. The reason why China has been able to do this is because it has established a basic economic system with public ownership as the main body and the common development of various ownership economies, the state-owned economy firmly controls the country's economic lifeline, and the material and economic forces that dominate society are always in the hands of the broad masses of the people.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 31.

Today, China's basic national conditions that are still in the primary stage of socialism and will remain for a long time have not changed, China's international status as the world's largest developing country has not changed, and the problems of the gap between the rich and the poor and the problems of fairness and justice facing our country are all in the process of being resolved. We must not only give play to the decisive role of the market, but also avoid the negative impact of the market; we must not only make various factors of production, including capital, active, but also avoid the capriciousness of capital logic. Only by adhering to and strengthening the party's overall leadership and adhering to the party's basic economic system in the initial stage of socialism can we ensure that the development of the socialist market economy always advances in the right direction and makes the fruits of development more and more equitable to benefit all the people.

In short, the party's leadership, as the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, has been fully reflected in China's practice and widely recognized by more and more foreign people of insight. Of course, any system must be continuously improved and developed in practice, and the embodiment of any system's advantages will be a historical process. Under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, with the advancement of the cause of the Party and the country, the socialist system with Chinese characteristics will certainly be more systematic, scientific and standardized, and effective in operation, and the systems in all aspects will be more mature and more formalized, and the greatest advantages of the leadership of the Communist Party of China will be brought into full play.

### 3. the party's leadership is the fundamental guarantee for the prosperity of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics

The party's leadership is the fundamental and lifeline of the party and the country, and the interests and happiness of the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country. Since the beginning of reform and opening up, the Communist Party of China has persisted in strengthening and improving the party's leadership, actively coped with various risks and tests faced by the party under the conditions of long-term ruling and reform and opening up, continued to promote the new great project of party building, maintained the party's advanced nature and purity, and maintained the flesh-and-blood ties between the party and the masses. Practice has proved that the Communist Party of China has undergone a long period of revolutionary forging and firmly walked in the forefront of the times, always being the backbone of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation, and always the leading core of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

For some time now, there has been a serious erroneous tendency inside and outside the party to downplay or even negate the party's leadership.

Some people are secretive and vague about upholding the party's leadership, a major issue of principle, and some people downplay or even openly deny the party's leadership, and so on. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has taken a clear stand on upholding and strengthening the party's leadership, expounded a series of major issues with direction and principle, effectively clarified ambiguous understanding, and declared a firm position and high confidence in the party's leadership. Over the past few years, no matter what field and aspect of work the Party Central Committee has promoted, it has always started by strengthening the Party's leadership and eventually settled on strengthening Party building. Through unremitting efforts, the weakening of the Party's leadership has been fundamentally reversed, the Party's institutional mechanism for leadership over all work has been continuously improved, the Party's political leadership, ideological leadership, mass organization and social appeal have been continuously enhanced, and the political and organizational guarantees for the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics have become more powerful.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, and the Chinese nation has ushered in a bright prospect of great rejuvenation, but it still faces risks and challenges on the way forward. From an international point of view, the contest between the two roads and systems of socialism and capitalism has never stopped, and hostile forces regard the development and growth of socialist China as a challenge to the capitalist road, system and values, constantly change tactics and methods to Westernize and divide China, strengthen political misdirection, strategic containment and value containment against China, and the struggle between infiltration and anti-infiltration in the political and ideological fields is complex and sharp, and there is no room for slackening in safeguarding national political and cultural security. From a domestic point of view, with the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society entering the decisive stage of the people, the reform entering the period of tackling tough problems and deep-water areas, various contradictions, risks and challenges have become more severe, and the task of maintaining reform, development and stability has become more arduous. Only by adhering to and strengthening the party's leadership and giving play to the party's core role in controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties can we effectively prevent and resolve various risks and tests on the way forward and ensure the stable and long-term development of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

## Section 2: The Party is the supreme political leading force

An important content of Xi Jinping's Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is to clearly state that the Communist Party of China is the supreme political leading force. Comrade Mao Zedong once clearly pointed out: "In the seven aspects of industry, agriculture, commerce, study, soldiers, government, and the party, the party leads everything."

The Party should lead industry, agriculture, commerce, culture and education, the army and the government. <sup>1</sup> In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, Comrade Xi Jinping further pointed out: "In today's China, there is no greater political force than the Communist Party of China or any other force. In the study of the party, the government, the military, and the people, in the east, west, south, north, and middle, the party is the leader of everything and the highest political leading force. <sup>2</sup> The national governance system is a complex system of many subsystems, the core of which is the Chinese Communist Party. The major political thesis that the Communist Party of China is the supreme political leading force has directly and thoroughly revealed the status and role of the Communist Party of China in the country's political life.

The Party is the supreme political leading force, which is determined by the nature of our country and the state system of government, established by the national constitution, tested by the great practice of China's revolution, construction and reform, and has undoubted historical rationality, practical rationality and value rationality. The party is the highest political leading force, which is mainly reflected in leading the political direction, ruling the political system, deciding major issues, and leading social governance.

#### 1. the Party is the leader of the political direction

The direction determines the path, and the road determines the destiny. Lenin pointed out: "Politics is to participate in the affairs of the state, to set the direction of the state, to determine the form, tasks and content of state activities."<sup>3</sup> The political direction pointed out by the Communist Party of China to the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country is socialism, and the ultimate goal pointed out is to realize communism. During the revolutionary war years, the Party went through hardships and dangers, overcame one difficulty after another, corrected one deviation after another, led the people to overthrow the "three mountains," won the great victory of the new democratic revolution, and established New China.

After the founding of New China, the CPC, as the ruling party, inevitably had ties with various democratic parties and political organizations. In all these connections, the Communist Party of China "is the force of leadership", "the Party relies on politics to lead", and the Party always holds the steering wheel.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 8, People's Publishing House, 1999 edition, p. 305.

<sup>2</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 30.

<sup>3</sup> The Complete Works of Lenin, vol. 31, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 128.



In 1954, Comrade Mao Zedong proposed at the First National People's Congress that the core force leading our cause is the Communist Party of China. In March 1957, he once again pointed out that "China's reform and construction depend on our leadership."<sup>1</sup> On May 25 of the same year, when receiving delegates to the Third National Congress of the Chinese New Democratic Youth League, he emphasized even more clearly: "The Communist Party of China is the core of leadership of the entire Chinese people. Without such a core, the socialist cause cannot triumph."<sup>2</sup> During the exploration of the road of socialist construction, although the Party experienced setbacks of all kinds, including the twists and turns and mistakes of the "Cultural Revolution", it always maintained the spirit of self-revolution, persisted in self-correcting mistakes and deviations, firmly grasped the direction of socialist progress, and finally established the correct political, ideological and organizational lines, and successfully created socialism with Chinese characteristics.

In China, a large country with a history of more than 5,000 years of civilization and a population of 1.4 billion, there is no textbook that is regarded as the golden rule, and there is no teacher who can command the Chinese people. The Communist Party of China firmly grasps the direction of progress of socialism with Chinese characteristics, neither follows the old road of closure and rigidity, nor does it take the evil road of changing the banner, fully mobilizes the enthusiasm of all parties under the background of market economy and globalization, unites forces of all aspects, and gathers into a majestic force to promote the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has held high the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics and set the steering wheel of reform and opening up in the new era. This direction is the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics, not any other path. Today, reform and opening up enter a new era, "what to change and how to change must be based on whether it meets the overall goal of improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity."<sup>3</sup> Make sure not to make subversive mistakes in the political direction.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 7, People's Publishing House, 1999, p. 275.

<sup>2</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 7, People's Publishing House, 499 edition, p. 303.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2019, p. 732.

## 2. the Party is the leader of the political system

The national political system is a large system, which consists of the fundamental political system, the basic political system and the specific institutional mechanisms of all aspects of national governance, covering state organs, political party organizations and various political subjects. In this large system, the Chinese Communist Party is in a dominant position.

The Communist Party of China is the ruling party, and the Party leads state and social affairs through the system of people's congresses. The Party leads, supports and guarantees that the people are masters of their own country, mobilizes and organizes the masses of the people to manage state and social affairs and economic and cultural undertakings in accordance with the law. The Party leads the people in formulating the Constitution and laws, and the Party itself operates within the scope of the Constitution and laws. The Party's leading role in the system of people's congresses is good at transforming the Party's propositions into the will of the State through legal procedures, at making candidates recommended by the Party become leading personnel of organs of state power through legal procedures, at implementing the Party's leadership over the state and society through organs of state power, at using the principle of democratic centralism to safeguard the authority of the Party and the State, safeguarding the unity of the whole Party and the whole country, and supporting and ensuring that organs of state power carry out their work proactively, independently responsible, and in a coordinated manner in accordance with the Constitution and laws.

The Communist Party of China is the core force leading China's various undertakings, and the national governance system must adhere to the leadership of the party. Since the beginning of reform and opening up, no matter how the party has adjusted the relationship between the party and the government, one thing remains unchanged, that is, upholding the party's leadership has always been the fundamental prerequisite for handling the relationship between the party and the government. Compared with many large countries in the world, China's national governance system is unique. Most of the world's countries with more than 100 million people are federal, and China's 1.4 billion people, unitary production is the organizing principle of state power, and it is very successful, and the secret is the leadership of the Chinese Communist Party. In contemporary China, the Communist Party of China has inherited the idea of "one game of chess" national governance formed by Chinese society for a long time, coordinated, comprehensive, and represented the interests of all parties, sought the "greatest common divisor" of all interests, and coordinated all forces to advance in the same direction, and the party's leadership has become the core component of the national governance system.

"As a basic political system in our country, the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the CPC is a great political creation of the CPC, China, various democratic parties, and personages without party affiliation, and is a new-type political party system that grows out of Chinese soil." "

"It is not only in line with the reality of contemporary China, but also in line with the excellent traditional culture advocated by the Chinese nation, such as serving the common good, being inclusive, and seeking common ground while reserving differences, and is a major contribution to human political civilization."<sup>1</sup> This political system is different from the multi-party system or two-party system of many capitalist countries, nor the one-party system of some countries, but is an original system rooted in China and has distinct Chinese characteristics. This characteristic is first embodied in the leadership of the Communist Party of China. Party leadership is the conscious choice of all democratic parties and is also the basic prerequisite of China's political party system. The relationship between the CPC and other democratic parties is the leadership of the CPC, multi-party cooperation, and the ruling power of the CPC and multi-party participation in politics. The democratic parties are not opposition parties and opposition parties, but friendly parties and participating parties that cooperate closely with the CPC. Adhering to the leadership of the Communist Party of China is not to stop democracy, but to form a broader and more effective democracy. The CPC and the democratic parties have conducted democratic consultations, made concerted efforts on major national issues, and concentrated their efforts on major affairs.

### 3. The Party is the decider of major decisions

As the highest political leading force, it is very important for the Communist Party of China to make decisions on major issues of the Party and the country. Without decision-making power, the so-called leadership is an empty phrase. Along the way, the Communist Party of China has continuously moved from victory to victory, and every step is inseparable from scientific and effective decision-making, careful planning and effective implementation. Being good at grasping problems, thinking of methods, and making decisions is a concentrated embodiment of the party's leadership level and ruling ability.

The Chinese Communist Party uses scientific and democratic methods to make decisions. Formulate lines, principles, policies, and make major policy decisions and arrangements, extensively solicit the opinions and suggestions of the broad masses of the people, democratic parties and personages without party affiliation, party-member cadres, experts, and scholars, and finally transform the party's propositions into the will of the state through scientific demonstration and democratic centralization. In decision-making,

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping Emphasizes Adherence to Multi-Party Cooperation, Development of Socialist Democratic Democracy, Unity and Struggle for Victory in Building a Moderately Prosperous Society in All Respects when Visiting Members of the Democratic League Zhigong Party Non-Party Personages and Overseas Chinese Circles Attending the CPPCC Meeting," *People's Daily*, March 5, 2018.

The party has always adhered to the people-centered value concept and political stance, grasped the most direct and practical interests of the masses, and formulated effective policies and measures. The party formulates policies, adheres to the attitude of seeking truth from facts, scientifically carries out investigation and research, persists in coming from the masses to the masses, and analyzes specific problems in detail, so that policy decisions, programs and measures conform to the spirit of the central authorities and local realities, meet the needs of the people and are feasible.

The Communist Party of China not only makes scientific decisions, but also pays attention to the implementation of decisions. The Communist Party of China is a big party, China is a big country, and to govern a big country, a big party first needs an authoritative party central committee that can observe problems from the perspective of the overall situation and be able to make decisions "with one hammer and the final word"; moreover, once the party Central Committee makes policy decisions and arrangements, all party departments must resolutely implement them; the party organizations of the people's congresses, governments, CPPCC, supervision commissions, courts, and procuratorates must resolutely implement them; and party organizations such as public institutions and people's organizations must also resolutely implement them.

#### 4. the Party is the leader in social governance

Social governance is inseparable from a certain organizational form. The organizational form of the Communist Party of China not only promotes the orderly governance of society, but also ensures that society is full of vitality. First, the political function of the Chinese Communist Party provides direction for social governance. The first attribute of the party is the political attribute, and the first function is the political function. Political functions are embodied in political stance, political direction, political road and other aspects, and the political function of the party can provide direction, standards and values for social governance, and enhance the cohesion and sense of direction of social governance. Second, the Communist Party of China promotes the effective operation of society with the service function of the party. Comrade Deng Xiaoping once pointed out: "What is leadership? Leadership is serving the people."<sup>1</sup> Adhering to the mass line is the fundamental method by which the Party leads the masses of the people. By serving the masses of the people, solving the problems of their interests, the Party promotes the effective operation of society. Finally, the Communist Party of China ensures harmonious and orderly social governance with a strong organizational system. The party adheres to the principle that "where there are masses, there is party organization, and where there are party members, there is party work", and vigorously promotes the coverage of party organizations and party work. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, China has been one of the countries with the most profound social transformation in the world, facing domestic and foreign contradictions and risks rarely seen in the world

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, Publishing House, 1993, p. 121.

However, Chinese society has always maintained overall stability, which is inseparable from the strong organizational ability and excellent governance ability of the Communist Party of China.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has closely focused on the social governance theme of co-construction, co-governance and sharing, continuously improved the social governance system and mechanism, established a social governance system under the leadership of the Party committee, the responsibility of the government, social coordination, public participation, and the guarantee of the rule of law, and continuously improved the socialization, rule of law, intelligence and professionalism of social governance. For example, strengthen the construction of mechanisms for preventing and resolving social contradictions, correctly handle contradictions among the people; comprehensively improve the level and coverage of public services, continuously meet the people's growing needs for a better life, and let the people have more sense of happiness, attainment, and security; strengthen the construction of community governance systems, promote the focus of social governance to shift down to the grassroots level, give play to the role of social organizations, and realize benign interaction between government governance and social regulation and residents' autonomy. In the practice of party leadership in social governance, leading grassroots social governance with party building has become the consensus of Chinese society and a successful experience of Chinese social governance.

### Section 3: Resolutely achieve "two maintenances"

To uphold and strengthen the party's overall leadership and give full play to the role of the highest political leadership force of the Communist Party of China, the most fundamental thing is to resolutely safeguard the core position of General Secretary Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the core position of the whole party, and the most important thing is to resolutely safeguard the authority and centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee. Achieving the "two safeguards" is a major issue of principle that has a bearing on the future and destiny of the party and the country, the primary task of the party's political construction, and the fundamental political discipline and political rules that the whole party must abide by.

1. safeguarding the core position of General Secretary Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party is where the fundamental interests of the Party and the country lie

The Sixth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee clarified the core position of General Secretary Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party. This is the inevitable result of the party's adherence to the principle of democratic centralism and the solemn choice of the whole party and the people of the whole country.

As the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, General Secretary Xi Jinping was formed in the practice of the new great struggle, reflects the common aspirations of the whole Party, the whole army and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, is where the fundamental interests of the Party and the country lie, is the fundamental guarantee for upholding and strengthening the Party's leadership, and is an urgent need to carry out the great struggle with many new historical characteristics and to uphold and develop the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

The historical mission of the proletarian party objectively requires a strong core of leadership. Marx once vividly compared that "a single violinist conducts himself, and an orchestra needs an orchestra director."<sup>1</sup> Engels also used the example of sea navigation to illustrate the extreme importance of the core of authority: "At a critical moment, whether everyone's life can be saved depends on whether all people can immediately and absolutely obey the will of a person."<sup>2</sup> Lenin also pointed out: "It is a long-term and difficult task to bring up a group of experienced and extremely prestigious party leaders. But without this, the dictatorship of the proletariat and the 'unity of will' of the proletariat can only be empty words."<sup>3</sup> Comrade Mao Zedong stressed: "It is necessary to establish a core of leadership and oppose 'one country, three publics.'"<sup>4</sup> Comrade Deng Xiaoping had a deep understanding and thorough explanation of the core issue of leadership, pointing out: "The key to the China issue lies in the fact that the Communist Party must have a good Politburo, especially a good Politburo Standing Committee. As long as there are no problems in this link, China will be as stable as Mount Tai. "If it stays like this for fifty, sixty years, socialist China will be invincible."<sup>5</sup> The historical experience of socialism in the world shows that in order for a Marxist political party to safeguard the unity of the Party and effectively carry out struggle, it must form a strong core of leadership and a strong leading collective at the level of the Party Central Committee. The historical experience of the Communist Party of China shows that there must be a strong central leading collective formed in practice, and there must be a strong leadership core in this leading collective. Otherwise, the party's cause will not be able to advance from victory to victory.

Comrade Xi Jinping possesses the extraordinary political wisdom, superb leadership ability and strong personality charm of a Marxist politician, and as the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, he was formed in the long-term revolutionary practice, in the new great struggle, in the close contact with the people and in the common struggle.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 208.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 276.

<sup>3</sup> The Complete Works of Lenin, vol. 42, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 108.

<sup>4</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1996, p. 69.

<sup>5</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, Publishing House, 1993, p. 365.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping, with a strong sense of responsibility, has led the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to solve many difficult problems that have been wanted to be solved for a long time but have not been solved, accomplished many major things that were wanted to be done in the past but have not been accomplished, promoted historic changes in the cause of the party and the country, promoted historic changes in the management of the party and the party, and promoted socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era. The fundamental reason why the cause of the Party and the country can create a new situation in an all-round way lies in the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core in raising the banner and strategizing, and in the scientific guidance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. The Sixth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee made it clear that Comrade Xi Jinping is the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, and the 19th CPC National Congress will firmly safeguard the authority of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core and the centralized and unified leadership to write the Party Constitution, which is the choice of practice, history, the choice of the whole Party and the choice of the people.

Safeguarding General Secretary Xi Jinping's position as the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party is an urgent need for the development of the cause of the Party and the country. The Communist Party of China has more than 90 million members and more than 4.6 million grassroots party organizations, and the party unites and leads the people to carry out socialist modernization. Having a leader recognized by the whole party and loved by the people is an important sign of the maturity of the party. The ship weighs a thousand pounds and has one person at the helm. To govern a large country with a population of 1.4 billion, to carry out great struggles with many new historical characteristics, to cope with major changes unprecedented in a century, to resist major risks and challenges, and to overcome major contradictions and resistances, it must have a strong core of leadership. Without Comrade Xi Jinping, the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, there would be no authority and centralized leadership of the Party Central Committee, there would be no unified thinking and unified action, and there would be no separate battles and separate administrations, and nothing would be accomplished.

## 2. Safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership is the highest principle of Party leadership

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The history of the Party and the history of the development of New China tell us that in order to govern our big party and our big country well, it is very important to ensure the unity and centralization of the party, and it is of great importance to maintain the authority of the party Central Committee."

<sup>1</sup> Resolutely safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership is a major founding principle of the Marxist ruling party, the primary political rule of the Party, and a magic weapon to ensure that the whole Party is in lockstep.

First, safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership are the major founding principles of the Marxist ruling party. A Marxist political party is not a free and loose club, but a new type of political party shouldering a major historical mission, a fighting force with strict organization and strict discipline. Marx and Engels once severely criticized Bakunin's views of "branch autonomy, free association of autonomous groups, anti-authoritarianism, and anarchy", believing that these slogans were nothing more than an attempt to cover up the extreme poverty of thought and the fundamental ignorance of the conditions of daily life in society. When summing up the lessons of the failure of the Paris Commune, Engels clearly pointed out: "The Paris Commune was destroyed because of the lack of centralization and authority."<sup>2</sup> Engels also pointed out that authority is needed not only in the period of proletarian revolution, but also in the period of peacebuilding. Whether it is factory production, railway management, ship navigation, or even daily travel, it is necessary to obey the authority of rules and regulations. Without serious authority and strict discipline, such a party can only be a loose club or social organization, and such a party cannot unite its will and achieve political goals. The Communist Party of China is a Marxist political party organized by revolutionary ideals and iron discipline, and safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership is the fundamental experience of China's revolution, construction and reform.

Second, safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership is the primary political rule of the Party. To uphold the party's leadership, we must first uphold the centralized and unified leadership of the party Central Committee. The right to decide on the major policies and policies of the party and the state rests with the party Central Committee, and it is necessary to safeguard the authority of the party Central Committee with practical actions. Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "The party is the core of our leadership in all undertakings, as the ancients said; six contract winds, Kyushu cooperates', in contemporary China, without the leadership of the party, this cannot be done."<sup>3</sup> Safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee is a matter of direction and principle, and has a bearing on the future and destiny of the Party, the nation, and the country.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 188.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 4, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 500.

<sup>3</sup> "Xi Jinping's Exposition on Coordinating and Promoting the "Four Comprehensive" Strategic Layout", Central Literature Press, 2015, p. 134.



Any organization and member of the Party, no matter what field, level or unit he or she works in, must obey the centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee and safeguard the authority of the Party Central Committee.

Third, safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership is the magic weapon to ensure that the whole Party is in lockstep. The theories, lines, principles, and policies formulated by the Party Central Committee are the basis and basis for the whole Party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to unify their thinking, will, and actions. Only when the Party Central Committee has authority can the whole Party be firmly united, and then the people of all ethnic groups in the country can be closely united, forming a majestic force that is united and invincible. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We are such a big party and such a big country, if there is no authority of the Party Central Committee to set a statue, and the Party Central Committee does not do what it decides, or if each says its own thing and does its own thing, then nothing can be done."<sup>1</sup> In our party, we must never allow ourselves to act independently and go our own way, we must not allow orders not to be carried out or prohibitions to continue, and we will never allow policies at the top and countermeasures at the bottom. The more complicated the situation facing the Party and the more arduous the tasks it shoulders, the more it is necessary to safeguard the centralization and unity of the Party.

### 3. the practical requirements of "two maintenance"

Safeguarding the core position of General Secretary Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party, safeguarding the authority and centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee, is not abstract but concrete, and must be implemented in reality and seen in action.

To achieve the "two safeguards," we must persist in being loyal to the party. This is the basic requirement of the Party Constitution for Party members. Loyalty to the party must be pure, and one must not be "two-faced" or engage in "pseudo-loyalty"; it must be embodied in loyalty to the party's beliefs, loyalty to the party organization, and loyalty to the party's theory, line, principles, and policies. If "loyalty" doesn't pass, nothing else.

To achieve the "two safeguards," we must strictly abide by political discipline and political rules. Political discipline is the most important discipline of the Party, political discipline is the most fundamental rule of the Party, and abiding by political discipline and political rules is the basis for observing all discipline of the Party. First, we must safeguard the authority of the Party Central Committee, never allow deviations from the Party Central Committee's requirements to set up another set of things, maintain a high degree of unity with the Party Central Committee ideologically, politically, and in action, and obey the command of the Party Central Committee.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2019, p. 276.

Second, it is necessary to safeguard the unity of the party, persist in all parts of the world, unite all comrades loyal to the party, unite the majority, draw lines with others, engage in any form of factional activities, and still less allow the cultivation of private forces within the party; third, it is necessary to follow organizational procedures, and it is absolutely not allowed to make unauthorized claims and opinions on major issues and reports. Fourth, we must obey the organization's decisions, never allow non-organizational activities, bargain with the organization, go against the organization's decision, seek and rely on the organization when encountering problems, and must not deceive the organization or confront the organization.

To achieve the "two safeguards," we must firmly establish a political awareness, an awareness of the overall situation, a core awareness, and a sense of alignment. The most important thing is to highly identify ideologically, resolutely safeguard politically, fully trust organizationally, and closely follow the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core in action. We must achieve "two safeguards" and enhance the "four consciousnesses," and we must not shout empty slogans, engage in formalism, and turn serious political discipline into "low-level red" and "high-level black." The core consciousness is called "core", that is, the core of the Party Central Committee and the whole party, and cannot be said to be "core" layer by layer; the "alignment" of aligning consciousness means aligning with the Party Central Committee, General Secretary Xi Jinping, and the party's basic theory, basic line, and basic strategy, and cannot shout "alignment" layer by layer.

## **Section 4: Establish and improve the institutional mechanism for the party's comprehensive leadership**

The party's overall leadership is concrete and must be embodied in all aspects of governing the country and in the design, arrangement, and operation of the institutions, systems, and systems of state power. Establishing and improving scientific and effective systems and mechanisms is the key to implementing the party's comprehensive leadership.

### **1. Adhere to the Party's position as the core of leadership in controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties**

Adhering to the party's position as the core of leadership in controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties is a prominent feature of the superiority of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics.

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "the Party Central Committee is the brain and center, and the Party Central Committee must have the authority to set a statue and hammer the final word."<sup>1</sup> The Central Committee, the Political Bureau of the CPC Central Committee, and the Standing Committee of the Politburo of the CPC Central Committee are the core of the Party's leadership and decision-making; the decisions and arrangements made by the Party Central Committee must be resolutely implemented by the Party's discipline inspection organs and organizational, propaganda, united front, political and legal departments, the Party organizations of the state's legislative, judicial, administrative, and supervisory organs, and the Party organizations of enterprises, institutions, and people's organizations. Local Party organizations must ensure that the decisions and arrangements of the Party Central Committee are implemented as soon as orders are made and stopped when prohibited. In the big chess game of the national governance system, the Party Central Committee is the "handsome" who sits in the military tent in the town, and the horses and cannons each show their strengths, and the overall situation is clearly defined, so that only in governing the country can there be direction, rules, and strength.

Strengthen the leadership position of Party committees (Party groups) in organizations at the same level. Straighten out the relationship between party organizations and other organizations, and better play the role of overseeing the overall situation and coordinating all parties. Party committees (leading Party groups) established in state organs, public institutions, mass organizations, social organizations, enterprises and other organizations shall accept the unified leadership of the Party committees approved for their establishment, report regularly on their work, and ensure that the Party's principles, policies and decision-making arrangements are implemented in organizations at the same level. Party committees at all levels should concentrate their energies on setting the direction, grasping major matters, coming up with ideas, and managing cadres. Party committees at all levels should give overall consideration to the overall work, plan as a whole, and form a working mechanism for comprehensive advancement. It is necessary to rationally divide the work levels, properly handle the relationship between key tasks, clarify which work is personally grasped by the party committee, which is promoted by the party committee, and which is supported by the party committee, and form a working mechanism for categorical promotion; within the party committee, it is necessary to give play to the collective role of the leading body, and at the same time ensure that the members of the leading body each shoulder their own responsibilities and carry out their work in unison.

Enhance the organizational strength and leadership of the Party's grassroots organizations. Persist in focusing on improving organizational strength, highlight political functions, and build the party's grassroots organizations into strong fighting fortresses for publicizing the party's propositions, implementing the party's decisions, leading grassroots governance, uniting and mobilizing the masses, and promoting reform and development. Strengthen the building of grass-roots party organizations in enterprises, rural areas, organs, institutions, and communities, strengthen the work of grass-roots party building of social organizations, explore the building of grass-roots party organizations in the fields of new business formats and the Internet, strengthen the standardization and standardization of branches, and realize that all the party's work goes to the branches. Party organizations in villages and communities should comprehensively lead all kinds of organizations and all work subordinate to their own villages and communities.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019, p. 560.

Continue to promote the institutionalization of the party's comprehensive leadership and the rule of law. Study and formulate inner-party laws and regulations on the party's leadership of important economic and social work, and implement the party's comprehensive leadership in the entire process and in all aspects of comprehensively governing the country according to law; implement the provisions of the Constitution, formulate and revise relevant laws and regulations, and clearly stipulate the legal status of work related to party leadership; enshrine the requirements for upholding the party's comprehensive leadership in the organic laws of people's congresses, governments, courts, and procuratorates, and enshrine the people's consultative conference, democratic parties, the Federation of Industry and Commerce, people's organizations, state-owned enterprises, schools of higher learning, and The charters of social organizations are to improve the Party's system for exercising leadership over these organizations, ensuring that they are always active, independent, responsible, and coordinated under the leadership of the Party.

## 2. Strictly implement the system of requesting instructions and reporting from the Party Central Committee

The system of requesting instructions and reporting is an important system of the Communist Party of China, which fundamentally guarantees the authority and centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee. As early as 1948, Comrade Mao Zedong drafted the "Intra-Party Directive on the Establishment of the Reporting System" for the Party Central Committee, and then the Party Central Committee issued the "Supplementary Instructions on the Establishment of the Reporting System." This has played an important role in the political construction of the Party. Timely reporting of major issues and important matters by party-member cadres is a political discipline and political rule that must be observed. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Party organizations in all fields should be responsible to the party committee and report their work to the party committee. Some comrades are accustomed to treating the work in charge as their own forbidden, feeling that since they are in charge, there is no need to report, and they do not want others to come and ask questions, and some do not even want the party committee to ask questions, otherwise there is no separation between the party and the government. This thinking is incorrect."<sup>1</sup>

The Sixth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee detailed the system of requesting instructions and reports on major issues, stipulating that the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress, the State Council, the National Committee of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference, the Central Commission for Discipline Inspection, the Supreme People's Court, the Supreme People's Procuratorate, all departments of the central and state organs, all people's organizations, and all provinces, autonomous regions, and municipalities directly under the Central Government must regularly report their work to the Party Central Committee.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 27.

In February 2019, the CPC Central Committee issued the Regulations of the Communist Party of China on Requesting Instructions and Reports on Major Matters, further improving the relevant work system. In accordance with the Party Constitution and internal Party regulations, all members of the Political Bureau of the CPC Central Committee report their duties in writing to the Party Central Committee and the General Secretary every year; the Secretariat of the CPC Central Committee and the Central Commission for Discipline Inspection, the leading party groups of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress, the leading party groups of the State Council, the leading party groups of the National Committee of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference, the leading party groups of the Supreme People's Court, and the leading party groups of the Supreme People's Procuratorate report annually to the Standing Committee of the Political Bureau and the Political Bureau of the CPC Central Committee; and the party committees (leading party groups) of all regions and departments have strengthened their reporting to the party Central Committee. When studying major matters involving the overall situation or making major decisions, it is necessary to promptly request instructions and report to the Party Central Committee, and special reports should be made on the implementation of important decisions of the Party Central Committee. In case of sudden major problems and major problems in work, it is necessary to promptly ask for instructions and report to the Party Central Committee, and if the situation is urgent and must be dealt with immediately, it is necessary to do a good job in their duties and report quickly.

### 3. Coordinate the reform of party and state institutions

The functional system of the party and state institutions is an important guarantee for the CPC's governance of the country, and an important support for ensuring that the party always controls the overall situation and coordinates all parties. In order to smoothly advance the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, the party must give full play to the party's leadership, which is the greatest institutional advantage, from the organizational structure, implement the party's leadership in all fields and links of the party and state organs in comprehensively and correctly performing their duties, and ensure the party's long-term ruling power and the country's long-term peace and stability in terms of system.

The Third Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee focused on improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, strengthening the party's long-term ruling capacity, and promoting the comprehensive and strict management of the party, and made strategic arrangements for deepening the reform of party and state institutions. The goal of the reform is very clear, that is, to promote the optimization of the functions of the party and state institutions as the focus of efforts, to form a leadership system that oversees the overall situation and coordinates all parties, a government governance system with clear responsibilities and administration according to law, a world-class armed forces system with Chinese characteristics, a mass work system with extensive contacts and serving the masses, and to promote the coordinated actions of people's congresses, governments, CPPCC, supervisory organs, judicial organs, procuratorial organs, people's organizations, enterprises and institutions, social organizations, etc. under the unified leadership of the party. Strengthen synergy and comprehensively improve national governance capacity and governance level.

To deepen the reform of the Party and state institutions, the first thing is to establish and improve the Party's leadership system and mechanism for major work, and improve the institutional arrangements to ensure the Party's overall leadership;

Strengthen the party's centralized and unified leadership over major work involving the overall cause of the party and the country, and enhance the party's ability and determination to set the direction, seek the overall situation, formulate policies, and promote reform. At the central level, it is to optimize the decision-making and deliberation coordination organs of the Party Central Committee, and then strengthen and optimize the Party's leadership over deepening reform, governing the country according to law, economy, agriculture and rural areas, discipline inspection and supervision, organization, propaganda, ideology and culture, national security, political and legal affairs, united front, ethnic and religious affairs, education, science and technology, Internet information, diplomacy, auditing, etc. The Third Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee decided to set up the Central Committee for Comprehensive Rule of Law, the Central Audit Commission, and the Central Leading Group for Education Work, and at the same time renamed the Central Leading Group for Comprehensively Deepening Reform, the Central Leading Group for Cybersecurity and Informatization, the Central Leading Group for Finance and Economics, and the Central Leading Group for Foreign Affairs to the Committee, and adjusted and optimized the leadership system of the Central Institutional Establishment Committee. These institutions, as the decision-making and deliberation coordination bodies of the Party Central Committee, work under the leadership of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee and its Standing Committee, and are responsible for the top-level design, overall layout, overall coordination and overall promotion of major work in related fields, further ensuring the effective implementation of the Party's leadership.

The functional departments of the Party are the political organs of the Party exercising political, ideological and organizational leadership, and the executive organs that implement the decisions and arrangements of the Party Central Committee and local Party committees at all levels, implement the Party's leadership, strengthen Party building, and promote the Party's cause. To coordinate the reform of party and state institutions and uphold and strengthen the party's overall leadership, it is necessary to optimize the functional allocation of the party's organization, propaganda, united front, political and legal affairs, party building in organs, education and training, strengthen the coordination function, and coordinate the work of the system and its own field. At the same time, it is also necessary to optimize the establishment of various party committee offices, and the matters that can be undertaken by functional departments are undertaken by functional departments; optimize and standardize the establishment of party dispatched organs, strengthen leadership over relevant fields, industries, and system work; and set up institutions directly under party committees at all levels in accordance with the principle of lean and efficient. The relevant organs of the Party may be set up in an overall manner with other departments with similar functions and close ties, and implement the merger and establishment or joint office to prevent overlapping of institutions, functions and work, and then integrate and optimize forces and resources to bring into play comprehensive benefits.

Top-level planning and overall design of the reform of party and state institutions is an important embodiment of the party's leadership. Deepening the reform of party and state institutions, covering the institutional reform of the Party Central Committee, the National People's Congress, the State Council, the CPPCC National Committee, the administrative law enforcement system, the cross-military reform, the mass organization reform, and the local institutional reform, is a systematic, holistic and reconstructive major change. After the gradual advancement from the central to the local level since the Third Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee, a functional system of party and state institutions that is compatible with upholding and strengthening the party's leadership is taking shape.

#### 4. Improve the specific system for strictly implementing democratic centralism

Democratic centralism is the fundamental organizational principle and fundamental leadership system of the Party. It regulates the relations between Party members and Party members, Party members and organizations, subordinate organizations and higher-level organizations, and the whole Party and the Central Committee, and standardizes the relations between Party and State organs of power, administrative organs, supervisory organs, judicial organs and people's organizations. Over the past some time now, quite a few problems have arisen in some party organizations in the process of implementing democratic centralism: In some localities, "laissez-faire democracy" has appeared, and "the number one" does not take responsibility, and the leading body is weak and loose; in some localities, the number one leader "acts arbitrarily, inner-party democracy is undermined, and the party's leadership has become individual leadership; in some localities, the party-government relationship is not coordinated, and the so-called separation of the party and the government is carried out without paying attention to preconditions, or the party committee directly interferes in government work without any detail, resulting in tension between the party and the government; in some places, the party and government are divided and departments are hampered. Fights up and down, fragmentation of local governance; and so on. These problems greatly restrict the role of the party's leadership as the core, and ultimately affect the comprehensive economic and social development of a locality.

To uphold and strengthen the party's comprehensive leadership, it is necessary to improve and implement various specific systems of democratic centralism and institutionalize, standardize, and scientificize relations between the party and all quarters. In particular, it is necessary to improve the system of the party leading organs of state power, administrative organs, supervisory organs, judicial organs, and people's organizations, improve the work system and code of conduct of party committees (leading party groups) at all levels; strictly implement the "Several Guidelines for Inner-Party Political Life in the New Situation," improve the rules for deliberation and decision-making of party committees at all levels, improve the specific system for correctly handling the working relations between party organizations at higher and lower levels, and ensure that the whole party is highly consistent ideologically, politically, and in action.

Safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership are unified with promoting inner-Party democracy. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "Adhering to the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership does not mean that there is no need for democratic centralism, do not promote inner-party democracy, and it is wrong to oppose the two."<sup>1</sup> Democratic centralism organically combines the full development of inner-party democracy with the correct practice of centralism; it can not only stimulate the creative vitality of the whole party to the maximum, but also unify the thinking and actions of the whole party, and effectively prevent and overcome decentralism in which deliberation is not decided and decision is not done, and it is a scientific, rational, and efficient system.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2019, p. 276.

Democratic centralism includes two aspects, democracy and centralization, which are mutually conditional, complementary and opposite. It is necessary to organically unify democracy and centralism, and truly turn the advantages of democratic centralism into the party's political, organizational, systemic, and work advantages.



## Chapter IV: Adhere to the fundamental position of centering on the people

The masses of the people are not only the creators of material wealth, but also the creators of spiritual wealth, and even more the decisive force for social change. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must always take the people's position as the fundamental position, take the happiness of the people as the fundamental mission, adhere to the fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly, implement the mass line, respect the people's dominant position and initiative, always maintain flesh-and-blood ties with the people, unite the majestic force of all wills, and unite and lead the people to jointly create a great historical cause."<sup>1</sup> Adhering to the people-centered thinking, further developing the Marxist outlook on the people, and fully demonstrating the distinct value orientation of Chinese communists in the new era.

### Section 1: Taking the people as the center is the essential embodiment of the materialist view of history

To uphold the fundamental stand of centering on the people, we must always persist in relying on the people to create great historical causes, persist in doing everything for the people, and persist in implementing the party's mass line in all activities of governing the country.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2019, p. 429.

## 1. Relying on the people to create great historical deeds

In the long history of the development of the Chinese nation, Chinese people have created splendid achievements in material and spiritual civilization and forged the great spirit of the Chinese nation through their own diligence and wisdom. Since modern times, under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the Chinese people have won great victories in the new democratic revolution, established the People's Republic of China, established the socialist system in which the people are masters of their own affairs, won great victories in reform and opening up, formed the path, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and ushered in the great leap of the Chinese nation from standing up, getting rich to becoming strong. Historical materialism emphasizes that the masses of the people are the creators and true heroes of history; the masses of the people themselves create their own history and are the main body of historical activities. Historical experience also fully shows that the fundamental strength for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era lies with the people, and only by relying on the people can we create a great historical cause and continue to write a new chapter of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

To rely on the people to create great historical causes, we must firmly establish the idea of the people's status as the main body. Comrade Mao Zedong pointed out that "the people, and only the people, are the driving force for creating world history,"<sup>1</sup> and he proclaimed with emotion the strongest voice in history, "Long live the people." Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that the people are the creators of history and the people are the real heroes. Whether or not we respect the people's status as the main body and whether we recognize the main role of the masses in creating history is the fundamental mark that distinguishes the materialist view of history from the idealistic view of history. The foundation of the Party lies in the people, its bloodline lies in the people, and its strength lies in the people. Only by unifying respect for the law of social development with respect for the people's status as the main body of history can we unite the strong force for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

To rely on the people to create great historical deeds, we must go deep among the masses, conduct investigations and studies, learn from the people, and seek education from the people. "Those who know the house leak are in Uxia, and those who know the government are in the grass field. "The people know the actual situation best, find problems the most, have the most experience in solving problems, and are the most able to create solutions to problems." Comrade Deng Xiaoping said: "Many things in the course of reform and opening up were put forward by the masses in practice..."

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 1031.

It is the wisdom of the masses, the wisdom of the collective. "<sup>1</sup> The great cause of building socialism with Chinese characteristics is fundamentally the cause of the broad masses of the people themselves, and the experience created by the masses in practice reflects the objective law of the development of things and represents the direction of social progress. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "Every breakthrough and development in the understanding and practice of reform and opening up, the emergence and development of every new thing in reform and opening up, and the creation and accumulation of experience in every aspect of reform and opening up all come from the practice and wisdom of hundreds of millions of people."<sup>2</sup> To sum up the experience of the CPC's development and growth, it is very important to always regard the people as the source of wisdom and strength, and always deeply root the growth of political wisdom and the enhancement of ruling skills in the creative practice of the people. Comrade Xi Jinping warned the whole party to soberly realize: "In front of the people, we will always be primary school students, and we must consciously worship the people as teachers, seek advice from the able, and ask the wise for advice."<sup>3</sup> Only by deeply understanding the masses, understanding reality, promptly discovering and summing up the fresh experiences created by the masses of the people, elevating them to theories and policies, and mobilizing and guiding the people to carry out new practices can the cause of the party and the state always maintain its vitality.

To rely on the people to create great historical causes, we must take whether the masses of the people are satisfied or not as the first criterion for testing our work. The masses of the people can encourage what they support, do well what they expect, and correct what the masses oppose. The fundamental criterion for judging whether the party's line, principles, and policies are correct can only be "whether the people agree or not, whether they are happy or not, whether they support it or not, and whether they approve or disapprove." Whether the Communist Party of China can hand over qualified answers can only be judged by the people and tested by history.

## 2. insist on doing everything for the people

The Communist Party of China is a Marxist party, the vanguard of the Chinese working class, the vanguard of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation, and has no special interests of its own other than the interests of the people.

---

<sup>1</sup> Deng Xiaoping Chronology (1975-1997) (Part II), Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 1350.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 68.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 68.

Adhering to doing everything for the people is the starting point and foothold of all the work of the Communist Party of China, and it is also the intrinsic meaning and practical requirement of adhering to the people-centered approach in the new era.

The Communist Party is a political party that emerged for the benefit of the people. The Communist Manifesto clearly stipulates that Communists have no interests different from those of the proletariat as a whole, and its ultimate goal is to realize that "the free development of everyone is the condition for the free development of all"<sup>1</sup> of communist society. The Communist Party of China is a faithful practitioner of Marxism, and has consistently adhered to the needs of the people, the pursuit of the people, and the happiness of the people in the period of revolution, construction, and reform, and has always kept the people's warmth and warmth in mind and placed the people in the supreme position.

Adhering to doing everything for the people is the consistent value pursuit of the Communist Party of China. At the beginning of its founding, the Party defined its purpose as "serving the people"; at the beginning of reform and opening up, the Party took resolving "the contradiction between the people's growing material and cultural needs and backward social production" as the fundamental task of building socialism with Chinese characteristics; in the process of reform and opening up, the Party successively put forward that "comprehensive human development is the essential requirement of socialism" and "Adhere to the people-oriented, comprehensive, coordinated and sustainable development concept" in accordance with the changes in economic and social development. New and significant progress has been made in safeguarding and developing the interests of the people. The Party has always adhered to the people-centered approach in all periods, and as a result, it has won the broad support of the masses of the people, and only then has a solid mass and social foundation for the development of the cause of the Party and the country.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, in the face of the new expectations and new requirements of the people yearning for a better life, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has clearly put forward the people-centered thinking, emphasizing that seeking happiness for the people is the original intention of the Chinese Communists, and why the human problem is the touchstone for testing the nature of a political party and a political power; and emphasizing the people-centered development concept to promote the "five-in-one" in an integrated manner. The overall layout and coordinated promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout; emphasizing that all fields such as economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction, ecological civilization construction and party building in the new era should reflect the requirements of people-centeredness. Since the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China,

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 422.

Proceeding from solving the main contradictions in our society, Comrade Xi Jinping proposed to focus on solving the problem of unbalanced and insufficient development, vigorously improving the quality of development, and better meeting the growing needs of the people in economic, political, cultural, social and ecological aspects. This series of important expositions fully demonstrates our party's fundamental political stand of being people-centered, and has become the fundamental political guideline for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

### 3. Adhere to the party's mass line

The party's mass line means doing everything for the masses, relying on the masses in everything, coming from the masses and going to the masses. The party's mass line is the systematic application of the materialist view of history in all the party's activities of the principle that the masses of the people are the creators of history, a scientific summary and induction of the party's historical experience, an organic unity of Marxist values and methodology, and a full embodiment of the fundamental political stand centered on the people.

From the perspective of values, all the work of the Communist Party of China is carried out with the people at the center.

Everything for the masses" is the embodiment of the party's fundamental purpose. Upholding the interests of the masses above all else is the highest political principle that every Communist Party member must follow. The Marxist party firmly believes that the masses of the people can liberate themselves, and the party must believe in the masses, mobilize the masses, and lead the masses to struggle for the realization of lofty goals. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The people are the source of our strength. We are deeply aware that everyone's strength is limited, but as long as we are united in our will, there will be no difficulty that cannot be overcome."<sup>1</sup> "Everything for the masses" is the value goal of the party's work, and "relying on the masses in everything" is the means to achieve the value goal.

From a methodological point of view, "coming from the masses and going to the masses" is the party's fundamental leadership method and working method, emphasizing that the formulation of the party's line, principles, and policies should fully understand the opinions of the masses and pool the wisdom of the masses; in the process of implementing policy decisions, it is also necessary to constantly listen to the opinions of the masses for revision and improvement, and the results of policy decisions and implementation must stand the approval of the masses and the test of practice.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 5.

Historical experience proves that by adhering to the party's mass line, the party's cause and the interests of the masses will prosper; if we deviate from the party's mass line, the party's cause and the interests of the masses will be harmed. To realize the people's yearning for a better life in the new era, the Party must adhere to the fundamental position of taking the people as the center and prevent separation from the people at all times. To this end, it is necessary to administer the party strictly in an all-round way, strengthen education in ideals and convictions, never forget the original aspiration and keep in mind the mission, consciously accept the supervision of the people, educate and guide the broad masses of party members and cadres to consciously practice the party's fundamental purpose, deeply root the mass viewpoint and mass line in their thinking and concretely implement them in action, focus on solving the problems of the masses' most realistic interests, constantly enhance the people's trust and confidence in the party, and lay a solid class foundation and mass foundation for the party's long-term ruling.

## Section 2: The people's yearning for a better life is the party's goal

The Communist Party of China comes from the people, and all its work must take the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people as the highest standard, constantly meet the new expectations of the people for a better life, and constantly solve the most direct and realistic interests of the people. Striving to let the people live a better life is where the party's mission, value and life lie.

### 1. The fundamental embodiment of the nature and purpose of the Communist Party of China

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Seeking happiness for the people is the original intention of the Chinese communists. We must never forget this original intention, and always take the people's yearning for a better life as the goal."<sup>1</sup> Adhering to everything for the people and leading the people of the whole country to continuously create a better life vividly interprets the fundamental position of the Chinese communists, the fundamental purpose of the party to serve the people wholeheartedly, and the fundamental pursuit of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the First Plenary Session of the 19th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China", Qiushi, No. 1, 2018.

Taking the people's yearning for a better life as the goal of struggle fundamentally answers the question of "for whom?" The question of why people are a fundamental question and a question of principle. If this problem is not solved well, one will not be qualified to be called a communist or a Marxist. The Communist Party of China comes from the people, takes root in the people, and serves the people; the Party has no special interests that are divorced from the masses, Party members do not have a special position above the masses, and no Party member is allowed to break away from the masses and be above the masses. The entire history of the Party's struggle is a history of serving the people and relying on the people, a history of centering on the people, and a history of serving the people wholeheartedly.

Taking the people's yearning for a better life as the goal of struggle, the core is to stand firmly on the people's position. Representing the interests of the people, standing on the side of the people, and serving the people wholeheartedly are the fundamental political positions of the Communist Party of China. The question of position is not illusory, it is real. In capitalist society, capital is the real master, capital logic is the leading logic of society, power is subject to capital, subject to capital, and also serves capital, which determines that bourgeois political parties can only represent the interests of capital. In socialist China, the people are the real masters, representing the interests of the people is where the highest interests of the Communist Party of China lie, and always standing on the side of the people is the lofty mission of the Communist Party of China. Chinese Communists must consciously stand on the side of the overwhelming majority of the people, consciously stand on the people's standpoint to think about problems, make decisions, do business, and be faithful representatives of the people's interests. Without this, there is a fundamental departure from Marxism; To betray this article is to fundamentally betray the cause of the communists.

The key to taking the people's yearning for a better life as the goal is to implement it in specific actions to serve the people, which is reflected in promoting all aspects and links of economic and social development. Comrade Xi Jinping adheres to the people-centered development thinking and makes a series of important expositions on creating a better life for the people and ensuring and improving people's livelihood. For example, on realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, it emphasizes that "the Chinese dream is, in the final analysis, the dream of the people"; on building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, emphasizing that "a moderately prosperous society is not a well-off, the key is to look at the fellow villagers"; "no one can be left behind on the road to a moderately prosperous life"; on comprehensively deepening reform, emphasizing "closely relying on the people to promote reform" and "the fruits of reform and development will benefit all the people more equitably"; on comprehensively governing the country according to law, emphasizing "striving to let the people feel fairness and justice in every judicial case"; Regarding the strict management of the party in an all-round way, he stressed that "the key issue is to maintain the flesh-and-blood ties between the party and the masses of the people";

Regarding targeted poverty alleviation and targeted poverty alleviation, he stressed that "we must not leave behind a poor area or a poor mass." All these are more realistic and targeted important requirements for meeting the people's expectations for a better life, and have been translated into effective practical steps and concrete actions of the Party and the people.

## 2. Grasp the people's new expectations for a better life

A better life is the foundation of people's happiness and social harmony. Satisfying the people's expectations for a better life is the essential requirement of the CPC's adherence to building the party for the public and ruling for the people. The Party's efforts in revolution, construction, and reform are all aimed at enabling the people to live a better life. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Serving the people wholeheartedly is the fundamental starting point and foothold of all our party's actions."<sup>1</sup> To test the effectiveness of all work, we must ultimately see whether the people have truly benefited from the benefits, whether the people's living standards have been truly improved, and whether the people's rights and interests have been truly guaranteed. To grasp the people's new expectations for a better life in the new era, we need to pay attention to its salient characteristics.

First, the area of demand has expanded considerably, and needs that have already been met give rise to new needs. Marx and Engels pointed out: "The first need that has been satisfied, the activities that have been satisfied, and the tools that have been acquired to satisfy the need give rise to new needs."<sup>2</sup> With the entry of socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era, people's needs for a better life have become more and more extensive, not only putting forward higher requirements for material and cultural life, but also increasing requirements in democracy, rule of law, fairness, justice, security, environment and other aspects. When meeting with Chinese and foreign journalists by members of the Standing Committee of the 18th Political Bureau of the Central Committee, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out with deep affection: "Our people love life and look forward to better education, more stable jobs, more satisfactory income, more reliable social security, higher levels of medical and health services, more comfortable living conditions, and a more beautiful environment, and hope that children can grow up, work better, and live better."<sup>3</sup> Compared with "material cultural needs,"

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 28.

<sup>2</sup> Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 531.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 4.



The content needed for a better life of the people undoubtedly covers a wider range, more levels and a wider range of fields, involving economic, political, cultural, social, ecological civilization and other aspects. Human needs not only include the survival needs of maintaining life activities, but also include the development needs of pursuing self-realization and free and all-round development, and the enjoyment needs of pursuing a happy life have also been put forward as never before; people not only pursue objective life needs, but also incorporate subjective needs such as a sense of gain, happiness, security, and dignity into the scope of a better life.

Second, the specific difficulties of specific groups of people in cities and towns need to be focused on and effectively resolved. Specific groups include urban subsistence allowances, the elderly, migrant workers, university graduates and urban registered unemployed persons, etc., because of their own characteristics, these groups face different difficulties, and the solutions must also be focused. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We have about 18 million urban subsistence population, for them, we must ensure basic living by improving various security systems; It is necessary to increase the supply of old-age services and enhance the convenience of medical services for the more than 300 million elderly people over the age of 65; gradually and fairly enjoy basic local public services for the more than 200 million migrant workers in cities and towns; suitable living conditions for the tens of millions of college graduates and other permanent residents employed in megacities; and professional skills for the more than 9 million registered unemployed in cities and towns, so as to achieve stable employment and stable income; and so on."<sup>1</sup> In short, we must adhere to the people-centered development thinking, focus on the specific difficulties faced by specific groups of people, do more things to help them solve practical problems, and promote sustained and healthy economic development and social harmony and stability.

Third, "good life" is positioned as a new standard of life. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the people are no longer satisfied with their basic living needs such as food, clothing, housing and transportation, but should pursue democracy and rule of law in political life, spiritual civilization in cultural life, fairness and justice in social life, and beautiful China in ecological civilization. The satisfaction of material needs has laid the foundation for people's happiness, but the people not only hope to obtain higher quality social public goods, but also look forward to a safe, stable, harmonious and green living environment, a social environment in which "people can make the best use of their talents, the land can make the best of their benefits, the materials can make the best use of their resources, and the goods can flow smoothly", a democratic and orderly political environment with fair law enforcement and clean rivers.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 80.

In this way, people can really continue to get more "good" feelings.

### 3. adhere to the people-centered work orientation

To take the people's yearning for a better life as the goal of struggle, we must adhere to the people-centered work orientation. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has always adhered to the people-centered development thinking, always adhered to the people-centered work orientation, taken the benefit of the people as the greatest achievement, shouldered the responsibility of reform and development, implemented a large number of measures to benefit the people, promoted more and fairer development results to benefit all the people, and continuously met the growing needs of the people for a better life at a higher level. In this regard, there are the following characteristics.

First, highlight the focus of work. In any era, the interests of the people are often multifaceted, and these problems range from light to heavy, slow and urgent; we must not grasp the eyebrows and beards at once; we must hold the "bull's nose" and persist in combining overall advancement with key breakthroughs. Without focus, there will be no clue and no rules; without focus, there will be no policy and no proposition. To solve the problem of interests that the people are concerned about, it is not possible to advance by leaps and go hand in hand; it is not possible to advance in unison with excessive weight and weight; nor can it exert equal efforts and advance at the same time; it is not possible to rush forward in a rush, nor can it talk about troops on paper. To solve the most direct and realistic interests of the people, it is very necessary to grasp the following key points. First, strive to do a good job in running education to the satisfaction of the people. Education is the cornerstone of national rejuvenation and social progress, which is related to the future of the country. It is necessary to implement the fundamental task of cultivating morality and cultivating people, cultivate socialist builders and successors with all-round development of morality, intelligence, physique, aesthetics, and labor, and provide strong talent guarantee and intellectual support for economic and social development. The second is to make precise efforts to grasp employment work. Servitude is the foundation of people's livelihood. It is necessary to adhere to the employment priority strategy, implement a more active employment policy, create more jobs, focus on solving structural employment contradictions, encourage entrepreneurship to bring employment, and achieve relatively full and high-quality employment. The third is to promote a more reasonable and orderly distribution of income. Income distribution is the source of people's livelihood, and it is the most important and direct way to improve people's livelihood and realize that the fruits of development are shared by the people. The fourth is to establish and improve a fairer and more sustainable social security system. Social security acts as a social stabilizer. It is necessary to implement the universal participation plan and strengthen policy convergence.

Improve the insurance system for basic old-age care for urban workers, basic old-age pension for urban and rural residents, basic medical care in urban areas, unemployment, work-related injury, and childbirth, improve the social assistance system, and raise the level of social welfare. Fifth, improve the people's health. Without universal health, there can be no overall well-off. It is necessary to put people's life safety and health first, adhere to the people's first and life first, and promote the construction of a healthy China. Sixth, promote balanced population development. Adhere to the basic national policy of family planning, further release fertility potential, alleviate the pressure of population aging, and ensure population security.

Second, keep the bottom line of people's livelihood. The bottom line is an insurmountable warning line, a critical point at which things change. "Bottom-line thinking" is to be in awe of the bottom line and keep it. As far as people's livelihood work is concerned, the bottom line is the lifeline, safety line, and hope line of the people, and it is the boundary line that can be retreated and must be defended. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that the work of people's livelihood must guard the bottom line and firmly establish the bottom line, and the fundamental truth is here. Adhere to the social policy to support the bottom, in accordance with the requirements of everyone's participation, everyone's efforts, and everyone's enjoyment, and strive to ensure the basic people's livelihood. On the premise of adhering to this principle, it is particularly necessary to do more work to help people in distress, pay special attention to the masses in difficulty, always keep their safety and well-being in mind, show concern for their welfare, and do everything possible to help them solve their worries and difficulties.

Third, improve institutional design. System building is fundamental and a strong guarantee for people's livelihood. The key to adhering to the people-centered work orientation is to make more effective system design and institutional arrangements, gradually establish an institutional system with equal rights, fair opportunities and fair rules as the main content, and strive to create an institutional environment that guarantees fairness and safeguards the bottom line. In the final analysis, people's livelihood issues such as education, medical care, narrowing the income gap, environmental pollution control, judicial justice, and anti-corruption must be implemented through systems; with a fair and just system, there is a solid foundation for solving the most direct and realistic interests of the people.

Fourth, reasonably guide expectations. Expectations are expectations and prospects for the future. Good expectations for people's livelihood can often be transformed into a calm social mentality and healthy and orderly social actions, so that people have motivation, patience and confidence to actively seek solutions to practical problems. People's livelihood expectations are unstable, which is bound to be pessimistic and disappointed in society, and there will be panic and impatience and negative emotions, resulting in risk accumulation and challenges to social harmony and political stability. Especially in the context of a more complex domestic and international environment and increasing downward pressure on the economy, it is even more important to reasonably guide expectations.

Only by rationally viewing the hot and difficult issues in economic and social development and fully understanding that it is impossible to make up for the shortcomings of people's livelihood can we gather the confidence and strength to overcome difficulties and better safeguard the overall situation of reform, development and stability.

### Section 3: Steadily advancing in the direction of common prosperity for all the people

Since ancient times, human society has pursued and explored common prosperity, but true common prosperity can only be achieved when socialism develops to a certain extent. As a Marxist political party, the Communist Party of China regards leading the people to create a better life and achieve common prosperity as its unswerving goal. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The development we pursue is development that benefits the people, and the prosperity we pursue is the common prosperity of all the people." Whether reform and development succeed or not, the ultimate criterion is whether the people have jointly enjoyed the fruits of reform and development. "<sup>1</sup>

#### 1. Common prosperity is the fundamental principle of socialism with Chinese characteristics

The concept of common prosperity can be understood from two dimensions: productivity and production relations. "Common" reflects the way members of society occupy wealth, which is relative to the polarization caused by private ownership, and is a concentrated embodiment of the nature of social production relations; "affluent" reflects the degree of ownership of wealth by members of society, which is relative to poverty and is a concentrated embodiment of the development level of social productive forces. In this sense, common prosperity is a concept that reflects specific productive forces and production relations.

The Communist Party of China has always regarded sharing the fruits of development and leading the people to achieve common prosperity as its value goal.

---

<sup>1</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 35.

After the founding of New China, Comrade Mao Zedong raised the issue of common prosperity and continued to explore it. "Now that we implement such a system, such a plan, we can become richer and stronger year by year, and we can see richer and stronger year by year." And this wealth is common wealth, this strength, is common strength, everyone has a share."<sup>1</sup> Since the reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping has summed up the lessons of the past, once again emphasized the issue of common prosperity and its way of realization, regarded common prosperity as one of the basic principles of socialism, and summarized common prosperity as the essential connotation of socialism. Comrade Jiang Zemin stressed: "Achieving common prosperity is the fundamental principle and essential characteristic of socialism, and it must not be shaken."<sup>2</sup> Comrade Hu Jintao also demanded: "Let all the people share the fruits of reform and development, and enable all the people to advance steadily in the direction of common prosperity."<sup>3</sup>

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era. A distinctive feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era is that the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country unite and struggle, constantly create a better life, and gradually realize common prosperity for all the people on the basis of production and development. At the new historical starting point, Comrade Xi Jinping attaches great importance to the issue of common prosperity and emphasizes that achieving common prosperity is the essential requirement of socialism.

An important aspect that distinguishes socialism from capitalism lies in its profound criticism of capitalist polarization and huge economic and social inequality, emphasizing adherence to the people-centered approach and dedication to the pursuit of all-round human development and common prosperity for all people. In his speech at the celebration of the 95th anniversary of the founding of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "Leading the people to create a happy life is the unswerving goal of our party. We must conform to the people's yearning for a better life, adhere to the people-centered development thinking, focus on ensuring and improving people's livelihood, develop various social undertakings, increase the intensity of income distribution and regulation, win the battle against poverty, ensure the people's equal participation and equal development rights, so that the results of reform and development will benefit all the people more equitably, and steadily move towards the goal of achieving common prosperity for all the people."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 6, People's Publishing House, 1999, p. 495.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Jiang Zemin, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2006, p. 466.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Hu Jintao, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 2016, p. 291.

<sup>4</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 40.

The main contradiction in our society has changed from the contradiction between the people's growing material and cultural needs and backward social production to the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development. To adapt to the changes in the main contradictions in society, it is necessary not only to promote high-quality economic development, solve the problem of insufficient development, and further expand the "cake", but also to coordinate the distribution of income, solve the problem of unbalanced development, and further divide the "cake." In view of the imbalance in development, especially the widening gap between income and personnel, Comrade Xi Jinping particularly stressed the need to achieve shared development. "The 'cake' of China's economic development continues to expand, but the problem of unfair distribution is more prominent, and the gap between income and the level of public services in urban and rural areas is large. In sharing the achievements of reform and development, there are still imperfections in both the actual situation and the system design. To this end, we must adhere to the principle that development is for the people, development depends on the people, and the fruits of development are shared by the people, and make more effective institutional arrangements so that all the people can steadily advance in the direction of common prosperity." <sup>1</sup> Practice shows that only by earnestly solving the problem of sharing the fruits of reform and achieving common prosperity in shared development can we fully embody the superiority of socialism, effectively enhance the momentum of development, and consolidate and strengthen the mass foundation for the party's long-term ruling power.

## 2. Gradually realize common prosperity for all the people

The gradual realization of common prosperity is a systematic project. "Our country is in the primary stage of socialism and will be for a long time, and we cannot do things beyond the stage, but this does not mean that we will do nothing in gradually realizing common prosperity, but we must do as much as possible according to the existing conditions, accumulate small victories into big victories, and constantly advance towards the goal of common prosperity for all the people." <sup>2</sup> To gradually achieve common prosperity, we must adhere to the principles of sharing by all, comprehensive sharing, joint construction and sharing, and gradual sharing, adhere to doing our best and doing what we can, comprehensively promote the construction of relevant fields, and form a long-term mechanism for sustainable development. Doing our best emphasizes determination and will, that is, how much ability to contribute, and actively create conditions for better results;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Press, 2016, p. 827.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 214-215.

Doing what we can and insisting on seeking truth from facts means eating, dressing, and measuring household belongings, without mentioning unrealistic goals, and not doing things that go beyond stages and abilities.

Persist in taking economic construction as the center, further liberate and develop social productive forces, and lay a solid material foundation for achieving common prosperity. Production is the premise and foundation of distribution, and only on the basis of the continuous development of productive forces can common prosperity be truly realized. China is still in the primary stage of socialism and will remain for a long time, it is still the largest developing country in the world, and development is still the top priority of contemporary China and the key to solving all China's problems. We must firmly grasp the primary stage of socialism, which is the greatest national condition, firmly base ourselves on the primary stage of socialism, which is the greatest reality, unswervingly persist in taking economic construction as the center, fully mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative, and creativity of the masses, constantly liberate and develop the productive forces, and improve the quality and efficiency of development. Only in this way can we continuously meet the people's growing needs for a better life in all aspects, continuously improve their living standards, and gradually achieve common prosperity. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that the realization of social fairness and justice is determined by many factors, the most important of which is the level of economic and social development. We must firmly grasp the center of economic construction, promote sustained and healthy economic development, further expand the 'cake', and lay a more solid material foundation for ensuring social fairness and justice. "<sup>1</sup>

Adhere to the two "unwavering" and consolidate the foundation of the economic system for achieving common prosperity. The basic economic system with public ownership as the main body and the common development of various ownership economies is an important pillar of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics. Both the public and non-public economies are components of the socialist market economy, an important foundation for China's economic and social development, and an important condition for achieving common prosperity. In today's China, we must unswervingly consolidate and develop the public ownership economy and adhere to the status of the main body of public ownership, which plays a fundamental role in enhancing China's economic strength, safeguarding social fairness and justice, preventing polarization, gradually realizing common prosperity and promoting social harmony. At the same time, we must unswervingly encourage, support and guide the development of the non-public economy, which is of great significance for promoting economic growth, expanding social employment, increasing fiscal revenue, improving people's living standards and promoting common prosperity.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 96.

Coordinate urban and rural development and regional development, and promote common prosperity between urban and rural areas and common prosperity in all regions. The dual structure of urban and rural areas is an important cause of the gap between the rich and the poor. We must strive to make major breakthroughs in coordinating urban-rural relations, especially in breaking the dual structure of urban and rural areas, promoting the equal exchange of urban and rural factors and the balanced allocation of public resources, implementing the strategy of rural revitalization, injecting new impetus into rural development, and allowing the vast number of farmers to participate in the process of reform and development on an equal footing and enjoy the fruits of reform and development together. Regional development gaps are also an important reason for common prosperity. It is necessary to properly implement the coordinated regional development strategy, establish a more effective new mechanism for coordinated regional development, and promote the gradual realization of common prosperity in the process of continuously improving the income level and quality of life of the people in all regions.

Persist in ensuring and improving people's livelihood in the process of development. It is necessary to seek more benefits for the people's livelihood and relieve more worries about the people's livelihood, continuously make new progress in providing education for the young, learning and teaching, earning income from hard work, treating the sick, providing care for the elderly, housing and housing, and supporting the weak, so as to make up for the shortcomings of the people's livelihood in the process of development, so that the people's sense of gain, happiness and security will be more fulfilling, more secure and more sustainable. To achieve common prosperity, we must focus on narrowing the income gap, which is a key task in the field of people's livelihood. It is necessary to adhere to the principle of distribution according to work and improve the system and mechanism for distribution according to key factors; expand the group of middle-income people, increase the income of low-income earners, regulate those with excessive income, and ban illegal income; persist in achieving simultaneous growth of residents' income while economic growth, and achieve simultaneous increase in labor remuneration while increasing labor productivity; and broaden the channels for residents' labor income and property income.

## Section 4: Continuously promote the all-round development of the human person

The idea of comprehensive human development is the fundamental value and highest proposition of Marxism, an important part of Marxist theory, and an important content of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Comprehensive human development is not only the basic principle of communism, but also the value goal of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

From all-round human development to people-centered, this is a huge leap from general theory to concrete reality, and implements the theoretical red line of Marxism.



In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, it is necessary to earnestly practice the people-centered development thinking, better meet the growing diversified, multi-level and multi-faceted needs of the broadest masses of the people in economic, political, cultural, social, ecological and other aspects, and continuously promote all-round human development.

### 1. the basic connotation of all-round human development

Marxism holds that the all-round development of man is the development of the most fundamental and essential thing of man, and that "man occupies his own comprehensive essence in a comprehensive way, that is, as a complete person"<sup>1</sup> That is, the comprehensive development of the essential power of man as an end in itself. In connection with the essential provisions of human beings, the all-round development of human beings has very rich connotations, which is specifically manifested in the comprehensive development of human capabilities, the full development of human social relations and the free development of human personality.

Comrade Xi Jinping once explained human development from the essential characteristics of human beings, pointing out: "Man is essentially a cultural person, not a materialized person; an active and comprehensive person, not a rigid, one-dimensional' person." Human beings not only pursue material conditions and economic indicators, but also pursue happiness index; not only pursue the harmony of natural ecology but also pursue the harmony of spiritual ecology; not only pursue efficiency and fairness, but also pursue the harmony of interpersonal relationships and the fulfillment of spiritual life, and pursue the meaning of life. "<sup>2</sup> This idea explains the essence of man from the relationship between the individual and society, and reveals the all-round development of man from the relationship between man and the community of social life. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly stated in the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China: "Ensure that all the people have a greater sense of gain in joint construction and shared development, and continuously promote the all-round development of people."<sup>3</sup> These ideas have further inherited and enriched the Marxist thinking on the all-round development of man.

First, comprehensive human development means the comprehensive development of human capacities. The comprehensive development of human ability means that people are no longer limited to the division of occupations, and can freely choose occupations according to their own specialties, hobbies, etc.;

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 189.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: *Zhijiang Xinyu*, Zhejiang People's Publishing House, 2007, p. 150.

<sup>3</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, p. 19.

In this way, they can give full play to their talents and abilities in social practice, and can flexibly change their roles and functions to meet different labor needs. When talking about the all-round development of man, Marx often used such expressions as "the all-round development of all one's own abilities" and "the all-round development of all human forces." When talking about well-rounded people, Engels believed that this is a person who is capable in all aspects, "exerting all his talents and strength." According to Lenin, this is "a well-trained person, that is, a person who can do everything."<sup>1</sup> The comprehensive enrichment of human social relations and the free development of human personality require that the development of human abilities must reach a certain level. Marx believed that the all-round development of man is, in the final analysis, the development of human capacity as an end in itself, and the development of human capacity "presupposes production based on exchange value, which produces the universality of individual alienation from himself and others, as well as the universality and comprehensiveness of personal relations and personal ability."<sup>2</sup>

Second, the comprehensive development of the human person means the full development of human social relations. Social relations include the communication relationship between people, the economic relations and production relations produced by people in social interactions, the relationship between people and nature, and various relationships in ideology and culture, etc., and the richness of social relations reflects the essence of human beings. In his *Theses on Feuerbach*, Marx pointed out: "The essence of man is not an abstraction inherent in a single person, but in its reality it is the sum of all social relations." "People are not only the product of social relations, but also survive and develop in certain social relations all the time, in the sense that "social relations actually determine how far a person can develop."<sup>3</sup> Of course, the development of human ability is the most important content of human development, but Marx never simply reduced human development to the development of ability, because the formation, development and expression of human ability are inseparable from human social relations. The productive forces must be expressed in certain relations of production, political forces must be expressed in certain political relations, and spiritual forces must be expressed in certain spiritual relations. It is from the perspective of the development of human social relations that Mark Tian explains the three stages of human development from "human dependence" to "human independence based on material dependence" and then to "free individuality."

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Lenin, vol. 4, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 159.

<sup>2</sup> The Complete Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 30, People's Publishing House, 1995, p. 112.

<sup>3</sup> The Complete Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1960, p. 295.

Therefore, if human development means the enrichment of human social relations, then the realization of comprehensive human development means the full development of all human social relations. Only by broadening the space and scope of people's activities and exchanges, broadening people's vision and mind, and improving people's political, economic, legal and cultural relations can we enhance people's autonomy in the process of enriching people's social relations.

Third, the all-round development of the human person means the free development of the human personality. On the one hand, the full development of human personality mainly includes people's interests, beliefs and the full development of human physical and intellectual strength, so that people's character and temperament are more perfect and their psychology is healthier. On the other hand, the full development of human personality is mainly manifested in the comprehensive development of human subjectivity and the enrichment and increase of human uniqueness, that is, the self-discipline of people who can restrain themselves, the free initiative to engage in social practice activities according to their own will, the independence and autonomy of being able to control their own behavior, and the originality of being able to create themselves. There is no doubt that the all-round development of human abilities and the full development of human social relations are inseparable from the free development of human personality. In a sense, the development of abilities and relationships serves the formation and development of a person's "free personality." The free development of human personality means that everyone in real social life can engage in this or that labor at will, as he wants without exceeding the boundary. Marxism holds that the true formation of man's free personality means the realization of man's all-round development, because "this personality is comprehensive in both production and consumption, and therefore the labor of individuality is no longer expressed as labor, but in the full development of activity itself."<sup>1</sup>

## 2. All-round human development is the value pursuit of socialism

In the era in which Marx lived, he based on the cruel reality of capitalist man-made servitude, explored the enslavement and restraint of human beings by solidified social relations, and emphasized that only by relying on the high development of productive forces can we fundamentally overcome this limitation, and finally realize the active abandonment of human self-alienation, that is, realize the free and comprehensive development of human beings.

---

<sup>1</sup> Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 8, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 69.

The all-round development of man or the well-rounded development of man is not a product of nature and pure nature, but a product of social history. Of course, the all-round development of man is not a fixed, established and static ideal goal, but a generation process in the process of eternal movement, change and development. To point out this qi is to prevent a mechanical, dogmatic, and rigid understanding of the all-round development of man, which will lead to the degeneration of originally alive, vibrant and dynamic theories into illusory and ethereal "utopian illusions" or lifeless blunt dogmas. At every stage of the historical development of society, the all-round development of man is being realized to varying degrees. Contradictions and problems belonging to this era will emerge in every era, and at the same time, the resolution of these contradictions and problems will lay the foundation for resolving the contradictions and problems of that era to a higher degree in the future, thereby promoting the all-round development of society and people. In the course of the historical development of this universal connection, humanity will continue to approach comprehensive development.

To understand the Marxist theory of comprehensive human development from a historical perspective, the key is to explore the specific characteristics of human nature and the realistic path to promote comprehensive human development in the process of historical development. Similarly, only by understanding the Marxist theory of comprehensive human development from the perspective of history and development can we better grasp the inheritance and development of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

After more than 40 years of reform and opening up, especially since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has not only clearly declared that "the people's yearning for a better life is our goal", but also emphasized adhering to the "people-centered" development thinking and the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, unswervingly regarded development as the first priority of the party's governance and rejuvenation of the country, persisted in liberating and developing social productive forces, and promoted sustained and healthy economic and social development. The people's living standards have achieved a historic leap; the people's sense of gain, happiness and security in the reform and development has been significantly improved, from the beginning of reform and opening up, more attention has been paid to material survival and development, and gradually transitioned to all-round and diversified development in economy, politics, culture, society and ecology, and the all-round development of people has been greatly valued and realistically realized. This is an important symbol of socialism with Chinese characteristics entering a new era. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China formally wrote the Constitution of the People's Republic of China on "promoting all-round human development", and further emphasized that in the process of realizing the "two centenary goals" and the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, it is necessary to promote the construction of a "community with a shared future for mankind" and "make new and greater contributions to mankind."

All this fully demonstrates that contemporary Chinese communists have always insisted on writing the promotion of all-round human development on the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics, insisted on embodying the promotion of all-round human development in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and insisted on implementing the promotion of all-round human development in practical actions that benefit the Chinese people and even the people of the world.

### 3. Promote all-round human development while promoting all-round social progress

Comprehensive human development is inseparable from all-round social progress. In the new era, to promote the all-round development of people, we must focus on the whole and make efforts in various aspects.

First, adhere to the people-centered development thinking. Development is a prerequisite for solving all our problems. Only by concentrating on development and focusing on the people's growing yearning for a better life can we achieve, safeguard and develop the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people. Compared with developed countries, the development of China's productive forces is still at a medium level on the whole, and unbalanced and insufficient development has become the main bottleneck to meet the people's growing needs for a better life. In the new era, we must adhere to the people-centered value orientation, always regard development as the first priority for the party to govern and rejuvenate the country, and strive to solve the problem of unbalanced and insufficient development, and strive to solve problems such as the large gap between residents' income and the relatively difficult life of some people. It is necessary to comprehensively deepen reform, especially the reform of the income distribution system, fundamentally eliminate the deep-seated institutional obstacles that affect social fairness and justice, increase the income of low-income people, and strive to narrow the gap between urban and rural areas, regions and industries.

Second, strive to achieve high-quality economic development. The quality and level of economic development determine the degree of all-round human development. Failure to pay attention to changes in the structure and level of social needs, especially the reality of increasing high-quality consumption brought about by the improvement of consumption levels, will lead to the inability to fully meet the needs of the people in the imbalance between supply and demand, and it will be difficult to achieve comprehensive human development. In the new era, compared with the new needs of the people, there is still a gap between the quality and efficiency of China's economic development. To meet the people's growing needs for a better life, we must strive to realize the transformation from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage, promote China's economy to maintain medium-high speed growth and move towards a medium-to-high-end level, not only fully meet people's material needs, but also lay a solid foundation for meeting people's high-level and diversified needs.

Third, constantly explore the path to realize the all-round development of people. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must stimulate the creativity and development vitality of the whole society, and strive to achieve higher quality, more efficient, fairer and more sustainable development!"<sup>1</sup> One of the most important points is to give human development a more "comprehensive" and "concrete" meaning. Whether it is to promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, or to realize a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country, the fundamental purpose is to realize human modernization and comprehensive human development, so that people can obtain comprehensive and equal social relations, fully enjoy the due rights such as the right to survival, security, development, participation, etc., and constantly activate and release people's initiative. It is necessary to persist in promoting the overall layout of the "five-in-one" and the "four comprehensive" strategic layout in a coordinated manner, comprehensively improve the level of material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilization, and then promote the overall improvement of the level of comprehensive human development. At the same time, we should actively promote the building of a community with a shared future for mankind, promote the construction of a world of lasting peace, universal security, common prosperity, openness, inclusiveness, cleanliness and beauty, jointly create a better future for mankind, and make positive contributions to the all-round development of mankind.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 28.

## Chapter V: Adhere to the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing

Development is the eternal theme of human society and also the eternal theme of Marxism. The concept of development is the forerunner of development actions and a concentrated embodiment of development ideas, development directions and development focuses. In the face of new trends and opportunities in economic and social development, as well as new contradictions and challenges, Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing has pointed out China's development ideas, development directions and development focus. The new development concept profoundly answers the major question of "what kind of development and how to achieve development" in China in the new era, enriches and develops the Marxist outlook on development, marks that the CPC's understanding of the trend and law of economic and social development has reached a new height, and is an important guideline that China's economic and social development must adhere to for a long time.

### Section 1: Scientific guidance that conforms to the trend of the times and reflects the law of development

The era is the mother of ideas, and practice is the source of theory. The new development concept is a scientific summary of the law of human economic and social development, conforms to the general trend of human development and the trend of the times, conforms to the new situation and new problems of China's economic and social development, and is a scientific guide to lead the great practice of the new era.

#### 1. the profound insight of the general trend of human development

The new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing does not come out of thin air;

Rather, it is formed on the basis of profoundly summing up the development experience and lessons of domestic and foreign development, and also on the basis of profoundly analyzing the general development trend at home and abroad, which reflects the profound insight of the Communist Party of China on the law of the development of human society.

The development of human society tells us that development must rely on innovation to lead, and the old path will not work. Since the great geographical discoveries, especially since the industrial revolution, the wave of world development has been surging, all of which are guided by conceptual changes and scientific and technological progress. Marx and Engels said in the Communist Manifesto: "The productive forces created by the bourgeoisie in less than a hundred years of its class rule are greater and greater than all the productive forces created by all previous generations."<sup>1</sup> Such a huge historical development of productive forces is inseparable from the Renaissance and the Scientific Revolution breaking the ideological shackles that have long bound people. The scientific and technological revolution and industrial transformation have brought about the rebirth of development and the rapid development of productive forces. Many Western countries seized the opportunity of the scientific and technological revolution and the industrial revolution to achieve a collective rise, which profoundly changed the balance of international forces. However, some countries and regions that have been in the leading position for a long time have failed to seize the opportunities of the scientific and technological revolution and the industrial revolution due to ideological imprisonment and isolation from the country, and their development has turned from prosperity to decline, gradually lagging behind the times, and even falling into a slump.

The course of the development of human society tells us that development must be coordinated development, and the path of growth without development will not work. After the end of World War II, the task of developing the economy was put back on the agenda, and the "theory of economic growth" once again appeared, advocating that development is growth and growth is development. Under the guidance of this concept, many countries, especially developing countries, regard economic growth as the top priority, industrialization as the primary goal, and GDP growth as the only criterion. The "theory of economic growth" promoted the economic take-off of some countries after the war, but it also brought serious problems such as economic structural imbalance, unfair distribution of income, agricultural and rural decay, and excessive consumption of resources. The grim reality forces people to reflect on the one-sided pursuit of economic growth and re-understand the relationship between "growth and development." Today, some developed countries overly advocate the financial industry and its derivatives, and the virtual economy is seriously disconnected from the real economy, resulting in the outbreak of the financial crisis and bringing profound disasters to the global economy.

The development of human society tells us that development must be sustainable, and the path of "pollution first and treatment later" will not work.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Communist Manifesto, People's Publishing House, 2014, p. 32.



Nature, the environment and ecosystems are prerequisites for sustainable human development. Human beings and nature are closely related to prosperity and decline, and human beings should respect nature, treat nature kindly, protect nature, and reasonably regulate the material exchange between man and nature. In the "Dialectics of Nature", Engels warned us that man, as a subject, can make nature serve his own purpose through human activities. "But let's not revel too much about our human triumph over nature. For each such victory, nature takes revenge on us."<sup>1</sup> However, Engels' warning did not change the desire of capital to deprive nature, nor did it stop human beings from trampling on nature, and the concept of "pollution first and treatment later" in Western countries is still popular. Environmental pollution, especially the "eight major pollution incidents" that have occurred since the 30s of the 20th century, ozone layer damage, global warming, sharp decline in biodiversity, and air, water quality and soil pollution problems after the 70s, make people realize the importance of green, low-carbon, circular and sustainable development of production and lifestyle.

The development of human society tells us that development must be open to the world, and the path of closed development will not work. With the historical torrent of globalization, mankind has constantly made difficult choices in opening up and closed: from 1929 to 1939, in the face of the world economic crisis, countries adopted beggar-thy-neighbor economic policies, currency depreciation, tariff increases, and the formation of exclusive economic blocs, which was an important reason for the slide of human society into the abyss of World War II. After the end of the Second World War, the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade determined the basic rules of international trade, countries reduced tariffs to each other, promoted free trade, and the world ushered in a new peak of globalization, and economic development showed a good trend. In the second half of the 20th century, the world's successful transition from middle-income to high-income economies all pursued the concept of open development. In the 21st century, mankind once again stands at the crossroads of globalization. Affected by the US financial crisis and the European debt crisis, protectionism, populism and isolationism have risen in some countries, the United States has held high the banner of "America First" and "America First", and globalization has encountered twists and turns. Nevertheless, economic globalization is still the trend of the times, and openness and cooperation are still a powerful driving force for the development of all countries.

The development of human society tells us that the fruits of development should be shared by society, and the path of abnormal development and polarization will not work. The traditional Western concept of development is essentially a development concept that "sees things but does not see people."

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 9, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 559-560.

This view of development holds that development is an economic process and that capital appreciation and expansion are the only purpose of economic growth. In a society where the laws of the market dominate everything, the growth of material wealth comes at the expense of polarization between the rich and the poor, and people often become a means of capital appreciation. The development of "seeing things but not seeing people" is popular, and the direct consequence is the abnormal development of society and the polarization of wealth. This is not only an important source of "color revolutions" and political and social turmoil in some countries, but also an important reason for the rise of populism and the rise of anti-globalization thinking in some countries. History and reality have repeatedly proved that if development is not premised on sharing and is not aimed at people, it not only lacks social fairness and justice, but also violates the law of social development and is unsustainable.

In today's world, many countries are actively innovating development concepts, improving development strategies, and striving to win the development initiative. The United States issued the National Strategic Plan for Advanced Manufacturing and the Framework for Revitalizing American Manufacturing, aiming to occupy the commanding heights of high-end manufacturing; the European Union formulated the European 2020 Strategy, proposing to achieve intelligent growth based on the development of the knowledge economy, sustainable growth based on the development of a green economy, and comprehensive growth focusing on employment improvement and poverty eradication; Japan formulated the "Japan Revitalization Strategy" and proposed the development of "social 5 · 0", the goal is to create a "more people-oriented super-intelligent society"; Russia has formulated the "National Goals and Strategic Tasks for the Development of the Russian Federation before 2024", Germany has formulated the "National Industrial Strategy 2030", and the United Kingdom launched the "Industry 2050 Strategy", aiming at the commanding heights of scientific and technological innovation.

In the final analysis, the issue of development is a question of ideas, and the competition for development strategies also reflects the battle of development concepts. The Communist Party of China puts forward a new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, conforms to the development requirements of the times, and draws lessons from the development of other countries. Establishing and implementing the new development concept is an important magic weapon for China's development to occupy the commanding heights of the times, maintain and make good use of the important strategic opportunity period, and win advantages and take the initiative in international competition.

## 2. the inherent requirements of China's actual development

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, and the main contradictions in our society have been transformed, but the basic national conditions of our country that are still in the primary stage of socialism and will remain for a long time have not changed

China's international status as the world's largest developing country has not changed, and development remains the foundation and key to solving all China's problems. To build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and realize the "two centenary goals", it is still necessary to take development as the first priority, take economic construction as the center, and continue to promote all-round economic and social development. However, development must be scientific and adhere to the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing.

The new development concept is a fundamental policy for China's economic development into the new normal. China's economy has entered a new normal and encountered a series of new situations and contradictions. From a domestic point of view, China's economic development is in the node of economic development speed shifting, economic development structural adjustment node and economic development power conversion node. The downward pressure on the economy has increased, the driving force formed by low-cost resources and factor investment has weakened significantly, and economic growth needs a stronger driving force. Under the new normal, China's economic development is facing a shift in growth rate from high-speed growth to medium-high-speed growth, a shift in development mode from scale and speed to quality and efficiency, economic restructuring from incremental capacity expansion to stock adjustment, optimization and increment, and development momentum from mainly relying on resources and low-cost labor and other factors to innovation-driven. These changes are the necessary process for China's economy to evolve to a stage with a more advanced form, a more optimized division of labor, and a more reasonable structure. From an international point of view, China's export advantages and participation in the international industrial division of labor model are facing new challenges. In 2008, the international financial crisis broke out, the world economy entered a period of deep adjustment, and the development of global trade entered a period of downturn, resulting in a slowdown in the growth rate of China's export demand. At the same time, from the historical experience of some world trading countries, as China's exports of goods account for more than 10% of the world's total, the turning point of China's export growth has arrived, and it is impossible to maintain high export growth and a high proportion of exports to GDP in the future. This requires more economic growth to be driven by innovation and expanding domestic demand, especially consumer demand. In the face of new changes in the international and domestic situation, it is obviously not feasible to follow the extensive development model and simply pursue the growth rate, and we must establish a new development concept to lead and promote China's economy from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage.

The new development concept is a strategic guide for the prominent problems and challenges facing China's development. After unremitting efforts in the 70 years since the founding of New China, especially in the more than 40 years of reform and opening up, China is generally in the period of "after development", and the interrelatedness, superposition and complexity of various contradictions and problems are becoming more and more prominent. For example, although China has become the world's second largest economy, the problems of large but not strong economy, fast but not excellent economic growth have not been solved

Economic development still relies heavily on resources and labor and other factors to invest in people, the driving force of innovation is not enough, the innovation ability is not strong, and the situation in which core technologies in key areas are subject to people has not fundamentally changed; the problem of uncoordinated development in urban and rural areas is still relatively prominent, the level and layout of productivity in different regions and different fields are very uneven, there are still insufficient development problems in some regions, some fields, and some aspects, and the development task is still very heavy; the carrying capacity of the environment has reached or is close to the upper limit, and it is difficult to bear high consumption. With extensive development, the pressure on the ecological environment has not been fundamentally alleviated; the level of China's opening up to the outside world is not high on the whole, the ability to make good use of the two markets and resources at home and abroad is not strong enough, the ability to deal with international economic and trade frictions and win the right to speak in the international economy is still relatively weak, and the ability to use international economic and trade rules is not strong enough; there is still a problem of imbalance between economic growth and improvement of people's livelihood in development, there are still many shortcomings in the field of people's livelihood, the task of poverty alleviation is arduous, the gap in income distribution is still large, and the masses are still in employment, education, medical care, housing, There are still many problems in the elderly, and the people's sense of gain and happiness still needs to be improved. These problems must be resolved in the process of building a modern and powerful socialist country. The new development concept is put forward in response to these problems and is the right solution to development problems and sustainable development.

In short, development is a process of constant change, the development environment will not remain static, the development conditions will not remain static, and the development concept will naturally not remain static. Innovating development concepts in a timely manner according to changes in the development environment and development conditions is an inherent requirement for coping with development problems and creating a new situation in development.

### 3. advanced concepts proven by development practice

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, in the face of the new normal of China's economic development, the transition period of world economic development, and the new development pattern of new breakthroughs in the development of world science and technology, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has adhered to the new development concept to lead the new normal of economic development, accelerated the formation of a mechanism and environment that advocates innovation, pays attention to coordination, advocates green, cultivates openness, and promotes sharing, and promotes economic and social development to achieve historic achievements.

First, adhere to innovative development and promote the transformation of growth momentum. Vigorously implement the innovation-driven development strategy, the reform of the scientific and technological system has been greatly promoted, a large number of major scientific and technological achievements have come out one after another, and new technologies, new production ports, new industries and new formats have flourished;

The supporting role of new momentum on the economy has been significantly enhanced, and the contribution rate of scientific and technological progress has increased from 52.2% in 2012 to 57.5% in 2018, and the country's comprehensive innovation ability ranks 17th in the world. Second, adhere to coordinated development and enhance the integrity of development. Major strategies such as the "Belt and Road" construction, the coordinated development of Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei and the development of the Yangtze River Economic Belt have been implemented, the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area has been planned and promoted, and the regional integration development of the Yangtze River Delta, ecological protection and high-quality development of the Yellow River Basin have been promoted, and the gap between regions has been narrowing. With the implementation of the rural revitalization strategy, the gap between urban and rural income has narrowed from 3.13 times in 2011 to 2.2 in 2018<sup>69</sup> times. The third is to adhere to green development and enhance the sustainability of development. The concept of "green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains" is deeply rooted in the hearts of the people, the intensity of energy and resource consumption has been greatly reduced, the prevention and control of air, water and soil pollution has achieved obvious results, and the environmental situation has been improved. Fourth, adhere to open development and create a new pattern of opening up. Advocating and promoting the joint construction of the "Belt and Road", initiating the establishment of the Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank, setting up the Silk Road Fund, and advocating the concept of win-win cooperation, the international space has broadened the international space for China's development. Holding high the banner of trade and investment liberalization and facilitation, and actively guiding economic globalization in the right direction, China's influence on global economic development and its voice in global economic governance have been greatly enhanced. Fifth, adhere to shared development and enhance people's sense of gain, happiness and security. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, more than 78 million new jobs have been created in cities and towns, the income of residents has generally increased faster than economic growth, decisive progress has been made in the battle against poverty, and the number of poor people has decreased by more than 93 million. The social security system covering urban and rural residents has been basically established, the level of security has steadily improved, the people's health and medical care level has been rapidly improved, and the degree of equalization of basic public services has been continuously improved, forming the world's largest middle-income group.

Under the guidance of the new development concept, China has successfully coped with the dual pressure of the continuous fermentation of the domestic "three-phase superposition" and the impact of the international financial crisis, maintained stable economic and social development, and reached a new level of economic strength and comprehensive national strength. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China's economy has grown by an average of about 7% per year, and the total economic volume has increased from 54 trillion yuan in 2012 to 99 trillion yuan in 2019. China's contribution rate to the world economy exceeds 30% annually, becoming the main power source and stabilizer of world economic growth.

Fundamentally speaking, the historic achievements of China's economic and social development are the result of unswervingly implementing the new development concept, resolutely correcting the concept of development, transforming the mode of development, and improving the quality and efficiency of development. Practice has fully proved that the new development concept is an advanced concept guiding China's development practice in the new era, and an important guideline that China's economic and social development must adhere to for a long time.

## Section 2: It has enriched and developed the Marxist outlook on development

The new development concept is the Sinicization and epochalization of the Marxist outlook on development by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core in the new era, and is the latest theoretical achievement of combining the basic principles of the Marxist outlook on development with China's specific reality, enriching and developing the Marxist outlook on development.

### 1. the scientific connotation and practical requirements of the new development concept

To implement the new development concept, we must grasp its scientific connotation and practical requirements, clarify the "natural" and "reasonable" in it, and enhance ideological consciousness and action consciousness.

Innovation is the number one driving force for development. The driving force of development is the source of development, which determines the speed, efficiency and sustainability of development. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has raised innovation to an unprecedented height and placed it in the primary position of the new development concept, pointing out: "If we grasp innovation, we will grasp the 'bull's nose' that affects the overall situation of economic and social development."<sup>1</sup> It has been repeatedly emphasized that the basis of development is innovation, grasping innovation is to grasp development, and seeking innovation is to seek the future. Innovation covers theoretical innovation, institutional innovation, scientific and technological innovation, cultural innovation and other aspects, runs through all national work, and is overall, systematic and integrated. To adhere to innovative development, we must put innovation at the core of the overall development of the country, and run innovative ideas through all fields of economic and social development. It is necessary to continuously emancipate the mind and guide the practice of constantly developing and changing economic and social development with theoretical innovation; it is necessary to continuously build institutional mechanisms to promote development, improve all aspects of institutional systems, and create a good institutional environment for ensuring development; it is necessary to maximize the liberation and stimulation of the huge potential of science and technology as the primary productive force, seize the commanding heights of global science and technology through scientific and technological innovation, provide an inexhaustible driving force for supporting development, and accelerate the formation of an economic system and development model mainly led and supported by innovation;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 201.

It is necessary to cultivate the sense of innovation, carry forward the spirit of innovation, establish the values of advocating innovation, and provide spiritual power for promoting development.

Coordination is an inherent requirement for sustained and healthy development. Development is a whole and a system, which requires the cooperation and linkage of all aspects, links and factors. The concept of coordinated development is put forward on the basis of summing up the lessons learned from economic and social development at home and abroad and grasping the law of development, and in view of the outstanding problems of imbalance and incoordination in China's development. While paying attention to the speed of development, coordinated development pays more attention to the wholeness, coordination and balance of development, pays more attention to the overall and comprehensive balance, pays more attention to the relationship between the local and the overall situation, the current and long-term, the key and non-key points, and pays more attention to making up for shortcomings and narrowing the gap, which is development with more complete content and higher quality. To adhere to coordinated development, in practice, it is required to firmly grasp the overall layout of the "five-in-one" and the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, correctly grasp the major relations in development, and constantly make up for the shortcomings of development and enhance the stamina for development. The key points are to promote the coordinated development of urban and rural areas, broaden the spatial layout of development, and optimize the pattern of interests of development; promote coordinated economic and social development and solve the problem of "one leg is long and one leg is short"; promote the synchronous development of new-type industrialization, informationization, urbanization, and agricultural modernization, and enhance the overall efficiency of development; promote the coordinated development of material civilization and spiritual civilization, and promote the joint enhancement of the country's "hard power" and "soft power"; promote the integrated development of economic construction and national defense construction, and adhere to the balance between development and security, and the unity of a rich country and a strong military. The ultimate goal of promoting coordinated development is to promote the stability and long-term development of China's economy and society, and promote the formation of a situation of all-round development in all regions and fields.

Green is a necessary condition for sustainable development. "Green development, in its essence, is to solve the problem of harmonious coexistence between man and nature."<sup>1</sup>The natural world is the basis and premise of the birth, existence and development of human society, and human beings can purposefully use nature and transform nature through social activities, but human beings are ultimately part of nature, and must respect nature, conform to nature, protect nature, and cannot be above nature, otherwise they will be retaliated by nature. This is a law of nature that no one can change. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, China's economy and society have achieved rapid development.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 207.

However, there are many debts in terms of ecological environment, and the environmental problems accumulated over the years have entered the stage of high intensity and frequent occurrence. At the same time, the people's requirements for clean air, clean drinking water, safe food and a beautiful environment are getting higher and higher. Adhering to green development requires putting ecological environmental protection in a more prominent position, establishing the concept that protecting the ecological environment is to protect productive forces and improving the ecological environment is to develop productive forces; adhere to the principle that green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains, protect the ecological environment like eyes, and treat the ecological environment like life. It is necessary to adhere to the basic national policy of saving resources and protecting the environment, adhere to sustainable development, adhere to the civilized development path of production development, rich life and good ecology, accelerate the construction of a resource-saving and environment-friendly society, form a new pattern of harmonious development and modernization of man and nature, promote green development methods and lifestyles, promote harmonious and symbiotic development between man and nature, build a beautiful China, and make new contributions to global ecological security.

Opening up is the only way for a country to prosper and develop. Openness brings progress, while closure inevitably leads to backwardness. "If a country and a nation want to rejuvenate, it must advance in the logic of historical progress and develop in the trend of the development of the times."<sup>1</sup> Looking back at history, open cooperation is an important driving force for enhancing the vitality of international economy and trade; looking to the future, open cooperation is the requirement of the times to promote the continuous progress of human society. Under the conditions of globalization, if we want to develop and grow with the times and continuously improve our international competitiveness, we must unswervingly open up and expand opening up. To adhere to open development, it is necessary to conform to the trend of the times, make overall use of both international and domestic markets and resources, focus on solving the problem of internal and external linkage of development, take meeting domestic demand as the starting point and foothold of development, and gradually form a new development pattern with the domestic cycle as the main body and the domestic and international dual circulation promoting each other. To expand new space, it is necessary to pursue a mutually beneficial and win-win opening strategy, develop a higher-level open economy, and build a broad community of interests; it is necessary to actively participate in global economic governance and the supply of public goods, and improve China's institutional voice in global economic governance; it is necessary to resolutely safeguard China's development interests, actively prevent various risks, and ensure national economic security.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Openness, Co-creation, Prosperity, Innovation Leading the Future: Keynote Speech at the Opening Ceremony of the Boao Forum for Asia Annual Conference 2018", People's Publishing House, 2018, p. 5-6.



Sharing is the essential requirement of socialism with Chinese characteristics. "Governing the country is constant, and benefiting the people is the foundation. Allowing the broad masses of the people to share the fruits of reform and development is the essential requirement of socialism, a concentrated embodiment of the superiority of the socialist system, and an important embodiment of the CPC's fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly. Shared development focuses on solving the problem of social fairness and justice, and the essence is to adhere to the people-centered approach. It mainly includes four meanings: First, from the perspective of coverage, it requires sharing by all people. Shared development is enjoyed by everyone and each has its own place, not shared by a few and shared by some people. Second, from the perspective of content, comprehensive sharing is required. Shared development means sharing the achievements of national economic, political, cultural, social and ecological construction, and comprehensively protecting the legitimate rights and interests of the people in all aspects.

From the perspective of the way of implementation, it requires joint construction and sharing. Co-construction can be shared, and the process of co-construction is also a process of sharing. It is necessary to give full play to democracy, extensively gather the wisdom of the people, stimulate the people's strength to the greatest extent, and form a vivid situation in which everyone participates, everyone does their best, and everyone has a sense of achievement. Fourth, from the perspective of the promotion process, gradual sharing is required. Shared development is a process from low level to high level, from unbalanced to balanced, and we must think about and design sharing policies based on national conditions and economic and social development levels. These four aspects are interconnected and mutually reinforcing, and should be understood and grasped as a whole. On the one hand, it is necessary to fully mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative and creativity of the masses of the people to continuously make the "cake" bigger; on the other hand, it is necessary to divide the "cake" that is constantly expanding so that all the people can have a greater sense of gain in joint construction and shared development, enhance the momentum of development, enhance the unity of the people, and steadily advance in the direction of common prosperity.

## 2. The latest achievements of the Marxist outlook on development

The outlook on development is the world outlook and methodology of human development, and is people's overall view on the connotation, essence, purpose and requirements of development. The Marxist outlook on development is an open and constantly developing theoretical system, and its actual form has always been revitalized and enriched in the process of integrating with specific countries, specific times, and specific practices. In the more than 70 years since the founding of New China, especially in the more than 40 years of reform and opening up, the Chinese Communists have always put forward corresponding development concepts and strategies in a timely manner in accordance with changes in the situation and tasks, leading and guiding China's development to achieve new leaps.

The Chinese practice of the Marxist outlook on development has become an important part of the Sinicization of Marxism.

At the beginning of the founding of New China, Comrade Mao Zedong made a pioneering exploration on how to promote China's social development on the basis of "one poor and two white" in light of China's actual conditions. In important literatures such as "On the Ten Major Relations" and "On the Correct Handling of Contradictions Among the People," he comprehensively and systematically expounded the overall major relations that must be handled well in socialist construction, put forward the development policy of comprehensive balance and overall consideration, and stressed the need to take agriculture as the foundation, industry as the lead, and coordinated development of agriculture as the priority, thus laying an important foundation for the formation of a Marxist development theory of Sinicization.

After the reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping, basing himself on China's main contradictions and basic national conditions, clearly put forward that "development is the last word" and promoted the establishment of the party's basic line centered on economic construction; he proposed that the fundamental task of socialism is to liberate and develop the productive forces, and that the key to solving all problems in China is to rely on its own development; he clearly defined the "three-step" modernization development strategy and formed a development theory for the initial stage of socialism. At the turn of the century, Comrade Jiang Zemin put forward that development is the most important task for the party to govern and rejuvenate the country, expounded that development is the main theme running through the important thinking of the "three represents," stressed the need to coordinate the development of material, spiritual, and political civilizations, implement the strategy of rejuvenating the country through science and education, the strategy of sustainable development, and the strategy of large-scale development of the western region, and persist in following the road of new-type industrialization. After the 16th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Hu Jintao proposed to take development as the key to solving all problems in China, firmly establish and fully implement the scientific outlook on development, emphasize that development is the first meaning, the core is people-oriented, the basic requirement is comprehensive, coordinated and sustainable, and the fundamental method is to take into account all aspects, and improve the "five-in-one" of economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction. The convex layout of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics puts forward that to achieve the grand goal of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, we must promote the coordinated development of socialist material, political and spiritual civilizations, persist in promoting all-round social progress and all-round human development on the basis of economic development, and persist in realizing harmonious coexistence between man and nature in the development and utilization of nature, and achieve sustainable economic and social development. All these have made important contributions to enriching the Marxist outlook on development.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has scientifically grasped the profound changes in the foundation, environment, conditions, goals and tasks of China's economic and social development, vigorously promoted the innovation of the party's development theory, clearly put forward a new development concept, and raised the party's development theory to a new historical height.

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China took "adhering to the new development concept" as one of the basic strategies for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, emphasizing that "development is the foundation and key to solving all problems in our country, development must be scientific development, and we must unwaveringly implement the development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing."<sup>1</sup>

The new development concept adheres to the basic stance, viewpoint and method of the Marxist outlook on development, inherits the party's development theory, and profoundly expounds major theoretical and practical issues such as current and long-term, fairness and efficiency, government and market, internal and external, and man and nature. The new development concept embodies the organic unity of development thinking and practical measures, scientifically answers major questions such as development direction, development mode, development momentum, development principles, and development path, and puts forward powerful measures such as conceptual change, improvement of system, and implementation well. The new development concept adheres to the organic unity of problem awareness and goal orientation, not only focuses on the contradictions, problems and shortcomings in China's development, but also carries out top-level design and systematic planning for the goals to be achieved to solve these contradictions and problems. The new development concept reflects the organic unity of development in time and space, focusing not only on fairness, justice and sustainable development, but also on the balance of development in urban, rural and regional spatial layout. The new development concept adheres to the organic unity of development subjects and development objects, advocates promoting the common development of all social fields based on economic development, but also pays attention to the fundamental issue of development for people, emphasizing the promotion of all-round human development. It can be said that the new development concept accurately grasps the pulse of development in the new era, which is the summation of experience and theoretical improvement of the new concept and new thinking and strategy of the party governing the country on the development issue, and is the latest achievement of the Sinicization of the Marxist concept of development.

### 3. it has enriched and developed the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics

The new development concept is an important content of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, which deepens and expands the CPC's understanding of the law of the development of the socialist economy with Chinese characteristics, and enriches and develops the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 17.

The new development concept has written a new chapter in the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Marxist political economy has revealed the basic principle that productive forces determine production relations and that production relations must meet the requirements of the development of productive forces. The new development concept insists on closely integrating the basic principles of Marxist political economy with the reality of contemporary China, more clearly emphasizes that development is the foundation and key to solving all problems in our country, emphasizes real and waterless development, emphasizes promoting changes in the quality, power, and efficiency of economic development, and achieves high-quality development. Give better play to the role of the government, emphasize the continuous deepening of reform and opening up, establish the principle of market competition neutrality, and break down the institutional obstacles that hinder the development of productive forces; more clearly emphasize that innovation is the primary driving force for development, talent is the first resource to support development, and emphasize the promotion of comprehensive innovation in theory, system, science and technology, culture, etc.; more clearly emphasize the coordination and sustainability of the social reproduction process, emphasize inter-industry, urban-rural, inter-region, man and nature, domestic and international, The improvement of the relationship between people emphasizes the handling of the relationship between the present and the long-term, the local and the overall situation, and the key and the general; more clearly emphasizes the harmonious coexistence between man and nature, so that a good ecological environment becomes the growth point of people's lives. It will become a driving force to show China's good image and continue to move towards a new era of ecological civilization; more clearly emphasize that opening up is a basic national policy, emphasize promoting high-level two-way opening-up, implement a more proactive opening strategy, create a new pattern of comprehensive opening up, emphasize active participation in global economic governance, and promote the international economic order towards equality and justice. Develop in the direction of win-win cooperation; more clearly emphasize adhering to the people-centered development thinking, emphasizing that the people are the fundamental force for promoting development, adhering to the people's dominant position, mobilizing the enthusiasm, initiative and creativity of all parties, and integrating into a powerful driving force for development. These understandings and summaries of laws conform to the general trend and trend of the development of human society, clarify the essence of the contemporary Chinese version of political economy, and realize a new leap in the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

The new development concept has enhanced the leading force of the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The new development concept has refined and summarized the theory and practical theory of socialist development with Chinese characteristics, giving it new meaning to the political economy of contemporary Chinese Marxism, and becoming a "classic discourse" and "logo concept" for interpreting China's road, telling Chinese stories well, and spreading Chinese voices. Since the 80s of the 20th century, many developing countries have been trapped in the "middle-income trap", it is difficult to get rid of the "trap" of the traditional growth model, and exploring new development concepts and development paths has become a more urgent issue.

The new development concept contains a summary and analysis of the successes and failures of global economic growth and development, especially a profound exploration of various growth and development dilemmas. A series of ideological viewpoints and practical directions put forward by the new development concept have increasingly become new concepts, new categories and new expressions understood and accepted by the international community, and have produced important enlightenment for many countries, including developing countries, to overcome the "middle-income trap." At present, many developing countries no longer believe in the development path and development theory of Western countries, but have turned to study and learn from China's development concept and experience. All these fully demonstrate the vigorous vitality and world influence of the "Chinese road", "Chinese plan" and "Chinese wisdom" in the new era, and further enhance the international discourse power of the political economy of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

### **Section 3: Adhere to the new development concept to lead the overall development situation**

The implementation of the new development concept is a profound change that has a bearing on the overall development of our country, and we must accelerate the transformation of ideology and concepts, promote the reform of systems and mechanisms, and earnestly transform the new development concept into a program of action for the overall situation, specific ideas for planning development, work measures for implementing development tasks, and practical results in promoting scientific development.

#### **1. Comprehensively promote the reform of the development concept**

Concept is the precursor of action, and certain development practices are led by certain development concepts. Whether the development concept is correct or not fundamentally determines the development effectiveness and even the success or failure. Practice tells us that development is a process of constant change, the development environment will not remain static, the development conditions will not remain static, and the concept of development will naturally not remain static. Looking back at the course of development since China's reform and opening up, from the great discussion on the criterion of truth to the establishment of economic construction as the center, from the reform of the planned economic system to the establishment of the socialist market economic system, from the addition of the WTO to the leadership of economic globalization, every great leap in development is the result of ideological emancipation and conceptual change.

To establish a new development concept, we must comprehensively promote the reform of the development concept.

To comprehensively promote the reform of the development concept, we must persist in emancipating the mind and updating the concept. Establishing and practicing the new development concept means a fundamental change in the traditional development thinking and development mode, which will inevitably be accompanied by the emancipation of the mind and the renewal of concepts. Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "The establishment of a new concept is always accompanied by the destruction of the old concept."<sup>1</sup> In the face of new development practices, some things that were effective in the past may not be effective now; some things that were out of date in the past are imperative now; and some things that were insurmountable in the past and need breakthroughs now. For example, China's economy has shifted from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage, and we can no longer simply judge the heroes by GDP and measure the quality of economic development, not because the speed is higher, the situation is "very good", nor is the speed down, the situation is very bad, but depends on whether there is quality and efficiency. For another example, in the face of the dash to build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and the task of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, it is no longer possible to simply work fast and fast, and we can no longer rely on extensive development methods and strong stimulation to raise the speed, we must take emancipation of the mind as the "general switch", establish a way of thinking that is compatible with the development of the times and practice, resolutely break the outdated concepts of one-sided pursuit of GDP, fighting for resources and people, emphasizing cities over rural areas, pollution before treatment, and efficiency over fairness, and lead new development practices with new development concepts. To establish and practice the new development concept, we should not stop at words, but should be used as a yardstick for behavior, consciously check the actual work in all aspects, encourage and support those that meet the requirements, oppose and discard those that do not conform, and better keep up with the times in the process of emancipating the mind and win new development in the process of changing concepts.

To comprehensively promote the reform of development concepts, we must persist in seeking truth from facts and acting according to laws. On the issue of development, we have both successful experiences and profound lessons. Successful experience lies in persistently proceeding from reality and acting in accordance with objective laws; lessons are mainly reflected in being divorced from reality and violating laws. For example, some localities develop one-sidedly and deformed development, some localities exhaust their resources to fish and eat too much food, and some localities compete with the people for profits and neglect people's livelihood, etc., which have brought many contradictions and problems to economic and social development. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Development must be scientific development that follows economic laws, sustainable development that follows natural laws, and inclusive development that follows social laws."

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 221.

<sup>1</sup> Fundamentally speaking, the new development concept is to build development on the basis of better grasping the law and acting according to the law, so as to achieve more quality and higher level of development. To implement the new development concept, it is necessary to enhance the awareness of laws, promote the transformation of economic development mode in accordance with the requirements of economic laws, adhere to the organic unity of development speed, quality and efficiency, and promote scientific development and high-quality development; in accordance with the requirements of natural laws, respect nature, conform to nature, protect nature, promote the formation of green development methods and lifestyles, and achieve sustainable development; in accordance with the requirements of social laws, strengthen social construction. Innovate social governance, make the results of reform and development more equitable and benefit all the people, and achieve inclusive development.

To comprehensively promote the reform of development concepts, we must adhere to systematic thinking and grasp them as a whole. The new development concept contains all aspects with the same theme and goal, each with its own focus and mutual support, forming an internal logical system of a system. Among them, innovation is the core and soul of development, coordination is the basic method of development, green is the inherent requirement of development, openness is the characteristics of the era of development, and sharing is the starting point and fundamental destination of development. All aspects are interconnected and mutually reinforcing, and run through the entire development process. Therefore, we must understand the new development concept as an inseparable whole, think systematically and grasp it comprehensively. In line with this, in the specific work practice of implementing the new development concept, we must also adhere to the systematic viewpoint, carry out systematic design in accordance with the integrity and relevance of the new development concept, adhere to and implement as one, so as to promote and complement each other. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The comrades of the whole party must improve the ability and level of unified implementation of the five major development concepts and constantly open up new realms of development."<sup>2</sup> This requires us to enhance our ability to think systematically, persist in observing things in a developmental rather than static manner, comprehensively rather than partially, systematically rather than piecemeal, and universally linked rather than singular and isolated, properly handle various major relations in development, seek advantages and avoid disadvantages while weighing advantages and disadvantages, and make the most favorable strategic choice.

---

<sup>1</sup> Chronicle of 65 Years of New China (Part II), People's Publishing House, 2014, p. 1584.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 200.

## 2. Accelerate the construction of institutional mechanisms based on the new development concept

To implement the new development concept, involving the change of way of thinking, behavior and working mode, and involving the adjustment of social relations, interest relations and work relations, we must comprehensively innovate the development system, reshape the development ecology, solve problems and build mechanisms in solving the development momentum and enhancing the integrity, coordination, balance and inclusiveness of development, so that various reform measures can take root, ensure that the new ideas are transformed into new practices and new actions, and form a conducive to innovative development, coordinated development, green development, open development, Institutional mechanisms for shared development.

First, adhere to innovation to lead development, and accelerate the construction of innovative development systems and mechanisms. Under the situation of increasingly fierce international development competition and the transformation of China's development momentum, we must focus on innovation and form an institutional framework to promote innovation. The first is to deepen the reform of the scientific and technological system and give play to the leading role of scientific and technological innovation in comprehensive innovation. Reform the investment system for scientific and technological innovation, establish a categorized investment mechanism for scientific research and technological innovation, and strengthen the main position of enterprises in innovation. The government should vigorously support scientific and technological products and services with "public goods" attributes and externalities, such as cutting-edge technologies, major common key technologies, and public welfare technologies. Improve the organizational mechanism of scientific and technological innovation, and give play to the guiding role of the market in the direction of technology research and development, the choice of routes, and the allocation of various innovative resources. At the same time, we should give full play to the institutional advantages of concentrating forces to do major things, pay attention to major technologies that break through the overall situation of related development, and concentrate on overcoming a number of "stuck neck" technologies. Improve the incentive mechanism for scientific and technological innovation, improve the distribution mechanism that fully reflects the value of intellectual labor, accelerate the decentralization of the right to use, dispose of and benefit from scientific and technological achievements, and allow scientific and technological personnel to receive reasonable returns in innovation activities. The second is to deepen the reform of the talent system and innovate the mechanism for training, using and attracting talent. Focusing on building a large-scale, innovative spirit and risk-taking innovative talent team, build an innovative talent training model, establish and improve the two-way flow mechanism for scientific research talents, implement a more competitive talent attraction system, train and attract talents in accordance with the law of innovation, and realize the full use of talents, talents and achievements. The third is to build an open innovation mechanism. Adhere to the combination of bringing in and going out, integrate the global innovation network with a more proactive attitude, absorb global innovation resources with a broader mind, and promote the output of technology and standards with a more active strategy at a higher level. Next, build an open innovation mechanism to promote the formation of a deeply integrated open innovation situation.



Second, persist in enhancing the comprehensive effectiveness of overall development and accelerate the construction of institutional mechanisms for coordinated development. Focusing on solving the problem of unbalanced and insufficient development, reform and improve relevant mechanisms and policies. First, it is necessary to improve the mechanism for the coordinated development of material civilization and spiritual civilization. While building a highly developed material civilization, we should vigorously promote the building of spiritual civilization, further strengthen overall planning and coordination, improve the leadership system and working mechanism, form a work pattern of joint grasp and joint management, and ensure that the achievements of the "two civilizations" are shared by all the people. Second, we should build a new mechanism for coordinated regional development. Strive to promote the large-scale development of the western region to form a new pattern, promote the comprehensive revitalization of the northeast, give full play to its advantages to promote the rise of the central region, take the lead in innovation and take the lead in realizing the optimal development of the eastern region, focus on the implementation of the "Belt and Road" construction, the coordinated development of Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei, the development of the Yangtze River Economic Belt and other strategies, and accelerate the construction of a new mechanism for the coordinated development of regions with orderly and free flow of factors, effective constraints on main functions, equal basic public services, and bearable resources and environment. Third, we should establish and improve the institutional mechanism for integrated urban and rural development. Adhere to the priority development of agriculture and rural areas, consolidate and improve the basic rural management system, deepen the reform of the rural land system, improve the reform of the "separation of powers" of contracted land, and deepen the reform of the rural collective property rights system. Deeply has implemented the strategy of rural revitalization and accelerated the modernization of agriculture and rural areas in accordance with the general requirements of prosperous industry, ecological livability, civilized rural customs, effective governance, and rich life. Promote people-centered new-type urbanization, deepen the reform of the household registration system, accelerate the urbanization of the rural migrant population, and strive to achieve equality between urban and rural areas for basic public services. Fourth, it is necessary to establish a mechanism for coordinated development of economic construction and national defense construction. Adhere to the integration of military and civilian use, integrate military with civilian use, accelerate the formation of an all-factor, multi-field, and high-efficiency military-civilian integration development pattern, and enhance the coordination of military-civilian sharing of advanced technologies, industrial products, and infrastructure.

Third, adhere to resource conservation and ecological protection, and accelerate the construction of green development systems and mechanisms. Firmly adhere to the basic national policy of saving resources and protecting the environment, and continuously promote institutional innovation and policy system improvement. First, we must start from the source, reshape the endogenous power mechanism, and form a green development mode and lifestyle. Accelerate the establishment of a legal system and policy guidance for green production and consumption, establish and improve an economic system for green and low-carbon circular development, build a market-oriented green technology innovation system, accelerate the construction of ecological function zones, and establish a market-oriented and diversified ecological compensation mechanism. Second, we must comprehensively strengthen the construction of the ecological civilization system.

We will establish and improve an ecological and cultural system with ecological values as the criterion, an ecological economic system with industrial ecology and ecological industrialization as the main body, a target responsibility system with improving the quality of the ecological environment as the core, an ecological civilization system guaranteed by the modernization of the governance system and governance capacity, and an ecological security system focusing on the virtuous cycle of the ecosystem and the effective prevention and control of environmental risks. Third, we should focus on solving prominent environmental problems and build an environmental governance system led by the government, with enterprises as the main body, social organizations and the public participating. Through raising pollution discharge standards, strengthening the responsibility of polluters, and improving systems such as environmental credit evaluation, mandatory disclosure of information, and severe punishments, we will achieve fundamental solutions to prominent environmental problems.

Fourth, adhere to the basic national policy of opening up to the outside world and accelerate the construction of an open development system and mechanism. Take the initiative to participate in and actively promote the process of economic globalization, develop a higher-level open economy, and promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up. First, we must promote the joint construction of the "Belt and Road." Following the principle of consultation, co-construction and sharing, with policy communication, facility connectivity, unimpeded trade, financial integration and people-to-people ties as the main contents, we will strive to build the "Belt and Road" into a road of peace, prosperity, openness, innovation and civilization. Second, we should promote the construction of a strong trade country. Accelerate the transformation of foreign trade development mode, innovate cross-border e-commerce, market procurement trade development, foreign trade comprehensive service enterprises and other foreign trade development models, innovate foreign investment methods, implement active import policies, create a world-class business environment, greatly relax market standards, and expand the opening up of the service industry. Third, it is necessary to speed up the cultivation of new advantages in international economic cooperation and competition. Promote international production capacity cooperation, form a global-oriented trade, investment and financing, production and service network, support enterprises to expand foreign investment, promote equipment, technology, standards and services to go global, and build a number of world-class multinational enterprises with global competitiveness. Fourth, efforts should be made to promote global economic governance. Strengthen international economic policy coordination, actively participate in the formulation of international rules in new fields such as the deep sea, polar regions, outer space and the Internet, promote the process of multilateral trade negotiations, accelerate the implementation of the free trade area and free trade island strategy, and promote the reform of the international monetary system and international financial regulation.

Fifth, persist in promoting and safeguarding social fairness and justice, and accelerate the construction of institutional mechanisms for shared development. First, it is necessary to ensure that educational development is fairer and more quality. Deepen educational reform, improve the quality of education, promote educational equity, promote the balanced development of compulsory education, and enable all people to share the dividends of education reform. Second, it is necessary to ensure higher-quality employment in terms of system. Adhere to the employment priority strategy and place the employment priority policy at the macro policy level;

Completely break down barriers and identity discrimination in the employment and entrepreneurship markets, improve entrepreneurship support policies, build a good entrepreneurial platform, create a new engine for mass entrepreneurship and innovation, and create more opportunities for participation in shared development. Third, we should continue to deepen the reform of the medical and health system and implement the Healthy China Strategy. Establish a basic medical and health system covering urban and rural areas and a modern hospital management system, accelerate the pace of reform of public hospitals, optimize the layout of medical and health institutions, promote the flow of medical resources to the grassroots and rural areas, and encourage social forces to develop health services. Fourth, it is necessary to strengthen the construction of the social security system. Establish a fairer and more sustainable social security system, implement a universal participation plan, basically achieve full coverage of statutory personnel, realize the national overall planning of basic pensions for employees, establish a reasonable adjustment mechanism for basic pensions, fully implement the serious illness insurance system for urban and rural residents, coordinate the social assistance system, promote the integration of relevant systems, and ensure the basic livelihood of the people in difficulty. From the strategic perspective of the transformation of major social contradictions, examine the relationship between fairness and efficiency, strengthen and innovate social governance, divide the "cake" well while making the "cake" bigger, ensure that the fruits of development benefit all the people, let the people have more sense of gain, gradually realize common prosperity, and promote social fairness and justice.

The new development concept points out the right direction and follows the development of contemporary China. To successfully realize the party's historical mission and goal in the new era, we must unify our thinking and action with the new development concept, strive to improve the ability and level of overall implementation of the new development concept, resolutely change the understanding that it is not suitable or even contrary to the new development concept, resolutely correct behaviors that are not suitable for the new development concept, and constantly make new breakthroughs in enhancing the ability to innovate, promote the balance of development, improve the ecological environment, raise the level of openness, and promote shared development.

## Chapter VI: Embark on a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way

Formulating strategic planning and determining strategic arrangements is the consistent leadership method of the Communist Party of China, a basic experience of the Party in leading and promoting socialist modernization, and a unique advantage of the party system with Chinese characteristics. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "From building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way to basically realizing modernization, and then to building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, it is a strategic arrangement for the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era."<sup>1</sup> This "two-step" strategic arrangement for the new era on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way has completely outlined the timetable and road map for China's socialist modernization construction between the "two hundred years."

### Section 1: Attaching importance to strategic arrangements is an important experience of the CPC in governing the country

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Strategic issues are fundamental issues for a political party and a country. If we make accurate strategic judgments, plan scientifically strategically, and win the initiative strategically, there will be great hope for the cause of the party and the people."<sup>2</sup> The Communist Party of China has struggled for nearly a hundred years:

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 23.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 10.

Persistently taking Marxism as the guide, deeply studying China's actual national conditions and the development and changes of the times, planning China's revolution, construction and reform from a strategic height, and planning for the cause of socialist modernization, and formulating a series of lines, principles and policies that conform to China's reality and the characteristics of the times, guiding China's revolution, construction and reform from victory to new victory, and leading the Chinese nation to usher in a great leap from standing up, getting rich to becoming strong.

### 1. the strategic design for the realization of the "four modernizations" has opened up the great practice of independently exploring the road of socialist modernization

The strategic thinking of the Chinese Communist Party was born during the revolutionary war. As the core of the party's first-generation leadership, Comrade Mao Zedong applied strategic thinking to the practice of war, systematically expounded the strategic and tactical issues of the Chinese revolution, the strategic and tactical problems of the people's war, the strategic foresight and strategic guidance of the War of Resistance Against Japan, the strategic choices and strategic decisive battles of the War of Liberation, the problems of strategically despising the enemy and attaching importance to the enemy tactically, and the questions of principle firmness and tactical flexibility; and systematically studied and answered "what is the Chinese revolution and how to carry out the Chinese revolution." This major historical topic shows that it has focused on long-term strategic foresight, made strategic arrangements with the overall situation in mind, and made strategic adjustments that judge the hour and size up the situation, leading the party to victory in the new democratic revolution. The founding of New China brought about national independence and the people's liberation, marking the beginning of socialist modernization as the primary task of the CPC's strategic planning.

In the early days after the founding of New China, Comrade Mao Zedong profoundly summed up the profound lessons of the international communist movement and China's initial experience in building socialism, and put forward the strategic thinking of "taking the Soviet Union as a guide" and independently exploring the road of socialist construction in China. He put forward the strategic principle of correctly handling the "10 major relations" and mobilizing all positive factors to build a socialist country; made a strategic judgment that correctly handling contradictions among the people has become the main theme of the country's political life; put forward a series of major principles for correctly handling contradictions among the people; clearly formulated the strategic objectives and strategic steps for building a modern socialist country, and provided scientific strategic guidance for correctly grasping the overall situation of China's socialist cause.

First, the strategic goal of the "four modernizations." As early as the late period of the New Democratic Revolution, the Communist Party of China repeatedly proposed to transform China from a backward agricultural country into an advanced industrial country.

In 1945, Comrade Mao Zedong clearly pointed out at the Seventh Party Congress: "The task of the Chinese working class is not only to struggle for the establishment of a new democratic state, but also to struggle for China's industrialization and agricultural modernization."<sup>1</sup> At the Second Plenary Session of the Seventh CPC Central Committee, Comrade Mao Zedong further put forward the strategic goal of turning an agricultural country into an industrial country. In June 1953, the Party put forward the convex line of "one transformation and three transformations" in the transitional period, and this "transformation" is socialist industrialization. Later, "The Struggle to Mobilize All Forces to Build Our Country into a Great Socialist Country - Outline for the Study and Propaganda of the Party's General Line in the Transitional Period" further pointed out: "By realizing the socialist industrialization of the country, we can promote the modernization of agriculture and transportation, and we can establish and consolidate a modern national defense."<sup>2</sup> In September 1954, Comrade Zhou Enlai pointed out in his "Report on the Work of the Government" delivered at the first session of the First National People's Congress: "China's economy turned out to be very backward; if we do not build a strong modern industry, modern agriculture, a modern transportation industry, and a modern national defense, we will not be able to shake off backwardness and poverty, and our revolution will not be able to achieve its goal."<sup>3</sup> This is the first time that the party has put forward the "four modernization" goals. From the end of 1959 to the beginning of 1960, Comrade Mao Zedong made a complete expression of the "four modernizations" for the first time in his "Conversation on Reading the Soviet Union's Political Economy Textbook." He said: "To build socialism, the original requirements were industrial modernization, agricultural modernization, scientific and cultural modernization, and now we must add national defense modernization."<sup>4</sup>

Second, the strategic consideration of "two steps." After the socialist system was basically established, Comrade Mao Zedong began to plan and consider the issue of strategic steps to build socialism. In September 1963, he revised the "On Industrial Development Issues (First Draft)" and said that our industrial development can be considered in two steps: the first step is to establish an independent and complete industrial system; the second step is to bring China's industry close to the world's advanced level. At the First Session of the Third National People's Congress held in December 1964, Comrade Zhou Enlai, in accordance with Comrade Mao Zedong's instructions, made a complete and accurate expression of the "two-step" strategy in the "Government Work Report", that is: "Starting from the Third Five-Year Plan, China's national economic development can be considered in two steps:

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1991, p. 1081.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Founding of the People's Republic of China, vol. 4, Central Literature Publishing House, 1993 edition, p. 704.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Founding of the People's Republic of China, vol. 5, Central Literature Publishing House, 1993 edition, p. 584.

<sup>4</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1991, p. 116.

The first step is to establish an independent and relatively complete industrial system and national economic system; The second step is to comprehensively realize the modernization of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology, so that China's economy will be in the forefront of the world. "<sup>1</sup> In terms of the time required, Comrade Mao Zedong initially envisaged laying the foundation in 15 years and achieving modernization in 50 years. After the setbacks of the "Great Leap Forward" and the three years of difficulty, his consideration of this issue became more realistic, believing that if China is Chinese with many mouths, a weak foundation, and a backward economy, it will take 100 years or more to turn China into a rich and powerful modern country. In 1975, at the First Session of the Fourth National People's Congress, Comrade Zhou Enlai reiterated the strategic arrangement of "two steps" and the comprehensive realization of the "four modernizations."

The "four modernizations" strategic objectives and the "two-step" strategic considerations were the CPC's initial exploration of the road of socialist modernization after the founding of New China, and also marked the transformation of the CPC's understanding of modernization from "industrialization" to "modernization." Although such strategic objectives and strategic considerations took detours and encountered twists and turns in later practice, they provided important ideological preparation and practical foundation for the great practice of the party gradually putting forward complete modernization goals and making systematic strategic arrangements after reform and opening up.

## 2. Carry out strategic planning for the realization of socialist modernization and successfully create, develop and improve socialism with Chinese characteristics

After the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee, faced with a situation in which all wastes and all undertakings were waiting to be revived, the Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Deng Xiaoping, clearly proposed to follow their own path and build socialism with Chinese characteristics, formulated a development strategy for basically realizing socialist modernization in three steps by the middle of the 21st century, and successfully created socialism with Chinese characteristics.

First, it is necessary to adjust the "four modernizations" strategic objectives and the "two-step" strategic concept in a timely manner. At the beginning of reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out that whether or not we can realize the "four modernizations" determines the destiny of our country and the nation; he stressed that "our party's political line at the present stage, in a nutshell, is to wholeheartedly pursue the four modernizations."

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Zhou Enlai, vol. II, People's Publishing House, 1984, p. 439.

<sup>1</sup> In December 1979, during a meeting with Japanese Prime Minister Masayoshi Ohira, he quantified the "four modernizations" as follows: By the end of the 20th century, strive to achieve a per capita GDP of \$1,000 and achieve a moderately prosperous level. Comrade Deng Xiaoping called this goal "the four modernizations of the Chinese style," that is, the "home of moderate prosperity." He then adapted the "two-step" strategic step, which was to "reach the level of the wealthier countries of the Third World" by the end of the 20th century."<sup>2</sup> "To build a moderately prosperous society in China by the end of the century." This moderately prosperous society is called Chinese-style modernization."<sup>3</sup> This is "we propose four minimum goals for modernization."<sup>4</sup> The strategic goal of the end of the 20th century was adjusted from "catching up with and surpassing the most advanced capitalist countries in the world" to "reaching the level of the richer countries in the third world", taking into account the actual situation of weak national foundation and weak foundation, and further understanding the arduousness and long-term nature of realizing socialist modernization and catching up with the developed countries in the world.

Second, clearly put forward the "three-step" strategic steps. The strategic concept of "three steps" has been gradually formed. In March 1987, when meeting foreign guests, Comrade Deng Xiaoping said: "We have set two stages of the goal, that is, to reach the level of moderate prosperity by the end of this century, and then to reach the level of a moderately developed country in the next century in 30 to 50 years."<sup>5</sup> "That's our strategic goal, that's our ambition. "<sup>6</sup> The 13th CPC National Congress not only clearly summarized Comrade Deng Xiaoping's "three-step" strategic thinking, but also called the third-step goal of reaching the level of a moderately developed country "basically realizing modernization." The strategic steps of the "three-step" are: First, from 1981 to 1990, the gross national product will double from 1980 and basically solve the problem of food and clothing; the second step, from 1991 to the end of the 20th century, the gross national product will be doubled again, the phenomenon of poverty will be basically eliminated, and the people's living standards will reach the level of moderate prosperity; and the third step, by the middle of the 21st century, the per capita gross national product will reach the level of a moderately developed country, the people's living standards will be relatively prosperous, and modernization will be basically achieved.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 276.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 237.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 493 edition, p. 54.

<sup>4</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 64.

<sup>5</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 493 edition, p. 210.

<sup>6</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 493 edition, p. 251.



Third, on the basis of adhering to the "three-step" strategy, put forward a new "three-step" strategic goal. In September 1997, Comrade Jiang Zemin pointed out at the 15th CPC National Congress: "Looking forward to the next century, our goal is to double the gross national product in the first 10 years compared with the year 2000, make the people's moderately prosperous life more prosperous, and form a relatively perfect socialist market economic system; after another 10 years of efforts, by the 100th anniversary of the founding of the CPC, the national economy will be further developed and various systems will be more perfect; and by the 100th anniversary of the founding of the People's Republic of China by the middle of the century, we will basically realize modernization and build a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, and civilized socialist country."<sup>1</sup> This is a refinement and concretization of the "third step" of Comrade Deng Xiaoping's "three-step" strategy, and it is also a new "three-step" strategic arrangement for China's development in the first half of the 21st century. In November 2002, the 16th National Congress of the Communist Party of China reaffirmed the new "three-step approach" and clearly defined the first centenary goal as: "To build a better-off society of a higher standard that benefits more than one billion people in an all-round way, so that the economy will be more developed, democracy will be more sound, science and education will be more progressive, culture will be more prosperous, society will be more harmonious and the people's life will be more solid."<sup>2</sup> In October 2007, at the 17th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Hu Jintao put forward new and higher requirements for China's development, and adjusted the first centenary goal to build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way.

### 3. Make strategic arrangements for building a moderately prosperous society and a modern socialist power in an all-round way, and start a new journey of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has scientifically planned the overall situation, firmly grasped the strategic initiative, unswervingly achieved strategic goals, led China's reform, opening up and socialist modernization to achieve historic achievements, opened up a new situation in the cause of the Party and the country, entered a new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and ushered in a golden development opportunity in the journey of the modernization of the Chinese nation. The 19th CPC National Congress emphasized that from building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way to basically realizing modernization;

---

<sup>1</sup> "Selected Important Documents Since the Fifteenth National Congress" (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2000 edition, page 4.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the Sixteenth National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2005, p. 14.

Then to build a modern socialist power in an all-round way is a strategic arrangement for the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

Specifically, the five years from the 19th to the 20th CPC National Congress are the historical convergence period of the "two centenary goals", and we must not only build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and achieve the first centenary goal, but also take advantage of the situation to start a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way and march towards the second centenary goal. The first and second steps of the "three-step" strategic goal have been achieved ahead of schedule, a moderately prosperous society will be built as scheduled, China has become the world's second largest economy, and the economy and society have maintained a good trend of sustained and healthy development. Against this background, it is absolutely necessary for the 19th CPC National Congress to comprehensively analyze the international and domestic situations and China's development conditions, and to make a new top-level design and strategic plan for the 30 years after the "three-step" strategy, that is, the 30 years between the "two centenary goals."

The strategic arrangement of "two stages" made by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China is: the first stage, from 2020 to 2035, on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, will strive for another 15 years to basically realize socialist modernization. In the second stage, from 2035 to the middle of this century, on the basis of basically realizing modernization, we will strive for another 15 years to build China into a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist power. Such an arrangement can be said to be an "upgraded version" of the third-step goal of the "three-step" strategy. This is the solemn promise of the Communist Party of China on the journey of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, but it is by no means something that can be achieved easily and by banging gongs and drums, but a grand vision that requires the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to endure, persevere and make long-term and arduous efforts with an unremitting mental state and an indomitable attitude of struggle.

## Section 2: Comprehensively grasp the strategic connotation and characteristics of a modern and powerful socialist country

The 19th CPC National Congress gave a macroscopic outlook and overall description of "basically realizing socialist modernization" and "comprehensively building a modern and powerful socialist country", which has profound connotations and rich meanings, and has distinct characteristics of comprehensiveness, people's nature, practicality, and epochality.

## 1. China's modernization is a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful all-round modernization

China's modernization is a modernization jointly promoted by economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction and ecological civilization construction, and its comprehensive characteristics are a clear symbol of China's socialist modernization strategy.

"Prosperity and strength" is the common pursuit of human society, the eternal theme of the times, and the nuclear value of socialist China. "Prosperity and strength" means the unity of prosperity and strength, and the unity of people's prosperity and national strength. It is not easy to be rich, and it is even more difficult to be strong; being rich but not strong is not being rich and strong. China is a big country, and only when it is rich and strong can it stand on its own among the nations of the world; China is a socialist country, and "prosperity of the people" and "strength of the country" should all the more be coordinated development, and "strong country and poor people" are untenable. "Rich and strong" is first of all an economic category, but also a concept of comprehensive national strength, a unity of hard power and soft power, and a strong country, a strong army, and a strong people" is a process, China is a large country with a population of 1.4 billion, and regional development is very unbalanced, which determines that it is impossible for all regions to achieve prosperity and strength at the same time, nor can it achieve equal prosperity and strength in the absolute sense; "rich and strong" is relative, there is only a starting point, there is no end. Looking forward to the middle of this century, China will have a high degree of material civilization, its economic strength, scientific and technological strength and social productivity will leap sharply, its core competitiveness will rank among the best in the world, and it will become a country with leading comprehensive national strength and international influence.

"Democracy", in essence, means that the people are masters of their own country, which is the essence and core of socialist democratic politics. Without democracy, there can be no socialism, and there will be no socialist modernization. The most important thing for "democracy" in the context of modernization is the institutionalization and rule of law of democracy, including the maturity and perfection of the political system, institutional mechanism, procedural norms and their operation, including ensuring that the people enjoy extensive and fulfilling rights and self-esteem, ensuring that the people widely participate in national and social governance, and ensuring vigorous and healthy and orderly relations between political parties, ethnic groups, religions, classes, and compatriots at home and abroad. Looking forward to the middle of this century, China will have a high degree of political civilization, a country ruled by law, a government ruled by law, and a society ruled by law, and realize the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity.

There is also the mature and finalized socialist democratic political system with Chinese characteristics, and will give full play to its advantages and characteristics.

"Civilization" generally refers to the comprehensive cultural image displayed by a society, including ideological consciousness, values, moral literacy, social order, production and lifestyle, scientific and cultural level, etc., which is a concentrated embodiment of a country's development level and a prominent symbol of a social progress. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Civilization, especially ideology and culture, is the soul of a country and a nation."<sup>1</sup> Without the inheritance and development of civilization and the promotion and prosperity of culture, there will be no realization of the Chinese dream. Looking forward to the middle of this century, China will have a high degree of spiritual civilization, the quality of the people will be significantly improved, the practice of socialist core values will become the conscious action of the whole society, and the Chinese spirit, Chinese values and Chinese strength will become an important influence and driving force for China's development.

"Harmony" means achieving social harmony and building a better society. This is the social ideal that mankind has diligently pursued, and it is also the goal that the Communist Party of China has unremittingly pursued. The most fundamental characteristics of a harmonious socialist society are democracy and rule of law, fairness and justice, honesty and fraternity, vitality, stability and order, and harmonious coexistence between man and nature. Looking forward to the middle of this century, China will have a high degree of social civilization, urban and rural residents will generally have higher incomes, a prosperous life, sound basic public services, enjoy a happier and healthier life, the common prosperity of all the people will be basically realized, fairness and justice will be universally displayed, and the society will be full of vitality and standardized and orderly.

"Beauty" means realizing ecological civilization and building a beautiful China. Ecological civilization is a major achievement of human social progress and an inevitable requirement for realizing harmonious coexistence between man and nature. Socialist modernization is a modernization in which man and nature live in harmony. The construction of modern ecological civilization is based on the carrying capacity of resources and environment, takes the laws of nature as the criterion, takes sustainable development and harmony between man and nature as the goal, firmly follows the civilized development path of production development, rich life and good ecology, and strives to build a beautiful Zhongzhong. country where you can see the mountains, see the water, and remember homesickness. Looking forward to the middle of this century, China will have a high degree of ecological civilization, and the beautiful ecological environment of blue sky, green earth and clear water will become the universal norm, creating a new realm of harmonious coexistence between man and nature.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Promoting the Construction of a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 161.

## 2. China's modernization is a modernization that adheres to the people-centered approach and takes the road of common prosperity

Socialist modernization, which takes the people as the center and takes the road of common prosperity, is in line with the highest ideals and value pursuit of Marxism, and its goal is to benefit the people and ultimately realize the free and comprehensive development of everyone.

In terms of the driving force of development, people-centered modernization emphasizes the great cause of all the people to jointly build socialist modernization; in the pursuit of goals, it emphasizes that all the people share the great achievements of socialist modernization; and in the evaluation criteria, it emphasizes whether or not it brings a better life to the masses of the people as the fundamental criterion for testing the results of modernization. People-centered modernization is not a negation of the modernization of things, but a higher-level modernization based on the modernization of things. This kind of modernization emphasizes the central position and subjective status of "man", emphasizes that it cannot be at the cost of material abundance and spiritual poverty, and emphasizes the need to avoid repeating the mistakes of some countries and regions that take capital as the center and thus lead to the expansion of materialism and the decline of the spiritual world.

Common prosperity is the essential requirement of socialist modernization, and it is the embodiment of the people-centered position in the results of development and the distribution of wealth. As early as 1955, Comrade Mao Zedong pointed out, "Now that we implement such a system and such a plan, we can move towards richer and stronger year by year, and we can see richer and stronger year by year."<sup>1</sup> And this wealth is common wealth, this strong, is common strength." After the reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "Socialism is not about a few people getting rich and the majority getting poor. The greatest advantage of socialism is common prosperity, which is a thing that embodies the essence of socialism."<sup>2</sup> Entering the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "The development we pursue is development that benefits the people, and the prosperity we pursue is the common prosperity of all the people."

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 6, People's Publishing House, 499 edition, p. 495.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 493 edition, p. 364.

<sup>1</sup> The socialist concept of common prosperity takes into account the unity of the standards of productive forces and the people's interests, and the unity of material and human scales.

At this stage, China still has problems of regional disparity, urban-rural disparity, and large income gap, which is a problem that is difficult to completely avoid at a specific historical stage but can eventually be solved. Eliminating polarization and ultimately achieving common prosperity is the firm commitment of the Communist Party of China to the Chinese people, and it is also the proper meaning of China's realization of socialist modernization.

### 3. China's modernization is a modernization based on China's national conditions and independent development

The direction of development of modernization cannot be bypassed, but the path to modernization can be chosen. Every country has the right to choose its own path of modernization, write its own modern civilization, and reap its own modernization results.

With more than 5,000 years of Chinese civilization, a vast territory of more than 9.6 million square kilometers, a population of 1.4 billion, and its own unique cultural traditions, historical destiny and actual national conditions, China's modernization cannot imitate and depend on others, let alone trade its own core interests, and must take the road of independent development and self-reliance.

The CPC has its own independent judgment on how and what kind of modernization should be achieved. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "The modernization we are engaged in is Chinese-style modernization. The socialism we are building is socialism with Chinese characteristics. We are mainly self-reliant according to our own actual situation and our own conditions."<sup>2</sup> Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that "there is no one-size-fits-all development model in the world."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 29.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 307.

"We are willing to learn from all the achievements of human civilization, but we will not copy the development model of any country."<sup>1</sup> "The successful practice of the Chinese people shows the world that there is more than one road to modernization, as long as you find the right direction and keep going, all roads lead to Rome."<sup>2</sup>

The practice of history fully proves that it is precisely by adhering to the road of independent development based on its own national conditions that has enabled China to achieve tremendous achievements in modernization that have attracted worldwide attention; for the first time, China has relied on its own strength to achieve a moderate prosperity of the entire people, and for the first time has achieved leapfrogging and catching up by following its own road. China's road to modernization was born in the historical practice of contemporary China and is a great innovation in human history. With its actual actions in modernization, China has told the world that China has neither "decoupled" from human civilization nor imitated and attached to others; it has chosen to integrate with the international community without sliding into the "Western track"; it has absorbed and learned from all the outstanding achievements of human civilization without losing its autonomy. Independence and self-reliance have been, are and will be the foothold of building a modern and powerful socialist country.

#### 4. China's modernization is a modernization that adheres to win-win cooperation and follows the path of peaceful development

China's modernization adheres to the concept of peaceful development and win-win cooperation, does not follow the Western path of aggression, colonization and expansion, and does not agree with the logic of "a strong country must be hegemonic", and has successfully opened up a road to the rejuvenation of a great power that is "strong but not hegemonic."

As China's policy proposition, "not seeking hegemony" stems from the profound immersion of Chinese culture, from the deep memory of the history of national suffering, from the profound understanding of the Western laws of "good war must die" and "hegemony must decline", and from a profound grasp of the Communist Party's ruling philosophy and historical mission. The Chinese nation is a peace-loving nation, and is well versed in the historical dialectics that a strong country must hegemony, hegemony is bound to decline, and that warring is bound to die, and forgetting war is dangerous.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Extracts from Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Chinese Dream of Realizing the Great Rejuvenation of the Chinese Nation", Central Literature Press, 2013, p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "Openness, Co-creation, Prosperity, Innovation Leading the Future: Keynote Speech at the Opening Ceremony of the Boao Forum for Asia Annual Conference 2018," People's Daily, April 11, 2018.

In ancient times, the Silk Road was created for exchanges and mutual learning and shared development between the East and the West, and the "Belt and Road" initiative proposed today is also for exchanges and cooperation to promote prosperity.

However, we should also realize that along with the rapid improvement of China's economic strength and comprehensive national strength, the theory of "China's threat" and "the theory that a strong country must be hegemonic" are very popular. Some people believe that the 500 years of world history since the discovery of geography is a history of national hegemony, the 16th century is Portugal and Spain, the 17th century is the "sea coachman" Netherlands, the 18th and 19th centuries is the Anglo-French hegemony, the achievement of the "sun never sets empire", the end of the 19th century and the beginning of the 20th century, Germany and Japan rose one after another, two world wars followed, and the 20th century was the hegemony of the United States and the Soviet Union. After these countries became strong, they all embarked on the road of no return of hegemonism. China has not repeated the old path of the rise of great powers, but has risen peacefully and still followed the path of peaceful development after its rise. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "China will always be a builder of world peace, firmly follow the path of peaceful development, no matter how the international situation changes, no matter how it develops, China will never seek hegemony, never expand, and never seek spheres of influence."<sup>1</sup> "This is how we set out in policy, this is how we design our system, and we have always done this in practice."<sup>2</sup> China is not a challenger or destroyer of the international order, nor a bystander or outsider of the global governance system; China was, is and will be a builder of world peace, a contributor to global development and a defender of international order.

China has made a solemn commitment to the world never to seek hegemony or expansion, and at the same time interprets the concept of adhering to win-win cooperation and taking the path of peaceful development with its own concrete actions. The concept of "a community with a shared future for mankind" advocated by Comrade Xi Jinping is a clear declaration of China's adherence to the path of peaceful development, a top-level design proposed by China to plan the blueprint for world development, and a Chinese idea and plan for improving the global governance system as a responsible major country.

A strong China is not a threat to world peace, but the backbone of maintaining world peace. China's peaceful rise has not only rewritten the development logic of the hegemonic expansion of great powers in the past, but also rewritten the historical destiny of claiming hegemony after the rise of great powers.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Press, 2016, p. 698.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 267.



China's path of peaceful development shows the world that the rise of a great power is not only based on the path of starting with war, plundering to get rich, and expanding hegemony, but that peaceful development and civilization will be the priority option for the future world. China's rejuvenation means the decline of the old logic of "a strong country must hegemony", and the development logic of "strong but not hegemonic" will rise to the main axis of the new era.

All in all, a modern socialist power is not an empty slogan, nor is it an empty concept, but it expands the new realm and new requirements of modern national construction. It is a collection of manufacturing power, science and technology power, quality power, aerospace power, network power, transportation power, maritime power, trade power, sports power, cultural power, education power and talent power; it is also a collection of beautiful China, rule of law China, safe China, healthy China and digital China; it is also a collection of innovative countries, rule of law countries, learning countries, responsible countries, and peaceful countries; or a smart society, a harmonious society, a rule of law society, and a society ruled by law. The collection of learning society has very rich and specific connotations.

### Section 3 Firmly implement the strategic arrangement for building a modern socialist country in an all-round way

The strategic arrangements made by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China for the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era are not only based on the current development reality of China, but also adapt to the future development trend of China, completely outline the timetable and road map for the construction of China's modern socialist power, and provide important guidelines for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

#### 1. decisively build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way

Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way is a solemn commitment made by the Communist Party of China to the people and to history, and is the common aspiration of all Chinese people. This grand goal is the first centenary goal of the "two centenary goals" and an important milestone in the journey of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Over the past 40 years and more since reform and opening up, our party has firmly grasped this goal of struggle, worked one stubble after another, and run one stick after another, and the grand blueprint for building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way is about to become a reality.

The building of a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way by 2020 is of great significance in the history of the development of the Chinese nation, the history of world development, and the history of socialist development. Achieving this grand goal means high-quality economic development, general improvement of people's living standards and quality, marked improvement of national quality and social civilization, overall improvement of the quality of the ecological environment, and more mature and stereotyped systems in all aspects.

Achieving such a goal requires us not only to achieve the goal in terms of volume and speed, but more importantly, to solve the problems of balance, coordination and sustainability of development. To be moderately prosperous in an all-round way, the areas covered should be comprehensive, and the "five-in-one" should be comprehensively progressive; the population covered should be comprehensive, which should benefit the entire people; and the areas covered should be comprehensive, so as to be well-off in urban and rural areas. "Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way is not a numbers game or a speed game, but a real goal. While maintaining economic growth, it is more important to implement the people-centered development thinking, think about what the masses think, be anxious about what the masses are anxious about, and solve the difficulties of the masses."<sup>1</sup>

The comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society has reached the historical point of vigor and decisive victory, and the sprint stage is particularly difficult, and it is even more necessary to resist all kinds of interference. Today's world is facing major changes unprecedented in a century, global sources of turmoil and risk points have increased, and the external environment has become more complex and changeable. China's economy is shifting from a stage of high-speed growth to a stage of high-quality development, with old and new contradictions intertwined, cyclical and structural problems superimposed, and stable economic operation changing and worrying in change. The downward pressure on the economy has increased, the growth rate of consumption has slowed down, and the growth of effective investment has been weak; there are many difficulties in the real economy, and the problem of "difficult financing and expensive financing" of private and small and micro enterprises has not been effectively alleviated; the ability of independent innovation is not strong, and the shortcomings of key core technologies are prominent; the three major battles are still arduous, and there are still many places where the masses are dissatisfied in the field of social undertakings.

Only by having a clear understanding of the situation can we face problems and challenges head-on and win the decisive battle to build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Discourses on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing, 2017 edition, page 18.

In accordance with the strategic deployment determined by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, we must make overall plans to promote the overall layout of the "five-in-one", coordinate and promote the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, firmly implement the seven major strategies of rejuvenating the country through science and education, strengthening the country with talents, innovation-driven development, rural revitalization, coordinated regional development, sustainable development, and military-civilian integration development, and build an integrated national strategic system and capabilities. It is necessary to closely grasp the changes in the main contradictions in our society, seek truth from facts, adapt measures to local conditions, comprehensively implement policies, exert precise efforts, highlight key points, make up for shortcomings, and strengthen weaknesses; in particular, we must resolutely fight the three major battles, promote sustained and healthy economic and social development, and enable the building of a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way to be recognized by the people and withstand the test of history.

Resolutely fight the battle of preventing and defusing major risks. Putting the prevention and resolution of major risks at the top of the three major battles reflects the strong sense of distress and bottom-line thinking of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core. The current and future period is a period in which the risks facing China's development in all aspects continue to accumulate and even become concentrated and exposed. The major risks facing our country include domestic economic, political, ideological and social risks and risks from the natural world, as well as risks from international economic, political, strategic, sovereign and military risks. Moreover, these risks often do not arise in isolation, but are likely to be intertwined and form a complex of risks. If major risks occur and cannot be shouldered, the process of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and even national rejuvenation may be interrupted. To resolutely fight this tough battle, it is necessary to strengthen the investigation of hidden risks, find out the bottom number of risks, persist in treating both the symptoms and the root causes, and pay attention to improving the institutional mechanism to prevent and resolve risks. It is necessary to strengthen the investigation and judgment of various risk sources, improve dynamic monitoring, real-time early warning, and emergency response capabilities, pay special attention to potential problems of emerging sexual tendencies, effectively prevent the impact of "black swan" events and "gray rhino" events, prevent small risks from evolving into large risks, prevent external risks from evolving into internal risks, prevent economic and financial risks from evolving into social and political risks, prevent individual risks from evolving into systemic risks, and create a safe and stable good environment for the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society.

Resolutely win the battle against poverty. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that no ethnic minority or region should be left behind, and all Chinese people should share the fruits of all-round moderate prosperity. At present, deep poverty is a "hard bone" on the road to overall moderate prosperity, and it is necessary to mobilize the strength of the whole party and the whole society, adhere to the basic strategy of targeted poverty alleviation and targeted poverty alleviation, and adhere to the "three-in-one" poverty alleviation pattern of special poverty alleviation, industry poverty alleviation and social poverty alleviation. It is necessary to give play to the advantages of the socialist system in concentrating forces to do major things, strengthen cooperation and counterpart support in poverty alleviation in the east and west, and do a good job in providing designated assistance to central units. We should properly implement the "five batches" project, that is, one batch of poverty alleviation through development, one batch of poverty alleviation through relocation, one batch of poverty alleviation through ecological compensation, one batch of poverty alleviation through education, and one batch of social security.

Attention should be paid to combining poverty alleviation with support for aspirations and wisdom, and to improve the self-development ability of poor areas and the poor people and the internal motivation to get rid of poverty and become rich. Adhering to the "two worries and three guarantees" poverty alleviation standard can neither be divorced from reality, raise standards, and raise appetites, nor can we falsely get rid of poverty, lower standards, and affect quality. Implement the strictest assessment and evaluation to ensure that the rural poor under China's current standards will be lifted out of poverty by 2020, and all poverty-stricken counties will be removed, regional overall poverty will be solved, so as to get rid of real poverty and poverty alleviation, and make up for the biggest shortcoming of building a moderately prosperous society.

Resolutely fight the battle against pollution. Building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way inevitably requires obvious progress in improving the quality of the ecological environment. Resolutely fighting the battle of pollution prevention and control and accelerating the solution of ecological and environmental problems at the intersection of history is a major task entrusted by the times. It is necessary to adhere to the principle that green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains, promote green development, strengthen energy conservation and emission reduction, and at the same time take the solution of outstanding ecological and environmental problems as a priority area for people's livelihood, resolutely win the battle for blue skies, implement the water pollution prevention and control action plan, fully implement the soil pollution prevention and control action plan, continue to carry out rural living environment improvement actions, strengthen the protection and restoration of important ecosystems, and form a pattern and atmosphere of ecological environmental protection in which the whole society grasps and manages together, so that the improvement of the ecological environment is compatible with the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society.

## 2. the "two-step" strategic arrangement for the new era on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way

In accordance with the "two-step" strategic arrangement for the new era on the basis of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, to promote China's socialist modernization drive, it is necessary to accelerate the development process and raise the level of development, which is both an inspiring grand blueprint and a historical process of unremitting struggle. This requires the whole party and the people of the whole country to grasp the international and domestic situation and China's development conditions, seize the opportunity, seize the momentum, earnestly accelerate the process of socialist modernization, strive to expand the broad space of socialist modernization, and effectively promote the comprehensive improvement of China's material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilizations.

First, focus on economic modernization and continuously improve the level of material civilization.

Building a modern socialist country is inseparable from a strong material foundation. The main contradiction in our society in the new era is the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development, and China's economy has shifted from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage, and is in a critical period of transforming the development mode, optimizing the economic structure, and transforming the growth momentum. It is necessary to implement the new development concept, unswervingly regard development as the top priority for the party to govern and rejuvenate the country, persist in liberating and developing the social productive forces, adhere to the direction of socialist market economic reform, and accelerate the realization of economic modernization. It is necessary to adhere to quality first, benefit first, take supply-side structural reform as the main line, promote the quality change, efficiency change and power change of economic development, and improve total factor productivity. Efforts should be made to accelerate the construction of an industrial system with coordinated development of the real economy, scientific and technological innovation, modern finance, and human resources; strive to build an economic system with effective market mechanisms, vigorous micro-subjects, and moderate macro-control, build a modern economic system, continuously enhance China's economic innovation and competitiveness, and continuously improve the level of material civilization.

Second, focus on modernizing the national governance system and governance capacity, and continuously improve the level of political civilization. The national governance system and governance capacity are the concentrated embodiment of a country's political civilization. Upholding the party's leadership, the people being masters of the country, and the organic unity of governing the country according to law are the inevitable requirements of socialist political civilization. The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the people's mastery of the country is the essence and core of socialist democratic politics, and governing the country according to law is the basic way for the party to lead the people to govern the country. We must adhere to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics, adhere to and improve the system of people's congresses, the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the system of regional ethnic autonomy, and the system of grassroots mass autonomy. Consolidate and develop the broadest patriotic united front, develop socialist consultative democracy, improve the democratic system, enrich democratic forms, broaden democratic channels, ensure that the people's mastery of the country is implemented in the country's political and social life, ensure that the people manage state affairs, economic and cultural undertakings and social affairs through various channels and forms in accordance with the law, continuously promote the building of socialist democratic politics and develop socialist political civilization. Actively and steadily advance the reform of the political system, and promote the institutionalization, standardization, rule of law, and procedural nature of socialist democratic politics. By the 100th anniversary of the founding of our party, obvious results will be achieved in making all aspects of the system more mature and more stereotyped; by 2035, the system in all aspects will be more perfect, and the national governance system and governance capacity will be basically modernized; by the 100th anniversary of the founding of New China, the national governance system and governance capacity will be fully modernized, so that the socialist system with Chinese characteristics will be more consolidated and its superiority will be fully displayed.

Third, efforts should be made to promote the construction of a culturally powerful country and continuously improve the level of spiritual civilization. If culture is prosperous, the country is prosperous, and a strong culture is a strong nation. To build a modern socialist country, we must give full play to the guiding and supporting role of ideology and culture, and highlight the role of spiritual civilization in social development as a spiritual driving force, ideological guarantee and intellectual support. It is necessary to adhere to the path of socialist cultural development with Chinese characteristics, stimulate the vitality of national cultural innovation and creativity, and build a socialist cultural power. Firmly grasp the leadership of ideological work, cultivate and practice the core socialist values, strengthen ideological and moral construction, prosper and develop socialist literature and art, promote the coordinated development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries, continuously enhance the soft power of national culture, continuously enhance the influence of Chinese culture in the world, and continuously improve the ideological and moral level and scientific and cultural level of the people.

Fourth, strive to achieve common prosperity and social fairness and justice, and continuously improve the level of social civilization. Achieving common prosperity and social fairness and justice is an important symbol of social civilization and an inevitable requirement for building a modern and powerful socialist country. We must give priority to the development of education, improve the quality of employment and the level of people's income, strengthen the construction of the social security system, resolutely win the battle against poverty, implement the Healthy China strategy, create a social governance pattern of joint construction, co-governance and sharing, and effectively safeguard national security. Adhere to the bottom line, highlight key points, improve systems, guide expectations, continuously narrow the gap between income, urban and rural areas, and regions, basically realize the equalization of public services, ensure the basic life of the people, continuously meet the people's growing needs for a better life, continuously promote social fairness and justice, form effective social governance and good social order, and make the people's sense of gain, happiness and security more fulfilling, more secure and more sustainable.

Fifth, focus on building a beautiful China and continuously improve the level of ecological civilization. Socialist modernization is a modernization in which man and nature live in harmony. We must firmly establish the concept of socialist ecological civilization, adhere to the principle of giving priority to conservation, protection and natural restoration, and form a spatial pattern, industrial structure, production mode and lifestyle for resource conservation and environmental protection. Further advocate and promote the revolution of energy production and energy consumption, accelerate the establishment of a legal system and policy guidance for green production and consumption, establish and improve the economic system, green technology innovation system and financial support system for green cycle and low-carbon development, truly make green life a basic way of life, make the energy conservation and environmental protection industry a leading industry for the development of the national economy, fundamentally improve the ecological environment, and greatly improve the quality of ecological civilization in the whole society.

To sum up, under the guidance of the strategic goal of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, China will become a country with leading comprehensive national strength and international influence by building a high degree of material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilization, so that the Chinese nation will stand tall among the nations of the world with a more lofty attitude.

## Chapter VII: Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform and Comprehensively Opening Up

Reform and opening up is the most distinctive feature of contemporary China and the most distinctive character of contemporary Chinese communists. Without reform and opening up, there would be no socialism with Chinese characteristics, and there would be no excellent situation in which China is prosperous today. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has held high the banner of reform and opening up, carried forward the spirit of reform and opening up, persisted in comprehensively deepening reform and comprehensive opening up, and promoted major breakthroughs in the theory and practice of reform and opening up, creating a new situation in contemporary China's reform and opening up.

### Section 1: Reform and opening up is a new great revolution

The essence of China's reform and opening up is to fundamentally change various specific systems that restrict the development of productive forces and social progress in order to meet the needs of socialist modernization. Whether viewed from the tremendous historical role played by reform and opening up in liberating and developing the productive forces, or from the depth and breadth of changes in China's social relations and social life, it can be said that "reform and opening up is a great revolution in the history of the development of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation." This new great revolution has pushed the Party and the people to make great strides to catch up with the times, become the only way to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, and become a key move to determine the fate of contemporary China.



## 1. The party and the people are an important magic weapon for making great strides to catch up with the times

Catching up with the trend of the times and speeding up its own development is an important starting point for the CPC's reform and opening up, and it is also a great awakening of the party. Since the establishment of the socialist system in the mid-50s of the 20th century, China's socialist construction has made important achievements, but due to the large population and weak foundation, coupled with the mistakes in the guiding principles of the party's work, especially the occurrence of such an overall and long-term serious mistake as the "Cultural Revolution", China's economy is on the verge of collapse, the people's food and clothing are all problems, and China is still one of the poor countries. During this period, the world economy accelerated and science and technology progressed with each passing day, and Western capitalist countries and some countries and regions around China seized the opportunity to achieve rapid economic and technological development. The gap between China and developed countries and regions has widened significantly.

Regarding the changes in the international community and the gap between China's development level and the world, Comrade Deng Xiaoping said when receiving foreign guests that year: "Recently, our comrades went out to take a look, and the more they looked, the more they felt that we were backward. The fifties were the same, the sixties were different, and the seventies were even more different."<sup>1</sup> He also pointed out clearly: "In the early sixties, there was a gap between us and the international level of science and technology, but it was not very large, but in the past decade or so, the world has developed by leaps and bounds, and the gap has widened very widely." Compared with developed countries, the economic gap is not only 10 years, it may be 10 years, 30 years, and in some respects it may even be 50 years."<sup>2</sup> "If we do not carry out reform now, our modernization and socialist cause will be destroyed."<sup>3</sup> At the important historical juncture when the Party and the country were facing what to do, the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee conformed to the will of the Party and the people and the trend of the times and resolutely made the major policy decision of shifting the focus of the work of the Party and the State to socialist modernization and carrying out reform and opening up. As a result, the process of comprehensive reform, from the countryside to the cities, from the economic field to other fields, is unstoppable;

---

<sup>1</sup> "Deng Xiaoping Thought Yearbook: (1975-1997)", Central Literature Publishing 2011, p. 162.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 132.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 150.

From the coast to the river, from the east to the central and western regions, the door to the outside world is resolutely opened.

Comrade Deng Xiaoping clearly pointed out in the 80s of the 20th century: "We must catch up with the times, and this is the goal of reform."<sup>1</sup> "Catching up with the times" actually means vigorously developing social productive forces, getting rid of poverty and backwardness, and promoting China's modernization. Reform and opening up have profoundly changed China and promoted the vicissitudes of change in China. In 1978, China's total GDP was only 367.9 billion yuan, and the per capita disposable income of urban residents was only 343 yuan. By 2010, China's total GDP jumped to 41.2 trillion yuan, surpassing Japan to become the world's second largest economy, per capita GDP reached more than 30,000 yuan. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, we have always adhered to reform and opening up without wavering, properly responded to the complex and changeable domestic and international situations, and achieved rapid economic growth, with a total GDP of more than 99 trillion yuan in 2019 and a per capita GDP of more than 70,000 yuan.

More importantly, China has embarked on a new path for developing countries to achieve modernization in the course of reform and opening up. Historically, modernization programs in developing countries have mostly been designed based on the experience of developed Western countries. Especially after the end of World War II, Japan, South Korea and other countries and regions imitated the Western model to achieve modernization, while the drastic changes in Eastern Europe and the disintegration of the Soviet Union in the late 80s and early 90s of the 20th century made the modernization model of Western countries seem to be the only choice for developing countries. However, the reality of more than 70 years since the end of the Second World War shows that the modernization model of the developed countries has not achieved the expected results. According to World Bank statistics, between 1960 and 2008, 101 economies in the world entered the middle-income stage, but only 13 achieved the leap to high-income economies. The vast majority of countries and the vast majority of their populations have not escaped poverty through the Western model of modernization. The path of modernization that China has explored in the course of reform and opening up suited to China's national conditions has expanded the ways for developing countries to modernize.

Reform and opening up has not only won unprecedented international status and influence for China, but also won unprecedented self-confidence and dignity for Chinese people.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 242.

Reform and opening up have broken the shackles of the system that shackles people's thinking, prompted hundreds of millions of people to awaken from dullness and rigidity, and displayed unprecedented creative vitality; reform and opening up has promoted the development of ideology and theory, promoted the innovation of ruling concepts and methods, and rejuvenated the vitality of the party. The reform and opening up, which lasted for more than 40 years, has promoted China to achieve a great leap from "lagging behind the times" to "catching up with the times" and even "leading the times."

## 2. The only way to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics

Reform and opening up went hand in hand with socialism with Chinese characteristics. The great practice of reform and opening up is an inexhaustible source of power for the formation and development of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The reason why socialism with Chinese characteristics has vigorous vitality lies in the fact that it is a socialism that implements reform and opening up. It is in the great practice of reform and opening up that socialism with Chinese characteristics has ushered in a great leap from its founding, development to perfection.

Reform and opening up have deepened the understanding of the law of socialist construction and provided strong support for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. The CPC's understanding and grasp of the law governing socialist construction has gone through a process of moving from shallow to deep. On the basis of summing up the experience of socialist construction and in the magnificent practice of reform and opening up, we have gradually realized that socialist society is a society of constant change and change, and there is no immutable socialism; socialism is a kind of socialism that can have "multiple ways" and has no fixed and unique model; socialism is a socialism that is rejuvenated and manifests world significance through integration with China's practice, and there is no abstract socialism that departs from the specific national conditions and actual conditions. Based on these understanding of laws, one of the basic conclusions drawn by the CPC in summing up its long-term historical experience is to follow its own road and build socialism with Chinese characteristics. Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics has become the theme of all the Party's theories and practices since the reform and opening up.

Reform and opening up have provided a practical basis for the creation, development and improvement of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Socialism is not only a political proposition, but also a movement, which cannot be separated from practice. In the great practice of reform and opening up, the Communist Party of China has insisted on proceeding from reality and basing itself on the actual national conditions.

"Do what Comrade Mao Zedong has proposed but has not done, correct what he opposes and is wrong, and do well what he has not done well."<sup>1</sup> He pioneered socialism with Chinese characteristics, and in practice, it continues to develop and gradually improve. At every major historical juncture facing the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, we have relied on deepening reform and opening up to get out of the predicament and successfully break through. This is true whether it is to get rid of the domestic predicament after the end of the "Cultural Revolution" or to face the grim situation at home and abroad in the late 80s and early 90s of the 20th century; whether it is to respond to the domestic and foreign concerns after the death of Comrade Deng Xiaoping in 1997, or to cope with the new phased characteristics that emerged at the turn of the century; whether it is to cope with the huge impact of the international financial crisis in 2008, or to properly handle the main social contradictions that have been transformed in the new era. Reform and opening up have indeed become a key move to determine China's future and destiny. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: During the Cultural Revolution, when the 'Gang of Four' was in power, the people were in a dull mood, and it could even be said that they were in a state of worry, and the whole society was in a state of stagnation. After the end of the Cultural Revolution, there are still two years to go. China really became active and really concentrated its efforts on what the people wanted to do after the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee at the end of 1978.<sup>2</sup> With its revolutionary shaping of contemporary China, reform and opening up has injected strong vitality into socialism with Chinese characteristics.

From the implementation of household joint production contracting, the sudden emergence of township enterprises, the abolition of agricultural taxes, animal husbandry taxes and special product taxes, to the separation of "three powers" in rural contracted land, winning the battle against poverty, and implementing the strategy of rural revitalization; from doing a good job in large and medium-sized state-owned enterprises and developing individual and private economies to deepening the reform of state-owned assets and state-owned enterprises, and developing a mixed-ownership economy; from single public ownership to public ownership as the mainstay, the common development of multiple ownership economies and adherence to the "two unwavering" principle; From the traditional planned economic system to the unprecedented socialist market economic system, to making the market play a decisive role in the allocation of resources and giving better play to the role of the government; from focusing on economic structural reform to comprehensively deepening the reform of economic, political, cultural, social and ecological civilization systems and party building systems. It is precisely because of the bold reform of production relations that do not adapt to the productive forces and the superstructure that does not adapt to the economic base that the enthusiasm of the broad masses of the people has been aroused, the creativity and development vitality of the whole society have been greatly stimulated, and the appearance of China's urban and rural areas has undergone tremendous changes.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 300.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 232.

Opening up to the outside world means boldly absorbing and borrowing all the achievements of civilization created by human society, and absorbing and borrowing all the advanced business and management methods that reflect the laws of modern socialized production in all countries in the world, including the capitalist developed countries, so as to enrich and enhance their own development capabilities. From the establishment of special economic zones such as Shenzhen, the opening up of coastal border and riverine cities and inland central cities to the Canadian World Trade Organization, the joint construction of the "Belt and Road", the establishment of pilot free trade zones, the planning of free trade ports with Chinese characteristics, and the successful holding of two sessions of the China International Import Expo, it has both "brought in" and "gone out." It is precisely by opening our minds and embracing the world that we can truly integrate the tide of development of the era and realize the historic transformation from closed and semi-closed to open to the outside world. Practice has proved that socialism is not a complacent and self-enclosed system, but a society that continues to grow and develop through openness and exchanges. The history of more than 40 years has proved that socialist China has not changed its banner in opening up to the outside world, but has made scientific socialism shine with new vigor in the 21st century through the vivid practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

To sum up, socialism with Chinese characteristics was born in the reform and opening up, and it also developed and expanded in the reform and opening up. Reform and opening up is the logical starting point for opening up the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and it is also a powerful driving force for continuously expanding this road; reform and opening up is the practical source for forming and developing the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and it is also the practical basis for constantly improving this theoretical system; reform and opening up is a distinctive feature of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and an important magic weapon for enhancing the vitality of this system; reform and opening up is the source of living water for the formation of socialist culture with Chinese characteristics and an important driving force for the development and prosperity of this culture. Reform and opening up is the "magic weapon" for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, and writing a new chapter in socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era still requires comprehensively deepening reform and continuously expanding opening up.

### 3. the key to realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation

Since the 15th National Congress of the Communist Party of China first put forward the "two centenary goals", the Communist Party of China has been working hard for them. Shortly after the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China in 2012, Comrade Xi Jinping clearly put forward the new goal of "realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation."

The 19th CPC National Congress made important arrangements for realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that reform and opening up is "a key move to decide to achieve the two centenary goals and realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation." This is a new incisive summary of the great role and significance of reform and opening up.

The achievement of any ambitious goal will not be smooth sailing. The great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is by no means easy and can be achieved by banging gongs and drums. In the process of building socialist modernization and striving toward the grand goal, there will always be various difficulties and resistances. Some of these difficulties and obstacles come from the level of institutional mechanisms, some from the level of ideology and concepts, and some from external interference and obstruction. For more than 40 years, through reform and opening up, we have boldly broken through the shackles of institutions and mechanisms, promoted the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and continuously broken the resistance caused by outdated systems and mechanisms. Through reform and opening up, we have constantly broken the shackles of rigid and conservative ideology and concepts, stood taller, seen farther, and governed the country with a new perspective. Through reform and opening up, our comprehensive national strength has continued to develop and grow, and we have the confidence and strength to deal with such interference and sabotage, and "let the wind and waves rise and sit firmly on the fishing boat." Looking forward to the future, in the journey of realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, we still need to persevere in comprehensively deepening reform, continuously expanding opening up, and constantly overcoming resistance and breaking waves.

At present, the environment at home and abroad is undergoing extremely extensive and profound changes, China's development is facing a series of contradictions and challenges, and there are still many difficulties and problems on the way forward. For example, the problems of imbalance, incoordination and unsustainability in development are still prominent, the ability of scientific and technological innovation is not strong, the industrial structure is irrational, the development mode is still extensive, the gap between urban and rural development and the distribution of residents' income is still large, social contradictions have increased significantly, education, employment, social security, medical care, housing, ecological environment, food and drug safety, safe production, social security, law enforcement and justice, and other problems related to the vital interests of the masses are more, some people have difficulties in life, formalism and bureaucracy problems are prominent, and so on. To solve these intertwined and complex contradictions and problems, resolve risks and challenges from all sides, and promote sustained and healthy economic and social development, we fundamentally rely on reform and opening up.

Without reform and opening up, there would be no China's today; without reform and opening up, there would be no China's tomorrow.

Over the past 40 years and more, the Communist Party of China has united and led the people to emancipate their minds, seek truth from facts, boldly try and bravely reform, and create a new world. Reform and opening up have greatly changed the face of China, the face of the Chinese nation, the face of the Chinese people, and the face of the Communist Party of China. The Chinese nation has ushered in a great leap from standing up and getting rich to becoming strong, socialism with Chinese characteristics has ushered in a great leap from its founding, development to perfection, and the Chinese people have ushered in a great leap from insufficient food and clothing to moderate prosperity, and the Chinese nation is standing tall in the east of the world with a brand-new attitude. Practice has proved that reform and opening up is the only way to strengthen the country and enrich the people. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, as long as we persist in holding high the great banner of reform and opening up, constantly deepen our understanding of the laws of reform and opening up, dare to face difficulties, dare to overcome difficulties, carry out reform and opening up to the end, and constantly realize the people's yearning for a better life, we can create new and greater miracles that will impress the world, realize the "two centenary goals" and realize the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation as scheduled.

## Section 2: Persist in comprehensively deepening reform

China's reform and opening up began with the Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee, adhered to the principle of prioritizing the easy before the difficult, and gradually progressively to the convening of the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China. After the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China's reform entered the period of tackling tough problems and deep waters, "It can be said that the easy and happy reforms have been completed, the delicious meat has been eaten, and the rest are hard bones."<sup>1</sup> It can be said that the complexity, sensitivity and arduousness of further promoting reform are no less than more than 30 years ago, when reform and opening up reached a new and important juncture. The Third Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee deliberated and adopted the Decision of the CPC Central Committee on Several Major Issues Concerning Comprehensively Deepening Reform, which put forward the guiding ideology, goals, tasks and major principles for comprehensively deepening reform, rationally laid out the strategic priorities, priorities, main directions of attack, working mechanisms, promotion methods, timetables, and road maps for comprehensively deepening reform, and opened a new era of comprehensively deepening reform and promoting reform through the overall design of the system.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 101.

## 1. Comprehensively deepen the basic observance of reform

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly pointed out that the success of China's reform is because we have adhered to the correct direction and position and maintained political firmness. To promote comprehensive deepening of reform in the new era, we must also adhere to the correct direction, adhere to the people-centered reform position, and resolutely implement the general requirements for reform put forward by the Party Central Committee. This is the experience of reform, and it is also the follow-up of reform.

Reform and opening up is a profound revolution, and we must adhere to the correct direction and advance along the correct road. In the early days of reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping stressed: "Adhering to the socialist orientation in reform is a very important issue."<sup>1</sup> If reform and opening up are not carried out, "reform and opening up" that negates the socialist direction is also a dead end. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "Of course, we must hold high the banner of reform, but our reform is a reform that continues to advance on the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and we will neither follow the old road of closure and rigidity, nor take the evil road of changing the banner."<sup>2</sup> "The purpose of promoting reform is to continuously promote the self-improvement and development of China's socialist system and give socialism new vitality."<sup>3</sup> These loud declarations show that the direction of China's reform is to continuously promote the self-improvement and development of the socialist system, rather than to change the course of the socialist system. Over the past 40 years, China's reform process has also experienced twists and turns, but because of the correct direction and proper control, problems can be corrected in time, so it can always move forward along the right path. At present, reform is facing a very complex domestic and international environment, and various ideologies and interests are stirring each other. In order to grasp the pulse of reform from the appearance of complicated things and prescribe reform remedies amid the divergence of opinions, we must keep a sober mind and have sufficient strategic concentration. We are highly vigilant against the danger of the country being invaded, subverted and split, the danger of undermining the overall situation of reform, development and stability, and the danger of interrupting the development process of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993, p. 138.

<sup>2</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform, Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 14.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 56.



As Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "We will resolutely change what should be changed and can be changed, and resolutely do not change what should not and cannot be changed."<sup>1</sup> To ensure that the correct direction of reform is always adhered to, we must always adhere to the party's basic line as the lifeline of the party and the country, and always adhere to the four basic principles of economic construction as the center. The two basic points of reform and opening up are unified in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics; we must continue to adhere to the four basic principles, which are the foundation of the country, not only ensure the correct direction of reform and opening up with the four basic principles, but also give the four basic principles a new connotation of the times through reform and opening up, eliminate all kinds of interference, and unswervingly follow the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

China's reform has a standpoint, and this is the people's stand that the Chinese Communists have always adhered to. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "The fundamental purpose of our reform is to make the country richer and stronger, make the society more fair and just, and make the people's life better."<sup>2</sup> Comprehensively deepen reform, no matter what is changed or what step it takes, adhere to the people-centered reform value orientation cannot change. To implement this reform value orientation, we must embody the people-centered development thinking in the whole process of reform, so that what the people care about and expect, what the reform should grasp and promote, and bring more sense of gain to the people through reform. It is necessary to take the promotion of social fairness and justice and the improvement of people's well-being as the starting point and foothold of comprehensively deepening reform, focus on creating a fairer and more just social environment, constantly overcome various phenomena that violate fairness and justice, and make the results of reform and development more and more equitable to benefit all the people. We must adhere to the original intention of reform and opening up, regard seeking happiness for the people as the criterion for testing the results of reform, and ensure that everything that is beneficial to the cause of the party and the people will be resolutely done, refueled, and worked without stopping; and everything that is detrimental to the cause of the party and the people should be resolutely reformed, thoroughly reformed, and changed without delay. It is necessary to introduce a number of hard tricks and practical measures that can be loud, stand up, and be recognized by the masses, properly handle the relationship between the "first kilometer" and the "last kilometer" of reform, break through the "middle obstruction," and prevent inaction. The heavier the tasks of reform, development and stability, the more it is necessary to maintain the flesh-and-blood ties between the party and the masses, be good at improving policies and propositions from the people's practice, creation, and development requirements, and constantly consolidate the mass foundation for comprehensively deepening reform.

Further emancipating the mind, further emancipating and developing the social productive forces, and further emancipating and enhancing social vitality are both the purpose and the conditions for reform.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Press, 2018, p. 5161 517.

<sup>2</sup> President Xi Jinping's New Year's Message (2014-2018), People's Publishing House, 2018, p. 19.

Among them, emancipating the mind is the premise, the general switch for liberating and developing social productive forces, and emancipating and enhancing social vitality. Without the liberation of Tian Xiang, it would be impossible to make the historic policy decision of reform and opening up, and it would be impossible to promote theoretical innovation on the basis of practice. Without the great emancipation of the mind, there will be no great breakthrough in reform. Emancipating and developing the social productive forces and emancipating and enhancing social vitality is the inevitable result of emancipating the mind and is also an important foundation for emancipating the mind. Development is the last word, and only by further liberating and developing the social productive forces can the grand goal of national rejuvenation be achieved. Emancipating the mind and emancipating and enhancing social vitality is for the purpose of better emancipating and developing the social productive forces. Through deepening reform, we should let the vitality of all labor, knowledge, technology, management, capital and other elements burst out in a competitive manner, and let all the sources of creating social wealth fully flow.

## 2. the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform

Since the reform and opening up, the Communist Party of China has governed the country from a new perspective, attached great importance to system building, and emphasized that institutional issues are more fundamental, overall, stable and long-term. The Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core, with great political courage and wisdom, put forward the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform with the overall goal of improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. This general goal responds to the objective requirements put forward by the forward expansion of the reform process, embodies the deepening and systematization of the party's understanding of reform, and is a major breakthrough in the party's theoretical innovation process.

A deep understanding and accurate grasp of the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform is the key to implementing various reform measures. In response to some people who only talk about the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, while ignoring "improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics", Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform is a whole composed of two sentences. The latter sentence stipulates a clear orientation for improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics under the guidance of the fundamental direction. Speaking both sentences is complete. To speak only the second sentence and not the first is incomplete and incomplete."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform, Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 21.

Improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics has laid down the fundamental direction for comprehensively deepening reform. Promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity is an inevitable requirement for improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and it is also the proper meaning of adhering to the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics and building a modern and powerful socialist country.

The national governance system and governance capacity are the concentrated embodiment of a country's system and system implementation ability. The national governance system is the institutional system for managing the country under the leadership of the party, and the national governance capacity is the ability to use the national system to manage all aspects of social affairs. The national governance system and governance capacity are an organic whole and complement each other, and only with a good national governance system can we improve governance capacity, and only by improving national governance capacity can we give full play to the effectiveness of the national governance system. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We have talked about many modernizations, including agricultural modernization, industrial modernization, scientific and technological modernization, national defense modernization, etc., and the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity is the first time."<sup>1</sup> The modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity is the result of the Party's continuous deepening of understanding of the laws governing the country in the practice of leading reform and opening up, and marks a major innovation and development of the theory of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

From the perspective of historical development, how to govern a brand-new society such as a socialist society has not been well solved in the past practice of world socialism. In the process of leading China's revolution and construction, the Communist Party of China has constantly considered and explored what kind of national governance system to establish in the future and achieved important results. Since the reform and opening up, more attention has been paid to institutional construction, a complete set of national governance systems has been basically formed, and governance capabilities have been continuously improved. On the whole, China's national governance system and governance capacity have unique advantages and are adapted to national conditions and development requirements. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has coordinated the reform of systems and mechanisms in various fields such as economy, politics, culture, society, and ecological civilization, involving an unprecedented scope, introducing many plans, touching on the depth of interests, and promoting unprecedented intensity, improving the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and significantly improving the modernization level of the national governance system and governance capacity.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2014, p. 26.

At the same time, we must also realize that compared with China's economic and social development and the requirements of the people, compared with the increasingly fierce international competition in today's world, and compared with the realization of long-term peace and stability of the country, we still have many areas for urgent improvement in the national governance system and governance capacity, and the system has not yet reached the requirements of full maturity and stereotype, and some aspects have even become an important factor restricting development and stability. Therefore, we must continuously improve the national governance system and improve the ability to use the system to effectively govern the country through comprehensive deepening reform. In February 2014, in a speech at the seminar for major leading cadres at the provincial and ministerial levels to study and implement the spirit of the Third Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee and comprehensively deepen reform, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Today, a major historical task before us is to promote the socialist system with Chinese characteristics to be more mature and more formalized, and to provide a complete set of more complete, stable and effective institutional systems for the development of the cause of the party and the country, for the happiness and well-being of the people, for social harmony and stability, and for the long-term peace and stability of the country."<sup>1</sup> From the point of view of becoming a more mature and stereotyped system, the main historical task of socialism in our country in the past was to establish a basic socialist system and carry out reform on this basis. The main historical task in the future is to improve and develop the socialist system with Chinese characteristics.

The Fourth Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee held in October 2019 focused on the theme of "adhering to and improving the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity", starting from the strategic goals and major tasks established by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, focusing on adhering to and consolidating the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, ensuring the long-term rule of the Party and the long-term peace and stability of the country, and focusing on improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics. Comprehensively building a modern socialist country, focusing on giving full play to the superiority of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, comprehensively sums up the achievements, accumulated experience and principles formed by the party and the people in the construction of China's national system and national governance, focuses on adhering to and improving the fundamental, basic and important systems that support the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and deploys major institutional reforms that need to be deepened and key tasks that need to be promoted. The plenary session not only pointed out the great significance and overall requirements for adhering to and improving the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, but also summarized the significant advantages of China's state system and national governance system from 13 aspects

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 104-105.

It also made arrangements on how to uphold and improve the socialist system with Chinese characteristics and promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity from 13 aspects, including adhering to and improving the party's leadership system. On the basis of the "two-step" strategic arrangement made by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Fourth Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee further clarified that the adherence to and improvement of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, The overall goal of promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity is to achieve obvious results in making all aspects of the system more mature and more stereotyped by the 100th anniversary of the founding of our party; by 2035, the system in all aspects will be more perfect, and the national governance system and governance capacity will be basically modernized; by the 100th anniversary of the founding of New China, the national governance system and governance capacity will be fully modernized, so that the socialist system with Chinese characteristics will be more consolidated and its superiority fully displayed. This further clarifies the internal logic of the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform and the ideas for future development.

To promote the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity in the new era, it is necessary to adapt to the changes of the times, constantly reform the systems and mechanisms that do not meet the requirements of practical development, and make the various systems and mechanisms more scientific and perfect in the process of innovation; it is necessary to continuously improve the party's level of scientific governance, democratic governance, and ruling according to law, improve the ability of state institutions to perform their duties, and enhance the ability of the people to manage state affairs, economic, social, and cultural affairs, and their own affairs according to law; and it is necessary to improve the ideological and political, scientific, and cultural quality of cadres at all levels and managers in all fields as soon as possible. It is necessary to enhance the work ability of party and state organs, enterprises and institutions, people's organizations, social organizations, and so on as soon as possible; proceed from the actual conditions of our country and creatively study and draw on all the excellent achievements of human civilization.

### 3. important arrangements for comprehensively deepening reform

Comprehensively deepening reform is a major strategic deployment related to the overall development of the cause of the party and the country, not a reform in a certain field or aspect, but needs to be promoted in an overall manner, strengthening top-level design and overall planning. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has scientifically formulated a blueprint for reform, carefully drawn up a road map for reform, firmly grasped the key point of economic system reform, and promoted the comprehensive deepening of reform to continue to develop in depth.

The road map for comprehensively deepening reform is to achieve the "six tight surrounds" clearly put forward by the Third Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China under the overall goal of comprehensively deepening reform.

The first is to deepen the reform of the economic system around making the market play a decisive role in the allocation of resources, adhere to and improve the basic economic system, accelerate the improvement of the modern market system, macro-control system and open economic system, accelerate the transformation of economic development mode, accelerate the construction of an innovative country, and promote more efficient, fairer and more sustainable economic development. The second is to deepen the reform of the political system closely centering on adhering to the party's leadership, the people being masters of the country, and the organic unity of governing the country according to law, accelerate the institutionalization, standardization and procedure of socialist democratic politics, build a socialist country under the rule of law, and develop a broader, fuller and more sound people's democracy. The third is to deepen the reform of the cultural system closely centering on the construction of the socialist core value system and the socialist cultural power, accelerate the improvement of the cultural management system and cultural production and operation mechanism, establish and improve the modern public cultural service system and modern cultural market system, and promote the great development and prosperity of socialist culture. The fourth is to deepen the reform of the social system around better protection and improvement of people's livelihood, promote social fairness and justice, reform the income distribution system, promote common prosperity, promote institutional innovation in the social field, promote the equalization of basic public services, accelerate the formation of a scientific and effective social governance system, and ensure that the society is both vibrant and harmonious and orderly. The fifth is to deepen the reform of the ecological civilization system closely around the construction of a beautiful China, accelerate the establishment of the ecological civilization system, improve the institutional mechanisms for land space development, resource conservation and utilization, and ecological environmental protection, and promote the formation of a new pattern of harmonious development and modernization of man and nature. Sixth, closely centering on improving the level of scientific governance, democratic governance, and ruling according to law, deepen the reform of the party building system, strengthen the construction of democratic centralism, improve the party's leadership system and ruling methods, maintain the party's advanced nature and purity, and provide a strong political guarantee for reform, opening up, and socialist modernization. On the one hand, this reform roadmap clarifies the main contents of comprehensively deepening reform and highlights the comprehensiveness of reform; on the other hand, it clarifies the key points of reform in the economic, political, cultural, social, ecological and party building fields, so that the top-level design, priority order, key areas and key links of comprehensively deepening reform are clear at a glance, which is conducive to the combination and promotion of overall promotion and key breakthroughs.

To comprehensively deepen reform, we must persistently focus on economic structural reform. China's basic national conditions are still in the primary stage of socialism and will remain for a long time, which determines that economic construction is the party's long-term central task. We must unswervingly persist in taking economic construction as the central task, and we must unswervingly adhere to the focus on economic structural reform. To promote the reform of the economic system, we must adhere to the direction of socialist market economic reform, and in particular, we must properly handle the core issue of the relationship between the government and the market.

In 1992, the 14th National Congress of the Communist Party of China put forward that the goal of economic structural reform is to establish a socialist market economic system, and proposed that the market should play a basic role in the allocation of resources under the state's macro-control. This major theoretical breakthrough has played an extremely important role in China's reform, opening up, and economic and social development. Since the 14th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party has continuously deepened its understanding of the relationship between the government and the market. The 15th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed "making the market play a basic role in the allocation of resources under the state's macro-control", the 16th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed "giving greater play to the basic role of the market in the allocation of resources", the 17th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed "giving better play to the basic role of the market in the allocation of resources from the perspective of system", and the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed "giving greater play to the basic role of the market in resource allocation to a greater extent and on a wider scale." The Third Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China clearly proposed to "make the market play a decisive role in the allocation of resources and better play the role of the government." This is another major breakthrough in theory and practice by the party, which is conducive to establishing a correct concept of the relationship between the government and the market in the whole party and society, to changing the mode of economic development, to changing government functions, and to curbing negative and corrupt phenomena. The market plays a decisive role in the allocation of resources, not the whole role. To develop the socialist market economy, it is necessary to give play to both the role of the market and the role of the government, but the functions of the role of the market and the role of the government are different. The Party Central Committee put forward clear requirements for better playing the role of the government, emphasizing that "the duties and roles of the government are mainly to maintain macroeconomic stability, strengthen and optimize public services, ensure fair competition, strengthen market supervision, maintain market order, promote sustainable development, promote prosperity, and make up for market failures."<sup>1</sup>

Persist in taking economic structural reform as the traction to drive reform in other fields. The economic base determines the superstructure. Economic structural reform has an important influence and transmission effect on reform in other fields, and the progress of major economic structural reform determines the progress of structural reform in other fields, and has the effect of affecting the whole body. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "In comprehensively deepening reform, we must adhere to the reform of the economic system as the main axis, strive to make new breakthroughs in the reform of important areas and key links, so as to drive and drive reform in other fields, so that all aspects of reform can be promoted in a coordinated manner and form a joint force, rather than separate and scattered efforts."<sup>2</sup> Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Press, 2014, p. 514.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, p 61.

With the reform of the economic system as the traction, we have led to the reform of the political, cultural, social and ecological civilization system, the reform of the party and state institutions, the reform of the administrative management system, the reform of the system of governing the country according to law, the reform of the judicial system, the reform of the foreign affairs system, the reform of the social governance system, the reform of the ecological environment supervision system, the reform of the national security system, the reform of the national defense and the army, the reform of the party leadership and party building system, the reform of the discipline inspection and supervision system, and a series of major reforms have been solidly advanced. A good situation for in-depth advancement.

### Section 3: Adhere to comprehensive openness

Opening up to the outside world is China's basic national policy. Over the past 40 years, China has persisted in opening its doors to construction, transforming itself from a relatively closed economy into an economy that is deeply integrated with the world economy and increasingly open, and has achieved development achievements that have attracted worldwide attention. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, in the face of the new era and new situation, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has accurately judged the general trend of world development, accurately grasped the connotation of comprehensive opening up, persisted in actively participating in and actively promoting the process of economic globalization, developed a higher-level open economy, and promoted the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up.

#### 1. The new situation and new requirements facing opening up to the outside world

The world now is an open world. Facing the world, the implementation of economic opening up and the implementation of different degrees of opening up in various fields has become an inevitable requirement for the development of all countries in the world today. Opening up is the trend of the times and the aspiration of the people. Openness leads to progress, closure leads to backwardness. The CPC's regard of opening up to the outside world as its basic national policy means conforming to the trend of development of the times and building, consolidating and developing socialism under the conditions of opening up to the outside world and in the process of linking with economic globalization. It is precisely in the process of opening up to the outside world that China has become the world's second largest economy, contributing more than 30% to world economic growth for many consecutive years, and scientific socialism has shown vigor and vitality in China.

In the new era, the international and domestic situations facing opening up to the outside world are undergoing profound and complex changes. Internationally, the world today is experiencing major changes unprecedented in a century, with the economic and social development of countries becoming increasingly closely linked, and the reform of the global governance system and international order accelerating.



At the same time, the world economy has been deeply adjusted, the problem of insufficient new momentum is prominent, the problems of unbalanced development and income distribution have intensified, the new challenges brought by new technologies, new industries and new formats have become prominent, some countries have obvious policy preferences, international trade and investment barriers have been continuously raised, global unilateralism, protectionism and populism have gradually spread and fermented, economic globalization has encountered twists and turns, multilateralism and free trade system have been impacted, there are still many unstable and uncertain factors, and risks and challenges have intensified. The world faces important choices between openness and conservatism, cooperation and closure, change and conservatism, which are both full of hope and challenges.

From a domestic point of view, China's economic development has entered the new normal, labor costs continue to rise, resource constraints are becoming increasingly tight, environmental carrying capacity is close to the upper limit, the traditional competitive advantage of open economy has been weakened, and the traditional development model has encountered bottlenecks. At the same time, China is rich in human resources, the market scale is large, the infrastructure is relatively perfect, the industrial facilities are complete, the institutional environment and policy environment for innovative development are constantly improving, and the open economy still has comprehensive competitive advantages. Under the pressure of severe and complex domestic and foreign environment, China's processing trade has accelerated transformation and upgrading, service trade has continued to develop rapidly, new foreign trade new products, new formats and new models have continued to emerge, the international operation ability of enterprises has been significantly enhanced, and its status in the international division of labor has gradually improved. Reality requires us to accelerate the transformation of the open economy from factor-driven to innovation-driven, from scale and speed to quality and efficiency, and from cost and price advantages to comprehensive competitive advantages with technology, standards, brands, quality and service as the core.

With the increase of China's national strength, China's relations with the world are also undergoing profound changes, China's status and role in the international arena have been greatly enhanced, and its interaction with the international community has been unprecedentedly close. China's every move attracts the world's attention. Comrade Xi Jinping solemnly declared: "The door of China's opening will not be closed, but will only open wider and wider." China's pace of promoting a higher level of opening up will not stagnate! China's pace of promoting the construction of an open world economy will not stagnate; China's pace of promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind will not stagnate!"<sup>1</sup> In the new era, China will make greater contributions to the common prosperity of all countries in the world while achieving its own development with a more responsible spirit, a more inclusive mind and higher quality growth.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, p 495.

## 2. New measures to promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China summed up China's valuable experience in opening up to the outside world, conformed to the general trend of economic globalization, and made a major strategic plan to promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up. This strategic deployment, which includes the expansion of the scope of opening up, the broadening of the field and the deepening of the level, as well as the innovation of open methods, the optimization of layout, and the improvement of quality, is the proper meaning of the basic strategy of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and is the basic compliance of China's opening up to the outside world.

The new pattern of comprehensive opening up is reflected in the open space, that is, optimizing the layout of regional opening-up, increasing the intensity of opening up in the west, changing the regional pattern of China's opening up to the outside world that is fast and slow in the west and strong and weak in the coastal interior, and gradually forming an open pattern of division of labor and cooperation along the coastal inland border, interactive development, and mutual assistance between the east and the west. Construction, adhere to independent opening up and reciprocal opening-up, accelerate the strategic planning of going out, coordinate multilateral, bilateral and regional opening up and cooperation, and accelerate the implementation of the free trade area strategy; reflected in the content of opening-up, that is, greatly relax the market quasi-personnel, further liberalize the general manufacturing industry, orderly expand the opening up of the service industry, expand the two-way opening up of the financial industry, and promote infrastructure interconnection. According to this new pattern, China has taken a series of major measures in opening up to the outside world.

First, solidly promote the construction of the "Belt and Road." The construction of the "Belt and Road" is a major strategic measure for China to expand opening up to the outside world, and it is also the focus of opening up in the coming period. With the joint efforts of all parties, the construction of the "Belt and Road" has gradually changed from concept to action, from vision to reality. In order to promote the construction of the "Belt and Road", China has held the "Belt and Road" Summit Forum for International Cooperation. This not only builds a new platform for China to expand opening up, but also helps promote world economic growth and deepen regional cooperation. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out that in accordance with the principle of consultation, co-construction and sharing, actively promote international cooperation on the "Belt and Road", strive to achieve policy coordination, facility connectivity, unimpeded trade, financial integration and people-to-people bonds, create a new platform for international cooperation, and add new impetus to common development. To this end, it is necessary to strengthen the docking with the development strategies of countries along the Belt and Road, enhance strategic mutual trust, seek the greatest common denominator of cooperation, and build the "One Belt, One Road" into a road of peace, prosperity, openness, innovation and civilization.

The second is to promote the construction of a strong trade country. From a major trading country to a trading power, we must consolidate the traditional advantages of foreign trade, cultivate new competitive advantages, expand the space for foreign trade development, and actively expand imports. It is necessary to expand foreign trade, accelerate the transformation of trade development mode, change from focusing on trade in goods to coordinated development of trade in goods and services, from relying on imitation and following to relying on innovation and creation, and from large input and large output to high quality, high price, and excellent input. It is necessary to cultivate new trade formats and models, support the healthy development of cross-border e-commerce, market procurement trade, and comprehensive foreign trade services, and create new growth points for foreign trade. We must promote trade and investment liberalization and facilitation, oppose trade protectionism, support the multilateral trading system, promote international cooperation in production capacity, participate in international cooperation at a higher level and in a wider space, form a global-oriented trade, investment and financing, production and service network, and accelerate the cultivation of new advantages in international economic cooperation and competition. We must innovate foreign investment methods, strengthen guidance for overseas mergers and acquisitions, standardize overseas business behavior, and strive to achieve common and sustainable development. China has held the China International Import Expo since 2018, which is the world's first import-themed national-level exhibition so far, which is a major innovation in the history of international trade development. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "China's initiative to expand imports is not an expedient measure, but a long-term consideration for facing the world, facing the future and promoting common development."<sup>1</sup> "The China International Import Expo should not only be held every year, but also run at a high level, achieve results, and do better and better."<sup>2</sup> These loud words have fully demonstrated to the world China's sincerity and goodwill in opening up its own market and sharing development opportunities. At the second China International Import Expo held as scheduled in November 2019, Comrade Xi Jinping put forward three suggestions for jointly building an open and cooperative, open innovation and open and shared world economy, indicating China's positive attitude of further opening up and promoting trade facilitation.

The third is to actively create a world-class business environment. The business environment is also productivity. China has vigorously strengthened the construction of the rule of law in the use of foreign investment, unified domestic and foreign investment laws and regulations, improved an open and transparent foreign-related legal system, comprehensively implemented the pre-national treatment plus negative list management system for prospective personnel, created a fair market environment, continued to relax market access, and respected international business practices.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 495.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 496.

All types of enterprises registered in China will be treated equally and equally, the legitimate rights and interests of foreign-funded enterprises will be protected, intellectual property protection will be strengthened, and entrepreneurs from all over the world will strive to provide a better environment and conditions for entrepreneurs from all over the world to invest and develop their businesses in China, and improve the level of open economy in a larger scope, in a wider range of fields and at a deeper level. In recent years, through large-scale tax and fee reductions, and the in-depth promotion of the reform of decentralization, management and service, on October 24, 2019, the World Bank released the "2020 Business Environment Report", ranking China's business environment ranked first46th place rose to 31st place, up 15 places. The Foreign Investment Law, passed in March 2019, establishes the basic framework of China's foreign investment legal system, making unified provisions on the access, promotion, protection and management of foreign investment. In October, the Regulations on Optimizing the Business Environment were promulgated. This is an important measure for China to create a business environment based on the rule of law, internationalization and facilitation, marking that China's business environment will reach a new level.

The fourth is to optimize the layout of regional opening up and create a new highland for opening up to the outside world. In the pattern of China's opening up to the outside world, the eastern part started early and developed rapidly, while the western region started late and developed slowly. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, the western region has continuously accelerated the pace of opening up to the outside world, maintained a good development trend in foreign trade and attracted foreign investment, and achieved good results. However, due to the weak development foundation and the overall low base, the western region is still a "short board" in China's regional opening layout. Data show that the western region has 72 percent of the country's land area, 27 percent of the population, and 20 percent of the total economy, while foreign trade accounts for only 7 percent of the country's total, and the use of foreign capital and foreign investment account for 7.6 percent and 7.7 percent respectively. The 19th CPC National Congress proposed to optimize the layout of regional opening up and intensify the opening up of the western region. The western region should give full play to its advantages of abundant natural resources, abundant labor, and increased state policy support, deepen and expand opening up, and promote a more optimized pattern of opening up.

Fifth, coordinate multilateral and bilateral and regional opening up and cooperation, and accelerate the implementation of the free trade area strategy. Since the beginning of the new century, the development process of the multilateral trading system has been blocked, and regional trading arrangements with a higher level of openness and greater flexibility have flourished, becoming the main engine driving economic globalization. In the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that he should actively participate in the reform and construction of the global governance system, support the multilateral trading system, promote the construction of free trade areas, and promote the construction of an open world economy. This is not only the need to expand its own open space, but also reflects the responsibility of maintaining the international economic order. The implementation of the free trade area strategy is a major measure for China to optimize the layout of opening up and create a new highland of opening up.

By the end of 2019, China had established a total of 18 pilot free trade zones, covering all directions in the southeast, northwest, and central regions. In November 2018, the State Council issued the Notice on Several Measures to Support the Deepening Reform and Innovation of the Pilot Free Trade Zones, giving the pilot free trade zones greater autonomy in reform, continuing to deepen differentiated exploration, increasing stress testing, and giving full play to the role of the pilot free trade zones as a pilot field for reform and opening up. China should not only build the whole island of Hainan into a pilot free trade zone, but also support Hainan to gradually explore and steadily promote the construction of a free trade port with Chinese characteristics, establish a free trade port policy and institutional system step by step and in stages, and build the Hainan free trade port into a clear banner and an important open door leading China's opening up in the new era, and drive the formation of a new pattern of higher-level reform and opening up.

In order to further expand opening up, China not only actively promotes the transformation from the opening up of commodity and factor flows to rules and other institutional opening-up, promotes the construction of a fair, reasonable and transparent system of international economic, trade and investment rules, maintains and develops an open world economy, jointly creates an environment conducive to open development, promotes the orderly flow of production factors and efficient allocation of resources. The deep integration of the market also repeatedly emphasizes that China adheres to win-win opening up and does not pursue a zero-sum game. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "China's opening up to the outside world is not to sing a one-man show, but to welcome the participation of all parties; it is not to seek a sphere of influence." It is to support the common development of all countries; not to create their own back gardens, but to build a hundred gardens shared by all countries."<sup>1</sup> This strongly declares to the world that China's opening up to the outside world is committed to win-win and win-win results.

"If you are connected, you will advance together, and if you are closed, you will retreat." "Looking back at history, open cooperation is an important driving force for enhancing the vitality of international economy and trade. Today, open cooperation is a realistic requirement for promoting the stable recovery of the world economy. Looking to the future, openness and cooperation are the requirements of the times to promote the continuous progress of human society. China unwaveringly pursues a mutually beneficial and win-win opening up strategy, achieves greater intensity and higher levels of opening up, and provides countries with broader markets, more abundant capital, richer products and more opportunities for cooperation. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "China is the world's second largest economy, with a large market of more than 1.3 billion people and a land area of more than 9.6 million square kilometers. The sea has calm times and stormy times. Without the wind and rain, it would not be the sea.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 42.

Storms can overturn small ponds, but not the sea. After more than 5,000 years of hardship and hardship, China is still here! facing the future, China will always be here!"<sup>1</sup> Openness should be two-way and mutually beneficial, rather than one-way and beneficial to one party. In the face of profound changes in the world economic pattern, all countries should join hands to actively promote openness and cooperation, support the multilateral trading system, and oppose unilateralism and protectionism. In the Sino-US trade frictions, there are voices in the United States that they want to decouple the United States from China, and even decouple China from the world. As the world's largest developing country, the largest developed country and the top two economies, China and the United States have frequent exchanges and converged interests, which is already "you have me, I have you", and the so-called decoupling is unimaginable. Decoupling from China means decoupling from opportunities and decoupling from the future. Today's China is not only the China of China, but also the China of the world. In the future, China will embrace the world with a more open attitude, form a more benign interaction with the world, and bring a more progressive and prosperous China and the world.

## Section 4: Persist in using scientific methods to promote reform and opening up

For a country and a nation, reform and opening up is a profound social change and a complex system project, and we must adhere to scientific methods. Looking around the world, some countries have fallen into civil war and turmoil due to poor decision-making and improper methods on the issue of reform and opening up, and there are many examples of people living in poverty and national division. A very important reason for the success of China's reform and opening up is that it has adhered to the world outlook and methodology of dialectical materialism and historical materialism, and accurately grasped the internal laws of reform and opening up. Both positive and negative experiences show that reform and opening up do not necessarily bring success; Successful reform and opening up must adhere to scientific methods. Whether it is summing up the historical experience of reform and opening up for more than 40 years or deploying a new era to comprehensively deepen reform, Comrade Xi Jinping attaches great importance to and repeatedly emphasizes the importance of adhering to scientific methods.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, p. 498-499.

## 1. Persist in combining strengthening the party's leadership with respecting the people's initiative

The party's leadership is the key and fundamental to the success of reform and opening up. It is precisely by always adhering to the party's centralized and unified leadership that we can achieve a great historical turning point and open a new period of reform and opening up. In the process of reform and opening up for more than 40 years, the Party has adhered to the correct direction of reform, maintained the determination of reform, and ensured that no subversive mistakes occurred on fundamental issues; the Party proceeded from the overall situation, carefully deployed reform tasks, and accurately promoted opening up. Let reform and opening up promote and complement each other, and inject strong impetus into China's economic and social development; the Party focuses on the prominent contradictions and problems facing development, conducts in-depth investigation and research, and encourages bold exploration at the grassroots level. Adhere to the connection between reform decision-making and legislative decision-making, and continuously improve the scientific nature of reform decision-making, so as to promote the continuous success of reform and opening up. Looking at the present, comprehensively deepening reform in the new era is a complex system project, and the correlation and coupling requirements between various reform measures are very high, and it is necessary to gather forces from all aspects and levels in order to advance as a whole. Moreover, every step of reform and opening up is not easy, and the future will inevitably face such risks and challenges, and even unimaginable stormy waves. To continue to promote the comprehensive deepening of reform, we must give full play to the party's role as the core of leadership in controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties, continuously improve the party's ability and determination to set the direction, seek the overall situation, formulate policies, and promote reform, and ensure that the ship of reform and opening up always moves forward along the correct course and breaks the waves.

Reform and opening up is the cause of hundreds of millions of people, and there is endless wisdom among the masses of the people. Every breakthrough and development in the understanding and practice of reform and opening up, the emergence and development of every new thing in reform and opening up, and the creation and accumulation of experience in every aspect of reform and opening up all come from the practice and wisdom of hundreds of millions of people. To comprehensively deepen reform and opening up in the new era, we must still closely rely on the people, attach importance to giving play to the initiative of localities, grassroots units and the masses, give full play to the subjective initiative of the masses, and gather majestic people's hearts and people's strength for reform and opening up.

The party's leadership provides a strong political guarantee and a correct direction for reform and opening up, and the people's initiative provides a steady stream of wisdom and strength for reform and opening up. In the whole process of reform and opening up, we must always pay attention to combining upholding the party's leadership with respecting the people's initiative. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out:

"Sum up the fresh experience created by the masses in a timely manner, fully mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative and creativity of the masses to promote reform, pool the wisdom and strength of the broadest masses of the people on reform, and work with the people to push reform forward."<sup>1</sup>

## 2. adhere to the combination of "crossing the river by feeling the stones" and the top-level design

"Crossing the river by feeling the stones" is a reform method rich in Chinese wisdom and in line with China's national conditions, and it is also a scientific method that conforms to Marxist epistemology and practical theory. "Crossing the river by feeling the stones" means feeling the law and the law of reform and opening up. To carry out reform and opening up and develop the socialist market economy, the ancestors did not talk about it, and other socialist countries did not do it, but we can only gain true knowledge from practice through repeated exploration through practice, understanding, re-practice, and re-understanding. China's reform and opening up has come about in this way, which is a process of continuous accumulation of experiments, then summing up, and then popularization, and a process of continuous deepening from rural to urban, from coastal to inland, and from part to whole. This kind of gradual reform has avoided social unrest caused by unclear circumstances and improper measures, and has provided a guarantee for steadily advancing reform and smoothly achieving its goals. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Crossing the river by feeling the stones is in line with the process of people's understanding of objective laws and the dialectic of things changing from quantity to quality." It cannot be said that in the early days of reform and opening up, we had to cross the river by feeling the stones, and now we cannot mention crossing the river by feeling the stones. "<sup>2</sup> To comprehensively deepen reform and open up, we also need to cross the river by feeling the stones. "Of course, there are rules for crossing the river by feeling the stones, and it is necessary to do it according to the laws that have been recognized, and then deepen the understanding of the laws in practice, rather than stepping on the watermelon skin and sliding where it counts."<sup>3</sup>

Reform and opening up has entered a period of tackling tough problems and deep waters, and has reached the stage of gnawing hard bones, the relevance and interaction have been significantly enhanced, and it is difficult to rely only on reforms in a single field and a single level to be effective, we must strengthen top-level design and overall planning, make overall design for the economic system, political system, cultural system, social system, ecological civilization system, etc., strengthen the study and judgment of the correlation of various reforms, and strive to achieve overall and local coordination, the combination of root cause and symptom treatment, and gradual and breakthrough promotion.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping, "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform," Central Literature Publishing House, 2018, p. 59-60.



"Crossing the river by feeling the stones" and top-level design are both important methods to promote reform and opening up, and the dialectical unity between the two. Promoting partial phased reform and opening up should be carried out on the premise of strengthening the top-level design, and strengthening the top-level design should be planned on the basis of partial phased reform and opening up. It is necessary to strengthen macro-control and top-level design, pay more attention to the systematic, holistic and coordinated nature of reform, and continue to encourage bold experimentation and breakthroughs, and constantly deepen reform and opening up.

### 3. adhere to the unity of problem-oriented and goal-oriented

The CPC's efforts in revolution, construction, and reform have always been aimed at solving China's practical problems. Reform and opening up is caused by the reversal of problems, and it has been deepened in the continuous solution of problems. In the process of deploying and promoting reform and opening up, the Party Central Committee has always upheld a strong sense of problems, whether it is formulating plans, or deploying to promote and supervise implementation, and has taken practical solutions to problems as the goal. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must have a strong sense of problems, be guided by major issues, grasp key issues for further research and thinking, and focus on promoting the resolution of a series of prominent contradictions and problems facing our country's development."<sup>1</sup> Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, the Party has led the people of the whole country to work as one, open roads in every mountain, build bridges when encountering water, and constantly solve problems in the process of advancing. Old problems are solved, and new problems arise. We must carry forward the spirit of struggle, dare to face problems head-on, improve our ruling skills, be good at solving problems, and promote the continuous advancement of reform and opening up.

Adhering to goal orientation is an important method to promote reform and opening up, and it is also an important experience of the Communist Party of China in leading reform and opening up. Scientific and reasonable goals guide the direction of efforts and provide spiritual inspiration. On the basis of the "four modernizations" put forward by the party in the fifties and sixties of the 20th century, in the 80s it proposed to achieve moderate prosperity and "build a prosperous, strong, democratic, and civilized modern socialist country," and in the 90s it proposed "two hundred years." In the new century, the goal of struggle is to "build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way," "build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way," and build a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious, and beautiful modern socialist country. Realize new goals such as the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 27.

These beautiful goals inspire the Chinese people to unite and firmly march towards a better life, injecting strong spiritual power into reform and opening up.

Looking back at the process of reform and opening up, we can find that the goal is a concentrated embodiment of the problem, and the problem should be solved in the process of accomplishing the goal. The process of solving problems is the process of achieving goals, and the process of achieving goals is also the process of solving problems, and the two are unified in the great practice of reform and opening up. After arduous exploration in the early stage of reform and opening up, the party overcame the old concept of opposing the market and planning in the reform and opening up, and clarified the economic reform goal of establishing a socialist market economic system, which is a model for adhering to the unity of goal orientation and problem orientation in reform and opening up. In comprehensively deepening reform and opening up in the new era, it is all the more necessary to unify goal-oriented and problem-oriented enemies, and achieve the set goals in the process of solving problems.

#### 4. adhere to the pilot project and promote the comprehensive promotion

Adhering to the principle of pilot projects and promoting them in an all-round way is an important method and important experience of reform and opening up. The pilot project is to accumulate experience and find out the rules for comprehensive promotion. Comprehensive promotion is based on the pilot first, which is the goal pursuit and final embodiment of the pilot first. Reform and opening up has been continuously developed in the course of promoting pilot projects to comprehensive and local to the overall situation.

China's reform and opening up began with pilot projects. This is true of the pilot reform of state-owned enterprises in the early stage of reform and opening up, the four special economic zones of Shenzhen, Zhuhai, Shantou and Xiamen as "test fields" for opening up to the outside world, or the establishment of the China (Shanghai) Pilot Free Trade Zone after the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China to explore new forms of trade facilitation. To promote reform and opening up, it is not necessary to carry out pilot projects in all aspects and fields. In practice, for reforms that must make breakthroughs but are not so sure for the time being, we adopt the method of pilot exploration and throwing stones to ask for directions, carry out experiments first, respect practice and creation, encourage bold exploration, dare to open up, gain experience, see it accurately, and then push it away. For reforms that are not yet deep enough in understanding, but must be promoted, we must boldly explore and pilot the reforms. Some reforms involve deep-seated institutional factors and complex interest relationships, and it is difficult to push them out on the surface for a while; it is necessary to give play to the role of scouts and advance teams in the pilot reforms, find out the rules, build consensus, and accumulate experience and create conditions for comprehensively pushing them out. Seeking comprehensive advancement on the basis of pilot projects can effectively reduce the overall cost and risk of promotion, and is more conducive to steadily advancing reform and opening up.

When advancing in an all-round way, it is necessary to properly handle the relationship between the whole and the key points, pay attention to grasping the main aspects of the main contradictions and contradictions, and grasp the important areas and key links, and also focus on proceeding from the system and the whole, carry out overall planning, and promote the development of work in all aspects.

## 5. correctly handle the relationship between reform, development and stability

Reform involves in-depth interest adjustment and system adjustment, and we must properly handle the relationship between reform, development, and stability. Reform, development and stability are the three important fulcrums of China's socialist modernization construction and the three key chess pieces in the overall situation. Reform is a powerful driving force for economic and social development, development is the key to solving all economic and social problems, and stability is the prerequisite for reform and development. At present, China is not only in a period of important strategic opportunities for development, but also in a period of prominent social contradictions, and it is particularly important to properly handle the relationship between reform, development and stability, and promote reform and development in social stability. It is necessary to persistently unify the intensity of reform, the speed of development and the degree of social tolerance, take the improvement of people's living standards as the point of integration in correctly handling the relationship between reform, development and stability, promote reform and development while maintaining social stability, and promote social stability through reform and development. It is necessary to enhance the coordination of reform measures, development measures, and stability measures, properly grasp the relationship between current interests and long-term interests, partial interests and overall interests, and individual interests and collective interests, and strive to solve problems related to the vital interests of the masses, and also focus on guiding the masses to correctly handle various interest relations, rationally and lawfully express their interest demands, and create a stable and united social atmosphere.

The new era is an era of comprehensive rule of law. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in particular: "Throughout the reform process, we must attach great importance to the use of rule of law thinking and methods, give play to the leading and promoting role of the rule of law, strengthen the coordination of relevant legislative work, and ensure that reform is promoted on the track of rule of law."<sup>1</sup> The deeper the reform and opening up, the more emphasis should be placed on the rule of law. We must not violate the law under the guise of reform, nor can we not use the excuse that the law is not perfect and does not promote reform. In the practice of reform, the study of reform plans and reform measures should simultaneously consider the legislative issues involved, and put forward legislative needs and suggestions in a timely manner.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 153.

The results of reform that have proved effective in practice should be upgraded into law in a timely manner. Where the conditions for practice are not yet ripe and it is necessary to carry out a trial first, authorization should be made in accordance with legal procedures. Laws and regulations that do not meet the requirements of reform should be promptly revised or abolished.

Comrade Xi Jinping has stressed many times that the advancement of reform and opening up to this day is more important than understanding determination, and more important than method is responsibility. In order to implement the plan for comprehensively deepening reform, the central authorities have clarified the responsibilities and requirements of all departments and units for implementing the reform plan, stressed that the central and local governments should work together to form a joint force, and make it clear that the relevant central departments that undertake the leading tasks are the main units responsible for implementation, and must earnestly shoulder the responsibility for the implementation of reform, especially paying attention to opening up the "last mile" of reform promotion. In the concrete practice of promoting reform and opening up, we must focus on the concrete implementation of relevant important reform arrangements, and the vast number of party-member leading cadres must earnestly "understand the reform in a practical way, plan for the reform, implement the reform, and act as both a promoter of reform and a doer of reform."<sup>1</sup>

"To govern a big country, if you cook small food. "China is a big country, and it must not make subversive mistakes on fundamental issues, and once they occur, they cannot be irreparable or compensated. In the new era, comprehensively deepening reform and opening up, just like moving forward in deep water, encountering more and more resistance, facing more and more reefs, undercurrents, and whirlpools, we must understand the water nature, grasp the overall situation, seek progress in stability, must adhere to scientific methodology, pay attention to systematic, holistic and synergistic, not only adhere to emancipating the mind, dare to be the first in the world, dare to dare to try, but also adhere to seeking truth from facts, actively and steadily, and step steadily to unify reform and development, adhere to the direction of unchanged, the road is not biased, The intensity will not be reduced, and the reform and opening up will go more steadily and further.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 162.

## Chapter VIII: The New Normal of Economic Development and Achieving High-Quality Development

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has taken charge of the general trend of domestic and foreign development, grasped the new characteristics and new requirements of China's economic development, and clearly put forward a series of new concepts, ideas and strategies such as China's economic development entering a new normal, adhering to the supply-side structural reform as the main line, accelerating the construction of a modern economic system, and promoting high-quality economic development, effectively leading the overall situation of China's economic development in the new era and ensuring sustainable and healthy economic and social development. It has become an important content of Xi Jinping's socialist economic thought with Chinese characteristics for a new era.

### Section 1: Economic development has entered a new normal

Clarifying that China's economic development has entered a new normal is a major judgment made by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core by comprehensively analyzing the long-term cycle of the world economy and the phased characteristics of China's development and their interaction. To plan and promote China's economic and social development in the new era, we must adapt to the new normal, grasp the new normal, and lead the new normal as the general logic that runs through the overall development and the whole process.

#### 1. deeply understand the scientific connotation of the new normal of economic development

Scientific understanding of the current situation and accurate study and judgment of future trends are the prerequisites for doing a good job in economic work.

In the face of the continuous downward trend of China's economic growth rate after the international financial crisis in 2008, and the situation of "three-phase superposition" of the growth rate shift period, the painful period of structural adjustment, and the digestion period of the previous stimulus policy, Comrade Xi Jinping scientifically analyzed the new characteristics of economic development in stages, clearly pointed out that China's economic development has entered a new normal, showing new characteristics different from the past, and providing a fundamental basis for formulating economic development strategies and policies in the new era.

Economic development has entered a new normal, which is an inevitable reflection of the phased characteristics of China's economic development. Comrade Xi Jinping used the "nine looks" to summarize the trend changes in China's economic development. (1) From the perspective of consumer demand, consumption has changed from imitation wave consumption to personalized and diversified consumption. (2) From the perspective of investment demand, investment in traditional industries and real estate is relatively saturated, and investment opportunities in new technologies, new products, new formats and new business models have emerged. (3) From the perspective of exports and the balance of payments, the comparative advantage of low-cost exports has been transformed, and it is urgent to cultivate new comparative advantages, and the situation of double surplus in the balance of payments is developing in the direction of basic balance of balance of payments. (4) From the perspective of production capacity and industrial organization mode, the supply capacity of traditional industries greatly exceeds demand, the problem of overcapacity is prominent, the industrial structure must be optimized and upgraded, and production miniaturization, intelligence and specialization will become the new characteristics of industrial organization. (5) From the perspective of the comparative advantages of production factors, the low-cost advantage of labor is weakening, and economic growth will rely more on the quality of human capital and technological progress. (6) From the perspective of market competition characteristics, it is gradually shifting from quantitative expansion and price competition to quality-based and differentiated-based competition. (7) From the perspective of resource and environmental constraints, the environmental carrying capacity has reached or is close to the upper limit, and it is necessary to promote the formation of a new way of green and low-carbon circular development. (8) From the perspective of economic risk accumulation and resolution, all kinds of hidden risks are gradually becoming apparent, and the bottom line of no systemic risk must be guarded. (9) From the perspective of resource allocation mode and macro-control mode, the marginal effect of comprehensive stimulus policy is significantly reduced, and it is necessary to give play to the decisive role of the market in resource allocation and scientifically carry out macro-control.

The above nine trend changes are not only the external characteristics of the new normal, but also the internal driving force of the new normal, which are reconstructing the growth model, power structure, industrial structure and factor structure of China's economic development, and promote China's economic development under the new normal to show growth rate changes, development mode changes, economic structure optimization, New features of growth dynamics conversion.

First, the growth rate has changed, from high speed to medium and high speed.

The change in the speed of economic growth not only reflects the objective trend of economic growth, but also reflects the new orientation of China's macro-control goals. Generally speaking, catch-up economic development in post-developing countries goes through three stages. The first phase usually has a faster growth rate. The reason is that the industrial space is large, it can be imitated development, the pressure on resources and environment is not large, there is abundant and low-cost labor, the base of 61\* is small, and the growth space is large. In the second stage, the conditions for rapid development no longer exist, the industrial space is relatively saturated, the effect of imitation development decreases rapidly, the pressure on resources and environment increases, labor costs increase, economic scale increases, and the economic growth rate is bound to slow down. But this is not a step backwards, but a step forward, and the key task of this period is to explore new sources of economic growth by encouraging innovation, with a focus on improving quality and efficiency. In the third stage, it is close to or reaches the level of developed countries, and the economic development rate slows down and is basically stable. The reason for this is that the scale of the economy continues to grow, the industry is fine, and the new comparative advantage depends mainly on human capital and science and technology, rather than on natural resources and cheap labor. The new normal of China's economic development corresponds to the second stage, and the change in growth rate is a natural reflection of the development stage.

The second is the transformation of development mode, from scale and speed to quality and efficiency. Economic growth is no longer simply about heroes /<sup>^</sup>, and no longer simply about good or bad in terms of speed. It is not that the economic development rate is higher and the situation is "very good"; nor is the economic development speed lower that the situation is "very bad." Economic development should focus on improving quality and efficiency, and realize that investment has returns, products have markets, enterprises have profits, employees have income, the government has taxes, and the environment has improved. Economic development relies more on efficiency improvement, including improving labor efficiency, capital efficiency, land efficiency, resource efficiency, environmental efficiency, contribution rate of scientific and technological progress, total factor productivity, etc., and gives play to the multiplier effect of data on the efficiency of other factors.

The third is the optimization of the economic structure, from mainly incremental capacity expansion to adjusting the stock and doing the same as the optimization of increment. In terms of demand structure, the role of consumer demand in economic growth has become increasingly prominent, and personalized, diversified, quality consumption, online shopping, customized consumption and other ways have developed extensively, bringing new development opportunities; In terms of industrial structure, the service industry has developed rapidly, and the contribution rate of China's service industry to economic growth has approached 60% in 2018; in terms of urban and rural structure, the urbanization process has continued to advance, and the urbanization rate reached 59.. in 201858%;

In terms of regional structure, the central and western regions have shown strong development potential, and the implementation of regional development strategies such as the "Belt and Road" construction, the coordinated development of Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei, the construction of the Yangtze River Economic Belt, the regional integration of the Yangtze River Delta and the construction of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area has continuously expanded new space for regional development.

The fourth is the transformation of growth momentum, from mainly relying on factors such as resources and low-cost labor to relying more on innovation-driven transformation. At present, China's scientific and technological innovation ability is constantly improving, some important fields are among the world's advanced ranks, and are changing from "followers" to "parallelists" or even "leaders", and the innovation of industries, products, production methods, industrial organizations, business models, management systems and other aspects continues to deepen. At the same time, the world is facing a new round of scientific and technological revolution and industrial transformation, which not only brings great challenges to China's development, but also provides China's development with a major historical opportunity to catch up with and surpass developed countries. Under the new normal, it is necessary to create a new growth cycle by vigorously implementing the innovation-driven development strategy, creating a new engine for development and cultivating new impetus for development.

The new normal is a new theoretical summary made by the Party Central Committee on the current phased characteristics of China's economic development, with definite theoretical connotation and clear practical requirements, and this concept cannot be generalized and abused, let alone arbitrarily labeled on other issues in other fields. It is necessary to scientifically understand its connotation and accurately define its extension. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "In understanding the new normal, we must accurately grasp the connotation and pay attention to overcoming several tendencies. First, the new normal is not an event, and don't judge it by good or bad. "The new normal is an objective state, a state that will inevitably appear at this stage of China's economic development, an internal inevitability, there is no distinction between good and bad, we must plan according to the situation, move according to the situation, and advance according to the situation." Second, the new normal is not a basket, don't put everything in it. The new normal is mainly manifested in the economic field, do not abuse the concept of the new normal, make a lot of 'new normal', what cultural new normal, tourism new normal, urban management new normal, etc., and even classify some bad phenomena into the new normal. Third, the new normal is not a safe haven, don't attribute the work that is difficult or difficult to do well to the new normal, it seems that there is a reason not to solve it if it is pushed to the new normal. The new normal is not to do nothing, not to do not develop, not to do not want GDP growth, but to better use subjective initiative and more creative spirit to promote development. ”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 249.



## 2. the new normal is an accurate judgment of China's economic development trend

Under the new normal, a series of new characteristics of economic development show that the evolution of China's economy to a stage with high quality and more optimized structure is a natural process, which is in line with the spiraling movement law of things. In other words, economic development entering the new normal is a necessary stage of China's economic and social development, and it is a general trend that is not transferred by human will.

The Third Plenary Session of the 11th CPC Central Committee opened a new period in the history of reform and opening up. For more than 40 years, despite all the difficulties, we have created a miracle in which a country's rapid economic growth lasted the longest since the end of the Second World War. China's total economic volume ranked eleventh in the world at the beginning of reform and opening up; In 2005, it surpassed France and ranked fifth; In 2006, it surpassed the United Kingdom and ranked fourth; In 2007, it surpassed Germany and ranked third; In 2010, it surpassed Japan and ranked second. In 2010, China's manufacturing scale surpassed that of the United States, ranking first in the world. In a few decades, we have completed the development process that developed countries have gone through for hundreds of years and created a miracle of world development. However, with the continuous increase of economic aggregate, China has encountered a series of new situations and problems in the process of development. The economy is large but not strong, the quality of development is not high enough, and sustainable development is facing severe challenges.

(1) Prominent contradictions in the economic structure. International experience shows that in the initial stage of economic development, developing countries often pursue rapid economic growth, and tend to neglect technological progress and structural optimization, resulting in structural imbalances between the economy and society, urban and rural areas, regions and income distribution. Since the reform and opening up, the main goal of China's economic development is to solve the problem of food and clothing, pursuing speed, scale and quantity, and not paying enough attention to structural problems. At present, China's economic development is facing three major structural imbalances: First, the structural supply and demand imbalance of the real economy, although the production capacity of the supply system is very strong, but most of them can only meet the needs of low-end, low-quality and low-price, and it is difficult to meet the people's increasingly upgraded multi-level, high-quality and diversified consumer demand. Second, the imbalance between finance and the real economy, there is a phenomenon of funds turning from real to virtual, and a large amount of funds circulate themselves in the financial system, which not only increases the risk of the financial system, but also further aggravates the financing difficulties of the real economy. The third is the imbalance between real estate and the real economy, and a large amount of money has poured into the real estate market, resulting in excessive rise in house prices, further pushing up the cost of the development of the real economy.

To solve the problem of economic structural imbalance, we must optimize the structure, use the method of deepening reform to improve the quality of the supply system, and achieve a new dynamic equilibrium between supply and demand.

(2) The endogenous driving force of growth needs to be reshaped urgently. In the past, economic growth was mainly driven by investment and exports, but this pattern of growth is unsustainable. From the perspective of investment, investment growth faces multiple constraints such as demand, finance and environment. From 2013 to 2018, the growth rate of China's investment was 18.6%, 15.7%, 10%, 8.1%, 7.2%, and 5.9%, respectively, and the decline trend was very obvious. From 2013 to 2018, China's export growth rate was 7.9%, 6.1%, -2.8%, -7.7% and 7.9% respectively, 7.1%, fluctuating greatly, external demand growth is unstable. With the aging population and increasing environmental requirements, the low-cost advantage of relying on the demographic dividend in the past is disappearing, and the driving force of exports on economic growth is gradually weakening. Therefore, based on domestic demand, cultivating endogenous power, especially relying on consumption, has become an inevitable choice for China's future economic sustainable growth.

(3) Resource and environmental constraints are increasing. China's resource- and energy-intensive industries account for a considerable proportion of the national economy, and the demand for resources and energy is large and the consumption is high. According to World Bank statistics, China's steel, copper, media and aluminum consumption rank first in the world, and oil consumption ranks second in the world. Under the background of increasing constraints such as resources, energy and environment and the increasingly prominent contradiction between supply and demand, it has become an inevitable choice to promote the development of green and low-carbon cycles, force industrial transformation and upgrading, and take a new path of resource-saving and environment-friendly green development.

(4) International space is increasingly being squeezed. After the international financial crisis in 2008, the world economy entered a period of economic growth based on long-term structural adjustment. With the increase of unstable and uncertain factors in the world economic recovery, the world economic pattern is undergoing major changes, and the global real economy competition has a new trend. On the other hand, the advantages of factor costs in emerging economies and developing countries are increasingly prominent. Coupled with the significant impact of the new crown pneumonia epidemic on international trade and investment, the global industrial chain and supply chain are facing deep adjustments, which correspondingly bring profound changes to the global supply structure and demand structure, import and export patterns. China's manufacturing industry is facing the dual squeeze and double challenge of developed countries gaining momentum and emerging economies catching up and competing with each other. At the same time, after the rapid rise of China's economy, it has become the main "variable" that the world economic power considers to deal with, especially the United States and other countries do not want to see socialist China develop and grow, and do everything possible to hinder China's economic development.

In the face of a more complex external environment, China urgently needs to cultivate new advantages in international competition.

Therefore, to enter the new normal, we must accurately grasp the general trend of economic development, not only see the appearance of economic growth rate shifting, but also grasp the trend of development mode transformation, structural adjustment and power conversion in essence, and promote the evolution of China's economy to a high-quality development stage.

### 3. the new normal has not changed the fundamentals of China's long-term economic development

Under the new normal, although China's economy is facing downward pressure, the fundamentals of long-term economic development have not changed, the good foundation and conditions supporting sustained economic growth have not changed, China's development is still in a period of important strategic opportunities, with sufficient resilience, huge potential and continuous bursting of innovation vitality. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out at the Central Economic Work Conference held on December 19-21, 2018: "The world is facing major changes unprecedented in a century, and crises and opportunities coexist in the midst of changes, which brings great opportunities for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. We must be good at turning crises into opportunities, turning crises into security, and grasping the new connotations of important strategic opportunities."<sup>1</sup> This requires accurate identification, scientific response, and proactive change, analysis of the economic situation with a comprehensive, dialectical and long-term perspective, research and judgment of development opportunities from the dimension of time and space, be good at nurturing new opportunities in crises, open up new situations in changes, and grasp the new connotations of important strategic opportunities.

(1) Although the economic growth rate has slowed down, its comprehensive strength has been significantly improved. In 2019, China's GDP increased by 6.1%, with a total volume of more than 99 trillion yuan, accounting for more than 16% of the world economy and contributing 30% to world economic growth. Today, China is the world's second largest economy, the largest manufacturing country, the largest foreign exchange reserves, and the largest country in goods trade. Made in China, created in China, and built in China highlight China's new comparative advantages.

(2) Changes in the international environment have brought new opportunities for China to participate in global governance. The anti-globalization of some countries has caused certain negative impacts on international trade and investment, increased global economic risks, and intensified global competition for capital and products, but it will not change the historical trend of globalization.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Central Economic Work Conference Held in Beijing", People's Daily, December 22, 2018.

Globalization has entered a new stage, and the future globalization is no longer determined only by the West, and emerging economies have increasingly become an important force driving globalization. The "new globalization", based on the principles of equal treatment, benefit sharing, inclusiveness and reciprocity, represents the future development direction of mankind. This provides a major historical opportunity for China, which advocates and actively practices the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind, to become a "leader" of new globalization, which will greatly enhance China's voice and influence in global governance.

(3) The scientific and technological revolution brings new opportunities for technological and industrial upgrading. Science and technology have become the most important variable affecting the world economic cycle and an important factor determining the quality of the economy. A new round of scientific and technological revolution is shaping the global economic structure and political landscape. In the face of new opportunities for the integrated development of digitalization, networking and intelligence, China has a good foundation and growth potential in the fields of 5G technology, industrial Internet, Internet of Things, big data, artificial intelligence and deep integration of manufacturing, and the development prospects are very broad.

(4) China has a domestic market with huge potential, and the resilience and room for maneuver of the economy are large. In 2019, China's per capita GDP exceeded \$10,000, which is at the level of upper-middle-income countries according to the World Bank's criteria. At present, there are more than 400 million middle-income groups in China, which is the world's largest and most growing middle-income group, with huge consumption potential.

At the same time, we must also see that the period of strategic opportunities is also an important period of testing, and under the new normal, we must maintain determination, make good use of opportunities, adhere to the general tone of seeking progress while maintaining stability, and promote sustained and healthy economic development. The general tone of seeking progress while maintaining stability is an important principle of governing the country and is also a methodology for doing economic work well. Stability is the main tone and the overall situation. It is necessary to use "stability" to cope with "change", adhere to stable employment, stable finance, stable foreign trade, stable foreign investment, stable investment, and stable expectations, especially in the face of the adverse impact of the new crown pneumonia epidemic. It is also necessary to fully implement the tasks of ensuring the employment of residents, ensuring the basic people's livelihood, ensuring market entities, ensuring food and energy security, ensuring the stability of the industrial chain and supply chain, and ensuring the operation of the grassroots level, boosting market confidence, enhancing the people's sense of gain, happiness and security, and maintaining sustained and healthy economic development and overall social stability. Under the premise of stability, it is necessary to make progress in key areas, use "progress" to achieve "stability", take the initiative, and comprehensively deepen reform. Accelerate the optimization and upgrading of the economic structure, enhance the ability of scientific and technological innovation, accelerate green development, actively participate in the reform of the global economic governance system, and accelerate the promotion of high-quality economic development, so as to fundamentally achieve stable economic and social operation.

## Section 2: Deepen supply-side structural reform

Promoting supply-side structural reform is a major innovation to adapt to and lead the new normal of economic development, an active choice to adapt to the new situation of comprehensive national strength competition after the international financial crisis, and an inevitable requirement for promoting the high-quality development of China's economy. Comrade Xi Jinping first proposed "supply-side structural reform" at the 11th meeting of the Central Financial and Economic Leading Group in early November 2015, pointing out that "while appropriately expanding aggregate demand, efforts should be made to strengthen supply-side structural reform and focus on improving the quality and efficiency of the supply system.", enhance the momentum of sustained economic growth, and promote the overall leap in the level of social productivity in China."<sup>1</sup>

### 1. adhere to the supply-side structural reform as the main line

Adhering to the supply-side structural reform as the main line is the general trend and the situation. Economic development has entered a new normal, the main contradiction of China's economic development has been transformed into structural problems, the main aspect of the contradiction is on the supply side, mainly manifested in the supply structure can not adapt to the change of demand structure. At this time, demand policies that focus on solving the problem of short-cycle economic fluctuations will not only be difficult to deal with the structural problems that arise in the long-term cycle, but may also further exacerbate structural imbalances, resulting in increased debt, overcapacity, and even declining growth. Whether it is the United States after World War II or the major economies after the 2008 international financial crisis, they basically adopt Keynesian demand management policies to stimulate the economy, and their economic growth is prone to decline again after a short-term recovery, or even stagflation. Therefore, we must adjust economic development policies, exert efforts from the supply side, and promote supply-side structural reform.

The so-called supply-side structural reform

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Economic Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 87.

“That is, starting from improving the quality of supply, we should use reform methods to promote structural adjustment, correct distortions in factor allocation, expand effective supply, improve the adaptability and flexibility of the supply structure to changes in demand, improve total factor productivity, better meet the needs of the broad masses of the people, and promote sustained and healthy economic and social development.”<sup>1</sup> To accurately grasp the profound connotation of supply-side structural reform, it is necessary to grasp the three key points of "supply-side", "structure" and "reform.”

"Supply side" means that the main contradiction of economic operation is on the supply side. Supply and demand are two fundamental aspects of the intrinsic relationship of the market economy. Supply management and demand management are two basic methods of macro-management of the operation of the market economy, with the aim of maintaining the basic balance between total social supply and total social demand in terms of total volume and structure, so as to promote sustained and healthy economic development. In actual economic operation, if the main contradiction appears on the supply side, the macroeconomic management method is mainly supply management; if the main contradiction appears on the demand side, the macroeconomic management method is mainly based on demand management. On January 18, 2016, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in his speech at the seminar for major leading cadres at the provincial and ministerial levels to study and implement the spirit of the Fifth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee: "Demand-side management focuses on solving aggregate problems and pays attention to short-term regulation, mainly by regulating taxation, fiscal expenditure, monetary credit, etc. to stimulate or suppress demand. In turn, it drives economic growth. Supply-side management focuses on solving structural problems, focusing on stimulating economic growth momentum, mainly improving the quality and efficiency of the supply system by optimizing factor allocation and adjusting the production structure, and then promoting economic growth."<sup>2</sup> In recent years, with the changes in the contradiction between supply and demand in China's macroeconomic operation, the main contradiction is on the supply side, and macroeconomic management needs to change from focusing on demand management to focusing on supply management.

"Structural" means that the contradiction on the supply side is mainly "structure" rather than "aggregate.” Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Although the prominent contradictions and problems facing China's economic operation have cyclical and aggregate factors, the root cause is major structural imbalances.”<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> "Seven Questions about Supply-Side Structural Reform - Authoritative People Talk About How to Look at the Current Economy", People's Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 6.

<sup>2</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Economic Construction, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 99.

<sup>3</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Economic Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 3.

To solve the structural imbalance, we must find ways and formulate policies from the supply side and structural reform, use reform methods to promote structural adjustment, reduce ineffective and low-end supply, expand effective and medium-to-high-end supply, and enhance the adaptability and flexibility of the supply structure to changes in demand. To this end, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The three words 'structural' are very important, and it is okay to refer to 'supply-side reform', but we must not forget the three words 'structural'."<sup>1</sup>

"Reform" means that the way to solve the structural contradictions on the supply side is to deepen reform. The fundamental reason for the supply-side and structural problems in economic operation is that there are institutional obstacles, the decisive role of the market in the allocation of resources is insufficient, and the government intervenes too much. To solve these problems, we must rely on reform and innovation. On the one hand, it is necessary to give play to the decisive role of the market in the allocation of resources, actively and steadily promote market-oriented reform in terms of breadth and depth, greatly reduce the government's direct allocation of resources, let the market play a full role in all areas that can play a role, and promote the allocation of resources to maximize benefits and optimize efficiency; on the other hand, the market plays a decisive role in the allocation of resources, not all of them. China practices a socialist market economic system, and we must still persistently bring into play the superiority of our socialist system and give play to the positive role of the party and government. It is necessary to effectively transform the functions of the government, clearly define the boundary between the government and the market, and let the government play a role in maintaining macroeconomic stability, strengthening and optimizing public services, ensuring fair competition, strengthening market supervision, maintaining market order, promoting sustainable development, promoting common prosperity, and making up for market failures. It is necessary to deepen the reform of the administrative system, innovate administrative management methods, optimize the way the government plays its role, reduce administrative orders, rely more on market means and legal means, and on the basis of respecting market laws, use reform to stimulate market vitality, use policies to guide market expectations, use planning to clarify the direction of investment, and use the rule of law to regulate market behavior.

To promote supply-side structural reform, we must grasp three basic requirements: First, the ultimate goal is to meet demand. It is necessary to deeply study market changes, understand actual needs and potential needs, and better meet the needs of the people for a better life in the liberation and development of social productive forces. Second, the main direction of attack is to improve the quality of supply. It is necessary to reduce ineffective supply, expand effective supply, focus on improving the quality of the entire supply system, and improve the adaptability of the supply structure to the demand structure.

---

<sup>1</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Economic Construction, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 98.

Third, the fundamental way is to deepen reform. It is necessary to improve the institutional mechanism in which the market plays a decisive role in the allocation of resources, deepen the reform of the administrative management system, break the monopoly, build a more perfect market-oriented allocation system and mechanism for factors, and make the price mechanism truly guide the allocation of resources. At the same time, it is necessary to strengthen incentives and encourage innovation, enhance the endogenous power of micro subjects, improve profitability, improve labor productivity, improve total factor productivity, and increase potential growth rate.

To deepen supply-side structural reform, the general requirement is the eight-character policy of "consolidation, strengthening, upgrading and smoothing." It is necessary to consolidate the achievements of "three to one reduction and one supplement", promote more industries with excess capacity to speed up the liquidation, reduce all kinds of business costs in the whole society, and increase the intensity of making up for shortcomings in infrastructure and other fields. It is necessary to enhance the vitality of micro-subjects, give play to the subjective initiative of enterprises and entrepreneurs, establish fair, open and transparent market rules and a business environment based on the rule of law, promote positive incentives and survival of the fittest, and develop more high-quality enterprises. It is necessary to improve the level of the industrial chain, pay attention to the use of technological innovation and scale effects to form new competitive advantages, and cultivate and develop new industrial clusters. It is necessary to smooth the national economic cycle, accelerate the construction of a unified, open, competitive and orderly modern market system, improve the ability of the financial system to serve the real economy, and form a virtuous circle of domestic market and production subjects, economic growth and employment expansion, and finance and real economy.

## 2. supply-side structural reform is different from the supply-side school

Soon after the supply-side structural reform was proposed, some people equated it with the Western supply-side school. To this end, Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "First of all, I want to make it clear that the supply-side structural reform we are talking about is not the same thing as the supply-side school of Western economics, and we cannot regard the supply-side structural reform as a copy of the Western supply-side school, and we must prevent some people from using their explanations to promote 'neoliberalism' and take the opportunity to create negative public opinion."<sup>1</sup>

The Western supply-side school is an economic theory produced in response to the "stagflation" problem in the United States and other Western countries in the 70s of the 20th century. The supply-side school believes that stagflation is completely the cumulative effect of the long-term implementation of Keynesian demand management policies, so in terms of policy propositions, one is to reduce taxes, especially marginal tax rates, and the other is to reduce government intervention.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 251.



The theory and policy propositions of the supply-side school were valued by then US President Reagan, and became the basis for the Reagan administration's policy formulation in the 80s of the 20th century, forming the so-called "Reagan economics."

The supply-side structural reform is the product of combining the basic principles of Marxist political economy with China's practice. In the Introduction to the Critique of Political Economy, Marx analyzed the dialectical relationship between the four links of production, distribution, exchange and consumption in the process of social reproduction, and discussed the appropriate proportional relationship between the two categories in Capital, Volume 2, Part 3, "Reproduction and Circulation of Total Social Capital." The balance between supply and demand in quantity and structure is deeply analyzed. These ideas have important guiding significance for China's supply-side structural reform.

The main differences between supply-side structural reform and Western supply-side schools are:

First, the theoretical basis is different. The theoretical basis of supply-side structural reform is Marxist political economy and Xi Jinping's socialist economic thought with Chinese characteristics for a new era. The supply-side theory is based on neoliberalism based on "market omnipotence" and "Say's law." Therefore, unlike the laissez-faire ideology of the supply-side school that opposes government intervention, supply-side structural reform implements economic policies in accordance with the idea of "combining the market and the government" to "make the market play a decisive role in the allocation of resources and better play the role of the government", emphasizing the dialectical unity of supply and demand.

Second, policy instruments are different. In addition to the supply-side school's tax cuts as an important part of its policy platform, the Reagan administration also implemented measures such as accelerated depreciation and investment tax credits to stimulate investment, while advocating deregulation, balanced budgets, and lower inflation. The supply-side structural reform is to use reform methods to promote structural adjustment, reduce ineffective and low-end supply, expand effective and medium-to-high-end supply, enhance the adaptability and flexibility of the supply structure to changes in demand, and improve total factor productivity. Tax reduction is only one of the contents of supply-side structural reform, in addition to tax reduction, supply-side structural reform emphasizes the adjustment of the supply structure through reform, the implementation of "three to one reduction and one supplement", while more use of market-oriented, rule-of-law means, in the "consolidation, Strengthen, upgrade and smooth "efforts to improve the quality of the supply system.

Third, the reform goals are different. The goal of supply-side reforms was not only to get out of the "stagflation" dilemma of the time, but also to return to the laissez-faire market economy tradition advocated by classical economics, and to change the government intervention in the economy over the past few decades to achieve long-term economic growth and prosperity.

Although the ultimate goal of supply-side structural reform is also to achieve long-term economic growth and prosperity, the specific goals are very different from those of the supply-side school. The goal of supply-side structural reform is by no means to implement a laissez-faire market economy, not to get rid of the problem of "stagflation", but to focus on improving the quality and efficiency of the supply system, enhancing the momentum of sustained economic growth, promoting the overall leap in China's social productivity level, and making China's supply capacity better meet the growing needs of the people for a better life.

### 3. the way of supply-side structural reform is to increase effective supply

The way of supply-side structural reform is mainly to increase the supply of effective systems, increase the supply of effective technology, and increase the supply of high-quality products.

First, deepen the reform of the market economy system and increase the supply of effective systems. Entering the new normal, whether China's economy has vitality and momentum, the key lies in the market players. To stimulate the vitality of market entities, the key is to deepen reform, clearly define the boundary between the government and the market, and change the adjustment of the economic structure from government-led to market-led. It is necessary to give full play to the decisive role of the market in the allocation of resources, give better play to the role of the government, straighten out the relationship between the government and enterprises, the relationship between the government and society, and release the vitality of economic subjects. To deepen supply-side structural reform, we must focus on deepening economic structural reform by improving the property rights system and market-oriented configuration of factors, and resolutely break down the institutional obstacles that restrict the vitality and momentum of development. First, adhere to and improve the basic economic system. We must unswervingly consolidate and develop the public-owned economy, unswervingly encourage, support and guide the development of the non-public-owned economy, adhere to the principle of distribution according to work as the main body and the coexistence of multiple distribution methods, accelerate the improvement of the socialist market economic system, improve the scientific and technological innovation system and mechanism, and build a new system of a higher-level open economy. In accordance with the spirit of the "Opinions of the CPC Central Committee and the State Council on Accelerating the Improvement of the Socialist Market Economy System in the New Era", comprehensively improve the basic systems of market economy such as property rights, market access, and fair competition. The second is to deepen the reform of "decentralization, management and service" and promote the reduction of institutional transaction costs. Further reduce the negative list of market quasi-persons, and promote the universal implementation of "non-prohibited access." The government should minimize the direct allocation of market resources and direct intervention in microeconomic activities, strengthen supervision during and after the event, accelerate the reform of factor marketization and the formation of a competitive market system.

Let the market regulate everything that the market can regulate independently, and let the enterprise do what it can do. The third is to innovate and improve macroeconomic regulation and control, give play to the strategic guiding role of the national development plan, improve the coordination mechanism of fiscal, monetary, industrial, regional, consumption, investment and other economic policies, accelerate the establishment of a modern fiscal system, deepen the reform of the financial system, reform and improve the basic system of the capital market, and promote the healthy and stable development of the multi-level capital market.

Second, improve total factor productivity through scientific and technological innovation and increase effective technology supply. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly pointed out that "we must adhere to quality first, benefit first, take supply-side structural reform as the main line, promote the quality change, efficiency change, power change of economic development, and improve total factor productivity."<sup>1</sup> The so-called "total factor productivity", often referred to as the rate of technological progress, is a measure of the contribution of technological progress to economic growth. From the perspective of the imbalance, uncoordination and unsustainability faced by China's economic development, based on the realization of the transformation of economic growth power, it is necessary to adhere to innovation to lead development, cultivate and expand new momentum, and strive to improve total factor productivity. The innovation practice of various countries shows that enterprises are the main body of innovation and the most active innovation unit, and the government needs to provide a good institutional environment for enterprises to engage in innovation activities. To deepen supply-side structural reform, we must increase effective technology supply through scientific and technological innovation. First, it is necessary to increase the support for basic research and applied basic research, strengthen original innovation, and strengthen the research of key core technologies; second, promote the reform of the scientific and technological system and accelerate the transformation of scientific and technological achievements into real productive forces; third, improve the integrated innovation mechanism of production, education and research with enterprises as the main body; fourth, improve the venture capital system and give play to the supporting role of finance in high-tech industries and technological innovation; fifth, strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights and improve relevant laws and regulations. Promote industrial upgrading through the improvement of independent innovation capabilities, and give play to the leading and supporting role of innovation driving in improving the quality and efficiency of enterprise supply.

Third, while moderately expanding aggregate demand, increase the supply of high-quality products. Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly pointed out: "Supply and demand are the two basic aspects of the internal relationship of the market economy, and they are both antagonistic and unified dialectical relations

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 24.

Without demand, supply cannot be realized, new demand can give birth to new supply; without supply, demand cannot be satisfied, and new supply can create new demand.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, emphasizing the adjustment of the supply structure does not mean ignoring demand. On the contrary, the next stage of supply structure adjustment must be carried out around the transformation and upgrading of consumer demand. Over the past 40 years of reform and opening up, China has bid farewell to the shortage economy, a new round of upgrading and transformation of the consumption structure of residents, more to "personalized and diversified" consumption, and China's economy has entered a consumption-oriented era. How to meet the needs of the people for a better life has become a new space for economic development. It is necessary to promote the formation of a strong domestic market and continue to release the potential of domestic demand. Give full play to the basic role of consumption and the key role of investment, stabilize effective domestic demand, and provide strong support for the smooth operation of the economy. It is necessary to strive to meet the final demand, improve product quality, accelerate the development of service industries such as education, childcare, pension, medical care, culture, and tourism, improve the consumption environment, and enhance consumption capacity. In China's economic structure, investment still has a lot of room for development. From the perspective of supply-side structural reform, the focus of expanding investment is to increase infrastructure construction in emerging fields such as artificial intelligence and the Internet of Things, and increase intercity transportation, logistics, municipal infrastructure, and rural infrastructure construction.

### Section 3: Promoting high-quality economic development

The fundamental purpose of adapting to and leading the new normal of economic development is to strive to achieve high-quality economic development. This has become the fundamental requirement for determining development ideas, formulating economic policies, and implementing macroeconomic regulation and control at present and for some time to come.

#### 1. China's economy has shifted from a stage of high-speed growth to a stage of high-quality development

Practice is developing and awareness is increasing. On the basis of adhering to adapting to and leading the new normal of economic development, the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China further clearly pointed out:

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 252.

"China's economy has shifted from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage",<sup>1</sup> which is the basic feature of China's economic development at this stage. Shifting from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage means that the growth rate will shift from the original high-speed growth to medium-high-speed growth, which means that economic development is in a critical period of transforming the development mode, optimizing the economic structure, and transforming the growth momentum. This is highly consistent with the four basic characteristics of the new normal of economic development, and is a deepening of the new normal of economic development.

China's economy has shifted from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage, which is an important judgment made by the Party Central Committee in accordance with changes in the international and domestic environment, especially changes in China's development conditions and development stages. "From" means that the historical curtain has been opened from the stage of high-speed growth to the stage of high-quality development, and it is inevitable; "turning" means that China's economy is only marching towards high-quality development, and has not "turned" to the stage of high-quality development. In a country with a huge economy and population, it is not easy to shift from a high-speed growth stage to a high-quality development stage, and it may be a long historical stage. In this process, our economy faces two types of thresholds. One is the unconventional threshold unique to China's economic development at this stage, for which it is necessary to fight the three major battles of preventing and resolving major risks, precise poverty alleviation, and pollution prevention and control; the other is a conventional long-term threshold, that is, transforming the mode of economic development, optimizing the economic structure, and transforming the growth momentum, so it is necessary to build a modern economic system. Only by crossing these two types of thresholds can China's economy truly achieve high-quality development.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that promoting high-quality development "is an inevitable requirement for maintaining sustained and healthy economic development", "this is an inevitable requirement for adapting to the changes in the main contradictions in our society and comprehensively building a moderately prosperous society and building a modern socialist country in an all-round way", and "this is an inevitable requirement for development in accordance with economic laws."<sup>2</sup> From the perspective of economic development needs, China is currently in a period of transformation of economic development mode, the demographic dividend has plummeted, the marginal return on investment has declined, the resource and environmental constraints have increased, and the traditional extensive economic development mode of unilaterally pursuing scale and speed is no longer sustainable. Only by promoting high-quality development and forming a high-quality, efficient and diversified supply system can we achieve a balance between supply and demand at a new level and achieve sustained and healthy economic development

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 24.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, p. 138-139.

From the perspective of the main contradiction in society, the contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development has become the main contradiction in society, and the focus of the people's needs has shifted from "whether it is good or not" to "whether it is good or not." Whether it is to meet the needs of the people for a better life or to solve the problem of unbalanced and insufficient development, it is necessary to pay more attention to the quality of economic development. Judging from the requirements of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way, the 19th CPC National Congress planned the strategic goal of "two steps." To realize socialist modernization, the economy is the foundation, the country must be strong, the economy must be strong; the economy must be strong, scale is the foundation, and quality is the key. Today's world is ushering in a new round of industrial revolution and technological revolution, scientific and technological strength, innovation ability, human capital, etc. have become the focus of international competition, scale alone can no longer win in international competition, must turn to high-quality development. From the perspective of the law of economic development, economic development is a non-linear spiral upward process, the accumulation of quantity to a certain stage must be turned to quality improvement, China's economic development should also follow this law. In 2019, China's total economic volume has reached 99 trillion yuan, ranking second in the world. We must attach importance to quantitative development, and even more to solving qualitative problems, and put the main energy on promoting high-quality development.

## 2. deeply understand the connotation of high-quality development

High-quality economic development can be understood from both narrow and broad perspectives. In a narrow sense, high-quality economic development means that an economy (or enterprise) can rationally allocate production factors through scientific and technological means in terms of input, promote efficiency changes, realize the allocation of resource factors from extensive operation to intensive and economical operation, and greatly improve the utilization efficiency of resource factors; It can promote quality change and power change through technological innovation and management innovation, so that the output quality and efficiency can be significantly improved. In a broad sense, understanding high-quality economic development is not only limited to the scope of economic growth, but also considers social, political, cultural and ecological influencing factors. Specifically, high-quality economic development should contain the following connotations.

First, high-quality development is the development that embodies the new development concept. The Fifth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee proposed to establish and adhere to the development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing.

Promoting China's economic and social development according to the new development concept is a general trend, of which innovation is the first driving force to lead development, focusing on solving the problem of development power; coordination is the inherent requirement of sustainable and healthy development, focusing on solving the problem of unbalanced development; green is the inevitable condition for sustainable development and an important embodiment of people's pursuit of a better life, focusing on solving the problem of harmony between man and nature; opening up is the only way for the country to prosper and develop, and focusing on solving the problem of internal and external linkage of development; Sharing is the essence of socialism with Chinese characteristics, focusing on solving the problem of social fairness and justice. The new development concept is China's action guide to solve development problems, enhance development momentum, and cultivate development advantages.

Second, high-quality development is the development of high-quality supply and high-quality demand. From the perspective of supply, high-quality development should have a relatively complete industrial system, networked and intelligent production organization, strong innovation, brand influence, core competitiveness and the ability to discover and capture demand. From the perspective of demand, high-quality development should continue to meet the personalized, diversified and upgrading needs of the people, which in turn leads to changes in the supply system and structure, and supply changes continue to generate new demand.

Third, high-quality development is the development that maximizes the benefits of input and output. An important symbol of high-quality development is to continuously improve the input and output efficiency of labor, capital, land, resources, environment and other factors, continuously improve the contribution rate of scientific and technological progress, and continuously improve total factor productivity. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "economic development is to improve the efficiency of the allocation of resources, especially scarce resources, and to produce as many products as possible with as few resources as possible and obtain the greatest possible benefits."<sup>1</sup>

Fourth, the development of high seat capacity is the development of smooth economic circulation. The economic cycle is the process of benign interaction between production and circulation, distribution and consumption, virtual and physical, domestic and foreign, which is the basis for sustainable economic development. At present, there are three major imbalances in China's economy: the structural imbalance between supply and demand in the real economy, the imbalance between finance and the real economy, and the imbalance between real estate and the real economy. This is a concrete manifestation of the poor economic cycle. To promote high-quality development, we must smooth the national economic cycle, accelerate the construction of a unified, open, competitive and orderly modern market system, improve the ability of the financial system to serve the real economy, and form a virtuous circle of domestic market and production subjects, economic growth and employment expansion, and finance and real economy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 499.

Fifth, high-quality development is development with scientific and rational distribution. Income distribution is both the result of economic operation and the driving force of economic development. The quality of income distribution directly reflects the advantages and disadvantages of the economic structure. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out when talking about the new normal: "To promote economic development, we must pay more attention to improving the quality and efficiency of development. Measuring the quality and efficiency of development means that investment has a return, products have a market, enterprises have profits, employees have income, the government has taxes, and the environment has improvement, which is the development we want.<sup>1</sup> The investment mentioned here has a return, the enterprise has profits, the employees have income, and the government has taxes, which is how to distribute it reasonably.

### 3. Accelerate the construction of a modern economic system

To promote high-quality development, we must build a modern economic system. Building a modern economic system is a major strategic deployment made by Comrade Xi Jinping for economic construction at the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China. At present, China's economic development is in the critical period of transforming the development mode, optimizing the economic structure, and transforming the growth momentum, and building a modern economic system is not only an urgent requirement for crossing the threshold, but also a strategic goal of China's development.

To build a modern economic system, the basic principle is quality first, efficiency first; the main line is to deepen supply-side structural reform; the basic path is to promote the quality change, efficiency change, power change of economic development, and improve total factor productivity; the focus is to accelerate the construction of the real economy, scientific and technological innovation, modern finance, human resources coordinated development of the industrial system; the institutional guarantee is to build an economic system with effective market mechanism, vitality of micro subjects, and degree of macro-control; the fundamental goal is to continuously enhance the innovation and competitiveness of China's economy. In short, the modern economic system is an economic system led by the new development concept and high-quality development as the core, with a reasonable economic structure, strong innovation momentum, intensive development methods, real economic revitalization, and sound institutional mechanisms.

The modern economic system is an economic system in which the modernization of productive forces and the modernization of production relations interact benignly. Comrade Xi Jinping was the third in the 19th Politburo of the CPC Central Committee on January 30, 2018

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Vol. 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 242.



The collective study pointed out: "The modern economic system is an organic whole composed of the interrelationships and internal connections of all links, levels and fields of social and economic activities.<sup>1</sup> In this regard, he clearly put forward the organic composition and specific goals of the "seven systems", that is, (1) build an industrial system led by innovation and coordinated development, realize the coordinated development of the real economy, scientific and technological innovation, modern finance, and human resources, and continuously increase the contribution share of scientific and technological innovation in the development of the real economy. The ability of modern financial services to the real economy has been continuously enhanced, and the role of human resources in supporting the development of the real economy has been continuously optimized;(2) Build a unified, open and orderly market system, realize smooth market access, open and orderly market, full market competition, and standardized market order, and accelerate the formation of a modern market system in which enterprises operate independently and compete fairly, consumers freely choose their own consumption, and commodities and factors flow freely and exchange equally; (3) Build an income distribution system that embodies efficiency and promotes fairness, and realizes reasonable income distribution, social fairness and justice, All the people will prosper together, promote the equalization of basic public services, and gradually narrow the income distribution gap ;(4) Build an urban and rural regional development system that highlights advantages and coordinates linkages, realizes benign regional interaction, integrated urban and rural development, and overall optimization of land and sea, and cultivates and gives play to regional comparative advantages. Strengthen the complementarity of regional advantages and shape a new pattern of coordinated regional development;( 5) Build a resource-saving and environment-friendly green development system, realize green cycle and low-carbon development, harmonious coexistence between man and nature, firmly establish and practice the concept that green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains, and form a new pattern of harmonious development and modernization of man and nature;( 6) Build a diversified, balanced, safe and efficient comprehensive opening system, develop a higher-level open economy, and promote the transformation of opening up in the direction of optimizing structure, expanding depth and improving efficiency; (7) Build an economic system that gives full play to the role of the market and better plays the role of the government, so as to achieve effective market mechanisms, vitality of micro-subjects, and degree of macro-control.

To build a modern economic system, it is necessary to fulfill the following tasks at present and for some time to come.

First, vigorously develop the real economy and build a solid foundation for a modern economic system. The real economy is the foundation of a country's economy, the fundamental source of wealth creation, and an important pillar of national strength.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Vol. 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 240-241.

In order to create a down-to-earth, hard-working entrepreneurship, industrial prosperity development environment and social atmosphere. The optimization and upgrading of industrial structure is a key measure to improve the comprehensive competitiveness of the real economy. It is necessary to accelerate the transformation and upgrading of traditional industries, deeply promote the deep integration of informatization and industrialization, focus on cultivating strategic emerging industries, vigorously develop the service industry, especially the modern service industry, actively cultivate new formats and new business models, and build a new system for modern industrial development. It is necessary to promote the deep integration of the Internet, big data, artificial intelligence and the real economy, accelerate the digitalization and intelligence of traditional industries, promote industrial technological change and optimization and upgrading with intelligent manufacturing as the main direction of attack, promote the fundamental transformation of manufacturing industry models and enterprise forms, drive "revolution" with "Dingxin", drive stock with increments, and promote China's industry to move towards the middle and high end of the global value chain.

The second is to accelerate the implementation of the innovation-driven development strategy and strengthen the strategic support of the modern economic system. Strengthen the construction of the national innovation system, step up the layout of national laboratories, reorganize the state key laboratory system, increase support for the innovation of small and medium-sized enterprises, strengthen the protection and application of intellectual property rights, and form an effective innovation incentive mechanism. Promote the deep integration of scientific and technological innovation and economic and social development, and shape more innovation-driven and first-mover leading development.

The third is to actively promote the coordinated development of urban and rural areas and optimize the spatial layout of the modern economic system. It is necessary to cultivate and give play to regional comparative advantages, implement the main functional area system, strengthen the complementarity of regional advantages, broaden the development space in coordinated development, and enhance development stamina in strengthening weak areas. Implement the coordinated regional development strategy, promote the coordinated development of the Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei region and the development of the Yangtze River Economic Belt, build the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area, and promote the integrated development of the Yangtze River Delta, ecological protection and high-quality development of the Yellow River Basin. Solidly promote the strategy of rural revitalization, adhere to the priority development of agriculture and rural areas, establish and improve the institutional mechanisms and policy systems for integrated development of urban and rural areas in accordance with the general requirements of prosperous industry, ecological livability, civilized rural customs, effective governance and rich life, make overall plans to promote rural economic construction, political construction, cultural construction, social construction, ecological civilization construction and party building, accelerate the modernization of rural governance systems and governance capabilities, and accelerate the modernization of agriculture and rural areas. Take the road of socialist rural revitalization with Chinese characteristics, let agriculture become a leading industry, make farmers an attractive occupation, and let the countryside become a beautiful home to live and work in peace and contentment.

The fourth is to promote all-round opening up and enhance the international competitiveness of the modern economic system. Make better use of global resources and markets, and promote the transformation from the opening of commodity and factor flows to the opening of institutions such as rules.



Relax market access, fully implement the pre-establishment national treatment plus negative list management system, protect the legitimate rights and interests of foreign investors in China, especially intellectual property rights, and allow sole proprietorship in more fields. We will continue to actively promote international exchanges and cooperation under the framework of the Belt and Road.

Fifth, deepen the reform of the economic system and improve the institutional guarantee for the modern economic system. The reform of the economic system must focus on improving the property rights system and the market-oriented configuration of factors, so as to achieve effective incentives for property rights, free flow of factors, flexible price response, fair and orderly competition, and survival of the fittest. Accelerate the improvement of basic economic systems such as the socialist market economic system with public ownership as the mainstay, the common development of various ownership economies, distribution according to work as the mainstay, and the coexistence of various distribution methods; accelerate the reform of state-owned assets and state-owned enterprises, further support the development of private enterprises, and stimulate the vitality of innovation and entrepreneurship in the whole society; accelerate the reform of the fiscal, taxation, and financial systems, and resolutely eliminate the shortcomings of various systems and mechanisms.

Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly pointed out: "Building a modern economic system is a big article, not only a major theoretical proposition, but also a major practical topic."<sup>1</sup> In accordance with the arrangements and requirements of the Party Central Committee, we must enhance the innovation and competitiveness of our economy by building a modern economic system, promote China's economic development to a new vitality, move to a new level, and achieve high-quality development.

#### 4. Improve the party's ability and level of leadership over economic work

To do a good job in economic work, we must strengthen the centralized and unified leadership of the party Central Committee and enhance the party's ability and level of leadership over economic work. China's economy is a giant ship, and the larger the volume and the greater the wind and waves, the more important it is to steer the way. The economy has entered a new normal, and the development environment facing China has undergone profound changes, and uncertainties and unstable factors have increased significantly. Economic globalization has encountered twists and turns, multilateralism has been impacted, the international financial market has been shaken, and economic and trade frictions have adversely affected enterprises' production and operation and market expectations; China's economy is facing new and old contradictions intertwined, cyclical and structural problems are superimposed, and economic operation is stable and changing, and changes are worried. To achieve multiple goals such as stable growth and risk prevention, complete various tasks of economic and social development, and properly handle the relationship between the current and the long term, economic development and environmental protection, and the market and the government, the difficulty of policy choices and work has increased significantly.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 240.

Therefore, we must continuously improve the party's ability and level of leading economic work, keep the rudder steady and the rudder well, and ensure that the giant ship of China's economy moves steadily and far-reaching.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To lead a large socialist country with more than 1.3 billion people, our party must not only be strong in politics, but also have strong skills."<sup>1</sup> "Leading cadres at all levels should consciously strengthen study, enhance leadership ability, and improve management level."<sup>2</sup> This requires leading cadres at all levels to unify their thinking and action with the Party Central Committee's arrangements for economic work, strengthen study and practice, cultivate professional ability, constantly enhance their ability to control the market economy, and improve their ability to manage and deal with economic risks.

(1) Adhere to bottom-line thinking, enhance awareness of danger, and improve risk prevention and control capabilities. In the face of profound and complex changes in the international environment and domestic conditions, and in the face of the interweaving of various contradiction risks and challenges, if the prevention and response are ineffective, it will be transmitted, superimposed, evolved, and upgraded, so that small contradiction risk challenges develop into large contradiction risk challenges, local contradiction risk challenges develop into systematic contradiction risk challenges, international contradiction risk challenges evolve into domestic contradiction risk challenges, and contradiction risk challenges in the economic field are transformed into contradiction risk challenges in the political field, and eventually endanger the party's ruling position. Endangering national security. Therefore, we must adhere to bottom-line thinking, enhance the awareness of danger, take precautions, accurately study and judge, and properly respond to major risks that may occur in the economic field.

From the perspective of China's current economic development, to prevent and resolve major risks, attention should be paid to the following aspects: balance the relationship between stable growth and risk prevention, grasp the rhythm and intensity; build a long-term mechanism for the stable and healthy development of the real estate market to prevent real estate ups and downs; strengthen market psychological analysis, do a good job in assessing the impact of policy introduction on the financial market, and be good at guiding expectations; strengthen market monitoring, improve risk early warning and regulatory coordination, and eliminate all kinds of hidden risks in a timely manner; Effectively solve the problem of difficult and expensive financing for small and medium-sized enterprises, increase the intensity of assistance to enterprises to stabilize jobs, and implement the employment priority policy; increase efforts to properly deal with problems such as difficulty in start-up, implementation, and personnel placement in the disposal of "zombie enterprises", accelerate the promotion of market clearance, and release a large number of precipitated resources; adopt effective measures to do a good job in stabilizing employment, finance, foreign trade, foreign investment, investment, and expectations, and maintain economic operation in a reasonable range.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 54-55.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 220.

In the above seven aspects, the most important thing is to guard the bottom line of no systemic financial risks, and balance the relationship between stable growth and risk prevention. The central role of finance in the modern economy is reflected in the impact on economic development. Once a major financial risk occurs, it will cause economic losses to the relevant entities, affect the development of the real economy, and serious financial risks may even trigger economic crisis or even social crisis. Therefore, it is necessary to put the prevention and resolution of systemic financial risks in a more important position, effectively strengthen the party's centralized and unified leadership over financial work, further deepen the reform of the financial system, improve financial supervision, strengthen financial security capacity building, and resolutely guard the bottom line of not occurring systemic financial risks.

(2) Take the initiative to pre-adjust and fine-tune, strengthen policy coordination, and improve macro-control capabilities. Innovation and improvement of macro-control are objective requirements for promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. Since the reform and opening up, China has gradually explored macro-control methods with Chinese characteristics, which has played an important role in promoting sustained and healthy economic and social development. However, new changes in the domestic and international environment, new requirements for promoting high-quality development, and new problems in macro-control have put forward higher requirements for innovation and improvement of macro-control.

First of all, it is necessary to improve the ability to do something and not to do something. Grasp the boundaries of macro-control and avoid the problem of too much intervention in the operation of the market and the operation of micro-subjects. The government should resolutely hand over the matters that should not be managed to the market, minimize the direct allocation of resources, give full play to the decisive role of the market in the allocation of resources, better play its own role, and strengthen and improve the functions of macro-control, market supervision, public services, social management, and environmental protection. Strengthen the overall planning and coordination of policies, and reasonably grasp the timing, rhythm and intensity of the implementation of various policies. For the new situations and new problems arising in economic operation, we should further strengthen directional regulation and camera regulation on the basis of interval regulation, realize the formulation of macro-control goals and the institutionalization of the use of policy means, enhance the pertinence, forward-looking, flexibility and coordination of macro-control, and promote the balanced coordination and linkage of multiple objectives, multiple policies and multiple reforms.

Second, it is necessary to enhance the comprehensive capability of macroeconomic regulation and control. The first is to integrate domestic and international factors, take a broader global perspective, learn from foreign useful experience, and actively adapt to and lead the adjustment and construction of international economic rules. The second is to integrate the docking of the central and local governments. Do a good job in top-level design at the central level to maximize local enthusiasm;

At the local level, it is necessary to strengthen the understanding, implementation and transmission of macroeconomic policies, refine and decompose the overall goals according to local conditions, and guide market entities to actively respond to and realize macro policy intentions. The third is to integrate the coordination of various departments. Strengthen the coordination of policy timing, boundary, direction, and goals, and realize the optimal combination of fiscal, monetary, industrial, regional and other policies.

Third, it is necessary to improve the ability of macro policies to coordinate and coordinate. Comprehensively use total regulation and structural regulation policies to promote effective coordination of development planning, fiscal, monetary, industrial, regional, consumption, investment and other policies. Focus on in-depth research on major issues restricting economic and social development, strengthen policy research, and promote the transformation of research results into strategic concepts, development plans, policy ideas, reform plans, major projects, etc. Make overall plans to promote the implementation of major policies, grasp the direction, intensity, rhythm and timing of policies, avoid excessive overlapping or mutual cancellation of policy effects, play a combination of policies that take into account overall planning, each with its own emphasis, and cooperate with each other, strengthen the comprehensive assessment of policies, especially major policies, and promptly propose improvement measures.

(3) Grasp social psychological changes, respond to social concerns in a timely manner, and improve the ability to actively guide market expectations. Good expectations often translate into orderly economic behavior, giving people the motivation, patience, and confidence to actively seek solutions to real-world problems and engage in long-term, creative activities. Unstable expectations often lead to short-sightedness of market entities and risk agglomeration. Under the condition of high informationization, the risk of agglomeration can easily spread, bringing challenges to national economic security. Therefore, actively guiding market expectations is related to sustained and healthy economic development and overall social stability. Only by forming good expectations can we unite our efforts, strengthen confidence in development, overcome various risks and challenges, and successfully complete various reform and development tasks.

To stabilize expectations, it is necessary not only to stabilize the present and eliminate the interference of short-term factors, but also to strengthen confidence in development and plan for the long term. First, we should adopt more reform methods, make more use of market-oriented and law-based means, and effectively stimulate the creativity of micro-subjects. It is necessary to focus on the pain points and difficulties of economic and social development, create a legal institutional environment for development through reform, and provide stable expectations for society. The second is to improve the ability of expected management, establish and improve the policy target management and major decision-making disclosure mechanism for various regulatory policies that can significantly affect economic operation, and clearly convey the intention, orientation and operating rules of policies and regulations to the market. At the same time, it is necessary to maintain the stability and consistency of economic policies, effectively guide market behavior, and form reasonable social expectations. Third, it is necessary to transmit the original intention of the policy and the intention of reform to all levels of economic and social development, strengthen the work of guiding public opinion, effectively guide the cadres and masses to rationally understand the current economic situation, and accurately grasp the orientation of macro policies

Prevent market entities from misjudging the effect of policies, prevent fragmented expectations of "blind people touching elephants", and prevent non-professional and irrational value orientations from misguiding expectations. It is necessary to respond to social concerns in a timely manner, objectively report specific facts, and reflect the overall picture from a macro perspective; recognize short-term local risks, strengthen analytical capabilities, and clarify policy orientation.

(4) Fully mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative and creativity of the whole society, and improve the ability to gather talents and use talents. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "As long as there is the support and participation of the people, there will be no difficulties that cannot be overcome, and there will be no hurdles that cannot be overcome."<sup>1</sup> To uphold the party's centralized and unified leadership over economic work and improve the party's ability and level of leadership over economic work is to unite people's hearts and minds, pool people's strength, and fully mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative and creativity of the whole society to overcome difficulties and promote development. It is necessary to respect the initiative of the masses, extensively listen to their opinions and suggestions, and pool the wisdom and strength of the broad masses of the people on development. It is necessary to make good use of all kinds of talents, provide a stage and environment for workers, intellectuals, entrepreneurs and innovative talents in all walks of life to play a role, so that all labor, knowledge, technology, management and capital are full of vitality and burst out in competition, and all sources of creating social wealth can fully flow. It is necessary to enhance the vitality of micro-subjects, give play to the subjective initiative of enterprises and entrepreneurs, establish fair, open and transparent market rules and a business environment based on the rule of law, and further promote positive incentives and survival of the fittest.

Leading cadres at all levels are the backbone of governing the country and should strive to become experts in promoting high-quality development. It is necessary to strengthen the study of modern economic knowledge, enhance leadership ability, improve management level, and continuously enhance the systematic, predictive, and creative nature of decision-making, work, and control efforts. It is necessary to strengthen the investigation and study of economic operation, be good at finding ideas and methods in study and practice, and ensure that all measures to promote high-quality economic development are implemented and effective. It is necessary to speed up the creation and improvement of the institutional environment, improve mechanisms such as performance evaluation, performance appraisal, and interest incentives that match high-quality development, and further strengthen the ideological consciousness and action consciousness of leading cadres at all levels to promote high-quality development.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 554.



## Chapter IX: Upholding and Developing Socialist Democratic Politics

Developing people's democracy and promoting political civilization is the consistent stand and unremitting pursuit of the Communist Party of China. After the founding of New China, especially since the beginning of reform and opening up, the party has persistently integrated Marxist political theory with China's specific realities and the characteristics of the times, and has embarked on a path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics that suits the national conditions. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has consolidated its foundation and forged ahead into the future, adhered to and strengthened the party's comprehensive leadership, explored and developed socialist democratic politics with the people as the masters of the country, incorporated the comprehensive rule of law into the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, and put forward a series of new concepts, ideas and strategies, which greatly enriched the theory and practice of socialist democratic political construction with Chinese characteristics, and became a scientific guide for adhering to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

### Section 1: Follow the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics

The path of political development is of decisive significance in the political life of the country. There are many examples of social turmoil, national division, and political death due to the wrong choice of political development path. For China, a large developing country with a history of more than 5,000 years of civilization, 56 ethnic groups and a population of 1.4 billion, adhering to the correct path of political development is a major issue that has a bearing on the fundamentals and the overall situation.

The political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the inevitable result of the long-term struggle of the Chinese people in modern times, and an inevitable requirement for adhering to the essential attributes of the party and practicing the fundamental purpose of the party. The key to adhering to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics is to adhere to the organic unity of the party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country, and the rule of law, take ensuring that the people are masters of the country as the foundation, and aim at enhancing the vitality of the party and the country and mobilizing the people's enthusiasm, continuously expanding people's democracy and developing socialist political civilization.

### 1. Taking the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics is a historical necessity

Each country's political path has its own unique aspects, which are the result of long-term development and evolution on the basis of historical inheritance, cultural tradition, and economic and social development. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The reason why the socialist political system with Chinese characteristics is viable, vigorous and efficient is because it grows from China's social soil. The socialist political system with Chinese characteristics has always grown and is growing in China's social soil, and if it is to continue to grow in the future, it must also be deeply rooted in China's social soil. "<sup>1</sup> The political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics is the practice and creation of the Communist Party of China in uniting and leading the Chinese people and carrying out long-term and unremitting struggle based on China's reality.

After entering the modern era, various political forces in Chinese society have appeared, but they have not found a plan suitable for the national conditions. Holding high the glorious banner of democracy, the Communist Party of China has waged a heroic struggle for nearly a century. Since its founding, the party has taken the realization of the people's mastery as its own responsibility, and has always taken standing firm on the people's standpoint, upholding the people's dominant position, and ensuring the realization of the people's fundamental interests as the starting point and end point of all work. After the founding of New China, the Party united and led the people to carry out socialist transformation, established the basic socialist system and promoted socialist construction, completed the most extensive and profound social reform in the history of the Chinese nation, and laid the fundamental political prerequisite and institutional foundation for all development and progress in contemporary China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 60.

In the new period of reform and opening up, the Party has continuously deepened the reform of the political system, developed socialist democratic politics, improved the leadership system of the Party and the state, comprehensively advanced the rule of law, improved the socialist legal system with Chinese characteristics, made the institutional guarantee and rule of law guarantee for the people being masters of the country more powerful, developed the cause of human rights in an all-round way, consolidated the patriotic united front, and enriched the content, more convenient channels and more diverse forms for the people to enjoy and exercise democratic rights in accordance with the law. From the revision, improvement and in-depth implementation of the Constitution, to the continuous improvement of the basic political system of the People's Congress and the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the system of regional ethnic autonomy and the system of grassroots mass autonomy, to the promotion of the reform of the leadership system of the Party and the state, the promotion of the rule of law, the rule of law in socialist democratic politics, and the strengthening of supervision and restraint on the operation of power, all these have fully demonstrated the Party's unremitting efforts and great achievements in promoting socialist democratic politics. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Since the reform and opening up, our party has united and led the people to make great progress in developing socialist democratic politics, successfully opened up and adhered to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics, and established the correct direction for the realization of the broadest people's democracy."<sup>1</sup>

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has taken the development of socialist democratic politics as an important part of promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capabilities, and promoted the improvement and development of socialist democratic politics in the comprehensive deepening of reform, and the construction of socialist political civilization has achieved fruitful results: actively develop socialist democratic politics, promote the comprehensive rule of law, the leadership of the Party, the people are masters of the country, The construction of an organic and unified system for governing the country according to law has been comprehensively strengthened, the party's comprehensive leadership system and mechanism have been continuously improved, inner-party democracy has become more extensive, socialist consultative democracy has been comprehensively developed, and the patriotic united front has consolidated and developed. Scientific legislation, strict law enforcement, fair justice, and law-abiding by the whole people have been further advanced, the construction of a rule-of-law country, a rule-of-law government, and a rule-of-law society have mutually reinforced, the socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics has been increasingly improved, and the concept of rule of law in the whole society has been significantly enhanced. The reform of the state supervision system has achieved practical results, and the reform of the administrative system, the reform of the judicial system, the restraint on the operation of power, and the establishment of a supervision system have been effectively implemented. All these have provided a strong guarantee for forming a stable and united political situation and a clean political environment, for mobilizing and stimulating the enthusiasm of the people for reform, opening up, and modernization, and for creating a more vibrant, standardized and orderly society.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 88.

Historical practice shows that the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics is a correct path that conforms to China's national conditions and ensures that the people are masters of their own country, and has strong vitality and broad development prospects. It conforms to the requirements of the development of the times, promotes the progress of national civilization and guarantees the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation; it fully embodies the common will of the people, safeguards the people's democratic rights and safeguards the fundamental interests of the people. The path of political development of socialism with Chinese characteristics is deeply rooted in contemporary Chinese history and practice, is the choice of history and the people, and is the fundamental guarantee for the Party and the people to withstand the tests of various difficulties and risks and smoothly advance socialist modernization.

## 2. the political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics has demonstrated its unique advantages

The path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics is conducive to giving play to the characteristics and advantages of the socialist system, developing people's democracy, promoting economic and social development, safeguarding national unity, ethnic unity, people's well-being and social harmony, and providing a strong political guarantee for the Party to unite and lead the people to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Demonstrate the superiority of socialism. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The socialist system with Chinese characteristics insists on organically combining the fundamental political system and basic political system with the basic economic system and various institutional mechanisms and other specific systems, insists on organically combining the democratic system at the national level with the grassroots democratic system, and insists on organically combining the party's leadership, the people being masters of the country and governing the country according to law, which conforms to China's national conditions, embodies the characteristics and advantages of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and is the fundamental institutional guarantee for China's development and progress."<sup>1</sup> The development and improvement of the political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics has effectively ensured that the people enjoy broader and fuller rights and freedoms and ensured that the people have extensively participated in national and social governance; effectively regulated state political relations, enhanced national cohesion, and formed a stable and united political situation; effectively promoted the liberation and development of social productive forces, promoted various undertakings of modernization, and promoted the continuous improvement of the people's quality of life and standards;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 9-10.

It has effectively safeguarded national independence and self-determination, safeguarded national sovereignty, security and development interests, safeguarded the well-being of the Chinese people and the Chinese nation, and fully demonstrated the superiority of socialism.

Provide a fundamental guarantee for people's democracy. Democracy is fundamentally a political institutional arrangement, involving major issues such as the state and the form of government. As early as 1940, Comrade Mao Zedong profoundly pointed out in "On New Democracy" that "without an appropriate form of political power organs, the state cannot be represented",<sup>1</sup> which also clarified the internal relationship between the state system determining the political system and the political system reflecting the state system. China's Constitution stipulates: "The People's Republic of China is a socialist state under the people's democratic dictatorship led by the working class and based on the alliance of workers and peasants", and "all power in the People's Republic of China belongs to the people."<sup>2</sup> As far as the state system is concerned, socialist democracy is fundamentally different from any form of democracy in Chinese history. As far as the form of government is concerned, the Constitution stipulates that China implements the system of people's congresses to ensure that the people are masters of their own country. This shows that socialist democracy with Chinese characteristics adheres to the people's dominant position and protects the people's rights in political, economic, cultural and social aspects in an institutionalized form. The people are guaranteed to exercise their rights to democratic election, democratic decision-making, democratic management and democratic supervision, and to administer state affairs, economic and cultural undertakings and social affairs in accordance with the law; It is guaranteed that state organs and their functionaries accept the people's supervision and serve the people wholeheartedly; and that the state's major policies and policies embody the will of the people, safeguard the people's interests, and promote all-round human development. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "In carrying out socialist modernization, we aim to catch up with the developed capitalist countries economically, create a higher and more effective democracy politically than the capitalist countries, and bring up more and better qualified personnel than these countries."<sup>3</sup>

Comrade Xi Jinping put forward the criteria of "eight cans"<sup>4</sup> with keen political vision and profound theoretical thinking. Using such criteria to examine China's political practice can provide a clearer understanding of the effectiveness of China's political system: First, whether the country's leadership can be changed in an orderly manner in accordance with the law. After the reform and opening up,

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 677.

<sup>2</sup> The Constitution of the People's Republic of China, People's Publishing House, 2018, p. 7-8.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994, p. 322.

<sup>4</sup> Xi Jinping, "Speech at the Celebration of the 60th Anniversary of the Founding of the National People's Congress," People's Daily Newspaper, 6 September 2014.

China has abolished the lifelong system of leading posts that actually exists, universally implemented the tenure system for leading cadres, and achieved an orderly replacement of the country's leadership and leading cadres at all levels. Second, whether the entire people can manage state and social affairs and economic and cultural undertakings in accordance with the law. Our Constitution has special provisions to stipulate this, and at the same time has a fundamental political system, a basic political system and a variety of democratic mechanisms, effectively guaranteeing that the people enjoy a wide range of rights and freedoms and participate in national governance and social management. Third, whether the masses of the people can freely express their interests and demands. We have continuously expanded the orderly participation of citizens, and the content and forms of people's mastery have become more and more extensive. Fourth, whether all sectors of society can effectively participate in the country's political life. We have adhered to and developed the broadest patriotic united front, developed unique socialist consultative democracy, and effectively pooled forces from all sectors of society. Fifth, whether national decision-making can be scientific and democratic. We continuously enhance the transparency and participation in decision-making, strive to build a decision-making mechanism that understands public opinion, reflects public sentiment, concentrates people's wisdom, and cherishes people's strength, so as to ensure that decision-making conforms to the interests and aspirations of the people. Sixth, whether talents from all walks of life can enter the national leadership and management system through fair competition. We recruit a wide range of talented people and use systems and mechanisms to gather outstanding talents in various undertakings of the party and the state. Seventh, whether the ruling party can exercise leadership over state affairs in accordance with constitutional law. We adhere to the joint advancement of governing the country according to law, ruling according to law and administering according to law, and vigorously promoting the construction of a rule of law in China, with remarkable results. Eighth, whether the use of power can be effectively checked and supervised. We have established and improved a multi-level power supervision system, reformed the state supervision system, and ensured that Party and state organs and personnel, as well as all kinds of public power subjects, exercise their powers in accordance with legal authorities and procedures. All this clearly shows that the socialist democratic political system with Chinese characteristics plays a unique advantage and effectiveness in ensuring that the people are masters of their own country. The realization of democratic political forms is rich and varied, and we cannot stick to rigid models. Practice has fully proved that Chinese-style democracy works and works well in China.

Strong self-improvement ability. The historical process of the Communist Party of China in promoting the construction of socialist democratic politics is a historical process of constantly gaining insight into the development trend of the times and actively conforming to the expectations of the people, a historical process of constantly deepening the reform of systems and mechanisms, stimulating the creative vitality of the whole society, and constantly improving the socialist legal system with Chinese characteristics and promoting the gradual deepening of the rule of law. Persisting in advancing with the times and upholding the right and bringing forth the new is a distinctive feature of China's socialist democratic political construction. "Socialist democracy with Chinese characteristics is a new thing and a good thing.

Of course, this does not mean that China's political system is perfect and does not need to be improved and developed.<sup>1</sup> The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed that by the middle of this century, China should be built into a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country, which requires the comprehensive improvement of material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilizations, and the comprehensive realization of the modernization of the national governance system and governance capabilities. It is fully believed that the political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics will inevitably achieve a new and higher level of leap.

### 3. Practical requirements for the political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics

Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "The key to adhering to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics is to adhere to the organic unity of the party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country, and the rule of law."<sup>2</sup> The party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country, and the rule of law are the basic elements of China's socialist democratic politics, and the three are interrelated and interact to form an intrinsically unified and inseparable whole, which is a major political judgment and inevitable requirement that must be deeply understood and grasped to adhere to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics.

The most fundamental thing is to uphold the party's leadership. The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the most essential feature of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the greatest advantage of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, and the most important guarantee for the development of socialist democratic politics in China. The leadership of the Communist Party of China is the fundamental point of political stability, economic development, ethnic unity and social order, and the fundamental guarantee for the people to be masters of their own country and to govern the country according to law. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Only by adhering to the party's leadership can the people's mastery of the country be fully realized, and the institutionalization and rule of law of state and social life can be promoted in an orderly manner."<sup>3</sup> The Communist Party of China has always represented the fundamental interests of the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country and shouldered the historical mission of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. The purpose of leading the people to establish a people's republic is to support and organize the people to manage state and social affairs according to law.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 16.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 463.

<sup>3</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 26.

The party's proposition is highly consistent with the people's will, and the realization of the people's interests and will cannot be separated from the party's leadership. The Party leads the people in formulating the Constitution and laws, the Party leads the people in implementing the Constitution and laws, and the Party leads the people to defend the dignity of the Constitution and laws.

The people's ownership is the fundamental starting point and destination. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The people's mastery is the essence and core of socialist democratic politics. People's democracy is the life of socialism. Without democracy, there would be no socialism, no socialist modernization, and no great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.<sup>1</sup> The original intention and mission of the Communist Party of China is to seek happiness for the Chinese people and rejuvenation for the Chinese nation. Upholding the party's leadership is, in the final analysis, the purpose of realizing the right and fundamental interests of the masses of the people to be masters of their own affairs. The people's mastery of the country is the essential feature of socialist democratic politics, and to lead the people to effectively govern the country, it is necessary to "expand the orderly political participation of citizens at all levels and in all fields, and develop a broader, fuller and more sound people's democracy."<sup>2</sup> The essence of socialist democracy is people's democracy, and its core content is that the people are masters of their own country. So far, the form of democracy before socialism was essentially the rule of a minority, and only socialist democracy was the form of democracy that achieved the rule of the greatest majority. In the final analysis, the development of socialist democratic politics is aimed at satisfactorily realizing, safeguarding and developing the democratic rights of the masses of the people and safeguarding the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people. Comrade Jiang Zemin pointed out: "We are not developing socialist democracy for anyone in the West to see, but to truly safeguard and develop the fundamental interests of the Chinese people and ensure and promote China's stability and development." We cannot shake this, whether the West accepts it or not, no matter what they say."<sup>3</sup>

Governing the country according to law is the basic way for the party to lead the people to govern the country. Governing the country according to law not only guarantees that the people are masters of their own country in terms of legal system and procedures, but also guarantees the ruling position of the party in terms of legal system and procedures. The fundamental purpose of adhering to the rule of law is to protect the rights and interests of the people, and the realization of the rule of law must be for the people, rely on the people, benefit the people, and protect the people.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016, p. 54-55.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 55.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Works of Jiang Zemin, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 2006, p. 235.



To solve a series of major problems facing the development of the cause of the party and the country, liberate and enhance social vitality, promote social fairness and justice, maintain social harmony and stability, ensure the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country, and ensure the happiness and well-being of the people, we must comprehensively promote the rule of law. In order to ensure the unity of the country, the legal system, the unity of government decrees, and the unity of the market, and to achieve economic development, political clarity, cultural prosperity, social justice, and good ecology, the party must uphold the criterion of law and make good use of the rule of law.

The organic unity of the party's leadership, the people's mastery of the country, and the rule of law, which contains the positioning of the relationship between the party and the people, the party and the state, and the state and the people, is a scientific summary of the practice of socialist democratic political construction with Chinese characteristics, and reflects the fundamental law of the political development path of socialism with Chinese characteristics. It is necessary to give better play to the party's role as the core of leadership in controlling the overall situation and coordinating all parties, strengthen the party's centralized and unified leadership, and support people's congresses, governments, CPPCC, courts, and procuratorates in performing their functions, carrying out work, and playing their roles in accordance with the charter. It is necessary to better realize that the people are the masters of the country, effectively ensure that the people enjoy broader and more fulfilling rights and freedoms, ensure that the people widely participate in national and social governance, let the people be the masters of the country take root and gather the majestic power of development. It is necessary to better safeguard the unity, dignity and authority of the national legal system, comprehensively promote the rule of law, and accelerate the construction of a socialist country ruled by law. Only by adhering to the organic unity of the three and developing socialist democratic politics can we effectively regulate political relations, enhance national cohesion, and ensure the long-term peace and stability of the country.

To adhere to the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics, we must have firm political self-confidence. The path of political development of socialism with Chinese characteristics is essentially different from the "three powers" and "multi-party system" in foreign countries, and can achieve "six practical preventions": effectively prevent the phenomenon of leaderless and scattered sand, earnestly prevent the phenomenon of overflowing promises made during elections and no one cares about them after elections, effectively prevent the phenomenon of party disputes and mutual rivalries, earnestly prevent the phenomenon of ethnic estrangement and ethnic conflicts, earnestly prevent the phenomenon of people having formal rights but actually have no power, and earnestly prevent the occurrence of mutual restraints and restraints. Serious internal friction. To strengthen self-confidence in the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, we must first strengthen our confidence in the socialist political system with Chinese characteristics and enhance our confidence in taking the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics. It is necessary to unify firm institutional self-confidence with continuous reform and innovation, and continuously promote the improvement and development of the institutional system on the basis of adhering to the fundamental political system and basic political system.

We must persist in proceeding from our own national conditions and reality, grasp the historical inheritance formed over a long period of time, grasp the development path we have traveled, the political experience we have accumulated, and the political principles we have formed, and we must also grasp the requirements of reality and focus on solving practical problems. As Comrade Xi Jinping said: "The key to developing socialist democratic politics is to increase and expand our advantages and characteristics, not to weaken and shrink our advantages and characteristics."<sup>1</sup>

## Section 2: Improve the institutional system in which the people are masters of their own affairs

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China: "Developing socialist democratic politics is to embody the will of the people, protect the people's rights and interests, stimulate the people's creative vitality, and use the system to ensure that the people are masters of their own country."<sup>2</sup> In his important speech at the celebration of the 40th anniversary of reform and opening up, he further emphasized: "We must improve the democratic system, broaden democratic channels, enrich democratic forms, improve the guarantee of the rule of law, and ensure that the people enjoy extensive, full, true and concrete benefits in accordance with the law. Functioning democratic rights<sup>3</sup> The Fourth Plenary Session of the 19th CPC Central Committee clearly proposed to uphold and improve the system of the people being masters of the country and develop socialist democratic politics. The specific requirements are: We must uphold the people's status as the main body, unswervingly follow the path of socialist political development with Chinese characteristics, and ensure that the people manage state affairs, economic and cultural undertakings, and social affairs through various channels and forms in accordance with the law. It is necessary to uphold and improve the fundamental political system of the people's congress system, the system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, consolidate and develop the broadest patriotic united front, uphold and improve the system of regional ethnic autonomy, and improve the system of vigorous grassroots mass autonomy.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 17.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 29.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 731.

It can be seen from this that the institutional system in which the people are masters of their own country, including the country's fundamental political system, basic political system and a series of specific institutional arrangements, is the result of long-term development, gradual improvement and endogenous evolution on the basis of China's historical inheritance, cultural tradition and economic and social development.

### 1. Uphold and improve the country's fundamental political system and basic political system

To uphold and develop socialist democratic politics, we must insist that all state power belongs to the people and demonstrate the people's status as the main body. We must persist in and continuously improve the people's congress system for a long time, keep pace with the times, improve and improve the basic political system, and constantly strengthen the institutional guarantee and the rule of law guarantee for the people to be masters of their own country.

Continuously improve the people's congress system. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The people's congress system is a fundamental political system arrangement that adheres to the party's leadership, the people are masters of the country, and the rule of law is organically unified, and must be adhered to and continuously improved for a long time.<sup>1</sup> This is the fundamental basis for improving the system of the people being masters of their own affairs. The Constitution stipulates that all power in the People's Republic of China belongs to the people. The organs through which the people exercise state power are the National People's Congress and local people's congresses at all levels. The people administer state affairs, economic and cultural undertakings and social affairs through various channels and forms in accordance with the law. The Constitution also stipulates that the State organs of the People's Republic of China practice the principle of democratic centralism, and that the National People's Congress and local people's congresses at all levels are democratically elected, responsible to and supervised by the people. State administrative organs, supervisory organs, judicial organs and procuratorial organs are all elected by the people's congress and are responsible to and supervised by it.

The people's congress system is the most reliable and effective democratic system that conforms to China's national conditions and reality. Over the past 60 years, especially in the past 40 years of reform and opening up, the people's congress system has been continuously consolidated and developed in practice and has played an important political role: First, it can ensure the orderly participation of the masses of the people in state management and realize that the people are masters of their own country.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 30.

Second, it can guarantee democratic rights and realize the people's supervision over state organs at all levels; third, it can mobilize all the people to actively participate in the cause of socialist construction, reform and development; fourth, it can ensure the coordinated and efficient operation of state organs in accordance with the principle of democratic centralism; fifth, it can effectively safeguard national unity and ethnic unity; and sixth, it can ensure the party's effective leadership over the state and society. By maintaining close ties with the masses, integrating the expression of the interests of the masses, safeguarding the democratic rights of the masses, stimulating the creative vitality of the people, and rallying the majestic force of national rejuvenation, the people's congress system is an important institutional guarantee for building a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country.

To uphold and improve the people's congress system in the new era, it is necessary to do a good job in the building of two "organs." First, it is necessary to strengthen the building of people's congresses and their standing committees at all levels as working organs exercising their functions and powers in accordance with the law, improve the organizational and working systems of people's congresses, optimize the composition of people's congress standing committees and special committees, let people's congresses fully undertake all the duties entrusted by the Constitution and laws, give play to the leading role of people's congresses and their standing committees in legislative work, and ensure that people's congresses exercise their legislative powers, supervisory powers, decision-making powers, appointment and removal powers in accordance with the law. Second, it is necessary to strengthen the building of people's congresses as representative organs that maintain ties with the masses of the people, solve the problem of further maintaining close ties with the masses of the people in terms of system, give better play to the role of people's congress deputies, and improve the ability of deputies to perform their duties.

Improve and perfect the basic political system. The system of multi-party cooperation and political consultation under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, the system of regional ethnic autonomy and the system of grassroots mass autonomy together constitute the basic political system of our country. To improve the institutional system in which the people are masters of their own affairs, it is necessary to improve and perfect the basic political system.

The CPPCC is a great achievement of the CPC in integrating Marxist-Leninist united front theory, party theory, and democratic political theory with China's reality; it is a great creation in the political system carried out by the CPC under the leadership of various democratic parties, personages without party affiliation, people's organizations, and people of all ethnic groups and all walks of life; it is a new type of political party system that has grown out of Chinese soil; and it is a major contribution to human political civilization. First, it is the product of the integration of Marxist party theory with China's specific reality, which can genuinely, extensively, and sustainably represent and realize the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people, and effectively avoid the drawbacks of the old-style party system of representing a small number of people and minority interest groups; second, it can closely unite all political parties and personages without party affiliation to strive for a common goal, and effectively avoid the drawbacks of lack of supervision by one party or vicious competition between multiple parties taking turns to sit in power;

Third, it concentrates opinions and suggestions from all quarters through institutionalized, procedural, and standardized arrangements, promotes scientific and democratic decision-making, and effectively avoids the drawbacks of the old-style party system being limited to party interests, class interests, regional and group interests, and decision-making and governance, resulting in narrow-mindedness and short-sightedness. This new type of party system emphasizes both the leadership of the Communist Party of China and the promotion of socialist democracy, and has unique advantages and distinctive characteristics. The CPPCC is an organization of the united front, an institution for multi-party cooperation and political consultation, an important form of realizing people's democracy, an important channel and special consultative body for socialist consultative democracy, an important part of the national governance system, and an institutional arrangement with Chinese characteristics. The work of the CPPCC involves all fields of national governance and plays a vital role in political consultation, democratic supervision, participation in and discussion of state affairs, and so on. To strengthen and improve the work of the CPPCC in the new era, it is necessary to take the adherence to and development of social Wang Yi with Chinese characteristics as the main axis of consolidating the common ideological and political foundation, take serving the realization of the "two centenary goals" as the main line of work, strengthen ideological and political guidance and extensive consensus as the central link, adhere to the two major themes of unity and democracy, improve the level of political consultation, democratic supervision, participation in and discussion of state affairs, better condense consensus, and adhere to the CPPCC system well. We should develop the cause of the CPPCC well, shoulder the political responsibility of implementing the decisions and arrangements of the Party Central Committee and the requirements for the work of the CPPCC, pooling the wisdom and strength of the Chinese people at home and abroad, and contribute to the decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and then building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way.

The system of regional ethnic autonomy is an important content and institutional guarantee for the correct path of solving ethnic issues with Chinese characteristics, and has played an important role in safeguarding national unity and territorial integrity, strengthening ethnic equality and unity, promoting the development of ethnic regions, and enhancing the cohesion of the Chinese nation. To uphold and improve the system of regional ethnic autonomy, we must adhere to the leadership of the Communist Party of China, adhere to the path of socialism with Chinese characteristics, resolutely safeguard the unity of the motherland, adhere to the equality of all ethnic groups, strengthen ethnic unity, and promote the common prosperity, development and progress of all ethnic groups. To uphold and improve the system of regional ethnic autonomy, it is necessary to adhere to the combination of unification and autonomy, and also adhere to the combination of ethnic factors and regional factors, help ethnic autonomous areas develop their economies, improve people's livelihood, forge a firm sense of the Chinese national community, and better realize exchanges, exchanges and blending among all ethnic groups.

The system of grassroots mass autonomy is the most direct, extensive, and vivid practice of democracy. To improve the system of grassroots people's self-government and develop grassroots democracy, we must permeate the party's leadership throughout the entire process and all aspects of grassroots people's autonomy, realize the combination of rule of law, rule by virtue, and autonomy, and ensure that the building of grassroots democracy always advances in the right direction. It is necessary to unblock democratic channels and improve mechanisms such as grassroots elections, deliberation, openness, debriefing, and accountability.

Promote the masses' self-management, self-service, self-education, and self-supervision in urban and rural community governance, grassroots public affairs, and public welfare undertakings in accordance with the law, and give play to the role of social organizations, so as to realize benign interaction between government governance and social regulation and residents' autonomy. It is necessary to improve the democratic management system of enterprises and institutions, take the workers' congress as the basic form, respect the people's initiative, and effectively implement the rights of the masses of workers to know, participate, express and supervise.

The functional system of the Party and state institutions is an important part of the socialist system with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The purpose of deepening the reform of the party and state institutions is to better promote the development of the cause of the party and the country, better meet the growing needs of the people for a better life, and better promote the all-round development of people, all-round social progress and common prosperity of the people."<sup>1</sup> To deepen the reform of party and state institutions, we must adhere to the party's overall leadership, adhere to the people-centered, adhere to optimization and coordination, adhere to the comprehensive rule of law, make overall plans to promote the reform of the party, government, military and masses, build a systematic, scientific, standardized, and efficient functional system of party and state institutions, including the party's leadership system, government governance system, armed forces system and mass work system, and comprehensively improve the country's governance capacity and governance level.

## 2. Promote the extensive and multi-level institutionalization of socialist consultative democracy

Socialist consultative democracy is an important form of democracy under the leadership of the Communist Party of China, in which all aspects of the people conduct extensive consultations before and during the implementation of decisions on major issues of reform, development and stability and practical issues involving the vital interests of the masses, and strive to form consensus.<sup>2</sup> "Socialist consultative democracy is a unique form and unique advantage of China's socialist democratic politics, an important embodiment of the party's mass line in the political field, and an important content of deepening the reform of the political system"<sup>3</sup> Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "China's socialist consultative democracy has enriched the form of democracy, expanded the channels of democracy, and deepened the connotation of democracy. "

---

<sup>1</sup> "Decision of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China on Deepening the Reform of Party and State Institutions" and "Guidance Reader of the Plan for Deepening the Reform of Party and State Institutions", People's Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 84.

<sup>2</sup> "Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era", Study Publishing House, People's Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 130.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 291.

<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to strengthen the construction of the socialist consultative democratic system and ensure the extensive, sustained and in-depth participation of the people in all aspects of state and social affairs.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "consultative democracy is a unique, unique and unique form of democracy in China's socialist democratic politics."<sup>2</sup> Deliberative democracy constitutes a unique and beautiful landscape of socialist democracy with Chinese characteristics, with a profound cultural, historical, theoretical and practical foundation. Consultative democracy stems from the excellent political culture of the Chinese nation that has long been formed by the Chinese nation, such as serving the public in the world, being inclusive, and seeking common ground while reserving differences. The spirit of consultation embodied in traditional Chinese culture is a valuable cultural resource of socialist consultative democracy. Consultative democracy is a great creation jointly realized by all parties, organizations, nationalities, strata and people from all walks of life in the political system since the founding of New China. Consultative democracy is an important embodiment of the mass line of the Communist Party of China in the political field. The Communist Party of China insists on building the party for the public and ruling for the people, adhering to the mass line, and insisting that all power belongs to the people. Whether the Communist Party of China is in power or the state organs are administering, upholding the people's dominant position and closely relying on the people, they are inseparable from consultative democracy. Consultative democracy is deeply embedded in the whole process of socialist democratic politics with Chinese characteristics, and continues to develop with the in-depth advancement of socialist democratic politics.

Socialist consultative democracy has unique advantages. Socialist consultative democracy not only upholds the leadership of the Communist Party of China but also plays a positive role in all quarters; upholds the people's dominant position and implements the leadership system and organizational principle of democratic centralism; and upholds the principle of people's democracy and the requirements of unity and harmony. The advantage of socialist consultative democracy is that it can effectively regulate national political relations. Comrade Xi Jinping comprehensively summarized this unique advantage: "The greatest consensus on decision-making and work can be widely reached, and the drawbacks of parties and interest groups competing with each other or even fighting each other for their own interests can be effectively overcome; channels for various interest demands and demands to enter the decision-making process can be widely unblocked, and the drawbacks of different political forces stubbornly holding their own opinions and excluding dissidents in order to safeguard and fight for their own interests can be effectively overcome; mechanisms for discovering and correcting mistakes and mistakes can be widely formed, and the drawbacks of unclear circumstances and self-righteousness in decision-making can be effectively overcome;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 75.

<sup>2</sup> "Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era", Study Publishing House, People's Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 130.

It can widely form a mechanism for the people's participation in management and governance at all levels, effectively overcome the drawbacks that the people cannot express and participate in in the country's political life and social governance; it can extensively pool the wisdom and strength of the whole society to promote reform and development, and effectively overcome the drawbacks of low consensus on various policies and work and inability to implement. ”<sup>1</sup>

Improve the institutional system and working mechanism of socialist consultative democracy. Under the new historical conditions, "we must insist on discussing more when there is something, discussing more when things happen, discussing more when doing things, and discussing as much as possible as deeply as possible."<sup>2</sup> To improve the socialist consultative democracy system, it is necessary to promote the extensive and multi-level institutionalization of consultative democracy. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "it is necessary to broaden the consultation channels of the Communist Party of China, the People's Congress, the people's government, the People's Political Consultative Conference, democratic parties, people's organizations, grassroots organizations, enterprises and institutions, social organizations, various think tanks, etc., and carry out in-depth consultations such as political, legislative, administrative, democratic, social, and grassroots consultations"<sup>3</sup>. Extensive consultations were held on major issues of reform, development and stability, especially those concerning the vital interests of the masses of the people. In the concrete practice of improving the socialist consultative democratic system, attention should be paid to respecting the wishes of the majority and taking into account the reasonable demands of the minority, and combining the diversity of levels with the appropriateness of scale. Consultations should be carried out extensively among the masses of the people in a locality concerning matters involving the interests of a part of the masses and the interests of a specific mass; and matters involving the interests of the masses at the grassroots level should be extensively discussed among the masses at the grassroots level. Only by giving full play to the role of various consultation subjects as a platform can we better uphold the status of the people as the main body, ensure the orderly participation of citizens in the country's political life, effectively integrate social forces, coordinate social relations, and effectively ensure that the people are masters of their own country.

To improve the working mechanism of socialist consultative democracy, it is necessary to carry out extensive consultation in various forms before and during the implementation of decision-making. Due to the different scope, channels and forms of consultations, the content and focus of consultations are also different. In consultation with political parties, it is necessary to strengthen thematic consultations between the CPC and democratic parties on important principles and policies and major issues of the party and the state

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 76.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 73.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, p. 77-78.



Improve the system for the central committees of democratic parties to make proposals directly to the CPC Central Committee, strengthen the establishment of mechanisms for consultation and guarantee of political parties, and consolidate and develop harmonious relations between political parties. People's congress consultations should carry out in-depth consultations in legislative work, give play to the role of people's congress deputies in consultative democracy, encourage grassroots people's congresses to carry out consultations in accordance with the law in the course of performing their duties, and support and guarantee the people's exercise of state power through people's congresses. In government consultations, it is necessary to enhance the transparency of decision-making and public participation, explore the formulation and publication of a catalogue of consultation matters, enhance the breadth and pertinence of consultations, improve the government consultation mechanism, and improve the capacity and level of government governance. In CPPCC consultations, it is necessary to clarify the main contents of CPPCC consultations, improve CPPCC meetings and other forms of consultations, strengthen the effective connection between CPPCC consultations and the work of party committees and governments, strengthen the construction of the CPPCC system, and continuously improve the level of the democratic system of CPPCC consultation, standardization and procedure. People's organization consultations should focus on doing a good job of the party's mass work in the new situation, better organize and represent the masses with whom they are connected to participate in public affairs, effectively reflect the wishes and interests of the masses, and give play to the role of people's organizations as a bridge and link between the party and the government and the masses. Grassroots consultations should, in accordance with the requirements of consultation for the people and consultation for the people, establish and improve mechanisms for coordination and linkage in the construction of grassroots consultative democracy, better solve the actual difficulties and problems of the people, resolve contradictions and disputes in a timely manner, and promote social harmony and stability. Generally speaking, to improve the socialist consultative democratic mechanism, it is necessary to continuously establish and improve various consultation methods to ensure that the people's democratic rights are effectively realized in participating in the country's political and social life management.

### 3. Consolidate and develop the patriotic united front

The broad patriotic united front is an important part of the socialist political system with Chinese characteristics. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has made many important speeches on united front work, scientifically answering major questions such as why to adhere to the united front, what kind of united front to adhere to, and how to consolidate and develop the united front in the new era.

For a long time, we have adhered to the important magic weapon of the patriotic united front. The united front is an important magic weapon for the CPC to win victories in the cause of revolution, construction and reform, as well as for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Whether from the perspective of historical experience or from the perspective of promoting reform and development, it is necessary to adhere to the patriotic united front for a long time.

The patriotic united front is the united front led by the Communist Party of China, and upholding the party's leadership is the fundamental political guarantee for doing a good job in united front work. The party's leadership over the united front is primarily political leadership, including leadership over political principles, political orientation, and major principles and policies. The essence of the patriotic united front is broad political unity, and its role lies in uniting all patriotic forces that can be united. The more the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics advances, the more it is necessary to gather the broadest forces. Adhering to the broadest patriotic united front can effectively pool the wisdom and strength of all parties, groups, nationalities, social strata, and people from all walks of life.

Firmly grasp the basic observance of the patriotic united front. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To do a good job in united front work in the new situation, we must master the law, adhere to the principle and pay attention to the method."<sup>1</sup> First, to consolidate and develop the patriotic united front, we must always hold high the two banners of patriotism and socialism. These two banners are a conspicuous symbol of the consolidation and development of the united front since the reform and opening up, and are the political foundation of the patriotic united front in the new era. Second, to consolidate and develop the patriotic united front, we must firmly grasp the two major themes of great unity and great alliance. To win the decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and start a new journey of building a modern socialist country in an all-round way, the sons and daughters of China need to unite and work together. The patriotic united front is to find the greatest common divisor and draw the largest concentric circle. Third, to consolidate and develop the patriotic united front, it is also necessary to grasp the basic laws. Properly handle the relationship between consistency and diversity. Fourth, to consolidate and develop the patriotic united front, it is also necessary to improve its working methods. Be good at networking, this is the basic way. "In a certain sense, whether the united front work is done well or not depends on whether the number of friends made, whether they are qualified or not, and whether they are iron enough. More or less is a matter of quantity, and whether it is qualified or not is a matter of quality."<sup>2</sup>

Earnestly promote the key work of the patriotic united front in the new situation. On the basis of summing up the existing successful experience and combining it with the new practical requirements, the CPC has made a series of important arrangements for solidly advancing the united front work in various fields and constantly opening up a new situation in the party's united front.

First, persist in doing a good job in the work of democratic parties.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 561.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 304.

Accurately grasping the nature and positioning of democratic parties as socialist participating parties with Chinese characteristics, strengthening political consultations with democratic parties, and adhering to the basic principle of "long-term coexistence, mutual supervision, treating each other with all sincerity, and sharing honor and disgrace" are the basic guidelines established in the practice of long-term revolution, construction, and reform, and have long-term guiding significance. It is necessary to support democratic parties in strengthening their own construction, and help democratic parties focus on improving their ability to grasp politics, participate in and discuss state affairs, organize and lead, cooperate and work together, and solve their own problems.

Second, comprehensively implement the party's ethnic and religious policies. As a multi-ethnic country and a country with a large number of religious believers, it is very important for China to properly handle ethnic and religious issues for achieving long-term peace and stability in the country. It is necessary to adhere to the correct path of solving ethnic issues with Chinese characteristics, deepen education on national unity and progress, firmly establish the sense of the Chinese national community, strengthen exchanges, exchanges and blending among all ethnic groups, and "promote all ethnic groups to hug together like pomegranate seeds, work together in unity, and prosper and develop together."<sup>1</sup> Fully implement the party's basic policy on religious work, fully implement the party's policy on freedom of religious belief, manage religious affairs in accordance with the law, adhere to the principle of independence and self-management, actively guide religion to adapt to socialist society, adhere to the direction of Sinicization, and guide religious efforts to serve the promotion of economic development, social harmony, cultural prosperity, ethnic unity, and the reunification of the motherland.

Third, comprehensively do a good job in the work of all social strata. Since the reform and opening up, in addition to the traditional workers, peasants and intellectuals, a large number of new social strata have emerged, all of whom are important forces for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Doing a good job in the work of people from new social strata under the new situation is a new major issue entrusted by the times. It is necessary to enhance political consensus, make good use of network platforms, innovate work carriers, and better concentrate them on the cause of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. The work of intellectuals outside the party has always been an important part of the party's united front work, and it is necessary to follow the work line of strengthening education, grasping the ranks, and playing a role, strengthen ideological and political guidance, and give full play to the important role of intellectuals outside the party in promoting reform and development and maintaining social stability. It is necessary to build a new type of government-business relationship that is "pro" and "Qing", and promote the healthy development of the non-public economy and the healthy growth of people in the non-public economy.

Fourth, it is necessary to comprehensively do a good job in the work of overseas Chinese and the families of returned overseas Chinese.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 32.

Overseas Chinese and their families of returned overseas Chinese are also an important force in socialist modernization, and they also need extensive unity and joint efforts to work together for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

### Section 3: Comprehensively advancing the rule of law

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has made a series of major decisions and put forward a series of major measures on the comprehensive rule of law, systematically answered the major theoretical and practical issues involved in the comprehensive rule of law, and comprehensively expounded the basic issues such as the positioning, goals, path, layout and policy of the rule of law, which has become a scientific guide for promoting the construction of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

#### 1. Governing the country according to law is the basic way for the party to lead the people in governing the country

Law is the most important instrument of governance, and the rule of law is the basic way to govern a country. In the face of the new requirements for the development of the cause of the party and the country in the new era, the Communist Party of China has incorporated the comprehensive rule of law into the "four comprehensive" strategic layout. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed that governing the country according to law is the basic way for the party to lead the people to govern the country, and endowed the rule of law with a basic and strategic position in governing the country.

Governing the country according to law is the essential requirement and important guarantee for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. Adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics is a process of joint advancement of material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilizations, and the improvement of the level of rule of law is not only the proper meaning of the question, but also the basic support running through it. Since the reform and opening up, the Communist Party of China has integrated the construction of the rule of law into the theory and practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics, which has become an important part of the modernization drive. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the rule of law has a more important position and role in the overall work of the party and the state. Whether it is developing the socialist market economy, developing socialist democratic politics, building advanced socialist culture, building a socialist harmonious society, building a socialist ecological civilization, or properly responding to various complex contradictions and severe risks and challenges, it is more necessary to give play to the guiding and normative role of the rule of law, and it is more necessary to use the rule of law thinking and methods to carry out work.

It can be said that the results of governing the country according to law directly affect the process of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and only by giving full play to the important role of governing the country according to law can we ensure the smooth realization of the "two centenary goals" and continuously open up the bright prospects of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Governing the country according to law is an inevitable requirement for modernizing the national governance system and governance capacity. The rule of law is the rule of rules and systems. In modern society, rule of law is the main criterion for measuring the modernization level of national governance system and governance capacity, and it is also an inevitable requirement for realizing the modernization of national governance system and governance capacity. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "The issue of rule of law and rule of man is a basic issue in the history of human political civilization, and it is also a major issue that all countries must face and solve in the process of realizing modernization." Looking at the modern history of the world, there is not a single country that has successfully achieved modernization that has not solved the problem of rule of law and rule of man well. <sup>1</sup> In the face of the complex governance tasks of modern countries, to ensure the effective operation of all aspects of politics, economy and society, there must be rules and laws to follow, and rule of law thinking and methods must be used. The Third Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee focused on promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, clearly put forward important tasks such as safeguarding the authority of the Constitution and law, deepening the reform of the administrative law enforcement system, ensuring the independent exercise of judicial and procuratorial powers in accordance with the law, improving the operation mechanism of judicial power, and improving the judicial guarantee system for the people's seal, so as to accelerate the pace of promoting the construction of a rule of law in China. Promoting the comprehensive rule of law is of vital significance to promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and then promoting the entire socialist modernization.

Governing the country according to law is the fundamental guarantee for achieving long-term peace and stability in the country and the happiness and well-being of the people. History and reality have taught us that the rule of law must be relied upon to achieve long-term peace and stability in the country and the happiness and well-being of the people. China is a large country with a large population, vast territory, many ethnic groups and complex national conditions, and it is not easy for the Communist Party of China to govern such a large country, and it is not easy to ensure the long-term peace and stability of the country and the happy and healthy life of the people. Only by bringing the work of the party and the state into the track of rule of law, persisting in coordinating social forces, balancing social interests, regulating social relations, and regulating social behavior on the track of rule of law, can we make our society both vigorous and orderly in the midst of profound changes, achieve economic development, political clarity, cultural prosperity, social justice, and good ecology, and realize the strategic goals of China's socialist modernization.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensive Rule of Law", Central Literature Publishing House, 2015 edition, p12.

Similarly, only by adhering to the rule of law can we ensure that the people enjoy a wide range of rights and freedoms in accordance with the law, guarantee the people's rights to equal participation and equal development in accordance with the law, punish criminal acts that harm the interests of the people in accordance with the law, safeguard social fairness and justice, and realize, safeguard and develop the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people.

## 2. Take the path of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics

The positioning of the rule of law establishes the status of comprehensive rule of law in the new era, and the goal and path of rule of law construction establish the direction of efforts and the process of realizing comprehensive rule of law. In the early days after the founding of New China, while abolishing the old legal system, our party actively applied the successful experience of building the legal system in the base areas during the period of the new democratic revolution, stepped up the construction of socialist rule of law, and initially laid the foundation for socialist rule of law. Later, the construction of socialist rule of law went through a detour and paid a heavy price. In the new historical period of reform and opening up, our party has defined governing the country according to law as the basic strategy for the party to lead the people to govern the country, and ruling according to law as the basic way for the party to govern the country. The report of the 15th National Congress of the Communist Party of China in 1997 and the 1999 Amendment to the Constitution of the People's Republic of China clearly put forward the requirement of "governing the country according to law and building a socialist country ruled by law." In January 2013, Comrade Xi Jinping put forward for the first time the goal of building a rule of law in China in his important instructions on doing a good job in political and legal work under the new situation. In October 2014, the Decision of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China on Several Major Issues Concerning Comprehensively Promoting the Rule of Law adopted by the Fourth Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "The overall goal of comprehensively promoting the rule of law is to build a socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics and build a socialist country under the rule of law. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China organically combined this general goal with the new journey of socialist construction, and proposed that by 2035, when socialist modernization is basically realized, "the rule of law country, the rule of law government, and the rule of law society will be basically completed." The path of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics is a concentrated embodiment of the achievements and experience in the construction of socialist rule of law, and the only correct path to building a socialist country under the rule of law.

To take the road of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics, the most fundamental thing is to adhere to the party's leadership. Adhering to the party's leadership is the fundamental requirement of socialist rule of law, the fundamental guarantee for comprehensively promoting the overall goal of governing the country according to law, and the soul of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics.

Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "The relationship between the party and the law is a fundamental issue, and if it is handled well, the rule of law, the party and the country will prosper; if it is not handled well, the rule of law, the party and the country will decline."<sup>1</sup> The leadership of the Party and the socialist rule of law are consistent, and the socialist rule of law must adhere to the leadership of the Party, and the Party's leadership must rely on the socialist rule of law. "'Party Congress or Law University' is a false proposition", "whether the major matter of comprehensively promoting the rule of law can be done well, the most important thing is whether the direction is correct and whether the political guarantee is strong and powerful."<sup>2</sup> Therefore, it is necessary to carry out the party's leadership throughout the entire process and in all aspects of governing the country according to law, persist in the party's leadership in legislation, ensure law enforcement, support the judiciary, and take the lead in abiding by the law, and unify the basic strategy of governing the country according to law with the basic method of governing the country according to law; integrate the party's overall control of the overall situation and coordination between all parties and the people's congresses, governments, CPPCC, judicial organs, and procuratorial organs in performing their functions and carrying out work in accordance with the charter; and unify the party's leadership of the people in formulating and implementing the constitution and laws with the party's insistence on activities within the scope of the constitution and laws. He is good at making the party's propositions become the will of the state through legal procedures, good at making candidates recommended by party organizations become leading personnel of organs of state power through legal procedures, good at implementing the party's leadership over the state and society through organs of state power, and good at using the principle of democratic centralism to safeguard the authority of the central authorities and the unity of the whole party and the whole country.

To take the road of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics, we must adhere to the people's dominant position. Upholding the people's dominant position is the basic attribute of socialist rule of law. "China's socialist system ensures the dominant position of the people as masters of the country, and also guarantees the main position of the people in comprehensively promoting the rule of law. This is our institutional advantage, and it is also the fundamental difference between the socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics and the capitalist rule of law."<sup>3</sup> The people are the main body and source of strength for governing the country according to law, and we must adhere to the rule of law for the people, rely on the people, benefit the people, and protect the people, and ensure that the people, under the leadership of the Party and in accordance with the law, manage state affairs, economic and cultural undertakings, and social affairs through various channels and forms; we must persist in embodying the interests of the people, reflecting the people's aspirations, safeguarding the people's rights and interests, and improving the people's well-being in the entire process of governing the country according to law;

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensive Rule of Law", Central Literature Publishing House, 2015, p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the Fourth Plenary Session of the 18th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2014, p. 78.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping, "Accelerating the Construction of a Socialist Country under the Rule of Law," Qiushi, No. 1, 2015.

We must persist in expanding the people's orderly political participation and ensure that the people practice democratic elections, democratic consultation, democratic decision-making, democratic management and democratic supervision in accordance with the law. At the same time, it is also necessary to educate and guide the people to realize that the law is not only a powerful weapon to protect their own rights, but also a code of conduct that must be observed, so that the law can be mastered, observed and applied by the people.

To take the road of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics, we must adhere to the combination of governing the country according to law and governing the country with ethics. Fa'an world, morality and people's hearts. "Law is written morality, and morality is the law of the heart. Law and morality have the role of regulating social behavior, regulating social relations, and maintaining social order, and both have their status and functions in national governance. "<sup>1</sup> The effective implementation of the law cannot be separated from the strong support of morality. It is necessary to strengthen the supporting role of morality in the rule of law, attach importance to giving play to the role of morality in educating and nourishing the rule of law, improve the degree of civilization of the whole society, reflect the requirements of the rule of law in the moral system, highlight the connotation of the rule of law, pay attention to cultivating people's legal beliefs, concepts of the rule of law, and awareness of rules, strive to connect, coordinate and promote the moral system with socialist legal norms, guide people to consciously perform legal obligations, social responsibilities, and family responsibilities, and create a humanistic environment in which the whole society stresses and abides by the rule of law. It is necessary to implement moral requirements in the construction of the rule of law, and use the rule of law to carry moral concepts, so that morality can be supported by a reliable system. Laws and regulations should establish a clear moral orientation, promote virtue and righteous deeds, and legislation, law enforcement, and justice should run through the core socialist values, embody the requirements of socialist morality, and make the socialist rule of law a good law and good governance. Persist in making the rule of law and the rule of ethics complementary, mutually reinforcing and mutually reinforcing in national governance.

To take the road of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics, we must persist in proceeding from China's reality. There is no universal and unique path to rule of law in the world, and the choice of rule of law path chosen by a country must be based on its own history, reality and national conditions. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To comprehensively promote the rule of law, we must go the right way. If the road is wrong and the opposite is lost, then there is no point in putting forward any more requirements and measures. "

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 133.



<sup>1</sup> The path of socialist rule of law with Chinese characteristics is a concentrated embodiment of the achievements and experience in the construction of socialist rule of law, and is the only correct path to build a socialist country under the rule of law. Persisting in proceeding from China's actual conditions, it is necessary to adapt to the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and neither ignore the national conditions and transcend the stage, nor follow the old ways and stick to established rules, but highlight the characteristics of China, practice and the times; It is necessary not only to draw rich nourishment from the excellent traditional rule of law culture, excavate and inherit the essence of Chinese legal culture, but also to sum up and apply the successful experience of the party in leading the people to implement the rule of law, and continuously enrich and develop the theory of socialist rule of law that conforms to China's reality and embodies the law of social development around major theoretical and practical issues in the construction of socialist rule of law, so as to provide theoretical guidance and academic support for governing the country according to law. In the process of learning from other outstanding achievements of rule of law civilization in the world, we must persist in taking ourselves as the mainstay, using them for our own use, carefully identifying them, and rationally absorbing them, and we must never engage in "complete westernization" and "comprehensive transplantation."

### 3. Comprehensively deepen the practice of governing the country according to law

Comrade Xi Jinping proposed that we should adhere to the joint advancement of governing the country according to law, ruling according to law and administering according to law, and adhere to the integrated construction of a country ruled by law, a government ruled by law, and a society ruled by law. This important thesis points out the key elements and key links of comprehensively governing the country according to law, and clarifies the overall layout and key tasks of the rule of law construction in the new era. To deepen the practice of governing the country according to law in the new era and accelerate the construction of a socialist country ruled by law, we must take the comprehensive rule of law as a systematic project, take into account the overall consideration, grasp the key points, and plan as a whole, fully mobilize the initiative and enthusiasm of all parties, and form a good situation of coordinated development of the rule of law.

Persist in administering the country according to law, ruling according to law, and administering according to law. Governing the country according to law, ruling according to law, and administering according to law are organically linked wholes, and the three are essentially the same, the goals are integrated, and the results are related, and they must cooperate with each other, promote together, and form a joint force. Governing the country according to law is the basic strategy for governing the country as determined by our Constitution. It is necessary to implement the concept of rule of law in all links of governance, throughout the entire process of reform and development, and through the construction of economic, political, cultural, social, ecological civilization and other aspects, to ensure that all organizations and individuals operate within the scope of the law.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Accelerating the Construction of a Socialist Country under the Rule of Law", *Qiushi*, No. 1, 2015.

Ruling according to law is the basic way for the party to govern the country. It is necessary to continuously improve the party's leadership and ruling methods, enhance the awareness of ruling according to law, persist in carrying out work with the concept of rule of law, the system of rule of law, and the procedures of rule of law, and promote the institutionalization, standardization and procedure of ruling according to law. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To govern the country according to law, we must first adhere to governing the country according to the constitution, and ruling according to law must first adhere to ruling according to the constitution."<sup>1</sup> This important exposition fully reflects that the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core pays more attention to the important role of the Constitution as the fundamental law of the country. In this sense, our party must first take the lead in respecting and implementing the constitution, and unify leading the people to formulate and implement the constitution and laws with the party's insistence on activities within the scope of the constitution and laws. Administration according to law is the main way for administrative organs to perform government functions and manage economic and social affairs. It is necessary to fully perform functions in accordance with the law, insist that legally prescribed duties must be performed and cannot be done without the authorization of the law, continuously improve the decision-making mechanism in accordance with the law, improve law enforcement procedures, strictly enforce the responsibility for law enforcement, and achieve strict standardization, fairness and civility in law enforcement. It is necessary to comprehensively promote openness in government affairs, strengthen the restraint and supervision of administrative powers, and establish a law-based administrative system with unified powers and responsibilities, authority and high efficiency.

Adhere to the integrated construction of a country ruled by law, a government ruled by law, and a society ruled by law. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The rule of law country, the rule of law government, and the rule of law society all have their own focus and complement each other, the rule of law country is the goal of rule of law construction, the rule of law government is the main body of building a rule of law country, and the rule of law society is the foundation for building a rule of law country."<sup>2</sup> In the construction of a country ruled by law, we must take the construction of a socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics as the general starting point, accelerate the formation of a complete legal normative system, an efficient rule of law implementation system, a strict rule of law supervision system, a strong rule of law guarantee system, and form a sound system of internal party laws and regulations. In the construction of a government ruled by law, governments at all levels must carry out work under the leadership of the Party and on the track of rule of law, and accelerate the construction of a government ruled by law with scientific functions, statutory powers and responsibilities, strict law enforcement, openness and justice, honesty and efficiency, and law-abiding and honest. In the construction of a society ruled by law, it is necessary to carry out in-depth publicity and education on the rule of law, carry forward the spirit of socialist rule of law in the whole society, disseminate legal knowledge, build a socialist culture of rule of law, establish the concept of rule of law in which the constitution and the law are supreme and everyone is equal before the law, and form a good social atmosphere of respecting the law, believing in the law, abiding by the law, using the law, and protecting the law. It is necessary to persist in combining education on the rule of law with the practice of the rule of law, extensively carry out activities to govern according to law, and raise the level of legalization of social management.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Strengthening the Party's Leadership over the Comprehensive Rule of Law", *Qiushi*, No. 4, 2019.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: "Strengthening the Party's Leadership over the Comprehensive Rule of Law", *Qiushi*, No. 4, 2019.

It should also be pointed out that supervision according to law is a major measure to implement the practice of comprehensively governing the country according to law under the new situation, and an important part of promoting the reform of the socialist political system with Chinese characteristics. Promoting supervision according to law means to ensure the organic unity of governing the party according to law and governing the country according to law, and intra-party supervision and state supervision through legal means, to carry out anti-corruption work with rule of law thinking and methods, to integrate intra-party supervision with supervision by state organs, democratic supervision, judicial supervision, mass supervision, and public opinion supervision, and to continuously improve the supervision efficiency of the party and the state. Deepening the reform of the state supervision system in accordance with the Constitution and laws is a major political system reform related to the overall situation made by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core, and a major decision and deployment to strengthen the self-supervision of the Party and the state.

Promote scientific legislation, strict law enforcement, fair administration of justice, and law-abiding by all people. This is the guiding principle for the construction of China's rule of law in the new era, which clarifies the key requirements of each major link and constitutes the basic work pattern of comprehensively governing the country according to law in the new era.

Scientific legislation is an important prerequisite for the construction of the rule of law. After the basic formation of the socialist legal system with Chinese characteristics, the people's expectations for legislation are no longer whether they are there or not, but whether it is good or not, whether it works, whether it can solve practical problems, and the requirements for improving the quality of legislation are getting higher and higher. In accordance with the arrangements of the 19th CPC National Congress, we should earnestly promote scientific, democratic, and law-based legislation, and do a good job in the work of legislation, reform, abolition, and interpretation. It is necessary to respect and embody the objective laws of legislation, implement the principles of fairness, openness and justice, ensure that the laws enacted abide by the law, are reasonable, and reasonable, and continuously improve the quality of legislation. It is necessary to persist in legislation for the people and rely on the people, continuously broaden the channels for citizens to participate in legislation in an orderly manner, so that legislation reflects the will of the people and is supported by the people. It is necessary to legislate in accordance with the legal authority and procedures to safeguard the unity and dignity of the socialist legal system.

Strict law enforcement is a key link in the implementation of the law. Law enforcers must be faithful to the law. Administrative organs are important subjects in implementing laws and regulations, and should take the lead in strictly enforcing the law and safeguarding the public interest, the people's rights and interests, and social order. It is necessary to comprehensively implement the system of power lists, responsibility lists, and negative lists to ensure that administrative organs operate within the scope of the law. Continuously improve law enforcement methods, put an end to undesirable phenomena such as rough law enforcement, selective law enforcement, and fishing law enforcement, and effectively solve prominent problems such as inaction and indiscriminate action in law enforcement. It is necessary to strictly enforce law enforcement qualifications, improve law enforcement procedures, establish and improve the benchmark system for administrative discretion, and ensure that the law is fair, effective, and impartial justice is the last line of defense to maintain social fairness and justice.

Judicial justice plays an important leading role in social justice, and judicial injustice has a fatal destructive effect on social justice. In order to promote judicial justice, it is necessary to deepen the reform of the judicial system. It should be said that the reform of the judicial system plays an important role in comprehensively deepening reform and comprehensively governing the country according to law, and is of great significance to promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. It is necessary to fully implement the judicial responsibility system and further advance the reform of the criminal procedure system centered on trial. Carry out comprehensive supporting reform pilots to improve the overall effectiveness of reform. It is necessary to deeply understand the key role of judicial accountability in the reform of the judicial system. By promoting the reform of the judicial accountability system, we will promote the resolution of difficult problems that restrict judicial fairness, and at the same time lead other reform measures to form synergies. Therefore, it is necessary to deepen the comprehensive and complementary reform of the judicial system, fully implement the judicial responsibility system, improve the judicial management system and the operation mechanism of judicial power, strengthen the supervision of judicial activities, accelerate the construction of a fair, efficient and authoritative socialist judicial system, continuously improve the quality, efficiency and credibility of the judiciary, and let the people feel fairness and justice in every judicial case.

Law-abiding by the whole people is the social basis for the law to function. It is necessary to intensify the popularization of law among the whole people, establish the concept of rule of law in which the Constitution and the law are supreme and everyone is equal before the law, guide the masses to do things according to law, find the law when encountered, rely on the law to solve problems, and consciously be faithful advocates, conscientious observers, and staunch defenders of the rule of law. Party organizations at all levels and all party members should take the lead in respecting the study of the law and abiding by the law; no organization or individual should have privileges that go beyond the Constitution and the law, and it is absolutely not allowed to use words to represent the law, use power to suppress the law, pursue profit to break the law, and bend the law for personal gain.

## Chapter X: Building a Socialist Cultural Power

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Culture is the soul of a country and a nation. Culture rejuvenates the country and prosper, culture is strong, and the nation is strong. Without a high degree of cultural self-confidence and cultural prosperity, there will be no great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation."<sup>1</sup> To uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, we must strengthen cultural self-confidence, enhance cultural consciousness, achieve cultural self-improvement, adhere to the path of socialist cultural development with Chinese characteristics, stimulate the vitality of national cultural innovation and creativity, and build a socialist cultural power.

### Section 1: Strengthens cultural self-confidence

Cultural self-confidence is a country, nation and political party's full affirmation of its own cultural value and firm belief in its own cultural vitality. Strengthening cultural self-confidence is a major issue that has a bearing on the rise and fall of national fortunes, cultural security, and national spiritual independence. Strengthening cultural self-confidence fully reflects the high degree of cultural consciousness and cultural responsibility of the Communist Party of China, and highlights the cultural foundation, cultural values and cultural ideals of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 33.

## 1. cultural self-confidence is a more basic, broader, and deeper self-confidence

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Cultural self-confidence is a more basic, broader and deeper self-confidence, and a more basic, deeper and more lasting force."<sup>1</sup> Strengthening self-confidence in the path, theory and system of socialism with Chinese characteristics is, in the final analysis, to strengthen cultural self-confidence.

The reason why cultural self-confidence is more basic, broader and deeper lies in the fact that culture has strong permeability and persistence, is as ubiquitous and ever-present as air, and can profoundly affect tangible existence and tangible reality with invisible consciousness and intangible concepts, and profoundly affect social development and civilization progress, which is not only an important source of national cohesion and creativity, but also an important factor in the competition of comprehensive national strength.

First, from the perspective of the operation process of human society, culture is the soul. Human society is a pluralistic, complex, relatively independent and mutually complementary organism composed of political, economic, cultural and other systems. Regarding the different functions and interrelationships of various systems, Comrade Xi Jinping once quoted the metaphor of a philosopher to vividly point out: "Politics is the bone, the economy is the flesh and blood, and culture is the soul."<sup>2</sup> On August 12, 2005, Comrade Xi Jinping wrote in the article "Culture is the Soul" published in the "Zhijiang Xinyu" column of Zhejiang Daily: "The power of culture, or what we call cultural soft power that constitutes comprehensive competitiveness, is always. 'It has quietly integrated people's economic, political and social forces, and become a 'booster' for economic development, a 'guiding light' for political civilization, and a harmonious society'.<sup>3</sup> The core function of culture is to provide a series of values to the whole society, so as to guide the direction, unite people's hearts, and integrate society. In the same way, in the "four self-confidences" of road, theory, system and culture, ...Culture that embodies values is undoubtedly the soul, while roads, theories, and systems are the expression of culture and the externalization of values. History has repeatedly proved that a nation that abandons or betrays its own history and culture is not only impossible to develop, but is also likely to stage one historical tragedy after another.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 349.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: Zhijiang Xinyu, Zhejiang People's Publishing House, 2007, p. 149.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping: Zhijiang Xinyu, Zhejiang People's Publishing House, 2007, p. 149.

Especially if a big nation, such a big country, and such a big political party like ours are culturally passive and lose their independence, then the independence of the system and sovereignty will be drawn from the bottom. The tragic circumstances of modern times are vivid and we must remain vigilant.

Second, from the perspective of the pursuit of human social development, culture is an important goal of social civilization and progress. Culture, as the guidance of social development and the accumulation of historical civilization, is the universal need and ultimate pursuit of mankind, and solves the fundamental problems of the spiritual world such as "where does human beings come from and where they go." People need to enlighten their minds, understand society, and gain ideological lessons through culture, as well as to delight their bodies and minds, cultivate their temperament, and obtain spiritual satisfaction and dependence through culture. Especially with the advancement of economic construction and the development of material civilization, people increasingly feel that the growth of 60% and the increase of material wealth are not the only goal of social development, let alone the highest goal. UNESCO has proposed that development should ultimately be defined by the concept of culture, and that the flourishing of culture is the highest goal of development. At present, China's economic and social transformation is accelerating, and the tasks of humanistic care, psychological counseling and spiritual comfort are more heavy. Adhere to "cultural people" and "educate people with culture", better use culture to warm the soul, relieve pressure, conserve life, better enrich people's spiritual world, and become an important aspect to meet people's needs for a better life.

Third, from the perspective of the Chinese nation's own history, culture is an important support for national rejuvenation. Since ancient times, Chinese culture has formed a series of core values such as self-improvement, moral integrity, harmony and symbiosis, and poverty and change, which have provided rich nourishment for the Chinese nation's continuous vitality and development, enabling the Chinese nation to overcome dangers again and again at critical junctures, phoenix nirvana, and rebirth from the ashes, and also enabling Chinese culture to be inclusive and inclusive in the face of foreign civilizations, and constantly enrich itself and develop itself. Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, China is increasingly approaching the center of the world stage, and the Chinese nation is ushering in unprecedented bright prospects for great rejuvenation. The great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is inseparable from the prosperity of culture, which has increasingly become a supporting force for national rejuvenation. The prosperity of Chinese culture means that Chinese culture not only provides spiritual power and ideological wisdom for the development of socialism with Chinese characteristics, but also contributes Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to solving human problems. This kind of cultural self-confidence, which is based on more than 5,000 years of civilization inheritance, is undoubtedly incomparably deep and increasingly powerful.

## 2. we have enough confidence and sufficient reasons to strengthen cultural self-confidence

Cultural self-confidence in contemporary China is essentially self-confidence in the advanced socialist culture with Chinese characteristics. The report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "Socialist culture with Chinese characteristics originates from the excellent traditional Chinese culture nurtured by the civilization history of the Chinese nation for more than 5,000 years, is forged in the revolutionary culture and advanced socialist culture created by the people under the leadership of the Party in revolution, construction and reform, and is rooted in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics."<sup>1</sup> It contains sufficient confidence in cultural self-confidence, and the sufficient reason for cultural self-confidence is not only the foundation for our livelihood, but also the "needle of the sea god" for us to stand firm in the turbulence of world culture.

First, socialist culture with Chinese characteristics originates from the excellent traditional Chinese culture. This is the deep foundation of our strong cultural confidence. The long-standing, broad and profound Chinese culture has accumulated the deepest spiritual pursuit of the Chinese nation, contains the most fundamental spiritual genes of the Chinese nation, represents the unique spiritual mark of the Chinese nation, not only provides rich nourishment for the continuous vitality and development of the Chinese nation, but also makes unique contributions to the progress of human civilization; it not only casts the glory of history, but also still shines with the light of the times today. Russell once said, "There are some things in China's supreme ethical qualities that the modern world desperately needs."<sup>2</sup> "If it could be adopted by the whole world, there would surely be more joy and peace on earth than it does now."<sup>3</sup> Whether it is the "Chinese culture fever" in China or the "Chinese culture fever" and "Confucius fever" in the world, they all vividly show the important practical significance of China's excellent traditional culture in today's world.

Second, the socialist culture with Chinese characteristics is forged in the revolutionary culture and advanced socialist culture formed under the guidance of Marxism. This is the foundation of our cultural confidence. Marxism is the greatest achievement in the history of human thought, revealing the basic law of the development of human society and pointing out the correct direction for the construction of advanced socialist culture with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 33.

<sup>2</sup> Russell: *The China Question*, translated by Qin Yue, Scholastic Press, 1996, p. 167.

<sup>3</sup> Russell: *The China Question*, translated by Qin Yue, Scholastic Press, 1996, p. 7.



Since its birth, the Communist Party of China has held high the great banner of Marxism, and in the process of integrating with China's reality, it has continuously promoted the Sinicization of Marxism, forming a series of theoretical achievements of Mao Zedong Thought, Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents", the Scientific Outlook on Development, and Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, which have become the fundamental guidelines guiding the progress of Chinese culture. The Party has led the people to create a vigorous revolutionary culture and an advanced socialist culture with vigor in the course of revolution, construction and reform. These precious treasures, rich in the characteristics of the times, national characteristics and Chinese style, constantly realize the regeneration and regeneration of Chinese culture, vividly embody the great creative spirit of the Chinese communists and the Chinese people, and are a powerful spiritual force and common ideological foundation that inspires the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to forge ahead.

Third, the socialist culture with Chinese characteristics is rooted in the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics. This is an inexhaustible source of our cultural confidence. Since the reform and opening up, the Party has united and led the people of all ethnic groups in the country to unswervingly promote the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics, China's economic strength, scientific and technological strength, national defense strength and comprehensive national strength have entered the forefront of the world, scientific socialism has shown strong vitality in the 21st century, and the Chinese nation has stood tall in the east of the world with a brand-new posture. The practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics is advancing magnificently, providing a broader stage for the prosperity and development of culture, and also providing a major historical opportunity. As long as we base ourselves on China's practice, carry out cultural creation in the great creation of the masses of the people, and achieve cultural progress in the progress of history, we will certainly be able to create a splendid culture worthy of history and the times.

### 3. achieve cultural self-improvement in strengthening cultural self-confidence

Strengthening cultural self-confidence cannot stop at sitting and talking, but must be reflected in cultural self-improvement actions. As a major civilized country, a large developing country, a major socialist country and a responsible country, China should base itself on its own reality, correctly view its own culture, correctly treat the culture of others, follow its own path of cultural development, and build a cultural power with strong attraction and influence, strong vitality and creativity, and strong strength and competitiveness. In the practice of promoting cultural development, the most important thing is to do:

"Do not forget the original, absorb outsiders, face the future, better build the Chinese spirit, Chinese values, Chinese strength, and provide the people with a spiritual bow."<sup>1</sup>

Stick to the original. The culture of any country has its own traditions and inherent roots. Abandoning tradition and losing the root is tantamount to cutting off one's own spiritual lifeline, losing the characteristics of culture, and cultural self-improvement will become a source of water and a tree without roots. For China today, the excellent traditional Chinese culture with a long history, Marxism as the guiding ideology of the Party and the state, the revolutionary culture and the advanced socialist culture created by the Party and the people are the "originals" of Chinese culture. We must unswervingly adhere to and carry forward it with the times, so that it can benefit the present and future generations. Those practices such as forgetting one's ancestors, flouting traditions, bidding farewell to revolution, evading the sublime, dissolving classics, and engaging in historical nihilism are very harmful. Of course, we must not forget that the original is by no means self-isolation and drawing the ground as a prison, but we must base ourselves on new practices, conform to the trend of the times, push the old into the new, keep the right and bring out the new, scientifically sort out, carefully extract, innovate and create, and constantly carry forward. Persisting in not forgetting the original is the conclusion of history and the inevitability of reality. In the new era, only by not forgetting our roots can we distinguish between the mainstream and the tributaries, distinguish between the advanced and the backward, distinguish the positive from the negative, effectively lead various social ideological trends, resist the influence of decadent culture, and constantly consolidate the common ideological foundation of the whole party and the people of the whole country in unity and struggle.

Insist on absorbing outsiders. No culture can be isolated and needs to be nourished from other cultures. Comrade Mao Zedong pointed out: "China should absorb a large number of foreign progressive cultures as raw materials for its own cultural food."<sup>2</sup> What kind of attitude to treat foreign culture tests a country's cultural self-confidence. The more confident you are, the more you can treat foreign cultures with a positive attitude, and the more you can enrich and develop through interaction and exchanges with foreign cultures. Extensively absorbing and integrating all outstanding foreign cultural achievements is an inevitable requirement for promoting the prosperity of Chinese culture and realizing cultural self-improvement. The reason why Chinese culture is enduring, enduring, and timeless is that it has a tradition of openness, inclusiveness and inclusiveness. Openness and inclusiveness are not blind respect for the outside world, and inclusiveness is not all according to the order.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1991, p. 706.

We must adhere to mutual respect, equal treatment, the beauty of beauty, beauty and commonality, openness and inclusiveness, mutual learning and mutual learning, keep pace with the times, innovate and develop, and constantly deepen exchanges and mutual learning among civilizations. The culture of every country has its own soil for survival, and Nagisa6 has its own conditions for functioning. Without certain historical conditions and social environment, the value and role of culture will inevitably change. At the same time, foreign cultures are also diverse, varied, good and bad, and coexist. In dealing with foreign cultures, we must have analysis, comparison, and discrimination, so as to make dialectical choices and choose the good and follow the good. If it is not identified, good or bad, or even the dregs and garbage are introduced as treasures, the harm will be endless. The attitude of "total rejection" or "taking everything as it gets" towards Western culture is undesirable. To absorb foreign culture, it is important to focus on me and use it for me, focus on realizing sinicization and localization, and make it blossom and bear fruit on Chinese soil through transformation and reconstruction.

Insist on facing the future. Any living culture is subject to future scrutiny and testing. Today's world is undergoing major changes unprecedented in a century, and to build a socialist cultural power, we must take a long-term view, take precautions and seize opportunities with forward-looking vision and thinking. On the one hand, it is necessary to gain insight into the general trend of world development. With the improvement of China's comprehensive national strength and international status, the world pays more attention to China and the trend of China's cultural development. What is more worthy of attention is that the new round of scientific and technological revolution has brought profound changes in the communication pattern, and the Internet has become the biggest variable in cultural development. Whoever masters the Internet will grasp the initiative of the times; Whoever takes the lead in the development of online culture will be able to occupy the commanding heights of culture. As of March 2020, the scale of China's Internet users has reached more than 900 million, ranking first in the world. This provides favorable conditions for us to expand the influence of Chinese culture and build a cultural power. On the other hand, after more than 40 years of reform and opening up, we have successfully embarked on a path of socialism with Chinese characteristics, which has provided a strong guarantee for the prosperity and development of culture. In particular, with the deepening of the reform of China's cultural system, the further emancipation of cultural productive forces, the rapid development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries, the prosperity of the cultural market, and the unprecedented abundance and variety of cultural products. This is an important resource and precious wealth for building a culturally strong country. We must base ourselves on the practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics, firmly grasp the general trend of world development, conform to the trend of the information era, carry out new cultural creation, and realize cultural self-improvement.

## Section 2: Promote the prosperity of socialist culture

To promote the prosperity of socialist culture, it is necessary to take Marxism as the guide, adhere to the stand of Chinese culture, base ourselves on the reality of contemporary China, and combine the conditions of the current era to develop a national, scientific and popular socialist culture oriented to modernization, the world and the future, and constantly create new splendor of Chinese culture. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out: "While building a high degree of material civilization, we should also raise the scientific and cultural level of the whole nation, develop a noble and rich and colorful cultural life, and build a high degree of socialist spiritual civilization."<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Strengthen faith in Marxism

The people have faith, the country has strength, and the nation has hope. Marxism is the guiding ideology of the party and the state, and a powerful ideological weapon for us to understand the world, grasp the laws, pursue the truth, and transform the world. To prosper and develop socialist culture, the most fundamental thing is to continue to strengthen theoretical arming work, strengthen Marxist belief, use the developing Marxism to guide new practice, and give full play to the role of the party's scientific theories in guiding the direction, refining thinking, sublimating the realm, and promoting work.

Doing a good job in strengthening Marxist propaganda and education is the fundamental requirement for holding high the banner of Marxism and building people's faith and conviction. "To do a good job" lies in following the requirements of Marxist popularization, unifying propaganda education with satisfying the theoretical needs of the masses, adopting ways and means that conform to the habits of the masses, realizing the effective integration of theoretical discourse and mass discourse, and carrying out more targeted and effective theoretical dissemination and ideological enlightenment, so that Marxist theory can better be recognized by the audience's hearts and become people's actions to follow. "To be stronger", the emphasis is on pooling propaganda and education resources from all aspects, and forming an all-round work pattern that combines inner-party education and social education, online communication and offline communication, and theoretical propaganda and practical cultivation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994 edition, p. 208.

We should always maintain the strength of propaganda and public opinion, and fully demonstrate the truth power and ideological brilliance of Marxism.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the inheritance and development of Marxism-Leninism, Mao Zedong Thought, Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents" and the scientific outlook on development, the latest achievement of the Sinicization of Marxism, and the action guide for the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to strive for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. In contemporary China, adhering to Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is truly adhering to Marxism. To do a good job in strengthening Marxist propaganda and education, the first task is to arm the whole party, educate the people, and promote the work with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. It is necessary to make efforts to learn and understand and do practical things, adhere to comprehensive and systematic study, timely follow-up study, in-depth thinking and practical study, guide people to deeply understand the historical status, rich connotation and spiritual essence of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, continuously enhance the political, ideological and emotional identification with this thought, better transform the achievements of the party's theoretical innovation into a powerful force for understanding and transforming the world, and promote contemporary Chinese Marxism. 21st Century Marxism took root.

## 2. Cultivate and practice the core socialist values

Core values carry the spiritual pursuit of a nation and a country, embody a value standard for social judgment of the merits, and are an important stabilizer of a country. China is a large country with a population of 1.4 billion and 56 ethnic groups, and the establishment of the "greatest common denominator" of values that reflect the common recognition of the people of all ethnic groups in the country, so that all the people can work together with one heart and one mind, and forge ahead in unity, which is related to the future and destiny of the country and the happiness and well-being of the people.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Communist Party of China has advocated the core socialist values of prosperity, democracy, civilization, harmony, freedom, equality, justice, rule of law, patriotism, dedication, honesty and friendliness, and has answered in depth the major questions of what kind of country to build, what kind of society to build and what kind of citizens to cultivate from the three levels of state, society and citizens. The core values of socialism embody the common value pursuit of all the people and are the concentrated embodiment of the spirit of contemporary China.

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out that to cultivate and practice the core socialist values, we should focus on cultivating new people of the era who will take on the task of national rejuvenation, and grasp the essence of cultivating and practicing the core socialist values. This is because what kind of society to build and what kind of goals to achieve are the decisive factor; the construction of socialist core values depends in the final analysis on people's ideological and moral construction and scientific and cultural construction. It is necessary to adhere to the way of education guidance, practice cultivation, and system guarantee, based on the cultivation of new talents of the era with ideals, skills, and responsibilities, and continue to deeply promote the construction of socialist core values.

Strengthen education and guidance. This is the most basic and effective way to cultivate and practice the core socialist values. It is necessary to strengthen ideological and moral construction, thoroughly implement the project of building civic morality, strengthen and improve ideological and political work, and continuously enhance the people's ideological consciousness, moral level, civilization attainment, and the level of civilization of the whole society. It is necessary to better integrate the core socialist values into national education, integrate them into education and teaching, school spirit and study style, and lead the construction of teachers' morality. Build and improve a scientific, rational and closely connected moral education system from primary school to university, and grasp the education of socialist core values as the central link of moral education in schools, so that it becomes a custom and a habit. Persist in educating people with culture and culture, deeply excavate, inherit and innovate excellent traditional local culture, carry forward new trends and healthy trends, promote the change of customs and customs, cultivate civilized rural customs, good family customs, simple folk customs, and rejuvenate the new atmosphere of rural civilization. It is necessary to infiltrate the core socialist values into all links of the creation, production and dissemination of spiritual and cultural products, and subtly enhance people's identification with the core socialist values through various channels such as film and television programs, news reports, and special programs.

Focus on practice cultivation. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that for a value to really play a role, it must be integrated into social life, so that people can perceive it and comprehend it in practice. We must persist in closely linking the core socialist values with people's daily lives, and make efforts to implement them in detail, small and small. Give play to the leading role of the creation of spiritual civilization, take the cultivation and practice of socialist core values as the fundamental task of the creation of spiritual civilization, embody it in all aspects of the activities of building civilized cities, civilized villages and towns, civilized units, civilized families, and civilized campuses, mobilize the whole society to participate and act together, and deeply integrate it with people's daily production and life, and become the code of conduct that all people use every day without realizing it. We should be good at cultivating and discovering typical figures and typical events that practice the core values of socialism in social life, highlight the good deeds of ordinary people who demonstrate the core values of socialism, and use "role models around us" to drive people around us to influence people around us.

The vast number of party members and cadres should take the lead in studying and carrying forward the core socialist values, and inspire and motivate the masses with their exemplary behavior and noble personality. Popularize the concept of volunteer service in the whole society, widely carry out various volunteer service activities, cultivate a social atmosphere of everyone and everyone for me, and achieve the unity of knowledge and action in cultivating and practicing the core socialist values.

Integrate into the construction of the rule of law. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that it is necessary to use the law to promote the construction of core values, pay attention to reflecting value orientation in daily management, so that behaviors that conform to core values are encouraged and behaviors that violate core values are curbed. Give full play to the guarantee role of laws and policies, integrate the core socialist values into the entire process of building a country ruled by law, a government ruled by law, and a society ruled by law, running through all aspects of legislation, law enforcement, justice, and law-abiding. It is necessary to use legal means to correctly guide social value judgments, not only to protect the fundamental interests of the people, but also to severely punish malicious acts that endanger social morality and social creditworthiness, so as to provide effective legal guarantees for social governance and moral protocols. Carry out in-depth special education and governance on prominent issues in the field of ethics, punish malicious violations of social morality and morality in accordance with law, and strive to make the process of social governance a process of cultivating and practicing socialist core values. It is necessary to formulate a legal system to promote civilized behavior of citizens, guide and promote the whole people to establish a clear concept, promote the change of customs, and advocate a civilized new style.

### 3. Accelerate the construction of philosophy and social sciences with Chinese characteristics

Philosophy and social sciences are important tools for people to understand and transform the world, and an important force for promoting historical development and social progress. Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly pointed out that "a country without developed natural sciences cannot be at the forefront of the world, and a country without prosperous philosophy and social sciences cannot be in the forefront of the world."<sup>1</sup> In the new era, philosophy and social sciences play an irreplaceable and important role in adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics and building a socialist cultural power, and it is of great significance to accelerate the construction of philosophy and social sciences with Chinese characteristics.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Symposium on Philosophy and Social Science Work", People's Daily, May 19, 2016.

Adhering to Marxism as the guide is the fundamental mark that distinguishes contemporary Chinese philosophy and social science from other philosophy and social sciences. History and reality show that Marxism is a scientific theory, which still has strong vitality and still occupies the commanding height of truth and morality. Without Marxist guidance, China's philosophy and social sciences would lose their soul and disorientation. To persist in taking Marxism as the guide, we must first solve the problem of truly understanding true faith, and the core is to solve the problem of who is who, and finally how to apply it. Philosophy and social science workers should consciously run Marxism through the entire process of research and teaching and transform it into sober theoretical consciousness, firm political conviction, and scientific thinking methods. It is necessary to focus on the great practice of the people for academic creation, consciously closely link personal academic pursuit with the development of the cause of the party and the country, adhere to the people-centered research orientation, establish the ideal of learning for the people, promote academic progress in serving the people, strive to produce more research results that can stand the test of practice, the people and history, and constantly enhance the attractiveness, appeal, influence and vitality of philosophy and social sciences. It is necessary to unify adherence to Marxism with the development of Marxism, enhance awareness of problems, listen to the voice of the times, respond to the call of the times, conscientiously study the major theoretical and practical problems facing China's development and the party's ruling power, earnestly combine new practice with new practice, and strive to use the developing theory to guide practice.

Accelerating the construction of philosophy and social science with Chinese characteristics is a major task entrusted by the new era. In accordance with the idea of basing ourselves on China, learning from foreign countries, excavating history, grasping the contemporary, caring for mankind and facing the future, we should fully embody Chinese characteristics, Chinese style and Chinese style in guiding ideology, discipline system, academic system, discourse system, etc., and strive to build an all-round, all-field and all-element philosophy and social science system that meets the requirements of the times and adapts to the development of practice. It is necessary to embody the inheritance and national character, persist in using the past for the present and the foreign for the Chinese, and be good at integrating the essence of Marxism, the excellent traditional Chinese culture, and foreign philosophy and social sciences; persist in proceeding from China's reality, and strive to put forward concepts, propositions, and plans that are based on China's standpoint, have Chinese wisdom, and reflect Chinese values. It is necessary to reflect originality and the nature of the times, take what we are doing as the center, and excavate new materials, discover new problems, put forward new views, and construct new theories from the practice of reform and development. It is necessary to embody the systematic and professional nature, and strive to make the basic disciplines sound and solid, the advantages of key disciplines outstanding, the innovative development of emerging disciplines and interdisciplinary disciplines, the inheritance of unpopular disciplines, the complementarity of basic and applied research, and the mutual promotion of academic research and the application of achievements; and improve philosophy and social sciences



The teaching material system actively promotes the construction of a discourse system with Chinese style, public compatibility and integration between China and foreign countries, creates new concepts, new categories and new expressions that are easy to be understood and accepted by the international community, enhances China's cultural soft power, and enhances the international influence of China's philosophy and social science research.

To build philosophy and social science with Chinese characteristics, we must grasp prosperity and development with one hand and guide management with the other. Give full play to the important role of philosophy and social sciences in governing the country, promote Marxist theoretical research and construction projects, strengthen the construction of new think tanks with Chinese characteristics, and focus on forward-looking, targeted and reserve policy research around the major strategic needs of the country. Philosophy and social science workers should aspire to do university questions and true learning, consciously practice the core socialist values, take seriously the social effects of academic research, win respect with profound academic accomplishment, lead the atmosphere with noble personality charm, and be pursuers and disseminators of truth, goodness and beauty. It is necessary to further improve the overall management ability and service level of scientific research, earnestly optimize the layout of scientific research and rationally allocate resources, earnestly handle the relationship between input and efficiency, quantity and quality, scale and structure, improve the management system and operation mechanism with good leadership, orderly organization, strong guarantees, and fair evaluation of science and awards, and enhance the vitality of the development of philosophy and social sciences.

#### 4. Prosper and develop socialist literature and art

Literature and art are the clarion call for the advancement of the times, which can best represent the style of an era and lead the atmosphere of an era. To realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, we need a great spirit of perseverance and great works that inspire people's hearts. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Socialist literature and art is the people's literature and art, and we must adhere to the people-centered creative orientation, and carry out literary and artistic creation worthy of the times in deep life and rooted in the people."<sup>1</sup>

The question of why people are the fundamental issue and principle for the prosperity and development of socialist literature and art. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Socialist literature and art, in essence, is the people's literature and art."<sup>2</sup> The people need literature and art, literature and art need the people, the people are the source of literary and artistic creation, once they leave the people, literature and art will become rootless duckweed, diseaseless moans, soulless shells.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 314.

The people are both the creators and witnesses of history, the "people in the play" of history, and the "playwrights" of history. People's lives are an inexhaustible source of creation for all literature and art, and the people's needs are the fundamental value of the existence of literature and art. Adhering to the people-centered creative orientation means adhering to the fundamental direction of serving the people and serving socialism, taking satisfying the people's spiritual and cultural needs as the starting point and foothold of literary and artistic work, taking the people as the main body of literary and artistic expression, taking the people as connoisseurs and judges of literary and artistic aesthetics, serving the people as the duty of literary and artistic workers, and striving to lyricize, lyricize and complain for the people.

Cang!: Producing excellent works is the central part of literary and artistic work. It is necessary to adhere to the unity of profound thinking, exquisite art, and excellent production, strengthen the creation of realistic themes, and continuously launch masterpieces that praise the party, the motherland, the people, and heroes. It is necessary to run the spirit of innovation through the whole process of literary and artistic creation, work hard to improve originality, and expand the theme, content, form and technique, so as to make the works more exciting and fascinating, seeing both the "plateau" and the "peak." It is necessary to hold high the main theme of patriotism, use vivid literary language and dazzling artistic images to stimulate every Chinese's sense of national pride and national honor, and guide the people to establish a correct view of history, nationality, country, and culture. It is necessary to write about the vigorous practice of reform, opening up, and socialist modernization, and about the colorful China, progressive China, and united China, and encourage the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to march vigorously into the future. It is necessary to take the spiritual height, cultural connotation and artistic value as the creative pursuit, create and produce excellent works with muscle, morality and warmth with abundant passion, vivid brushstrokes, beautiful melodies and touching images, create rich and diverse Chinese stories, Chinese images and Chinese melodies, let the people's spiritual and cultural life continue to step to a new level, contribute special sounds and colors to the world, and show special poetry and artistic conception.

Strengthening the building of the contingent of literary and artistic personnel is the fundamental guarantee for the prosperity and development of socialist literature and art. "Those who are not virtuous cannot be far-reaching, and those who are not great cannot be knowledgeable." Literary and artistic workers should regard advocating virtue and art as a lifelong lesson, unify being a person, doing things, and practicing art, become practitioners of advanced culture and leaders of social customs, and achieve self-achievement and realize value in standing up for the motherland and the people. It is necessary to strengthen the construction of the literary and artistic contingent, create a large number of famous masters of both virtue and art, and cultivate a large number of high-level creative talents.

It is necessary to respect and follow the laws of literature and art, and respect the creative individuality and creative labor of literary and artistic workers. It is necessary to earnestly strengthen the work of literary and art criticism, advocate stressing taste, style, and responsibility, and resist vulgarity, vulgarity, and kitsch.

## 5. Promote the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries

The development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries is an inevitable requirement for enriching the people's spiritual and cultural life and ensuring the people's cultural rights and interests, and is also the proper meaning of stimulating the vitality of the whole nation's cultural innovation and creativity and promoting cultural prosperity. The report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China stressed that "to meet the people's new expectations for a better life, we must provide rich spiritual food" and made major arrangements for promoting the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries. This fully embodies our party's people-centered development thinking, and is of great significance for achieving cultural development relying on the people, cultural development for the people, sharing the fruits of cultural development by the people, and improving cultural guidance, creativity and competitiveness.

- Cultural undertakings and cultural industries constitute the two wings of national cultural work. Cultural undertakings are of a public interest and public nature, and cultural undertakings mainly produce public cultural products, taking the needs of the state as the transfer, and focusing on meeting the basic cultural needs of the broad masses of the people. The cultural industry sector mainly produces cultural commodities, takes market needs as the transfer, and focuses on meeting the diverse cultural needs of the broad masses of the people. Cultural undertakings and cultural industries must insist on putting social benefits in the first place. Cultural undertakings put social benefits in the first place, which is determined by their nature and tasks. Similarly, the cultural industry must adhere to the organic integration of social and economic benefits, always give priority to social benefits, and never allow economic benefits to be satisfied at the expense of social benefits. Both cultural undertakings and cultural industries should be integrated into the socialist core value system and sing the main melody. The state implements differentiated management and regulation according to the distinction between cultural undertakings and cultural industries, and may directly regulate cultural institutions, requiring them to produce what kind of cultural products and what kind of cultural services they provide to the public; for cultural enterprise units, generally speaking, they mainly guide the development of cultural industries through indirect regulation and control such as laws, tax policies, and price levers.

Make overall plans for the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries.

Cultural undertakings and cultural industries should not be abandoned, we must adhere to the new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, promote supply-side structural reform in the cultural field, continuously develop and expand the cultural industry while comprehensively prospering cultural undertakings, and jointly strive to build a socialist cultural power. It is necessary to place the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries in an equally important position, make overall plans for the construction of a public cultural service system and a modern cultural industry system, make overall plans to meet the basic cultural needs and diversified cultural needs of the people, take into account the requirements of public welfare and market, comprehensively consider the balance between economic and social benefits, and plan and coordinate the construction of a public cultural service system covering the whole society and the promotion of cultural industries as pillar industries of the national economy.

Deepen the reform of the cultural system and build a mechanism for the coordinated development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, as an important part of comprehensively deepening reform, the reform of the cultural system has been steadily and steadily expanded, the important basic institutional framework in the cultural field has been basically established, substantive breakthroughs have been made in key and difficult reform tasks, the system of cultural policies and regulations has been continuously improved, and the vitality of the development of cultural undertakings and cultural industries has been significantly enhanced. The reform of the cultural system is always on the road, and we must adhere to the correct direction of reform, improve the thinking of reform, grasp the key and difficult points, innovate reform measures, and unswervingly deepen the reform of the cultural system. It should be further recognized that the reform of the cultural system involves both the economic foundation and the superstructure, and must conform to the requirements of the development of the socialist market economy and follow the law of socialist spiritual civilization construction. Therefore, it is necessary to correctly handle the general and special requirements of reform, while actively learning from the reform experience in other fields and linking it with the reform of all aspects, pay attention to reflecting the requirements of cultural exceptions, focus on strengthening institutional innovation, improve the cultural management system, and accelerate the construction of an institutional mechanism that puts social benefits in the first place and integrates social benefits with economic benefits.

## 6. Promote the creative transformation and innovative development of China's excellent traditional culture

The excellent traditional Chinese culture is the root and soul of the Chinese nation and the fertile cultural soil for socialism with Chinese characteristics. The Communist Party of China is the faithful inheritor and propagator of China's excellent traditional culture, and it is the cultural mission of the new era to promote the creative transformation and innovative development of China's excellent traditional culture. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that it is necessary to treat traditional culture with an objective, scientific and respectful attitude.

Objectivity means to realize that the essence and dregs in traditional culture are mixed, positive and negative coexist, not retro mud antiquity, do not copy and copy, do not simply deny, adhere to a comprehensive, historical and dialectical view of traditional culture, scientifically distinguish the essence of the waste, distinguish between advantages and disadvantages, both look at the historical role and analyze from the present, to figure out which should be preserved and inherited, and which must be transformed, adjusted or even abandoned. Science means respecting the law of cultural development, making correct trade-offs in combination with the requirements of the new era and practice, promoting the abandonment and inheritance of traditional culture, transforming and innovating, enriching and reengineering, drawing on and absorbing beneficial cultural components, giving new connotations of the era and modern forms of expression, activating its vitality, enhancing its influence and appeal, and better being taken by today's people and used for development. Respect means to adhere to the position of Chinese culture, strengthen cultural self-confidence, enhance cultural consciousness, respect and cherish the excellent spiritual and cultural wealth created by our ancestors, tap and carry forward the contemporary value of China's excellent traditional culture, resolutely resist extreme trends of thought such as nihilism that ignores historical and cultural traditions and revivalism that only supremacizes tradition, and resolutely safeguard the national nature and uniqueness of Chinese culture. In this way, we can better inherit the Chinese cultural genes, innovate, develop and make breakthroughs, and continuously promote the excellent traditional Chinese culture to carry forward and carry forward the future.

To adhere to the creative transformation and innovative development of China's excellent traditional culture, we must promote the integration of traditional culture and modern society, so that China's excellent traditional culture can "live" in the present. The excellent traditional Chinese culture is a complete and independent ideological and cultural system, which has formed a unique style in the rise and fall of thousands of years. If it is not well integrated with modern society, it will not be possible to have vigorous vitality. It is necessary to strengthen research and interpretation work, deeply excavate and explain the contemporary value of China's excellent traditional culture, and create more excellent works that embody the essence of China's excellent traditional culture and disseminate contemporary Chinese values. Strengthen the protection and utilization of cultural relics and the protection and inheritance of cultural heritage, embark on a road of protection and utilization of cultural relics that conforms to national conditions, and let Chinese culture show its permanent charm and the style of the times. Adapt to the development trend of new media and new technologies, promote the integration of Chinese excellent traditional culture with new media and new technologies, make it a modern "living water", continuously integrate into people's production and life, and bloom more dazzling in the soil of the new era.

To promote the creative transformation and innovative development of China's excellent traditional culture, it is necessary to carry forward the spirit of inclusiveness and inclusiveness, and enrich and develop Chinese culture while constantly absorbing the nutrients of various civilizations.

Building a high level of cultural self-confidence does not mean engaging in self-isolation or even solipsism. If a culture does not interact with foreign cultures and learn from each other, it is easy to lose vitality and easily break away from the trend of world cultural development. The Chinese nation is a nation that adheres to the concept of "new every day, new every day, and new every day", and constantly creates and innovates. In order for China's excellent traditional culture to show new vitality, it is necessary to learn from the beneficial elements of foreign culture, including Western culture, with a broad mind. It is necessary to integrate excellent foreign culture with China's traditional culture, integrate the elements of Chinese culture, and brand it with Chinese culture; integrate it with China's actual needs to solve China's practical problems and serve the production and life practices of the Chinese people; integrate it with the acceptance habits of the Chinese people, and create an expression form suitable for the Chinese people's way of thinking and aesthetic taste, so as to be popular with the Chinese people. At the same time, it is necessary to extract and display the spiritual symbols of excellent traditional culture, extract and display the cultural essence of excellent traditional culture with contemporary value and world significance, and profoundly reveal the ideological concepts, humanistic spirit and moral norms contained in China's excellent traditional culture. It is necessary to pay attention to displaying the development and progress of contemporary China and the wonderful life of contemporary Chinese, promote the value concepts, literary and artistic masterpieces, and cultural achievements that reflect the development and progress of contemporary China to go overseas, and further enhance cultural soft power.

### Section 3: firmly grasps the leadership of ideological work

Ideological work is an extremely important task of the party, a work that establishes the heart of the country and the soul of the nation, has a bearing on the future and destiny of the party, on the long-term peace and stability of the country, and on national cohesion and centripetal force. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "We must firmly grasp the leadership, management and discourse power of ideological work, and we must not leave it aside at any time, otherwise we will make irreparable historical mistakes."<sup>1</sup> Building a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force is a major proposition for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and a major strategic task for smoothly promoting the development of the cause of the party and the country in the new era.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 86.

## 1. Recognize the opportunities and challenges facing ideological work under the new situation

Since its founding, the Communist Party of China has attached great importance to ideological work, and it is precisely by relying on strong ideological work that it has effectively ensured the smooth progress of the cause of revolution, construction and reform. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has placed ideological work in a prominent position, and the degree of attention, the intensity of work, and the obvious changes in results have been rare since the reform and opening up. It is reflected in a series of major issues of direction, fundamental, and overall importance, adopted a series of groundbreaking major measures, solved many difficult problems that have been wanted to be solved for a long time but have not been solved, fundamentally reversed the passive situation that once appeared in the ideological field, and brought about an overall and fundamental change in the situation in the ideological field; effectively reversed some propaganda and ideological positions, and the party's leadership was once neglected and weakened. The weakened situation has effectively reversed the erosion of the dominant position of mainstream ideology, effectively reversed the situation of passively coping with and ineffective counterattack against false reasoning and heresies, and effectively reversed the chaos on the Internet.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, the development of scientific socialism in China has entered a new stage, and the consolidation and development of socialist ideology are facing new historical opportunities. The extraordinary achievements of reform, opening up and socialist modernization, the historic changes and achievements of the Party and the country since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the strong vitality of Marxism and socialism demonstrated by adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, and the profound changes in favor of Marxism and socialism brought about by the historical evolution of the two ideologies and two social systems in the world and the contest between them, have brought bright prospects for the development of the Party, the country and the nation. It also provides a broad space for the development of socialist ideology. In particular, the formation and establishment of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has profoundly answered the "questions of the times", "practical questions" and "people's questions", deepened the understanding of the laws governing the Communist Party, socialist construction and the development of human society with a new vision, won the broad recognition of the people with its powerful practical and theoretical forces, and greatly enhanced the extensive influence of the Chinese road, Chinese thought and Chinese ideas in today's world.

All these provide a solid theoretical, practical, material, and popular foundation for the development of socialist ideology. The general trend of development in which the party, the state, and the nation become stronger implies the inevitable trend of becoming ideologically stronger.

At the same time, we must also realize that under the complex and changeable international and domestic situation, in the historical journey of realizing the "two centenary goals" and the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, consolidating the guiding position of Marxism and consolidating the common ideological foundation of the whole party and the people of the whole country in unity and struggle still face severe tests and great challenges. Contemporary China is in the midst of profound economic and social changes, people's ideological diversity and changeable characteristics are becoming increasingly obvious, the phenomenon of different ideological and cultural exchanges and confrontation is still very prominent, Western constitutional democracy, universal values, neoliberalism, historical nihilism and other ideological trends strive to compete for ideological discourse power, challenge China's political system and development path of historical choice and theoretical foundation, unify thinking and gather strength. The task of unifying thinking and rallying forces is unprecedentedly arduous. Contemporary China is superimposed on the profound changes in the political and economic pattern of the world today, and the great changes unprecedented in a century, and the contest of cultural soft power is more prominent. Different ideologies are not only the reflection of different social paths and social systems, but also the ideological basis that supports the rationality of different social paths and social systems. The contradiction between the two roads and systems of capitalism and socialism is a structural contradiction that will accompany the whole process of China's comprehensive construction of a modern and powerful socialist country, and the struggle between the two roads and systems will inevitably be protracted, complex and acute. The hostile forces regard the development and growth of socialist China as a challenge to the capitalist road and system, constantly change their tactics and methods to implement Westernization and differentiation schemes, intensify political misdirection, strategic containment, and all-round pressure on China, and intensify their efforts to smear China's path, theory, system, and culture. It is necessary to maintain a clear understanding and be mentally prepared and prepared to deal with risks and challenges in a lasting manner.

## 2. Build a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that building a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force is a strategic task that the whole party, especially the propaganda and ideological front, must undertake. He emphasized: "Ideology determines the direction of cultural progress and development path."



It is necessary to promote the Sinicization of Marxism and popularize it, build a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force, and closely unite all the people in ideals, beliefs, values and moral concepts.<sup>1</sup> "The hearts of the people are united, and Tarzan moves." "Great ideological and political unity has always been our party's magic weapon for victory, and the first thing we must pass over to climb the hill and overcome difficulties is the ideological will pass, and only with one heart and one mind can we form an invincible and powerful force." Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that "as long as we are closely united, work as one, and strive for the realization of our common dream, the power to realize our dream will be incomparably strong."<sup>2</sup> To carry out the great struggle with many new historical characteristics, grasp and make good use of the period of historical opportunity, and effectively deal with various risks and challenges, it is urgent to accelerate the construction of a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force, form a vivid situation in which the heart thinks in one place and works hard in one place, and gathers the unified will and action force of one heart and one direction to overcome difficulties to ensure the smooth advancement of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

Building a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force has rich and profound connotations, and there are two basic levels.

First, we want to build a socialist ideology, not any other ideology. This is a major issue that embodies the nature of the party and the state and stipulates the basic orientation of ideological work. Therefore, we must adhere to the guidance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, persist in not forgetting our original intention, keep our mission in mind, strengthen the "four consciousnesses", strengthen the "four self-confidences", and achieve the "two safeguards", constantly consolidate the guiding position of Marxism in the ideological field, and consolidate the common ideological foundation of the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups in the country to unite and struggle.

Second, on the premise of adhering to the basic direction of socialist ideology, further enhance cohesion and leadership. This is a focal point for basing ourselves on the new era and new mission and giving play to the important role of ideological work. We must maintain a clear stand of the people, represent the fundamental interests of the masses, conform to the aspiration and value pursuit of the broadest masses of the people for a better life, grasp the greatest common divisor, draw concentric circles of the people, and promote the close unity of all the people in ideals, beliefs, values and moral concepts, and advance in unity towards the goal of struggle set by the Party Central Committee;

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 33.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "Speech at the First Session of the Twelfth National People's Congress," People's Daily, March 18, 2013.

It is necessary to pay attention to keeping up with the pace of development of the times and practice, conform to the requirements of the times, lead the trend, keep pace with the times, keep the right and make innovations, and firmly grasp the leadership, dominance, and discourse power of socialist ideological work.

The basic orientation of socialist ideology and the basic requirements for strengthening cohesion and leading force are intrinsically unified and interconnected, and the basic observance of strengthening ideological work at a new historical starting point has been clarified. Building a socialist ideology with strong cohesion and leading force is a complex process advancing from many aspects, and we must base ourselves on the present and focus on the long term, pay attention to grasping important aspects that have a bearing on the overall situation, grasp well the important work with the significance of "four beams and eight pillars", and constantly make new breakthroughs and new progress.

### 3. persist in taking the establishment as the foundation, making breakthroughs at the same time, and constantly consolidate and strengthen mainstream ideological public opinion

In the ideological field, adhering to the emphasis on construction and building on the foundation has been the consistent policy of the Communist Party of China since the reform and opening up. The principle of stressing construction was put forward by the party in the early stage of reform and opening up on the basis of summing up positive and negative experiences, especially on the basis of summing up the lessons of the "Cultural Revolution" such as taking class struggle as the keynote and engaging in mass judgment. In recent years, the Party Central Committee has repeatedly emphasized strengthening ideological and theoretical construction, strengthening the construction of socialist core values, strengthening communication capacity building, and promoting the creation and production of excellent works, all of which run through the keynote of "construction" and "standing."

To persist in taking the establishment as the foundation, we must adhere to the correct guidance of public opinion. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that it is necessary to expand and strengthen mainstream ideology and public opinion, boost the morale and spirit of the whole party and the people of the whole country, and unite and advance towards the grand goal set by the party Central Committee. To grasp the correct guidance of public opinion, the core essence is to adhere to the principles of party spirit, adhere to the Marxist outlook on news, adhere to the principle of positive propaganda as the mainstay, unswervingly adhere to the principle of party management of the media, persist in politicians running newspapers, periodicals, platforms, and news websites, sing the main melody, and spread positive energy. History and reality tell us that the power of public opinion must not be underestimated. News and public opinion work is at the forefront of ideological struggle, and good public opinion can become the "propeller" of development, the "barometer" of public opinion, the "glue" of society, and the "weather vane" of morality.

Grasping the correct orientation of public opinion is an all-round requirement, which must run through all aspects and links of public opinion work, and earnestly ensure that everyone is responsible at all levels. It is necessary to focus on the implementation of "holding high the banner, leading the guide, focusing on the center, serving the overall situation, uniting the people, boosting morale, shaping people, cohesion, clarifying fallacies, distinguishing right from wrong, connecting China and the world, and communicating the world"<sup>1</sup> The 48-character duty and mission of vigorously carry forward all ideological spirits conducive to upholding the leadership of the Communist Party of China and China's socialist system, all ideological spirits conducive to promoting reform and development, all ideological spirits conducive to enhancing the unity of the people of all ethnic groups in the country, and all ideological spirits conducive to maintaining social harmony and stability, and profoundly expounding why the Communist Party of China "can" and why Marxism is the intrinsic truth of "doing" and why socialism with Chinese characteristics is "good" has inspired the powerful force of unity and progress of the whole society.

Construction and management complement each other, and supporting the right and dispelling evil are inseparable. While adhering to the principle of "taking establishment as the foundation," we must also intensify the work of "making breakthroughs at the same time." This is because, in the past period, the political issues of right and wrong, the problem of confused values, and the vulgarity and vulgarity have become more prominent in some areas. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in his speech at the Central United Front Work Conference on May 18, 2015;"In today's world, invisible wars in the ideological field are everywhere, and the contest without guns in the political field has not stopped."<sup>2</sup> This is also because some people have a one-sided understanding of "emphasis on construction" and regard "emphasis on construction" and "no debate." It has become an excuse to shirk responsibility, and even a shield to exploit loopholes. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out: "Adhering to positive propaganda does not mean giving up the struggle of public opinion. "We must dare to grasp and manage, dare to show our sword, focus on unity and win over the majority, carry out public opinion struggles in a reasonable, advantageous, and restrained manner, and help cadres and the masses draw a clear line between right and wrong and clarify ambiguous understanding."<sup>3</sup> So as to maximize the consensus of the whole party and society, and realize and consolidate ideological unity and unity.

Dare to show the sword has been a distinctive feature of ideological work since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 332.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Political Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 18.

<sup>3</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Socialist Cultural Construction", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 27-28.

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed at the 2013 National Conference on Propaganda and Ideological Work: "We must take a clear-cut stand and adhere to the truth, and take a firm stand to refute fallacies."<sup>1</sup> This requires that while vigorously promoting ideological construction, cultural construction, and value building, we must never be vague about major issues of right and wrong and political principles, still less should we retreat from making retreats, and we must dare to grasp and manage, dare to show our swords, and not do anything Wall-riding faction" and "wind watching faction" do not engage in the set of "cherishing feathers." It is necessary to take a clear-cut stand in supporting correct ideological remarks, take a clear-cut stand in opposing and resisting all kinds of erroneous viewpoints, ensure that position management is not slack, tasks are not carried out sloppily, and responsibility is not vaguely pursued, that erroneous ideas and remarks are not evaded and dare to confront each other, that rumors are exposed, fallacies are refuted, and fog is clarified, so that the party's propositions and the will of the people will become the strongest voice of the times.

#### 4. fight the battle of network ideology

The Internet has increasingly become the main position, the main battlefield, and the forefront of ideological struggle, and if the Internet cannot be passed, it will not be able to pass the threshold of long-term rule. It is necessary to adhere to the principle that positive energy is the general requirement and manageable is the last word, grasp the dialectical relationship between security and development, freedom and order, openness and autonomy, management and service, resolutely win the ideological struggle on the Internet, and make the Internet, the largest variable, become the largest increment in career development.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out at the 2013 National Conference on Propaganda and Ideological Work: "We must solve the problem of 'skill panic' and truly become an expert in using new means and methods of modern media."<sup>2</sup> It is necessary to strengthen the construction of Internet content, deeply implement the network content construction project, strengthen positive publicity on the Internet, unite and unite hundreds of millions of netizens with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, develop a positive and progressive Internet culture, innovate and improve online publicity, and form a strong positive public opinion online. Strengthen the dissemination of mainstream ideology on the Internet, lead diverse and changeable online public opinion with positive voices, publicize mainstream values in a way that netizens like to hear, highlight the spirit of the times, lead moral trends, and make the Party's propositions always become the strongest voice in cyberspace. Make full use of network advantages to enhance the authority, timeliness and pertinence of news and publicity, and achieve new breakthroughs in online publicity on major themes.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 313.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Culture", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 29.

It is necessary to excavate and publicize the most beautiful people on the Internet, advocate the most beautiful spirit, spread the stories of ordinary people, and let positive energy fully flow on the Internet. Innovate and transform the form of discourse expression, organically interact and connect propaganda discourse, policy discourse and information service discourse, build value resonance in frank communication through warm and sentimental "online language and online language", and strive to open up the "two public opinion fields."

Cyberspace has become an important space for human activities, and the network society has become an important part of the real society, playing an increasingly important influence and role in the operation of the real society. In the face of the rapid development of Internet technology and its applications, it is necessary to establish a comprehensive network governance system. Integrate the functions of relevant institutions, improve linkage mechanisms for basic management, content management, industry management, and the prevention and crackdown on online violations and crimes, improve mechanisms for handling network emergencies, and form a strong joint force for network governance that combines positive guidance and lawful management. Improve the ability of comprehensive network governance, and form a comprehensive governance bureau with multi-subject participation of party committee leadership, government management, enterprise performance of responsibilities, social supervision, and self-discipline of netizens, and a combination of economic, legal, technical and other means.

Insist on promoting positive energy and suppressing negative factors. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Cyberspace is the common spiritual home of hundreds of millions of people. Cyberspace is clear and ecologically sound, which is in the interests of the people. The miasma and ecological deterioration of cyberspace are not in the interests of the people."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to establish and improve online risk prevention mechanisms, properly regulate and control online public opinion such as social hot issues, sensitive incidents, and emergencies, promptly refute erroneous trends of thought on the Internet, resolutely control harmful political information such as distorting the party's history, national history, and military history, negating the party's leadership and China's socialist system, attacking the party's line, principles, and policies, and slandering the party's leader's ideology and image, and comprehensively cleaning up harmful information such as online rumors, violent terrorist audio and video.

## 5. Strictly implement the responsibility system for ideological work

To do a good job in ideological work, we must persist in the whole party and implement the responsibilities of party committees (party groups). This is an inevitable requirement for implementing the party's management of ideological work, and is also the basic guarantee for promoting ideological work.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 336.

Only by strengthening the sense of responsibility, establishing rigid constraints, and strengthening accountability can we ensure that all tasks are implemented. It is necessary to tighten and consolidate the political responsibility and leadership responsibility for doing a good job in ideological work, and comprehensively implement the responsibility system for ideological work. We should strengthen the construction and management of positions, conscientiously implement the principles of sponsorship and territorial management, and earnestly ensure that there is a duty to defend the territory, be responsible for defending the territory, and fulfill our responsibilities in defending the territory, so that all kinds of ideological fronts will always become strong positions for disseminating advanced ideology and culture, and never provide channels for the dissemination of erroneous ideas and viewpoints.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee has made a series of clear provisions on the main body of accountability, the content of accountability, and the methods of accountability for ideological work. The main body of accountability is mainly the leading comrades of party committees (leading party groups) at all levels, relevant responsible comrades, and responsible comrades of functional departments for propaganda, ideological and cultural work. The content of accountability is mainly the responsibility for implementing the relevant decision-making and deployment of the Party Central Committee and higher-level Party committees, analyzing and judging the situation in the ideological field, strengthening unified leadership, position construction and management, maintaining network ideological security, handling relevant major issues, and intellectual work and team building. The methods of accountability are mainly to give reminders, criticism and education, order written inspections, report criticism, and give organizational handling and disciplinary sanctions, depending on the seriousness of the case.

Strengthening the main responsibility and direct responsibility and implementing "one post, two responsibilities" is the key to implementing the responsibility system for ideological work. It is necessary to enhance the awareness of the secretary of the party organization as the first responsible person, enhance the awareness of the direct responsibility of the leaders in charge, and enhance the awareness of "one post and two responsibilities" of other members of the leadership group. In particular, the principal responsible comrades of party committees (leading party groups) should take the lead in grasping ideological work, make clear their stance, dare to speak out at critical moments, stand in the front line of ideological work with a clear-cut stand, and unwaveringly defend the mainstream socialist ideology. Further deepen and refine the list of responsibilities for ideological work, improve the chain of work responsibility, strengthen work assessment, strengthen accountability, and truly form a work pattern in which the party committee has unified leadership, the party and government have joint management, the propaganda department has organized and coordinated, and the relevant departments have division of labor and responsibility.

To implement the responsibility system for ideological work, it is necessary to actively and steadily handle issues in the ideological field. Issues in the ideological field are highly policy-oriented, highly sensitive, and pay great attention, and it is particularly necessary to pay attention to methods and methods, pay attention to the art of strategy, maximize the enthusiasm of all parties, and resolve negative factors. It is necessary to strengthen problem-orientation, persist in having a clear purpose, pay attention to correctly distinguishing and handling contradictions among the people and contradictions between ourselves and the enemy, analyze specific problems in detail, solve whatever problems they are, and use whatever methods should be used to solve them.

In concrete work practice, it is necessary to enhance awareness of problems, pay attention to discovering problems as early as possible, do work patiently and meticulously, and strive to solve problems in the bud; correctly distinguish and handle issues of political principle, ideological understanding, and academic viewpoints; some need to fight-for-tat and strike hard, while others can comprehensively use educational, administrative, legal discipline, economic, and other means. No matter what issues are handled, Nagisa 8 should be conducive to upholding and strengthening the party's leadership, to uniting the hearts and minds of the party and the people, and to safeguarding the overall situation of reform, development, and stability.

## Chapter XI: Strive to make life better for the people

With the rapid development of our economy and society, the people look forward to a better life, and hope that the society will be full of vitality and remain stable and orderly. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has adhered to the people-centered development thinking, conformed to the people's expectations for a better life, adhered to the focus on ensuring the improvement of people's livelihood and strengthening social governance, vigorously promoted the theoretical innovation, practical innovation and institutional innovation of social construction, formed a series of new concepts, new ideas and new strategies, and provided scientific guidance and basic compliance for better promoting social construction in the new era.

### Section 1: The situation and requirements for promoting social construction in the new era

Promoting social construction, continuously improving the well-being of the people, and building a stable and orderly social environment are the proper meanings of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, unremitting efforts to ensure and improve people's livelihood and strengthen and innovate social governance are important contents of promoting the development of the cause of the Party and the country, and are of great significance to realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

#### 1. The Communist Party of China has made historic and major achievements in promoting social construction

It is the unshirkable responsibility of the Communist Party of China to attach importance to social construction, continuously improve the material and cultural living standards of the masses, and promote all-round human development.



As early as the period of the Central Soviet Region, Comrade Mao Zedong clearly pointed out: "All the actual problems of the masses' lives are problems that we should pay attention to." If we pay attention to these problems, solve them, and meet the needs of the masses, we will truly become the organizers of the masses' lives, and the masses will really surround us and enthusiastically support us.<sup>1</sup> In the practice of partial ruling in the revolutionary base areas, carrying out land reform, showing concern for the well-being of the masses, vigorously promoting education, attaching importance to medical and public health, and properly handling all kinds of social relations can be said to be the party's initial attempt to carry out social construction.

The founding of New China, especially the establishment of the basic socialist system, laid the basic political prerequisite and institutional foundation for the party's comprehensive development of social undertakings and the improvement of people's livelihood. The party put forward the need to mobilize all positive factors to serve the building of socialism, put forward the idea of correctly handling contradictions of two different natures, implemented the work policy of taking into account the overall situation and making appropriate arrangements, made unremitting explorations in improving people's livelihood and social undertakings, and adopted a series of practical and effective measures. During this stage, although affected by the "Cultural Revolution" and lagging economic development, the solution of people's livelihood problems was seriously restricted, and the development of social undertakings faced many problems, China's social undertakings still made great achievements, basic education continued to develop, medical and health care was continuously strengthened, people's living standards were continuously improved, and the social security system was gradually established, which played an important role in ensuring social stability and national security.

Since the reform and opening up, with the rapid development of China's economy, the pace of social construction has begun to accelerate. Beginning with the approval of the Sixth Five-Year Plan by the Fifth Session of the Fifth National People's Congress in 1982, the previous reference to the "Five-Year Plan for National Economic Development" was changed to "The Five-Year Plan for National Economic and Social Development", the status and role of social construction in the cause of the party and the state have become increasingly prominent. In the course of continuously deepening reform, opening up, and modernization, the party has paid more and more attention to gradually improving the people's living standards on the basis of developing productive forces, clearly put forward the grand goal of building a moderately prosperous society, and made solemn promises to the people to live a prosperous and solid ideal life. With the deepening of understanding and practice, the Fourth Plenary Session of the 16th CPC Central Committee put forward the concept and requirements of social construction for the first time, and the 17th CPC National Congress planned social construction alongside economic, political and cultural construction as an important part of the overall layout of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and social construction was comprehensively valued and strengthened.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 137.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has conformed to the development and changes of the main contradictions in our society, taken the people's yearning for a better life as the goal, deeply implemented the people-centered development thinking, implemented a large number of measures to benefit the people, made unprecedented achievements in the development of people's livelihood, and significantly enhanced the people's sense of gain. By the end of 2019, in the field of education, China's education popularization has exceeded the average level of middle- and high-income countries; In the area of employment, relatively full employment has been achieved; In the field of social security, the world's largest social security system, including old-age, medical care, subsistence allowance and housing, has been built, ending the history of thousands of years of farmers without social security; in the field of anti-poverty, the number of poor people has been reduced from 98.99 million at the end of 2012 to 5.51 million at the end of 2019, and the incidence of poverty has been reduced from 10.2% to 0.6% , composing a glorious chapter in the history of human anti-poverty.

Since the founding of New China, the lives of Chinese people have made a historic leap from poverty to food and clothing to overall moderate prosperity, and are moving towards a better life. The most important thing is that the overall social situation of our country has maintained long-term stability, which is in sharp contrast to the turmoil in many countries and regions in the world, and has become one of the most secure countries in the world.

The historic achievements made by the Communist Party of China in promoting social construction fully reflect the superiority of socialism with Chinese characteristics, fully demonstrate the people-centered governing philosophy, and fully reflect the historical responsibility of major parties. The Party has always placed the interests of the people in the supreme position, never forgot its original intention and kept its mission in mind, so that the results of reform and development will benefit all the people more and more equitably, laying a solid foundation for continuing to promote the all-round development of various undertakings at a new historical starting point and leading the people to create a better and happier life.

## 2. new problems facing social construction in the new era

Social construction is always on the way, only when it is carried out and not completed. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the main contradiction in our society has been transformed into a contradiction between the people's growing need for a better life and unbalanced and inadequate development, which has put forward new and higher requirements for social construction. Efforts must be made to solve the problem of unbalanced and insufficient development and improve the quality and efficiency of development

Better meet the growing needs of the people in economic, political, cultural, social and ecological civilization, better improve people's livelihood and well-being at a higher level, and continuously promote all-round human development and common prosperity for all people.

With the historical transformation of the main contradictions in society, the macro environment and internal conditions facing people's livelihood work in the new era are changing. With the rapid economic and social development, the people are no longer satisfied with the basic needs of having food, school, and housing, but look forward to better education, more stable jobs, more satisfactory income, more reliable social security, higher levels of medical and health services, more comfortable living conditions, and a more beautiful environment. In the face of people's new demand for a better life, there are still many shortcomings in the field of people's livelihood. For example, in terms of education, there are still problems such as the "difficulty of entering kindergartens" in preschool education, the "school choice fever" of compulsory education, the lagging development of rural education, and the difficulty of enrolling the children of migrant workers in urban areas. In terms of employment, there are still problems such as high employment pressure for college graduates, high labor intensity of employees, poor working conditions, and difficulty in protecting labor rights and interests. In terms of income distribution, there are still problems such as the large income gap between urban and rural areas and regions, and the small size of the middle-income group. In terms of social security, there are still problems such as the lack of full coverage of some social insurance, the low level of some social assistance and the rapid growth of social welfare demand. In terms of medical and health care, there are still problems such as expensive medical treatment and incomplete alleviation, and there are obvious shortcomings in the institutional mechanism for major epidemic prevention and control, and the public health emergency management system. In terms of the supply of people's livelihood services, there are still problems such as the coexistence of insufficient government responsibility and excessive responsibility, low trust in the public service supply capacity of social organizations, and insufficient play of market mechanisms and the role of social capital. Solving these problems puts forward new and higher requirements for doing a good job in China's people's livelihood work in the new era.

With the development of the times and practice, China's social governance is also facing many new situations and problems. Reform is in a period of tackling tough problems and deep waters, social stability has entered a period of risk, profound changes in the economic structure, profound adjustments in the pattern of interests, profound changes in ideology and concepts, and profound changes in the social structure, and the rapid changes in the situation and environment, the heavy tasks, and the number of contradictions and risks facing social governance are unprecedented. For example, mass incidents involving the interests of the masses, such as enterprise restructuring and restructuring, changes in labor relations, financing and loan disputes, production safety accidents, and poor environmental protection, are still frequent and high; the emergence of a large number of floating populations has made the foreign population in some economically developed areas exceed or even several times the local household registration population, which puts forward higher requirements and severe challenges for grassroots social governance and public services;

In some places and fields, there is still a lack of fair, scientific and effective rights protection mechanisms, and it is difficult for the masses to realize their rights normally, resulting in negative social emotions and threatening social harmony and stability; the process of rule of law construction is relatively lagging behind, the social atmosphere of respecting the law, learning and abiding by the law has not yet formed, and the due role of the rule of law in modern social governance has not been fully played; the rapid development of the Internet has brought convenience to people, but also brought severe challenges to social governance. Some illegal and criminal activities have infiltrated the Internet, fragmented, pan-entertainment, and massive information that is difficult to distinguish between true and false has spawned new social problems, online mass incidents are increasing, online ideological struggles are becoming increasingly fierce, and Internet governance pressures and challenges are becoming increasingly prominent, and so on. All this fully shows that the task of strengthening and innovating social governance is very arduous and heavy.

Whether it is the new situation facing the construction of people's livelihood or the new situation encountered by social governance, it is the characteristics and changes of economic and social development in stages, indicating that China's social construction has gone through the survival stage of "from scratch" and ushered in the quality stage of "from there to good." The issue of people's livelihood and social governance at this stage is no longer simply worrying about food and clothing, but conforming to people's needs for a better life and moving towards a higher level and higher stage. This is an objective requirement for the development and change of the new situation and tasks, and is also an inevitable requirement for realizing the party's historical mission.

### 3. the new goal of promoting social construction at a new starting point

In the face of the new situation of social construction in the new era, the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China made systematic arrangements for promoting social construction, emphasizing that "we must always put the interests of the people in the supreme position, so that the results of reform and development can benefit all the people more and more equitably, and continue to move forward towards realizing the common prosperity of all the people"; a more fulfilling, secure and sustainable sense of security."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 36.

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China also put forward a more long-term goal pursuit for promoting social construction in the "two-step" strategic arrangement of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way. In the strategic deployment of basically realizing socialist modernization from 2020 to 2035, it is clearly proposed that by 2035, the rule of law society will be basically completed and the degree of social civilization will reach a new height; The people's living standards have become more prosperous, the proportion of middle-income groups has increased significantly; the gap between urban and rural development and residents' living standards has been significantly narrowed, the equalization of basic public services has been basically realized, and the common prosperity of all the people has taken solid steps. The governance pattern of modern society has basically taken shape, and the society is full of vitality and harmony and order. In the strategic plan of building a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist power from 2035 to the middle of this century, it is clearly proposed that by the middle of this century, material, political, spiritual, social and ecological civilizations will be comprehensively improved, the national governance system and governance capacity will be modernized, the common prosperity of all the people will be basically realized, and the Chinese people will enjoy a happier and healthier life.

The task goal of social construction at a new starting point established by the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China demonstrates the Party's strong historical responsibility and the Party's ambition to promote China's social progress.

To achieve such a task goal, we must always adhere to the principled position of putting the interests of the people first. Seeking happiness for the people is the original intention of the Party, and leading the people to create a better life is the fundamental focus of the Party in promoting social construction. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The Communist Party seeks happiness for the people, and wherever the people feel unhappy, unhappy and dissatisfied, we will work hard in every possible way to solve problems for the masses."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to seek more benefits for the people's livelihood and relieve more worries about the people's livelihood, make up for the shortcomings of the people's livelihood in the process of development, promote social fairness and justice, and continuously make new progress in providing education for the young, learning and teaching, earning income from hard work, treating the sick, providing for the elderly, housing and housing, and supporting the weak, so as to ensure that all the people have a greater sense of gain in joint construction and shared development, and constantly promote the all-round development of people and the common prosperity of all the people.

To achieve such mission goals, we must unswervingly promote fairness and justice. Fairness and justice are intrinsic requirements of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The prominent problem of social injustice will inevitably directly cause or aggravate social contradictions, and even cause social crises, leaving society in a state of instability.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping, Li Keqiang, Li Zhanshu, Wang Yang, Wang Huning, Zhao Leji, Han Zheng Respectively Participated in the Review of Some Delegations to the National People's Congress", *People's Daily*, March 8, 2018.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The central government comprehensively examined and scientifically analyzed the current situation and situation of China's economic and social development, and believes that if this problem is not solved urgently, it will not only affect the people's confidence in reform and opening up, but also affect social harmony and stability."<sup>1</sup> We must intensify reform, take the promotion of social fairness and justice and the improvement of people's well-being as a mirror, examine various institutional mechanisms and policy regulations, and promote reform wherever there are problems that do not conform to social fairness and justice; Through innovative institutional arrangements, efforts should be made to overcome violations of fairness and justice caused by human factors, create a fair and just social environment, and make real progress in promoting equal rights, fair opportunities, and fair rules.

To achieve such a task goal, we must focus on forming effective social governance and good social order. This is an important aspect of promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and it is also an urgent task to promote reform and development and maintain social and political stability. It is necessary to deeply study the phased characteristics of China's social transformation period, deeply study the law of modern social governance, broaden work ideas, improve institutional mechanisms, and continuously improve the scientific level of social governance. It is necessary to strengthen the construction of the social governance system, improve the social governance system under the leadership of the party committee, the government is responsible, social coordination, public participation, and the guarantee of the rule of law, strengthen the construction of mechanisms for preventing and resolving social conflicts, accelerate the construction of the social security prevention and control system, strengthen the construction of the social psychological service system, strengthen the construction of the community governance system, promote the focus of social governance to the grassroots level, give play to the role of social organizations, realize the benign interaction between government governance and social regulation and residents' autonomy, ensure that the society is both vibrant and harmonious and orderly, and ensure the long-term peace and stability of the country. The people live and work in peace and contentment.

## Section 2: Ensuring and improving people's livelihood in the course of development

People's livelihood is one of the main contents of social construction. The basic people's livelihood with education, employment, income distribution, social security, medicine and public health, and housing as the main contents is the most direct and realistic issue of interest of the broad masses of the people

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 95.

In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, it is necessary to continuously guarantee and improve people's livelihood, realize a virtuous circle between economic development and improvement of people's livelihood in the process of development, continuously improve people's livelihood and well-being, and realize people's happiness and well-being.

### 1. improving people's livelihood and well-being is the fundamental purpose of development

Continuously improving the people's living standards on the basis of economic development is the fundamental purpose of all the work of the party and the state. To test the effectiveness of all our work, we must ultimately see whether the people have really benefited from the benefits and whether their lives have been truly improved. If our development fails to respond to the expectations of the people and to achieve, safeguard and develop the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people, such development will be meaningless and cannot be sustained.

Our development is people-centered. We must always adhere to the principle that development is for the people, development depends on the people, and the fruits of development are shared by the people, and on the basis of promoting sustained and healthy economic development, ensure that all the people have a greater sense of gain in joint construction and shared development. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The people-centered development ideology is not an abstract and esoteric concept, which cannot only stop at the verbal and ideological links, but must be embodied in all links of economic and social development."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to start by solving the prominent problems of general concern to the masses, think about what the masses think, be anxious about what the masses are anxious about, and solve the difficulties of the masses, do a good job in the construction of inclusive, basic, and thorough people's livelihood, do one thing after another, work year after year, move forward with perseverance, and continue to make new progress in key areas related to basic people's livelihood.

What is very important here is to correctly understand and grasp the relationship between economic development and improvement of people's livelihood. The economy and people's livelihood are two legs, and they must be coordinated with each other in order to be unified in steps. After decades of leapfrog development, in the process of summing up the lessons learned from economic and social development at home and abroad, we fully realize that GDP is not the fundamental purpose of development, and at no time can we follow the wrong path of only wealth growth without human development, only aggregate growth without fairness and justice.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Seminar for Major Leading Cadres at the Provincial and Ministerial Levels to Study and Implement the Spirit of the Fifth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee", People's Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 24.

We also realize that economic development is the premise of improving people's livelihood and well-being, without economic development, improving people's livelihood will become a source of water and a tree without roots, so we must firmly grasp the center of economic construction, further expand the "cake" in promoting high-quality economic development, and lay a more solid material foundation for improving people's livelihood. We also realize that to grasp people's livelihood is to grasp development. Continuously improving people's livelihood and well-being can effectively solve the worries of the broad masses of the people, not only mobilize the enthusiasm of the people to develop production, but also enhance social consumption expectations, expand domestic demand, give birth to new economic growth points, and provide a strong endogenous driving force for China's economic transformation and upgrading. Such a dialectical understanding, embodied in specific work, is to fully grasp the relationship between people's livelihood and development that affects and conditions each other, not only lays a solid material foundation for continuous improvement of people's livelihood through economic development, but also creates more effective demand for economic development through continuous improvement of people's livelihood, and realizes the effective docking, virtuous circle and complementarity of people's livelihood and development.

To improve people's livelihood, we must do our best and do what we can. It is necessary to persist in seeking more benefits for the people's livelihood and alleviating more worries about the people's livelihood from the perspective of safeguarding the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people, gradually improving the people's living standards in accordance with the economic development and financial situation, so that the masses can get visible and tangible benefits, and let the fruits of development benefit all the people more and more fairly. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that improving people's livelihood "does not sit still, give two comparisons, and do not spend the money that should be spent, nor is it good to be far away, eat too much food, and pay lip service."<sup>1</sup> We must see that China is still in the primary stage of socialism and will be for a long time, and the improvement of people's livelihood cannot be separated from this greatest national condition. The government should be committed to improving people's livelihood, but this does not mean that it must take care of everything, the main thing is to ensure the basics, do what can be done under realistic conditions, do more key people's livelihood work, do not make too many excessive commitments, and must not engage in populism. Some welfare countries in the West have fallen into the vicious circle of excessive welfare, and some developing countries in Latin America have fallen into the "middle-income trap", which is a wake-up calling.<sup>6</sup> It is necessary to give full play to the redistribution function of people's livelihood work, but also to give full play to the function of people's livelihood work to stimulate vitality and promote development. "It is not difficult to work hard in the world", and it is necessary to make all the people realize through various channels that labor is the source of wealth and the source of happiness.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Seminar for Major Leading Cadres at the Provincial and Ministerial Levels to Study and Implement the Spirit of the Fifth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee", People's Publishing House, 2016 edition, p. 27.



Firmly establish the concept of the most glorious labor, the most noble labor, the greatest labor and the most beautiful labor, further rejuvenate the enthusiasm for labor, release the creative potential, and create a better life through hard work, honest labor and creative labor.

Correctly handling the relationship between people's livelihood and development, and achieving the unity of doing our best and doing what we can, is reflected in the idea of people's livelihood construction, that is, sticking to the bottom line, highlighting key points, improving systems, and guiding expectations. Stick to the bottom line, that is, implement social security that mainly guarantees basic livelihood, and ensure that the people in need are guaranteed as much as possible, so that no one can be left behind. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that in our socialist country, there must be no phenomenon of "Zhumen wine smells of flesh and bones, and the road has frozen bones", "For the people in difficulty, we must pay special attention, special love, and special concern, do everything possible to help them solve their worries and difficulties, always keep the safety and well-being of the masses in mind, and send the warmth of the party and government to thousands of households."<sup>1</sup> In other words, we must weave a social safety net, give play to the supporting role of social policies, and give hope to the needy people. Highlight the key points, that is, the concept of people's livelihood should not be too generalized, and should emphasize the basic people's livelihood with poverty alleviation, education, employment, income distribution, social security, medicine and health and population as the main contents, highlight key areas, key groups, key systems, and highlight equal opportunities. Improving the system means that the construction of China's social undertaking system should focus on promoting the full coverage, fairness and sustainability of the system, and solve the problems of large regional differences and institutional fragmentation through the establishment and improvement of institutional mechanisms. Guiding expectations means guiding people to form reasonable expectations. While focusing on improving people's livelihood and innovating social governance, the party and government should also focus on doing ideological and political work to make the level of social security compatible with the current level of economic and social development.

## 2. Earnestly resolve the most direct and practical interests of the masses

To ensure and improve people's livelihood in the process of development, it is necessary to carry out institutional innovation in various specific fields of people's livelihood, and continuously make new progress in such areas as providing education for the young, learning and teaching, earning income from labor, treating the sick, providing care for the elderly, housing and housing, and supporting the weak, so that the people can have more, more direct and more tangible sense of gain, happiness and security

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 189.

First, do a good job in running education that satisfies the people. A strong education is a strong country. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "Education is an important cornerstone of national rejuvenation and social progress, a moral and political project that contributes to the contemporary era and benefits the future, and is of decisive significance for improving the comprehensive quality of the people, promoting the all-round development of the people, enhancing the vitality of innovation and creativity of the Chinese nation, and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation." Education is the great plan of the country and the party."<sup>1</sup> Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the proportion of state financial education funds to GDP has always remained above 4%, laying a solid economic foundation for the all-round development of education. The concept of modern education has been deepened, and the ability of educational innovation has been significantly improved, laying a solid talent foundation for China's education to achieve modernization and enter the forefront of innovative countries.

We must give priority to education and strive to build a modern educational power. In terms of educational equity, through the tilted allocation of resources, counterpart assistance, the establishment of school associations, special subsidies for rural teachers, etc., we will gradually realize the equitable allocation of deep-level resources such as teachers, and strive to fully realize the equalization of urban and rural compulsory education resources within the county by 2020, and strive to enable every child to enjoy a fair and high-quality education. Further implement the reform of the non-compulsory education system, exempt students from poor rural families from ordinary high school miscellaneous fees, and by 2020 achieve universal high school education, so that the vast majority of junior high school graduates can continue to receive high school education, continue to increase the proportion of candidates in rural areas attending universities, especially key universities, and ensure sufficient social upward mobility. In terms of the quality of education, vigorously develop preschool education so that more preschool children can receive preschool education. Continue to improve the vocational education and training system and form a lifelong vocational training system. Accelerate the construction of world-class universities and first-class disciplines, do a good job in running ideological and political theory courses, enhance students' sense of social responsibility, innovative spirit, and practical ability, and realize the connotative development of higher education.

Second, promote employment and entrepreneurship. Employment is the economic foundation and basic guarantee for people's survival, as well as the basic condition for integration into society. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "employment is the biggest project of people's livelihood, people's heart, and foundation."

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping Emphasizes Adhering to the Development Path of Socialist Education with Chinese Characteristics at the National Education Conference and Cultivating Socialist Builders and Successors with All-round Development of Merit, Intellectual, Physical, Aesthetic, and Labor," *People's Daily*, September 11, 2018.

<sup>1</sup>Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China's employment work has made great achievements, with an average of 13 million new jobs created every year, and the urban survey unemployment rate has been maintained within 5%, achieving relatively full employment nationwide.

Facing the new situation of employment and entrepreneurship in the new era, we must strive to achieve higher quality and fuller employment. It is necessary to put the employment priority strategy at the macro policy level, take the employment priority strategy and the active employment policy as the guide, and make joint efforts in full employment, decent employment and harmonious employment. In terms of full employment, establish a linkage mechanism for economic development and employment expansion, and improve the government's responsibility system for promoting employment. Entrepreneurship is the main channel for creating new jobs. It is necessary to continuously improve the support policies for entrepreneurship, and form a new mechanism for the government to encourage entrepreneurship, social support for entrepreneurship, and workers to have the courage to start a business by continuing to promote "mass entrepreneurship and innovation", and promote multi-channel employment and entrepreneurship of young groups such as college graduates and migrant workers. Carry out large-scale vocational skills training, comprehensively improve the quality of workers, and pay attention to solving structural employment contradictions. Improve employment services, improve the public employment and entrepreneurship service system that equalizes urban and rural areas, and strengthen the unemployment insurance system's function of preventing unemployment and promoting employment. In terms of decent employment and harmonious employment, we will eliminate the shortcomings of the system and mechanism that hinder the social mobility of labor and talent, so that everyone has the opportunity to achieve their own development through hard work. Improve the consultation and coordination mechanism for the government, trade unions and enterprises to participate in the consultation, smooth the channels for employees to express their reasonable demands, build harmonious labor relations, advocate the spirit of model workers and craftsmen, and enable everyone to engage in a dignified job.

Third, narrow the income gap. Income is the source of people's livelihood, and it is the most important and direct way to improve people's livelihood and realize that the fruits of development are shared by the people. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the income gap between urban and rural residents, the income gap between regional residents, and the average wage gap of the national industry have narrowed to a certain extent, the Gini coefficient has declined, the growth rate of urban and rural residents' income is significantly faster than the growth rate of 00?, and the growth rate of per capita disposable income of rural residents is significantly faster than the growth rate of per capita disposable income of urban residents, indicating that China's income gap has shown a good trend of continuous narrowing.

The reform of the income distribution system concerns the vital interests of the broad masses and must be properly grasped and steadily promoted

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 67.

It is necessary to persist in deepening the reform of the income distribution system, rationally adjust the income distribution relationship between the government, enterprises and residents, continuously narrow the gap between urban and rural areas, regions and rich and poor, and further promote more reasonable and orderly income distribution. In terms of primary distribution, emphasis should be placed on protecting labor income, striving to synchronize the growth of labor remuneration with the increase in labor productivity, and increasing the proportion of labor remuneration in primary distribution; improving the mechanism for determining wages and normal growth, improving the minimum wage and wage payment guarantee system, and improving the system of collective wage negotiation in enterprises; improving the remuneration mechanism determined by the factor market such as capital, knowledge, technology, and management; and increasing residents' property income through multiple channels. In terms of redistribution, improve the redistribution adjustment mechanism with taxation, social security, and transfer payments as the main means, and increase the intensity of tax regulation. In terms of regulating the order of income distribution, establish an information system for personal income and property, protect legitimate income, regulate excessive income, clean up and regulate hidden income, ban illegal income, increase the income of low-income people, expand the scale of middle-income groups, gradually form an olive-shaped distribution pattern, and ultimately achieve common prosperity.

Fourth, strengthen the construction of the social security system. Social security is a basic livelihood system, a social safety net and stabilizer. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the social security system covering urban and rural residents has been basically established, the development concept, development mode and governance mechanism of social security work have been continuously reformed, innovated, transformed and improved, and new progress has been made in the construction of social assistance, social insurance and social welfare, and the sense of gain of the broad masses of the people has been significantly enhanced.

China's social security system has been basically established, which is a remarkable achievement, but there are still imbalances and insufficient contradictions between different security systems, between different regions and between different groups of people in terms of security scope, security level, service capacity and service quality. In accordance with the requirements of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China to build a bottom-line, dense network and mechanism, a multi-level social security system covering the whole people, coordinating urban and rural areas, with clear powers and responsibilities, and appropriate and sustainable guarantees has a lot of work to be done in practice. It is necessary to establish a unified national social insurance public service platform, integrate the basic old-age insurance system for urban and rural residents, and improve the unified basic medical insurance system for urban and rural residents and the serious illness insurance system; promote the overall development of the urban and rural minimum subsistence guarantee system; improve the policy of transferring and continuing social insurance relations, expand the coverage of insurance contributions, and appropriately reduce social insurance premiums in a timely manner; improve the care and service system for left-behind rural children, women and the elderly, and improve the protection of the rights and interests of the disabled and the categorical guarantee system for children in difficulty. At the same time, it is necessary to improve the personal account system, improve the incentive mechanism for overpayment and more reward, ensure the rights and interests of the insured, and realize the national pooling of endowment insurance as soon as possible;

Research and formulate a policy of gradually delaying the retirement age; accelerate the development of enterprise annuities, occupational annuities, and commercial insurance, and build a multi-level social security system. Attach great importance to the housing issue, adhere to the fundamental positioning pointed out by Comrade Xi Jinping that "houses are for living, not for speculation", and establish a multi-subject supply, multi-channel guarantee, and rent-purchase housing system, so that the people can truly live and live.

Fifth, implement the Healthy China Strategy. The well-being of all is the cornerstone of the prosperity of a nation. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "people first, life first, protecting people's life safety and health can be done at any cost"<sup>1</sup>. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the health and medical standards of our people have been greatly improved, the life expectancy of the population has been continuously improved, the comprehensive two-child policy has been liberalized in a timely manner, and a modern hospital management system, a universal medical insurance system, a drug supply guarantee system and a comprehensive supervision system are taking shape. Successfully prepared and responded to sudden outbreaks such as influenza A(H1N1), H7N9, and Ebola hemorrhagic fever; After arduous efforts, the situation of the new crown pneumonia epidemic has been effectively reversed, and major strategic results have been achieved in the epidemic prevention and control battle.

To implement the Healthy China Strategy, we must strive to achieve the well-being of all and the sustainable development of the nation. It is necessary to run the concept of health management throughout the whole process of urban planning, construction and management. Deepen the reform of the medical and health care system, and make overall plans to promote the comprehensive reform of medical security, medical services, public health, drug supply, and regulatory systems. In terms of medical security, deepen the comprehensive reform of grassroots medical and health institutions, and improve the operation mechanism of networked urban and rural primary medical and health services. Accelerate the reform of public hospitals and implement government responsibilities. In terms of medical services, improve the reasonable hierarchical diagnosis and treatment model, and establish a contractual service relationship between community doctors and residents. Make full use of information technology to promote the vertical flow of high-quality medical resources. In terms of public health, reform and improve the disease prevention and control system, the major epidemic prevention and control treatment system, and improve the unified emergency material support system. Vigorously carry out patriotic health campaigns, promote the transformation from environmental sanitation governance to comprehensive social health management, and advocate civilized, healthy, green and environmentally friendly lifestyles. In terms of drug supply, we will completely abolish the use of medicine to support doctors, rationalize the price of medicine, and establish a scientific compensation mechanism;

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping Emphasizes Upholding the People's First, Continuously Benefiting the People When Participating in the Review of the Inner Mongolia Delegation, and Implementing the People-Centered Development Thinking into Various Decision-Making, Deployment and Practical Work," *People's Daily*, May 23, 2020.

Adhere to the equal importance of Chinese and Western medicine, strengthen the combing and excavation of the essence of classical medicine, and promote the research and development of new Chinese medicine and industrial development. In terms of the medical insurance system, improve the universal medical insurance system, accelerate the improvement of the medical insurance and assistance system for serious and extraordinarily serious diseases, and encourage the society to run medical services. Implement food safety strategies to make people feel at ease. In terms of population aging, actively respond to the aging of the population, build a policy system and social environment for the elderly, filial piety and respect for the elderly, accelerate the development of enterprise annuities, occupational annuities, commercial endowment insurance, etc. in addition to the basic pension system, and work together in economic support, daily life care and psychological comfort, so as to fully realize the elderly and enjoy the elderly.

### 3. resolutely win the battle against poverty

Poverty has been with human beings since its birth and is a persistent disease of human society. Getting rid of poverty and moving towards material abundance is the good aspiration of human society, and it is also the proper meaning of improving and developing the socialist system with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Eliminating poverty, improving people's livelihood and achieving common prosperity are the essential requirements of socialism." <sup>1</sup> According to international poverty alleviation standards, since 1978, China has reduced poverty by 780 million people, and the number of people lifted out of poverty exceeds the combined population of the world's most populous countries, the United States, Russia, Japan and Germany, and the country with the largest poverty reduction population in the world, contributing more than 70% to world poverty reduction. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China has made decisive achievements in poverty alleviation, the number of poor people has been reduced from 98.99 million at the end of 2012 to 5.51 million at the end of 2019, the incidence of poverty has dropped from 10.2% to 0.6%, and the poverty reduction has been reduced by more than 10 million people every year for seven consecutive years, and the overall regional poverty has been basically solved.

In long-term practice, China's poverty alleviation work is based on rapid economic development, with enhancing the intrinsic development capacity of poverty alleviation targets as the fundamental way, both government-led and social assistance, more actively mobilizing and giving play to the main role of the poor population, implementing inclusive policies and preferential policies, linking long-term poverty alleviation planning with poverty alleviation, and achieving precise poverty alleviation through targeted poverty alleviation, forming a poverty alleviation model with Chinese characteristics. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, poverty alleviation has provided Chinese experience and Chinese solutions for poverty alleviation around the world, and has made significant contributions to the development and progress of human society.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 189.

And it has become an important part of the social development path with Chinese characteristics.

Allowing the poor people and impoverished areas to join the rest of the country in entering a moderately prosperous society in all respects is our party's solemn commitment, and it is also China's solemn commitment to the development and progress of the entire human society. Poverty alleviation has entered the sprint period of tackling tough problems, with tight time and heavy tasks. By 2020, the rural poor will be able to have no worries about food and clothing, and ensure compulsory education, basic medical care and housing safety. The per capita disposable income of farmers in poverty-stricken areas has increased higher than the national average, and the indicators in the main areas of basic public services are close to the national average. Ensure that the rural poor under China's current standards can be lifted out of poverty, remove all poor counties, and solve regional overall poverty. In the end, this battle must be fought well so that the building of a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way will be recognized by the people and can withstand the test of history.

The focus of poverty alleviation is to get rid of real poverty. It is necessary to further improve the poverty alleviation system, mobilize the whole party and the whole society to adhere to targeted poverty alleviation and poverty alleviation, strengthen the responsibility system of the number one party and government leader with overall responsibility, adhere to the pattern of large-scale poverty alleviation, give full play to the institutional advantages of concentrating forces to do great things, and focus on overcoming the task of poverty alleviation in deeply impoverished areas. The further the future poverty alleviation, the more difficult it will be, because most of the remaining poverty alleviation targets are areas and people with poor conditions, weak foundations, and deep poverty levels, and they are all "hard bones" that need to be solved vigorously. According to the different situations of poor households, we must identify the root causes, make precise efforts, and work for a long time to ensure that no one is left behind on the road to poverty alleviation.

The goal of poverty alleviation is to truly get rid of poverty. To truly alleviate poverty, we must solve the problem of endogenous driving force of development in poor areas and the problem of poor people returning to poverty after being lifted out of poverty, that is, we must not only improve the "blood transfusion" mechanism, but also form a "hematopoietic" mechanism. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has put forward the idea of "social policies should be underpinned" to help low-income groups not only survive, but also have development opportunities and realize the organic combination of blood transfusion mechanism and hematopoietic mechanism. In terms of basic survival, the main thing is to build a "bottom-up" social safety net to ensure that "no one can be left behind on the road to moderate prosperity." At the same time, poverty alleviation should be organically combined with support for aspirations and wisdom, not only through the development of characteristic industries, but also through ecological migration, as well as education poverty alleviation, medical poverty alleviation, financial poverty alleviation and social security poverty alleviation.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Poverty alleviation is not the end, but the beginning of a new life and a new struggle."<sup>1</sup> On the basis of resolutely winning the battle against poverty, it is necessary to continue to promote the effective connection between comprehensive poverty alleviation and rural revitalization, promote the smooth transformation of poverty reduction strategies and work systems, integrate them into the rural revitalization strategy, establish an institutional mechanism that combines long and short and cures both symptoms and root causes, stimulate the endogenous driving force for the development of low-income populations in underdeveloped areas and rural areas, implement precise assistance, and gradually achieve common prosperity.

### Section 3: Strengthen and innovate social governance

Social governance is an important task of social construction. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, it is necessary to adapt to the new situation and new challenges facing economic and social development, adhere to the problem-oriented, strengthen and innovate social governance, create a social governance pattern of joint construction, co-governance and sharing, take the road of socialist social governance with Chinese characteristics, and ensure that the people live and work in peace and contentment, social stability and order, and the country's long-term peace and stability.

#### 1. From "social management" to "social governance"

Social management is an indispensable management activity in human society. In order to form and maintain a certain social order, it is necessary to have a certain form of social management. In modern society, the role of social management is becoming increasingly important. In a country like ours with a population of 1.4 billion and an accelerated economic and social transformation, the task of social management is particularly arduous and arduous. The fundamental purpose of strengthening and innovating social governance is to maintain social order, promote social harmony, ensure that people live and work in peace and contentment, and create a stable and safe development environment.

Since the founding of New China, the party and the state have always attached great importance to social management, carried out long-term exploration and practice in the formation and development of a social management system suited to China's national conditions, made major achievements, and accumulated valuable experience.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Symposium on Decisive Battles and Decisive Victories in Poverty Alleviation", People's Publishing House, 2020 edition, page 12.



Especially since the reform and opening up, we have continuously promoted the reform and innovation of social management in line with the increasingly diversified development of social and economic components, organizational forms, employment methods, interest relations and distribution methods. From the Third Plenary Session of the 14th CPC Central Committee proposing to strengthen the government's social management functions, to the Fourth Plenary Session of the 16th CPC Central Committee proposing to strengthen social construction and management, to the Sixth Plenary Session of the 16th CPC Central Committee emphasizing the innovation of the social management system and integrating social management resources, and then to the 17th CPC National Congress emphasizing the improvement of the social management pattern and the grassroots social management system, the CPC's understanding of social management has been continuously deepened. In the long-term exploration and practice, China has established a leadership system for social management work, built a network of social management organizations, formulated basic laws and regulations on social management, and continuously promoted the adaptation of social management to China's national conditions and socialist system.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has deeply studied the new situation, new tasks and new characteristics facing social management, focused on promoting innovation in social management concepts, practices and systems, and clearly put forward the major proposition of "social governance." From "social management" to "social governance", although it is a word difference, it is a comprehensive improvement of the party's ruling philosophy and policy ideas in the social field, reflecting systematic governance, legal governance, source governance, comprehensive policies, and the deepening of the party's understanding of the laws of social operation and governance.

To adapt to the change of "social governance", efforts need to be made from many aspects. In terms of action concept, it is necessary to realize the transformation from management to service, all social management departments are departments that serve the masses, and all social management work is work for the interests of the masses; in terms of action subjects, it is necessary to shift from the unified management system of the government in the past to a diversified and collaborative governance system between the government and various social subjects, and promote the benign interaction between government governance and social self-regulation and residents' autonomy; in the orientation of action, it is necessary to shift from control and regulation to rule of law guarantees, comply with the requirements of comprehensive rule of law, and take the spirit of rule of law as the guide. Use legal means to solve difficult problems, and promote the construction of a rule-of-law society with the rule of law in social governance.

Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that "social governance is a science."<sup>1</sup> The key here is to correctly handle some basic relationships in the process of social governance. First, properly handle the relationship between maintaining stability and safeguarding rights.

---

<sup>1</sup> Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society, Central Literature Publishing House, 2017, p. 127.

Rights protection is the foundation of stability maintenance, and the essence of stability maintenance is rights protection. It is necessary to properly resolve the reasonable and legitimate interests of the broad masses of the people, so that the masses of the people sincerely feel that their rights and interests are treated fairly and their interests are effectively safeguarded. Second, properly handle the relationship between social vitality and social order. Social development needs to be dynamic, but that dynamism must be orderly. It is necessary to pay attention to channeling and defusing, flexible stability maintenance, mobilize the whole society to jointly do a good job in maintaining social stability, and achieve a relative balance between social order and social vitality at a higher level. Third, it is necessary to properly handle the relationship between rule of law and rule of ethics, autonomy. Law is written morality, and morality is the law of the heart. In the process of grassroots autonomy, it is necessary to attach importance to the normative role of morality in citizens' behavior, take the law as the benchmark, give full play to the normative role of township rules and people's covenants, citizens' conventions, etc., so as to ensure that the enjoyment of rights and the performance of obligations are consistent, and finally realize the benign interaction between the three and promote each other.

## 2. actively promote innovation in the pattern of social governance

Modern social governance is not only the process of the government providing public services to the society and regulating and regulating relevant social affairs in accordance with the law, but also the process of social self-service and self-regulation and regulation in accordance with law and morality. This requires continuously improving the government's social management capabilities and effectiveness, while continuously enhancing social self-management capabilities, and making every effort to create a social governance pattern of joint construction, co-governance and sharing by improving the social governance system of party committee leadership, government responsibility, social coordination, public participation, and legal guarantee.

The fundamental feature of socialist social governance with Chinese characteristics is the leadership of the Party. In this respect, we are fundamentally different from the social governance of Western capitalism. In China, the Communist Party of China has a broad and profound social and mass foundation, and its party organizations cover the whole society, extend to the grassroots level, and play a leading core role in political, economic, cultural and social life, which is essentially different from the nature and role of Western political parties. State-owned enterprises and institutions are important pillars of social governance and public services, and their nature is different from those of industry associations in Western countries. Workers' and young women's mass organizations are bridges and links between the Party and the government and the masses, covering all aspects of political, economic, cultural and social life, and are different from those non-governmental organizations in the West.

Neighborhood committees, village committees and other grassroots people's autonomous organizations not only undertake a large number of social service functions, but also undertake some social governance functions, which is different from the nature of autonomous organizations in the West. Most importantly, these organizations work under the leadership of the Chinese Communist Party. These differences and differences determine that to strengthen and innovate social governance, it is necessary to strengthen and improve the leadership of party committees at all levels over social governance, and enhance the party's overall planning and organizational ability for social governance. The party should not only do a good job in leading and leading social governance work, but also do a good job in guiding work and play the role of "leading geese." Leadership does not mean direct command, nor does it mean doing everything; we must make efforts to organically combine "unification" and "division" and give full play to our political and institutional advantages.

Social governance is mainly the responsibility of the government. The government's responsibility is not led by the government, not in the traditional sense of control, but to do a good job in public services, public management, public security, and improve the mechanism of interest expression, interest coordination, and interest protection. It is necessary to fully implement the main responsibility of social governance of governments at all levels, and ensure that personnel, input, work, and responsibility are in place for public services and public management that should be the responsibility of the government. It is necessary to standardize the social governance functions of all government departments, effectively solve the problem of multi-headed management and decentralized management in some fields, especially the problem of prevarication when encountering difficult things, and form a chain of social governance responsibility with clear powers and responsibilities, clear rewards and punishments, division of labor and responsibility, and joint management.

Strengthen social collaboration. Social coordination is mainly to solve the problem of joint construction and co-governance. It is necessary to innovate the idea of social governance, expand the opening up of the public service market, encourage and guide enterprises, institutions, social organizations, and the people to actively participate in social governance through methods such as government procurement of services and improvement of incentive and compensation mechanisms, so as to create a social governance community where everyone is responsible and everyone is responsible. It is necessary to deepen the governance of grassroots organizations and departments and industries according to law, support all kinds of social subjects in self-restraint and self-management, and give play to the positive role of social norms such as citizens' conventions, township rules and people's conventions, industry regulations, and group charters in social governance. It is necessary to pay attention to the cultivation and guidance of social organizations, reform the management system of social organizations, promote social organizations to clarify their rights and responsibilities, regulate self-discipline, and exercise autonomy in accordance with law, actively participate in social governance and public services, and better give play to the social governance functions of all people's organizations.

Focus on public participation. Comrade Xi Jinping has pointed out many times that the people are the creators of history, and the masses are the real heroes. The masses of the people are the main source of all social vitality.

In order to achieve the goal of social governance innovation for the masses, we must believe in the masses, mobilize the masses, and rely on the masses, so that the broad masses of the people will become the main force of social governance innovation. It is necessary to stimulate the infinite vitality and innovation contained in the broad masses of the people, mobilize and organize the masses to participate in public services and public management in a rational and orderly manner in accordance with the law, realize self-management, self-service and self-development, and promote the formation of a good situation in which everyone participates in social governance and everyone shares a harmonious society.

### 3. Actively promote innovation in social governance methods

To strengthen and innovate social governance, we must innovate social governance methods and continuously improve the level of socialization, rule of law, intelligence and specialization of social governance.

The socialization of social governance requires all kinds of social subjects, especially the broad masses of the people, to become the most active and dynamic factor in social governance. In social governance, it is necessary to fully respect the autonomy, enthusiasm and creativity of all kinds of subjects, especially the people, rely on the wisdom and independent innovation of the broad masses of the people, improve the pattern of social governance, and maintain the overall stability of society. On the one hand, it is necessary to properly handle the relationship between the interests of the government and the masses, and prevent and reduce social contradictions from the source. It is necessary to regard the affairs of the masses of the people as their own affairs, so that the masses can sincerely feel that problems can be reflected, contradictions can be resolved, and rights and interests are guaranteed. On the other hand, it is necessary to mobilize the broad masses of the people to participate in social governance through various forms, effectively give play to the self-governance function of grassroots mass autonomous organizations, establish and improve all kinds of villagers and residents' spontaneous social organizations, encourage the development of mass organizations in the category of life services, voluntary services, and maintenance of public order, and let the people become firm supporters and important participants in social governance innovation.

The rule of law in social governance is an inevitable requirement of social governance. The relationship between people's rights and obligations in social governance needs to be regulated by law, and contradictions and disputes need to be resolved by law. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Improving the system that plays a major role in safeguarding the vital interests of the masses, strengthening the authoritative position of the law in resolving contradictions, and making the masses sincerely feel that their rights and interests have been treated fairly and effectively safeguarded."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to guide social governance innovation with the concept of rule of law, firmly establish the concept of governance according to law, and strive to create a fair social environment from the legal, institutional and policy aspects;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, page 148.

And effectively guarantee the equal status of the people in politics, law, opportunity, rights and distribution. It is also necessary to guide the whole society to believe in the law and establish an authoritative position of the law in the hearts of the people. It is necessary to improve the legal system, strengthen judicial supervision, and promptly discover, stop, and correct violations of laws and regulations and practices that may occur in the process of social governance innovation. It is necessary to improve the legal system for the protection of citizens' rights, and strengthen legislative protection in areas such as income distribution, housing, education, medical system reform, rural land acquisition, urban housing demolition, labor contract signing, and protection of the rights and interests of migrant workers.

Intelligent social governance is a key means to promote the modernization of social governance. The vigorous development of various new technologies represented by new information technology has brought new challenges to social governance and provided new momentum and opportunities for innovative social governance. It is necessary to conform to the development tide of the Internet era and improve the level of intelligent social governance. Make good use of high and new technologies such as the Internet of Everything, big data, cloud computing, and artificial intelligence to make the social governance process more scientific and intelligent, and provide technical support and support for long-term social harmony and stability. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must deeply understand the role of the Internet in national management and social governance... It is necessary to strengthen Internet thinking, make use of the advantages of flat, interactive and fast Internet, promote scientific government decision-making, precise social governance, and efficient public services, and use information technology to better perceive the social situation, smooth communication channels, and assist decision-making and governance."<sup>1</sup>

Specialization of social governance refers to adapting to the needs of modernization, networking, and informatization of social governance, and using modern governance methods to better innovate social governance in accordance with professional standards. In modern society, the problems facing human beings are becoming more and more complex and professional, and it is necessary to let specialized talents solve professional problems through professional division of labor. Specialization is an inevitable requirement for improving the level of social governance, and its fundamental is to strengthen the construction of professional talents. Strive to build a professional mass work team, a professional volunteer team, a professional social worker team, a professional social psychological service team, and a professional emergency management team, and consolidate the foundation of social governance. In addition, it is necessary to improve the ability to comprehensively use professional work methods, and skillfully use mechanisms such as prediction and early warning, risk prevention and control, incident response, education and reform, psychological counseling, conflict mediation, interest coordination, policy guidance, standardized law enforcement, and accountability

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 134-135.

And with the help of information means, Germany and France are simultaneously carried out to achieve the goal of social governance.

#### 4. Actively promote innovation in social governance systems

To promote the innovation of social governance systems in the new era, mainly to strengthen the construction of mechanisms for preventing and resolving social conflicts, the construction of social security prevention and control systems, the construction of social psychological service systems, and the construction of grassroots community governance systems, so as to provide strong institutional guarantees for long-term social harmony and stability.

It is necessary to focus on correctly handling contradictions among the people, and through innovation in various systems and mechanisms, properly resolve the reasonable and legitimate interests of the masses, and resolve social contradictions at the grassroots level and in the bud. With early detection, early prevention, and early disposal as the basic principles, use big data technology and information technology to gradually improve the early warning mechanism for social contradictions, improve the social stability risk assessment mechanism for major decision-making, and prevent and reduce contradictions from the source. Improve diversified dispute resolution mechanisms that are organically connected and coordinated with each other, such as mediation, arbitration, administrative rulings, administrative reconsideration, and litigation, establish standardized and sound rules and procedures for public participation, and mobilize the whole of society to participate in the resolution of conflicts and disputes. Improve the level of legalization of social governance, guide the people to resolve social conflicts and all kinds of disputes through legal procedures and legal means, and promote the formation of a good environment for handling affairs in accordance with the law, finding the law when encountered, solving problems and using the law, and relying on the law to resolve contradictions.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Peace is the first need of the people after solving the problem of food and clothing, which is an extremely important livelihood for the people and the most basic development environment.<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to firmly establish the concept of safe development, fully understand the full connotation of life first and safety first, always put the safety of people's lives in the first place, pay close attention to the establishment and improvement of the responsibility system for safe production, and implement the "one-vote veto" of safe production and the risk of major production safety accidents. Improve the public safety system, resolutely curb the frequent occurrence of serious and extraordinarily serious safety accidents, and continuously improve the disaster prevention, mitigation and relief capabilities of the whole society.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 148.

Deeply promote the comprehensive management of public security and ensure that the people live and work in peace and contentment. Further improve the all-round and three-dimensional public security prevention and control system, curb the high incidence of serious criminal offenses, and protect people's personal rights, property rights, and personality rights. Crack down on and punish pornography, gambling, drugs, criminal trafficking, and other illegal and criminal activities in accordance with law, and truly protect the safety of the lives and property of the broad masses of the people. Improve the system and mechanism for comprehensive management of social security, and build a grassroots comprehensive service management platform. Implement a social stability risk assessment system for major decision-making, improve comprehensive mechanisms for investigation, early warning, mediation, and resolution of social conflicts, strengthen and improve petitioning and mediation efforts, and effectively prevent and resolve conflicts and disputes.

Human society has entered the Internet era, and we must fully understand the great challenges and opportunities brought by the development of the Internet to social governance. It is necessary to improve the comprehensive governance capacity of the network, and form a comprehensive governance bureau with the participation of multiple subjects such as party committee leadership, government management, enterprise performance of responsibilities, social supervision, and self-discipline of netizens, and a combination of economic, legal, technical and other means. Increase the intensity of managing networks in accordance with law, accelerate the improvement of the Internet management leadership system, and form a joint force for Internet management from technology to content, from daily security to combating crime, to ensure the correct use and security of networks. Give full play to the function of the Internet in reflecting public opinion, promptly collect, absorb and utilize all kinds of constructive opinions, promptly clarify erroneous trends of thought, and promptly channel and resolve emotional discussions.

The social mentality is a barometer of economic and social development. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China emphasized that it is necessary to strengthen the construction of the social psychological service system and cultivate a self-esteem, self-confidence, rationality, peace and positive social mentality. To this end, it is necessary to further improve the methods and methods of ideological and political work, and take humanistic care and psychological counseling as the focus of institutional innovation. It is necessary to establish mechanisms for psychological social guidance, strengthen education in social morality, professional ethics, family virtues, and personal morality, punish untrustworthy, unethical and irregular conduct, guide people to form a good trend of conscientiously performing legally-prescribed obligations, social responsibilities, and family responsibilities, and form a clean and upright social atmosphere. Gradually standardize the psychological impact assessment process in decision-making, improve the mechanisms for policy release, interpretation, and guidance, accurately grasp the interests of various social groups, and stabilize the psychological expectations of the people. It is necessary to improve the social psychological counseling mechanism, strengthen the psychological counseling of members of society, improve the psychological counseling network, guide people to correctly treat themselves and others, groups and society, correctly treat difficulties, setbacks, gains and losses, honors and disgraces, and organically combine personal value orientation with the needs of social development. It is necessary to improve the social psychological service mechanism, improve the early warning and handling mechanism for social psychological risks, and improve the ability of social psychological crisis intervention and guidance.

Community is the basic framework of society and the cornerstone of social governance. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "the community is the 'last mile' for the Party and the government to connect and serve the residents."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to strengthen the construction of the community governance system, promote the shift of the focus of social governance to the grassroots level, invest human, material, financial and technological resources into the community, apply new methods and means of social governance to the grassroots level, and lay a solid foundation for social order. Improve the new pattern of grassroots social governance with grassroots party organizations as the core and the participation of the whole society, and provide sound institutional guarantees for community service management. Strengthen the normalization of urban management, strengthen management services for the floating population, and use market-oriented and rule-of-law means to promote the orderly flow of population. Continuously innovate the rural social governance system and mechanism, take the initiative to resolve basic social contradictions in rural areas, learn and promote the "Fengqiao experience", strive for "small things do not leave the village, major matters do not leave the town, and contradictions are not handed over", focus on the source and guarantee from the root, and finally achieve long-term social harmony and stability.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Society", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 134.



## Chapter XII: Towards a New Era of Ecological Civilization

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has stood at the height of the rise and fall of human civilization and the sustainable development of the Chinese nation, regarded the construction of ecological civilization as an important part of the overall layout of the "five-in-one", and put forward a series of new concepts, ideas and strategies, forming Xi Jinping Thought on Ecological Civilization. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China defined the grand goal of building a prosperous, strong, democratic, civilized, harmonious and beautiful modern socialist country by the middle of this century, pointed out the way forward and the path for the construction of a beautiful China to move towards a new era of ecological civilization, and demonstrated the historical responsibility of Chinese communists to conform to the trend of the times and safeguard the interests of the people.

### Section 1: Relating to the fundamental plan for the sustainable development of the Chinese nation

The relationship between man and nature is the primary relationship that must be faced and solved in the process of the development of human civilization, and the formation and development of human civilization is in a certain sense the evolution and change of the relationship between man and nature. The ecological civilization born on the basis of industrial civilization is an inevitable requirement for the harmonious development of man and nature, and a major leap in the history of human civilization. The construction of ecological civilization is a conscious adaptation and profound grasp of the development trend of human social civilization, a summary and reflection on the lessons learned from China's economic and social development, and a positive response to the needs of people's better life in the new era. Building an ecological civilization is related to the well-being of the people and the future of the nation, and is an important strategic task for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

## 1. conform to the inevitable requirements of the process of civilization in human society

The ecological environment is the foundation of human survival and development, and changes in the ecological environment directly affect the succession of civilizations. Many ancient civilizations in history originated in areas with good ecology, and all of them led to the decline of civilization with the aggravation of ecological deterioration. It can be said that if the ecology rises, civilization will prosper, and if the ecology declines, the civilization will decline.

Since mankind entered the era of industrial civilization, it has "produced industrial and scientific forces that have not been imagined in any previous era in human history."<sup>1</sup> Social productive forces have been greatly improved, science and technology have developed rapidly, huge material wealth has been created, the world market has been opened, economic globalization has continued to develop, and modernization has become an irresistible historical trend. In this regard, Marx and Engels once commented that the productive forces created by the bourgeoisie in less than a hundred years of its class rule are greater than the entire productive forces created by all previous generations.

Although capitalist industrial civilization has made great achievements in history, it is incompatible with the social productive forces it generates. Industrial civilization characterized by mechanization and electrification, driven by the nature of capital multiplication and expansion, dominated by anthropocentric and utilitarian ideas, regards human beings as the "masters" of nature, changes the relationship between man and nature into that between conquerors and conquered, carries out predatory exploitation of natural resources, and controls the natural world to the point of "doing whatever you want." This one-sided and radical attitude and practice towards nature, while promoting the triumphant march of industrial civilization, inevitably breaks the inherent cycle and balance of the ecosystem, produces irreparable ecological trauma, aggravates the contradiction between man and nature, and brings great threats to the survival and development of human beings.

When mankind was still intoxicated with the great victory of the industrial revolution, the problems of ecological destruction and environmental pollution had gradually become prominent in the long-term accumulation. Since the 30s of the 20th century, a number of environmental pollution incidents have occurred in some Western countries, which have had a huge impact on the ecological environment and public life, bringing heavy losses.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 775.

After the middle of the 20th century, global environmental problems such as ozone layer depletion and destruction, biodiversity loss, acid rain spread, forest loss, land degradation and desertification, air pollution, marine pollution, water pollution, solid waste and garbage disasters have emerged one after another, and environmental pollution and ecological imbalance have become more serious. Especially after the 90s of the 20th century, due to the large use of fossil fuels, a large amount of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases were emitted, which gradually led to global warming over time. It has caused a variety of adverse impacts such as sea level rise, climate anomalies, aggravation of natural disasters, and accelerated spread of epidemic diseases. Generally speaking, the intensification of environmental pollution, global environmental problems, and climate warming is no longer just a problem of any country or region, but a serious global problem. The cruel reality fully shows that the attitude and practice of industrial civilization towards nature have reached a dead end, the relationship between human society and nature has been seriously reversed, and human civilization is in danger of being destroyed.

In the era of Marx and Engels, the contradiction between man and nature was far less serious than later, and the ecological and environmental problems had not yet attracted widespread attention from human beings. However, the founders of Marxism have paid attention to the foundation and importance of the relationship between man and nature ahead of time, pointing out that man is the product of the long-term evolution of nature, and inorganic nature is the matrix, foundation and homeland of human survival and development, and without nature there is no one himself. Human beings can use nature and transform their self-perception through practical activities, but they must follow the objective laws of natural development. They paid great attention to historical cases of reprisals for ecological destruction in Mesopotamia, Greece, Asia Minor, and other histories, issuing the message "Let us not revel in our human triumph over nature." For every such victory, nature takes revenge on us."<sup>1</sup> While revealing that the capitalist mode of production is the root cause of the ecological crisis of modern society, it emphasizes that the disharmony between man and nature is essentially the disharmony of social relations between people. The founder of Marxism also expressed his yearning for the harmonious coexistence between man and nature in the future society, believing that in order to achieve the ultimate "reconciliation" between man and nature and between people, it is necessary to change the irrational social system and establish a communist society.

After Marx and Engels, due to the increasingly serious environmental problems, from the middle of the 20th century, some people of insight in the West began to look for the profound social and historical reasons behind environmental pollution and ecological destruction, strongly called for the protection of the ecological environment, and gradually formed the theory of sustainable development.

---

<sup>1</sup> Collected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 9, People's Publishing House, 2009, p. 559-560.

In 1962, American female biologist Rachel Carson published "Silent Spring", which exposed the damage to the ecosystem caused by environmental pollution caused by the abuse of pesticides and put forward the idea of protecting the ecological environment, which triggered a debate on the concept of development in the world. In 1972, the Club of Rome published a study that shocked the world "The Limits of Growth", which deeply reflected on the West's theory of economic growth at the cost of high consumption of resources, high emissions of pollution and serious ecological damage, revealing "high growth's" unsustainability has aroused great concern and extensive discussion on environmental and development issues in the international community. In the same year, the United Nations held its first conference on the human environment and adopted the Declaration on the Human Environment, which unveiled the prelude to the common protection of the environment by all mankind. In 1987, the World Commission on Environment and Development published the report "Our Common Future", which formally defined sustainable development and systematically expounded the idea of sustainable development. In 1992, the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development adopted important documents such as the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development and Agenda 21 with the concept of sustainable development as the core, raising the issue of sustainable development to a strategic level. People are gradually realizing that the development of killing chickens for eggs and exhausting fish has caused great damage to natural ecosystems, and eventually caused human beings to suffer from themselves. Therefore, it is necessary to deeply examine the serious problems caused by industrial civilization, and re-examine and properly handle the interrelationship between man and nature.

The development practice of industrial civilization proves that severe ecological and environmental problems seriously threaten the survival and development of human beings, objectively forcing human beings to establish a harmonious relationship between man and nature, and exploring new development models and development paths is the only feasible choice. At the same time, the theoretical exploration of environmental protection and sustainable development shows that human beings need to create a new form of civilization to continue to survive. Green development that conforms to nature and protects the ecology is the only way, and building an ecological civilization is the trend of the times. Ecological civilization is the product of the development of industrial civilization to a certain stage, a more advanced form of civilization after industrial civilization, a new requirement for the harmonious development of man and nature, and a major achievement of human social progress. Ecological civilization is based on the harmonious development of man and nature, takes the coordinated development of economy, society, population and nature as the criterion, takes the recycling and recycling of resources as the means, and uses the laws of ecology to guide people's economic activities, so as to fundamentally solve the contradiction between the development of human civilization and the deterioration of the natural environment.

Building an ecological civilization is not only a historical trend, but also a world trend. As a major developing country, China must also consciously grasp the general trend of history and take the initiative to follow the trend of the world.

Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that in building socialist modernization in China, with a population of 1.4 billion, it must not repeat the old Western countries of "pollution first, treatment later" and "treatment while pollution." We must attach great importance to the construction of ecological civilization and take a green, low-carbon and sustainable development road. The proposal of Xi Jinping Thought on Ecological Civilization is the result of profound reflection on the form of traditional civilization, especially industrial civilization, an important strategic measure to cope with the global ecological crisis, and a major contribution of China to global sustainable development. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must build an ecological system that respects nature and green development." Human beings can use nature and transform nature, but in the final analysis, they are part of nature, and they must take care of nature, not be above nature. We must solve the contradictions brought about by industrial civilization, take harmonious coexistence between man and nature as the goal, and achieve sustainable development of the world and all-round human development."<sup>1</sup>

## 2. the only way to solve the difficult problems of China's economic and social development

The Communist Party of China has always attached great importance to the construction of ecological civilization. As early as the early days of the founding of New China, the Chinese Communists represented by Comrade Mao Zedong stressed the improvement of the ecological environment and launched a vigorous campaign of "planting trees and greening the motherland" and the project of "building water conservancy and maintaining water and soil." Since the reform and opening up, the Chinese Communists represented by Comrade Deng Xiaoping have paid great attention to environmental protection work, and the Decision of the State Council on Strengthening Environmental Protection Work in the Period of National Economic Adjustment promulgated in 1981 clearly stated that "protecting the environment is where the fundamental interests of the people of the whole country lie. In 1983, the Second National Conference on Environmental Protection established "environmental protection" as a basic national policy. The Chinese Communists represented by Comrade Jiang Zemin put forward a strategy for sustainable development, demanding that "economic development must be considered in an integrated manner with population, resources, and the environment, and we must not only make good arrangements for current development, but also consider future generation to create better conditions for future development."<sup>2</sup> The Chinese Communists represented by Comrade Hu Jintao put forward the Scientific Outlook on Development and clearly demanded:

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (middle), Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 697.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Jiang Zemin, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2006 edition, p. 532.

"Implement the basic national policy of saving resources and protecting the environment, take the harmonious development of man and nature as an important development concept, and promote the coordination of economic development with population, resources and environment." The 16th National Congress of the Communist Party of China took "promoting harmony between man and nature" as one of the goals of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way. The 17th National Congress of the Communist Party of China for the first time included ecological civilization in the report of the Party Congress, and wrote "building a resource-saving and environment-friendly society" into the newly revised Party Constitution.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has regarded the construction of ecological civilization as an important part of the overall layout of the "five-in-one", adhered to the harmonious coexistence of man and nature as a basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, regarded green development as a major development concept, and regarded pollution prevention and control as a major battle among the three major battles, leading the whole party and the people of the whole country to carry out a series of fundamental, pioneering and long-term work. Accelerate the top-level design and institutional construction of ecological civilization, strengthen the construction of the rule of law, establish and implement the central environmental protection supervision system, vigorously promote green development, deeply implement the three major action plans for the prevention and control of air, water and soil pollution, take the lead in issuing the National Plan for China's Implementation of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, implement the National Climate Change Plan (2014-2020), and so on. All these have promoted historic, turning and overall changes in ecological environmental protection, and also made the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China the most vigorous, the most practical, the fastest and the best results in the construction of ecological civilization in the past few years.

At the same time, we must also see that after years of rapid development, the resource and environmental problems accumulated in China have also entered a stage of high intensity and frequent occurrence, and the construction of ecological civilization is in a critical period of superimposed pressure and heavy load. Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "We owe too much in terms of ecological environment, and if we do not grasp this work tightly from now on, we will pay a greater price in the future."<sup>1</sup> In a certain sense, China's resource constraints are tightening, environmental pollution is serious, and the situation of fragile ecosystems is still grim, the results of ecological governance are not stable, and ecological and environmental problems have become prominent problems restricting economic and social development.

First, the ability to guarantee resources is weak, which restricts sustainable economic and social development.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Building a Moderately Prosperous Society in All Respects", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 164.

With economic and social development, China has become the world's largest energy consumer, and a large amount of energy needs to be imported. In the long run, with the continuous development of China's economy and society, the demand for resources is still growing. According to forecasts, by 2035, China's current GDP will reach 290 trillion yuan,<sup>1</sup> if the existing energy consumption intensity is kept unchanged, China's primary energy consumption will reach 11.098 billion tons of oil equivalent, while the total global primary energy consumption in 2017 is only 13.511 billion tons of oil equivalent. Such energy consumption is not only something we cannot afford, but the entire planet.

Second, environmental pollution is still serious, restricting the people's new expectations for a better life. With the increase of income level, the connotation of people's needs for a better life is undergoing profound changes, and the people need cleaner air, cleaner water and safer food than ever before, but air pollution, water pollution, and soil pollution seriously restrict the satisfaction of these needs. After several years of treatment, although the atmospheric environment has improved, it is not optimistic. In 2018, among the 338 cities at the prefecture level and above, 217 cities exceeded the ambient air quality standard, accounting for 64.2%. At the same time, the water environment safety situation is grim. Among the 1935 water quality sections (points) of surface water in the country, 17-inferior V accounted for 29%. Among the 1613 river basin water quality sections, 'IV-inferior V' accounted for 25.8%. Of the 111 important lakes (reservoirs), "Class V accounted for 33.3% of the total." Among the 906 monitoring sections (points) of centralized drinking water sources in 337 cities at the prefecture level and above, 10.2% did not meet the standard. 32% of the country's rivers and 11% of lakes have pollutants entering rivers in excess of their capacity to hold pollution.<sup>2</sup> Then there is serious soil pollution. According to the National Soil Pollution Investigation Communiqué, the overall soil environmental situation in China is not optimistic, soil pollution is heavy in some areas, the soil environmental quality of cultivated land is worrying, and the soil environmental problems of industrial and mining waste land are prominent. The total excess rate of soil survey sites in the country was 16.1%, and the total excess rate of various soil in the Chengdu Plain, which was once a large granary, was even as high as 42.2%.<sup>3</sup> The existence of these problems directly affects the happiness of the masses of the people and their evaluation of the party and the government.

Third, ecosystems are still fragile, which restricts the ability of ecosystems to serve economic and social development.

---

<sup>1</sup> "100 Questions on Study and Guidance in the Report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China", Party Building Reading Press, Study Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 72.

<sup>2</sup> Ministry of Ecology and Environment: 2018 Communiqué on the Status of China's Ecology and Environment, May 2019.

<sup>3</sup> Ministry of Environmental Protection and Ministry of Land and Resources: National Soil Pollution Investigation Bulletin, April 2014.

The natural world is the cradle of all living things, including human beings, and the basic conditions for human survival and development, which not only creates and sustains the support system of human life, but also provides human beings with leisure, entertainment and other spiritual enjoyment. In recent years, China's ecological degradation is still serious, and the ecological security situation is still grim. Soil erosion, land desertification and rocky desertification caused by agricultural production and development are serious, and the area of soil erosion and desertification in China accounts for 31% and 30% of the land area, and the area of cultivated land degradation accounts for more than 40%. The total amount of soil lost each year reaches 5 billion tons, and more than 300 million mu of arable land is reduced due to soil erosion, which seriously affects the ability of natural ecology to provide the life support materials needed by human beings.<sup>1</sup> The proportion of areas with excellent quality of forest, shrubland and grassland ecosystems accounted for only 5.8% and mouth, respectively 7% and 5.4%, 17.6% of forests, 14.4% of shrublands and 34.7% of grassland ecosystem quality still have varying degrees of decline. Problems such as ecological damage in river basins, deterioration of urban living environment, and loss of natural shoreline caused by urbanization, industrialization and resource development still exist. Between 2000 and 2010 alone, the total area of ecosystem changes caused by urban expansion reached 420.37 million hectares, and 406 million square kilometers of natural ecosystems were lost due to arable land reclamation. A large number of coastal natural shorelines and tidal flats are occupied, and the natural shoreline retention rate is less than 40%.<sup>2</sup> These problems have greatly reduced the environmental carrying capacity of China's economic development, which not only restricts the material basis of sustained economic growth, but also affects the evaluation and confidence of foreign investors in China's investment environment, and restricts the long-term development space of the economy. In addition, natural disasters caused by some environmental problems directly cause huge property losses, and the cost of controlling environmental pollution is also costly, even far exceeding the wealth created.

Resources and environment are the material basis for a country to achieve economic development, which to a large extent determines the scale, speed and degree of economic development and the level of sustainable economic and social development. Excellent ecological environment and sufficient natural resources can promote sustainable and healthy economic development, otherwise it will hinder or even destroy economic development. Countless cases in ancient and modern China and abroad have shown that environmental pollution and resource depletion caused by predatory development will inevitably limit the further development of the economy, and eventually lead to the collapse of the economic structure and the comprehensive crisis of society.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, p. 332.

<sup>2</sup> Ministry of Environmental Protection, Chinese Academy of Sciences: "Investigation and Assessment Report on Ten-year Changes in the National Ecological Environment (2000-2010)", June 2016



At this stage, China's population is large and the economy is large, the further forward development, the greater the demand for resources and environment, in the absence of more alternative resources, the constraints of resources and environment on economic and social development will become more and more obvious. To solve this problem, we must change the traditional high-input, high-consumption development model and promote the formation of green development methods and lifestyles; to solve the difficult problem between environmental pollution and people's expectations for a better environment, we must fight the battle of pollution prevention and control, so that China's ecological environment has a fundamental improvement; to solve the difficult problem between ecological fragility and improving the ability of ecosystems to serve economic and social development, we must regard landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses as a community of life, take into account the overall consideration, and implement overall policies. Take multiple measures at the same time to accelerate the construction of a baseline for ecological function assurance and promote harmonious coexistence between man and nature. All these require us to promote the construction of ecological civilization in an all-round, all-region and whole-process manner, and effectively integrate the concepts, principles and goals of ecological civilization into all links and processes of economic and social development.

### 3. the inevitable choice to meet the needs of the people for a better life in the new era

One of the important characteristics that distinguishes human beings from animals is that they are a composite existence that combines naturalness and sociality, materiality and spirituality, and has the eternal yearning and unremitting pursuit of a better life. However, in different eras, under different historical conditions, constrained by cultural traditions, social environment, economic conditions and other factors, people's understanding and pursuit of a better life are different. With the improvement of material living standards, people must pursue a higher level and a higher level of life, which is the inevitable logic of historical progress and the inevitable law of human social development and progress. We must actively respond to the thoughts, expectations and anxieties of the people, concentrate all parties to tackle tough problems, and constantly meet the growing needs of the people for a beautiful ecological environment.

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China made a major political judgment that "socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era", clearly pointing out that this new era is an era in which the people of all ethnic groups in the country unite and struggle, continuously create a better life, and gradually realize the common prosperity of all the people. The people's pursuit of a better life in the new era is more extensive, not only putting forward higher requirements for material and cultural life, but also increasing requirements in democracy, rule of law, fairness, justice, security, environment and other aspects.

Especially with the continuous improvement of economic and social development and people's living standards, people pay more and more attention to ecological issues, and the demand for the living environment with blue sky, beautiful mountains and waters, beautiful ecological environment and ecological security of clean air, excellent water quality and food safety is getting stronger and stronger. In the past, "hoping for food and clothing" and now "hoping for environmental protection"; in the past, "seeking survival" and now "seeking ecology" has become the truest expression of the people's hearts and public opinion. On the one hand, this change stems from the historical achievements in economic construction made by China's rapid development of reform and opening up for more than 40 years, which has greatly satisfied people's material and cultural life needs, the people's pursuit of a better life has been realized to a higher level, and the status of the ecological environment in the people's life happiness index has been continuously prominent. On the other hand, it stems from a large number of ecological and environmental problems accumulated in the process of development in China, which have seriously affected the safety of people's lives and quality of life, and have become a disaster for people's livelihood and pain for the people. Reversing environmental degradation and improving environmental quality have increasingly become the major interests and concerns of the broad masses of the people. The combined effect of these two aspects has triggered people's historical reflection on the connotation and content of a good life, and also enriched the era standards of a good life from the ecological dimension.

The Communist Party of China is a Marxist party that serves the people wholeheartedly, and everything it does is aimed at seeking and realizing the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people. In the past, the party's economic development was to achieve a happy life for the masses of the people, and now protecting the ecological environment is also to realize a better life for the masses, and the two are intrinsically unified. The main contradiction in Chinese society in the new era has been transformed into the contradiction between the people's daily growth needs for a better life and unbalanced and insufficient development, one of the important contents is the contradiction between the people's need for a beautiful ecological environment and the prominent ecological environment problems and insufficient supply of high-quality ecological products. Whether we can solve this major issue of the times and fight the battle against pollution is directly related to the happiness and satisfaction of the people, the quality and level of building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, and the party's ruling performance and ruling safety. It is for this reason that Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that ecological and environmental issues "are both major economic issues and major social and political issues."<sup>1</sup> He called for putting ecological environmental protection in a more prominent position, protecting the ecological environment like protecting the eyes, and treating the ecological environment like life.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 4.

Looking to the future, we must build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, build a modern socialist power in an all-round way, and realize the free and comprehensive development of everyone, which is inseparable from the most basic condition and the most important content of a good ecological environment. To let the people share the fruits of reform and development and realize the people's new expectations for a better life, we must take a new green development path of harmonious coexistence between man and nature, not only create more material wealth and spiritual wealth to meet the people's growing needs for a better life, but also provide more high-quality ecological products to meet the people's growing needs for a beautiful ecological environment. It is necessary to adhere to the principle of ecological benefit, ecological benefit and ecology for the people, take the solution of outstanding ecological and environmental problems as a priority issue for people's livelihood, actively respond to the people's thoughts, expectations, and anxieties in pursuit of a higher quality of life, vigorously promote the construction of ecological civilization, and make a good ecological environment a growth point for people's happy life, a support point for sustained and healthy economic and social development, and a force point for showing China's good image, so that the sky of China is bluer, the mountains are greener, the water is clearer, and the environment is more beautiful, and constantly improve the people's sense of gain, happiness, Security.

## Section 2: Firmly establish the concept of socialist ecological civilization

The concept of ecological civilization refers to the fundamental view of the relationship between man and nature and how humans live with nature. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China took the harmonious coexistence of man and nature as one of the basic strategies for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and emphasized the need to firmly establish the concept of socialist ecological civilization and promote the formation of a new pattern of harmonious development and modernization of man and nature. Conscientiously understanding Xi Jinping Thought on Ecological Civilization, deeply understanding and striving to practice the Socialist Ecological Civilization Concept is of great significance to strengthening the construction of ecological civilization, building a beautiful China, and promoting global ecological governance.

### 1. "Adhere to the scientific view of nature of harmonious coexistence between man and nature"

The dialectical relationship between man and nature is the eternal theme of human development. Building a harmonious relationship between man and nature and adhering to the scientific view of nature of harmonious coexistence between man and nature are the core and foundation of the socialist concept of ecological civilization.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Man and nature are the community of life. There is no substitute for the ecological environment, and it is difficult to survive if it is not consciously used."<sup>1</sup> Man is born of nature, and man and nature are a symbiotic relationship. The entire natural world, including man, is a complete and organic ecosystem, with its own objective laws of movement, change and development, and is not subject to human will. Human development activities must respect, conform to and protect nature. History and reality have repeatedly proved that when human beings make rational use and protect nature in a friendly manner, nature's rewards are often generous; when human beings develop and plunder nature in a disorderly manner, nature's punishment must be merciless. Only by following the laws of nature can human beings effectively prevent detours in the development and utilization of nature, and avoid harming nature and ultimately harming human beings themselves.

Adhering to the harmonious coexistence between man and nature means that the construction of ecological civilization must give play to subjective initiative under the premise of following the laws of nature, firmly follow the civilized development path of production development, rich life and good ecology, and more consciously promote green development, circular development and low-carbon development, and must not sacrifice the ecological environment in exchange for temporary economic development; we must adhere to the principle of giving priority to conservation, protection and natural restoration, and cannot only talk about taking without input, only talking about development without protection, and only talking about utilization without repair. It is necessary to protect the ecological environment like protecting the eyes, and treat the ecological environment like life; we must do more good things to lay a foundation and benefit the long term, do more practical things to protect nature and restore the ecology, and do more good things to control mountains and water, show mountain dew, so that the masses can see the mountains, see the water, remember homesickness, let the natural ecological beauty stay in the world forever, and nature is peaceful, harmonious and beautiful.

## 2. the green development concept of "green water and green mountains are gold and silver mountains"

Green waters and green mountains are gold and silver mountains, which is not only an important development concept, but also a major principle that should be adhered to in promoting modernization. As early as 2005, Comrade Xi Jinping, then Secretary of the Zhejiang Provincial Party Committee, put forward this important concept, which profoundly revealed the dialectical relationship between the pursuit of harmony between man and nature, economy and society. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China,

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Promoting China's Ecological Civilization Construction to a New Level", *Qiushi*, No. 3, 2019.

He has emphasized and elaborated this concept many times, continuously expanded and deepened its connotation from the theoretical and practical levels, and established a new strategic support for the construction of ecological civilization. Nowadays, evergreen trees are cash cows, turning ecological advantages into economic advantages, green water and green mountains can continuously bring gold and silver mountains, protecting the ecological environment is to protect productivity, improving the ecological environment is to develop productivity, these concepts have been more and more practical verification and public opinion.

The important concept that green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains shows that the protection of the ecological environment and the development of the economy are fundamentally organic and mutually reinforcing. Economic development should not be fishing for the exhaustion of resources and ecological environment, and ecological environmental protection should not be abandoning the edge of economic development to seek fish, but should adhere to protection in development, development in protection, achieve economic and social development in harmony with population, resources and environment, and finally achieve the ideal state of both gold and silver mountains and green waters. Green water and green mountains are the important concepts of Jinshan Yinshan, and also clarify the important position of ecological environment as an intrinsic attribute of productivity. Green water and green mountains and gold and silver mountains are by no means opposites, the key lies in people, and the key lies in ideas. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "green ecology is the greatest wealth, the greatest advantage, and the biggest brand",<sup>1</sup> and green waters and mountains are not only natural wealth, ecological wealth, but also social wealth and economic wealth. Protecting the ecological environment means protecting natural value and increasing natural capital, protecting the potential and stamina of economic and social development, and making green waters and mountains continue to exert ecological, economic and social benefits.

Adhering to the concept that green water and green mountains are golden mountains and silver mountains, we must implement the development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, accelerate the formation of spatial pattern, industrial structure, production mode and lifestyle that conserve resources and protect the environment, limit economic activities and human behavior to the limits that natural resources and ecological environment can bear, leave time and space for natural ecology to rest and recuperate, and realize the synergy of economic and social development and ecological environmental protection. It is necessary to speed up the delineation and strict observance of the three bottom lines of ecological protection, the bottom line of environmental quality, and the upper limit of resource utilization, and absolutely must not be done again for things that break through the three bottom lines, still use the extensive growth model, and eat the rice of ancestors and smash the bowls of their descendants.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Press, 2017 Edition, p. 33.

### 3. "a good ecological environment is the most inclusive people's livelihood and well-being" concept of livelihood

"A good ecological environment is the fairest public good and the most inclusive people's livelihood and well-being",<sup>1</sup> this scientific concept is a vivid embodiment of adhering to the people-centered development thinking in the field of ecological civilization. People's hearts are politics, and people's livelihood is related to people's hearts. The environment is people's livelihood, green mountains are beauty, and blue sky is happiness. People-oriented, the most important of which is not to destroy the environment of people's own existence in the process of development. If there is a serious deviation in the relationship between population and resources and environment, it is impossible to ensure that the people live and work in peace and contentment, let alone meet people's yearning for a better life. Economic development is for people's livelihood, and protecting the ecological environment is also for people's livelihood. Solving the ecological and environmental problems is not only an economic issue, but also a major social issue related to the people's livelihood, and a major political issue related to the mission and purpose of the Party.

To establish the concept of ecological people's livelihood, we must actively respond to the requirements of the broad masses of the people to accelerate the improvement of the quality of the ecological environment, adhere to the mutual promotion of the environment and people's livelihood, and provide more high-quality ecological products for the people. Ecology for the people, effectively improve the quality of the ecological environment, ensure the ecological rights and interests of the people, and let the people truly feel the real environmental benefits brought by economic development; we must protect the rural environment like the urban environment, attach importance to the governance of the rural ecological environment, and absolutely must not appear in the state of urban and rural "dual structure" in terms of ecological environment. Comrade Xi Jinping has stressed many times that it is necessary to speed up the improvement of the quality of the ecological environment, ensure the physical and mental health of the people, focus on solving prominent environmental problems that harm the health of the people, safeguard the people's most basic right to subsistence and development, and restore the natural beauty of the people's blue sky and white clouds, twinkling stars, clear water and green banks, shallow bottom of fish, singing birds and flowers, and idyllic scenery.

A good ecological environment is related to the vital interests of all the people, and building an ecological civilization is a cause that the people participate in and enjoy together.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 4.

Everyone is a protector, builder and beneficiary of the ecological environment, and no one is a bystander, outsider, critic, and no one can just say or do nothing. It is necessary to grasp the orientation of the whole society to jointly build an ecological civilization, enhance the people's awareness of conservation, environmental protection and ecological awareness, cultivate ecological ethics and codes of conduct, carry out green actions for the whole people, mobilize the whole society to reduce energy resource consumption and pollution emissions with practical actions, contribute to ecological environmental protection, and form a social atmosphere that advocates ecological civilization and protects the ecological environment. The grand goal of building a beautiful China can only be smoothly realized at an early date if it is translated into the conscious action of all the people.

#### 4. the overall system view of "landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses are the community of life"

Ecology is a unified natural system, an interdependent and closely linked organic chain. The lifeblood of man is in the field, the lifeblood of the field is in the water, the lifeblood of the water is in the mountain, the lifeblood of the mountain is in the soil, and the lifeblood of the soil is in the tree. Comrade Xi Jinping used the "lifeline" to connect people and the ecosystems of landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses, and the elements of the ecosystems of landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses, vividly and vividly expounded the integrated relationship between humans and nature, coexistence and common prosperity, highlighting that ecology is a unified natural system and a natural chain in which various natural elements are interdependent to achieve circulation. He stressed: "Use control and ecological restoration must follow the laws of nature, if the planters only plant trees, those who control water only manage water, and those who protect the field simply protect the field, it is easy to lose sight of one and the other, and eventually cause systematic ecological damage."<sup>1</sup> This is not only a reflection and summary of the past governance methods, but also an overall plan for the formation of a higher-level coordinated governance mechanism. Incorporating all kinds of ecological resources into the framework of unified governance has become an important methodology for promoting the construction of ecological civilization in the current and future period.

The overall system view of "landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses are the community of life" reflects the question of what kind of thinking and method to treat nature and what way to protect and restore nature. Environmental governance and ecological construction are a systematic project, and we must adhere to the systematic, comprehensive and comprehensive management of landscapes, forests, lakes and grasslands. It is necessary to seek new ways of governance from the perspective of systems engineering and the overall situation;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 507.

Mountains, water, forests, fields, lakes and grasses should be planned and comprehensively managed as a whole and a system, leaving no "loopholes", no "open space" and no "dead ends." In accordance with the integrity and systematization of the ecosystem, it is necessary to comprehensively consider all elements of the natural ecology, as well as the upper and lower mountains, the ground and the underground, the land and the ocean, and the upstream and downstream of the watershed, carry out systematic protection, macro management and control, and comprehensive management, enhance the circulation capacity of the ecosystem, and strive to maintain ecological balance. On the whole, we must change the situation of treating headaches, foot pains, each managing each other, and hindering each other, adhere to overall planning, overall measures, and multiple measures at the same time, and carry out the construction of ecological civilization in an all-round, all-region, and whole-process manner.

To establish a holistic system view, we must follow the internal mechanism and laws of the ecosystem. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "We must adhere to the priority of protection and natural restoration, implement the ecological protection and restoration project of Lintian Lake in mountains and rivers, increase the intensity of environmental governance, reform the basic system of environmental governance, comprehensively improve the stability of natural ecosystems and ecological service functions, and build a solid ecological security barrier."<sup>1</sup> Promote natural restoration by reducing the negative effects of human activities, more conform to nature, and leave space for nature to recuperate.

#### 5. the strict concept of rule of law of "protecting the ecological environment with the strictest system"

The ecological environment is the most inclusive public good, and it is also the field most prone to "tragedy of the commons." Therefore, the protection of the ecological environment must rely on institutions and the rule of law. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that the protection of the ecological environment must rely on the system and the rule of law, and in practice has continuously promoted ecological legislation and strengthened ecological law enforcement, forming an ecological rule of law concept that protects the ecological environment with the strictest system and the strictest rule of law.

Most of the outstanding problems in China's ecological environmental protection are related to the imperfect system, the lack of strict system, the lack of strict rule of law, the lack of implementation, and the ineffective punishment. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has written the construction of ecological civilization into the Party Constitution and Constitution, giving it an important status in the form of the fundamental law of the Party and the country;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 79.



The "Overall Plan for the Reform of the Ecological Civilization System" has been promulgated, building the "four beams and eight pillars" of the ecological civilization system and consolidating the institutional foundation for the construction of ecological civilization; adopted the "strictest revision of the Environmental Protection Law in history", formulated the "Soil Pollution Prevention and Control Law", revised the "Air Pollution Prevention and Control Law", "Water Pollution Prevention and Control Law" and "Wildlife Protection Law", and formulated a series of laws and regulations such as the "Opinions of the General Office of the State Council on Improving the Ecological Protection Compensation Mechanism", so that the construction of ecological civilization has entered the rule of law. The institutionalized track has promoted the continuous improvement of the quality of the ecological environment. At the same time, we must also see that the construction of the ecological civilization system is not once and for all, there is still a long way to go, and it is necessary to accelerate institutional innovation, increase institutional supply, improve institutional support, strengthen institutional implementation, and make the system a rigid constraint and an untouchable high-voltage line.

The vitality of laws and regulations lies in their implementation. No matter how perfect the system design is, if it is not implemented, it can only be a "toothless tiger." The key to implementing laws and regulations lies in truly grasping them, relying on strict management. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Our ecological and environmental problems have reached a very serious level, and we must take the most severe measures."<sup>1</sup> The rigidity and authority of the system must be firmly established, and no choices, no adaptations, and no discounts must be made. It is necessary to grasp the key minority, strengthen assessment and accountability, strictly use the system management power to govern officials, protect the blue and increase the green, have the right to be responsible, have responsibility must be shouldered, and fail to be held accountable, to ensure that the Party Central Committee's decision-making and deployment on the construction of ecological civilization take root and achieve results. It is necessary to further increase the cost of violating laws and regulations, intensify law enforcement, severely punish acts that damage the ecological environment, pursue the responsibility of those who cause serious consequences according to law, devote great efforts to grasping the negative examples of destroying the ecological environment, never be soft, never make an example, and truly change the situation in which the rule of law in the ecological environment system is not lenient, loose, and soft.

## 6. The global win-win concept of "jointly seeking the road to global ecological civilization construction"

Environmental problems are not a national or regional problem, but a global problem. Comrade Xi Jinping stands at the height of the future of the world and the destiny of mankind,

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 99.

It is proposed that the construction of ecological civilization is related to the common interests of all countries and the future development of mankind, and advocates that the international community work together to jointly solve the contradictions and challenges brought by industrial civilization, and strive to achieve the goal of harmonious coexistence between man and nature. Jointly seeking the construction of global ecological civilization is not only the concept and path for China to achieve sustainable development, but also provides Chinese concepts and solutions for the construction of global ecological civilization.

In the face of ecological and environmental challenges, mankind is a community of common destiny with both prosperity and loss, and no country can be left alone. The construction of ecological civilization is related to the future of mankind, and building a green home is the common dream of mankind. "Protecting the ecological environment, responding to climate change, and maintaining the security of energy resources are common challenges facing the world",<sup>1</sup> which requires all countries in the world to work together in the same boat. Every country and region and every social organization and institution must fulfill its responsibilities and consciously assume the responsibility and obligation to protect and improve the ecological environment. Adhering to the concept of consultation, co-construction and sharing, China actively participates in global environmental governance, actively fulfills its responsibilities and obligations, participates in international cooperation and exchanges, and makes its contribution to building a world with beautiful mountains and rivers, clean and beautiful and promoting sustainable development of the world.

Against the background of the continuous evolution of the concept of global sustainable development and the urgent need for major changes in the global environmental governance system, China has become an important participant, contributor and leader in the construction of global ecological civilization, playing a role in the global governance system consistent with its status as the world's second largest economy and the largest developing country. In the future, we should deeply participate in global environmental governance, enhance China's voice and influence in the global environmental governance system, actively guide the direction of international order change, and form solutions for world environmental protection and sustainable development. We should adhere to environmental friendliness, implement the national strategy of actively addressing climate change, guide international cooperation on climate change, and promote and guide the establishment of a fair, reasonable and win-win global climate governance system. It is necessary to promote the construction of the "Belt and Road", build the "Belt and Road" into a green development road, build an ecological system that respects nature and green development, and let the concept and practice of ecological civilization benefit the people of all countries along the route

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 127.

## Section 3: The practical path of building a beautiful China

"Beautiful China" is not something that can be waited for and shouted, but spelled out and done. To realize this grand blueprint and beautiful vision related to the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and the happy life of the Chinese people, we must firmly grasp the window period when we have the conditions and ability to solve outstanding problems in the ecological environment, accelerate green development, focus on solving outstanding environmental problems, increase the protection of ecosystems, reform the ecological environment supervision system, and promote the construction of a beautiful China to a new level.

### 1. promote green development and realize the transformation of production methods and lifestyles

Green is the symbol of life, the background color of nature, but also the foundation of a better life and the expectation of the people. Green development is an important part of the new development concept and an important part of building a beautiful China. To achieve green development, we must change the traditional economic development model, adjust the industrial structure and energy structure, and improve energy efficiency.

Establish and improve a green and low-carbon circular economic system. The emergence of China's environmental problems is closely related to the mode of economic development, and accelerating the establishment and improvement of a green and low-carbon circular economic system is the root cause of the pollution problem. This requires the establishment of green production methods, reducing resource and energy consumption, reducing pollution emissions, and reducing ecological damage. It is necessary to do a good job in natural capital accounting and ecological service valuation, lay a solid foundation for transforming green mountains into gold and silver mountains, and internalize ecological prices as growth drivers. Deeply implement supply-side structural reform, do a good job in the ecological, circular and low-carbon transformation and development of traditional industries, accelerate the ultra-low emission transformation of high-emission industries such as thermal power and steel, implement the emission transformation of heavy polluting industries to meet standards, and at the same time promote the clean utilization of coal and accelerate the solution of wind, solar and hydropower consumption problems. Develop ecological and environmental service industries, promote new business models such as energy-saving and water-saving service industries, cultivate and expand green environmental protection industries with new energy, electric vehicles and other ecological industries and products as the main body, and develop ecological organic agriculture.

Build a market-oriented green technology innovation system. Science and technology are the primary productive forces;

Green technology innovation is a fundamental solution to resource and environmental constraints, and an important focus for promoting the construction of ecological civilization. To build a market-oriented green technology innovation system, it is necessary to "give full play to the market's guiding role in the direction of technology research and development, route selection, factor prices, and the allocation of various innovative factors, so that the market can truly play a decisive role in the allocation of innovation resources."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to promote green technology research and development in the face of market demand, design technology research routes, and promote the transformation of green technology; give full play to the main position and role of enterprises in green technology innovation, truly make enterprises the main body of green science and technology innovation decision-making, research and development investment, scientific research organization and achievement transformation, accelerate the cultivation and formation of a number of internationally competitive green innovation leading enterprises; improve the institutional mechanisms and supporting policies for promoting green science and technology innovation. The government should play a better role, increase investment in basic research in the field of green technology, do a good job in the risk of scientific and technological innovation, improve the intellectual property protection system, and protect the innovation rights and interests of enterprises; build a green technology exchange platform between scientific research institutions and enterprises, and break through the obstruction of green technology from laboratories to enterprises to markets; accelerate the development of green finance, and support financial institutions to increase investment and financing services for green technology.

Promote a comprehensive resource conservation and recycling system. Saving resources is China's basic national policy. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "change the traditional production mode and consumption mode of 'mass production, large consumption and large amount of emissions', so that resources, production, consumption and other factors are matched and adapted, so as to achieve the coordination and unity of economic and social development and ecological environmental protection, and harmonious coexistence between man and nature."<sup>2</sup> To promote the comprehensive conservation and recycling of resources and build a resource-saving society, it is necessary to strengthen the dual control system of total energy consumption and intensity, improve legislation, strictly implement the "Energy Conservation Law of the People's Republic of China", and increase the intensity of punishment for violations; strict tax system, levy high taxes on resource-consuming extensive enterprises, and regulate emission behavior through tax means; improve market-oriented energy-saving and emission-reduction mechanisms, implement tiered electricity, water and gas prices, widen the tiered price gap, and force enterprises to save resources; Gradually improve energy efficiency standards, update energy efficiency labels, do a good job in market orientation, encourage consumers to choose energy-efficient products, and gradually realize the replacement and upgrading of consumer products.

Advocate a simple and moderate, green and low-carbon lifestyle. Green development methods and lifestyles are major choices for fundamental ecological governance.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 466.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: "Pushing China's Ecological Civilization Construction to a New Level", *Qiushi*, No. 3, 2019.

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "we must advocate a simple and moderate, green and low-carbon lifestyle, and oppose extravagant waste and unreasonable consumption."<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to strengthen publicity and education on ecological civilization, organize and carry out green and low-carbon concept publicity activities and science popularization activities, create a public opinion atmosphere for a green and low-carbon life, and enhance the people's consciousness of thought and action to live a green and low-carbon life; strengthen citizens' awareness of the environment, guide residents to change their consumption concepts, and advocate thrift and green and low-carbon consumption. Starting from the small details of life, advocate water saving, energy saving and electricity saving, encourage residents to use environmental protection products, advocate reuse and recycling, and actively advocate green and low-carbon travel; widely carry out activities to create energy-saving institutions, green families, green schools, and green communities, and force the green transformation of production methods through the green revolution of lifestyle.

## 2. focus on solving prominent environmental problems and curbing the spread of pollution

Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "Environmental protection and governance should focus on solving environmental problems that harm people's health and highlight environmental problems",<sup>2</sup> starting from the most prominent things that affect people's lives, focusing on problems, aiming at "pain points", and winning the battle against pollution.

Implement air pollution prevention and control and win the battle for blue skies. Winning the battle to defend the blue sky is an important part of the decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way. In response to the prevention and control of air pollution, as early as September 2013, the State Council issued and implemented the Action Plan for the Prevention and Control of Air Pollution. On July 3, 2018, the State Council issued the Three-Year Action Plan for Winning the Blue Sky Defense War, which clarifies that by 2020, the total emissions of sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxides will be reduced by more than 15% compared with 2015. The concentration of PM 2.5 in cities at the prefecture level and above decreased by more than 18% compared with 2015, the proportion of days with good air quality in cities at the prefecture level and above reached 80%, and the proportion of days with severe pollution and above decreased by more than 25% compared with 2015, highlighting China's determination to resolutely win the battle for blue skies.

Achieve the goal of winning the battle for blue skies,

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Promoting China's Ecological Civilization Construction to a New Level", *Qiushi*, No. 3, 2019.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on the Construction of Socialist Ecological Civilization", Central Literature Press, 2017 Edition, p. 84.

It is necessary to adhere to the principle of paying equal attention to both symptomatic and root causes and special treatment, coordination of normal governance and emergency emission reduction, local pollution control and regional cooperation promoting each other, and take multiple measures at the same time, multi-place linkage, and the whole society acts together. It is necessary to actively carry out cooperation in the control of air pollution in the Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei region and its surrounding areas, the Yangtze River Delta, and the Fenwei Plain, focus on the four key areas of coal, motor vehicles, industry and dust, and concentrate on the implementation of measures to reduce coal burning, control vehicles and reduce oil, control pollution and reduce emissions, and clean dust reduction; accelerate the development of clean energy and new energy, increase the consumption of renewable energy, and solve the problems of abandoning water, wind and light; improve building energy efficiency and promote green buildings; optimize the transportation structure and improve oil quality. Reduce emissions from mobile sources.

Implement comprehensive management of water pollution in river basins and sea areas. The protection of the water environment concerns the vital interests of the people. At present, problems such as poor water environment quality, heavy damage to water ecology and many hidden environmental dangers in some areas of China are very prominent, affecting and harming people's health. In order to effectively increase the prevention and control of water pollution and ensure national water security, in 2015 China issued the "Water Pollution Prevention and Control Action Plan", that is, the "Water Ten Rules", adhere to the problem-oriented, heavy blows, heavy punishment of pollution. A total of 26 specific requirements for 6 categories of main indicators were put forward to fully ensure the safety of the water ecological environment, especially from the aspects of ensuring the safety of drinking water sources, strengthening the protection of drinking water sources, preventing and controlling groundwater pollution, deepening the prevention and control of pollution in key river basins, strengthening the protection of good water bodies, and rectifying urban black and odorous water bodies, so as to ensure that all measures are stable, accurate and ruthless, and achieve practical results.

To carry out the prevention and control of water pollution, it is necessary to do a good job in key prevention and control and coordinated prevention and control. The first is to speed up the completion of the shortcomings of urban sewage collection and treatment facilities, and speed up the treatment of black and odorous water bodies. The second is to promote the comprehensive improvement of key river basins and coastal sea areas. Collaborative management of surface water and groundwater, fresh water and seawater, large rivers and small ditches. It is necessary to do a good job in tackling tough problems in the protection and restoration of the Yangtze River, jointly grasp large-scale protection, and refrain from large-scale development. It is necessary to do a good job in protecting water sources and comprehensively improve the level of water quality security in drinking water sources. The third is to give full play to the advantages of the river chief system and lake chief system with Chinese characteristics, strengthen the implementation of responsibilities, and strive to ensure that rivers and lakes are realized from "no one cares" to "people manage" and "follow" Can't control it" to "manage well", from "no one governs" to "cures well."."

Strengthen soil pollution control and restoration, and strengthen the control of agricultural non-point source pollution. Soil is the material basis for sustainable economic and social development, soil pollution directly affects the growth of crops, is related to the safety of rice bags, vegetable baskets, water tanks, and the health of the people.

In response to the overall situation of serious soil environmental pollution in China, in May 2016, the State Council issued the Action Plan for the Prevention and Control of Soil Pollution, known as the "Ten Soil Articles", which identified ten "hard tasks" such as strengthening the protection of unpolluted soil, strengthening the supervision of soil pollution sources, and carrying out soil pollution control and restoration. On January 1, 2019, the Soil Pollution Prevention and Control Law was officially implemented, the subject of protection was further clarified, and the legal accountability for illegal acts of polluted soil was more stringent.

Soil pollution control and restoration should grasp the key points, focusing on the prevention and control of soil pollution on cultivated land and construction land, and strive to ensure the safety of agricultural products and the health of the living environment. Organize and carry out pilot demonstrations of soil pollution control in typical areas for different pollution levels and different pollution types, gradually establish a soil pollution control and restoration technology system, and promote soil pollution control and restoration in a planned and step-by-step manner. Complete soil pollution prevention and control management systems, clarify the authority and responsibilities of relevant departments for soil pollution prevention and control, strengthen the division of labor and coordination among departments, and establish and complete soil environmental management systems in which environmental protection departments uniformly supervise and manage, relevant departments divide labor and responsibility, governments at all levels are uniformly organized, and relevant parties jointly participate. Strengthen the control of agricultural non-point source pollution, promote zero growth in the use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides, increase the recovery rate of agricultural film, and accelerate the full resource utilization of crop straw and livestock and poultry breeding waste.

Actively participate in global environmental governance and implement emission reduction commitments. As early as 2015, China promised that by 2020, carbon dioxide emissions per unit of GDP will be reduced by 40%~45% compared with 2005, and non-fossil energy will account for about 15% of primary energy consumption. CO<sub>2</sub> emissions will peak around 2030 and aim to peak as soon as possible. In fact, China's carbon dioxide emissions per unit of GDP in 2017 fell by 46% compared with 2005, which has exceeded the upper limit target of reducing carbon intensity by 40%~45% by 2020,<sup>1</sup> and the carbon emission peak target is also expected to be completed ahead of schedule. China has also taken the lead in issuing China's National Plan for Implementing the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, implementing the National Climate Change Plan (2014-2020), and depositing the instrument of ratification of the Paris Agreement with the United Nations. In 2017, it initiated the establishment of the "Belt and Road" International Alliance for Green Development together with international agencies such as the United Nations Environment Programme. The elimination of ozone-depleting substances in China accounts for more than 50% of the total number of developing countries, becoming the country that has contributed the most to the protection of the global ozone layer.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ministry of Ecology and Environment: 2018 Annual Report on China's Policies and Actions to Address Climate Change, November 2018.

It is necessary to adhere to environmental friendliness, cooperate to address climate change, take the adoption of the Paris Agreement as an opportunity to promote the early entry into force of the Agreement as soon as possible, and at the same time adhere to the principles of common but differentiated responsibilities, fairness and respective capabilities, and steadily advance follow-up negotiations in accordance with the mandate of the Paris Conference. It is necessary to promote the construction of the green "Belt and Road", deepen environmental protection cooperation among countries along the route, enrich cooperation mechanisms and exchange platforms, and comprehensively promote the greening process of the "five links." We should adhere to green and low-carbon, promote the international community to strengthen cooperation and joint efforts, build an ecological system that respects nature and green development, and build a beautiful and clean world.

### 3. accelerate the restoration of ecological environmental protection

China's ecological and environmental contradictions have a historical accumulation process, and it is impossible to expect complete changes in the short term. In this regard, it is necessary to establish a long-term combat concept, vigorously implement ecological protection and restoration projects, and gradually restore the overall function of the ecosystem.

Build ecological corridors and biodiversity conservation networks. Ecological corridors have various functions such as protecting biodiversity, preventing soil erosion, filtering pollutants, preventing wind and sand fixation, and regulating floods. Biodiversity is the material foundation for human survival, an important prerequisite for sustainable and stable economic and social development, and a reliable guarantee for ecological security and food security. In recent years, China has attached great importance to the construction of ecological corridors and biodiversity conservation, actively implemented the Convention on Biological Diversity and its protocols, and more than 90% of terrestrial natural ecosystem types and 89% of wild animals and plants under national key protection have been protected in nature reserves.

To build ecological corridors and biodiversity conservation networks, we must adhere to the "two-legged" walk of the country and the region. It is necessary to promote not only national-scale ecological corridors based on the top-level design of the country, but also promote the construction of regional ecological corridors such as the Yangtze River Economic Belt. At the same time, from the perspective of building a community with a shared future for mankind, we should build cross-border ecological corridors such as the "Belt and Road." It is necessary to strengthen biodiversity investigation and observation and scientific research, improve the network of nature reserves, strengthen the supervision of biodiversity conservation, increase publicity, and promote the participation of the whole society in biodiversity conservation.

Delineate three control lines of ecological protection, basic farmland and urban development. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China,



The Party Central Committee has repeatedly proposed to build a spatial planning system. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly stated that it is necessary to "complete the delineation of three control lines: ecological protection red lines, permanent basic farmland, and urban development boundaries." The three control lines are delineated and guarded, aiming to deal with the spatial pattern relationship between life, production and ecology, and promote economic and social development to adapt to the carrying capacity of resources and environment by building a scientific and reasonable pattern of urbanization, agricultural development and ecological security.

At present, China has basically established a redline system for ecological protection. The delineation of ecological protection redlines is steadily advancing in accordance with the deployment of the Party Central Committee and is expected to be fully completed by the end of 2020. The delineation of permanent basic farmland has been completed overall; The pilot work of delineating urban development boundaries has progressed in an orderly manner. Delineating the "three lines" is the first step, and it is not just a matter of finishing things, but holding the "three lines" is the key. It is necessary to strictly implement and effectively supervise, form a corresponding management mechanism and supervision policy, and increase the degree of binding force. It is necessary to strengthen refined and efficient management. Due to the wide range of "three lines", it is necessary to consider the integration and synergy with various policies such as land development and government assessment, and do a good job in the coordination of various policies to ensure the "three lines" authority.

Carry out land greening actions and promote the comprehensive management of landscapes, rivers, forests, lakes and grasslands. Carrying out land greening actions is an important measure to build an ecological civilization and a beautiful China. It is necessary to continue to carry forward the Chinese nation's love for trees: the good tradition of planting trees and protecting trees, mobilizing the whole country, the whole people taking action, and the whole society participating together, continuing to promote the comprehensive treatment of desertification, rocky desertification and soil erosion, continuing to do a good job in land greening, sand prevention and control, and soil erosion control, continuing to promote the construction of forest cities and forest villages, focusing on improving the living environment, and achieving evergreen and evergreen in all seasons. There are flowers in the season, and the promotion of land greening continues to achieve tangible results.

To make overall plans to promote the comprehensive management of landscapes, forests, fields, lakes and grasslands, it is necessary to plan from the perspective of system engineering and the overall situation. Promote the pilot project of ecological protection and restoration of landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses, comprehensively promote the monitoring and informatization of water and soil conservation, and improve the social management, public service capacity and industry development level of water and soil conservation. Strengthen wetland protection and restoration, ensure that the existing wetland area is not reduced, implement a wetland protection target responsibility system, strictly supervise wetland use, and prepare wetland protection and restoration project plans. Improve the protection system of natural forests, and expand the area of returning farmland to forest and grassland.

Establish a market-oriented and diversified ecological compensation mechanism. Ecological compensation is one of the important ways to transform "green water and green mountains" into "golden mountains and silver mountains", and it is also an important means for China's poverty alleviation.

Through ecological compensation, ecological resources can be enriched, the production and lifestyle of ecological protected areas can be transformed, the income channels of farmers and herdsmen can be broadened, and ecological products and services can be effectively increased.

In 2018, nine departments, including the National Development and Reform Commission, the Ministry of Finance, the Ministry of Natural Resources, and the Ministry of Ecology and Environment, jointly issued the Notice on the Action Plan for Establishing a Market-oriented and Diversified Ecological Protection Compensation Mechanism, which put forward nine key tasks, including improving the compensation system for resource development, developing ecological industries, improving green labels, and establishing a green benefit-sharing mechanism. To establish a market-oriented ecological compensation mechanism, it is necessary to highlight the leading role of the market, clarify market access rules, market competition rules and market trading rules, and establish market-oriented ecological compensation standards. At the same time, the government's regulatory functions should be in place, maintain market order, resist speculative transactions in ecological compensation, and effectively play an important role in ecological compensation. To establish and improve the ecological compensation mechanism for multiple benevolences, it is also necessary to start from the aspects of the diversity of participants in ecological compensation and the diversity of compensation standards, allow non-governmental organizations and funds to participate in it, innovate ecological products, and use various methods such as kind, technology, and projects to promote ecological compensation work.

#### 4. Reform and improve the ecological environment supervision and assessment system

To promote green development and build an ecological civilization, we should focus on establishing rules and regulations and improving the institutional system of ecological civilization. Through strengthening the overall design and organization and implementation of ecological civilization construction, we should strive to break down the institutional barriers that restrict the construction of ecological civilization, continuously improve the ecological environment management system, and form an institutional guarantee for building a beautiful China.

Establish state-owned natural resources asset management and natural ecology supervision institutions. For a period of time, an important reason why the overall deterioration trend of China's ecological environment has not been fundamentally curbed is that the ecological management system cannot meet the needs of the objective situation, which is prominently manifested in the overlapping of functions, resulting in problems such as the dispersion of law enforcement subjects and monitoring forces, and multiple law enforcement in the field of environmental protection.

The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China proposed to strengthen the overall design and organizational leadership of ecological civilization construction, and set up state-owned natural resource asset management and natural ecological supervision agencies. The deployment of this institutional reform is in line with the needs of the protection of the "community of life" system of landscapes, forests, lakes and grasses, and reflects the comprehensive ecosystem and comprehensive supervision, which can overcome the problems of multiple supervision and "fragmented" supervision in the past.

At present, the reform of the national ecological civilization system has achieved remarkable results, and the functions and personnel of the Ministry of Natural Resources and the Ministry of Ecology and Environment have been adjusted in place, and it is necessary to further rationalize their functions, divide labor and cooperation, and promote the formation of a governance pattern of unified management of natural resource property rights, effective supervision of the ecological environment and orderly management and control of land and space as soon as possible.

Build an all-round development and protection system for land and space. Building a land space development and protection system, improving supporting policies for main functional areas, and establishing a nature reserve system with national parks as the main body are major measures to follow the laws of nature and rationally develop and utilize nature. The strategy of main functional areas focuses on the scientific layout of production space, living space and ecological space, balances the contradictions between population, resources and environment, and improves the efficiency of resource utilization, which is the fundamental way to solve the problems in China's land space development. The establishment of the national park system is to strengthen the protection of natural ecosystems, highlight the strict, holistic and systematic protection of natural ecosystems, and protect the most vulnerable, beautiful and most in need of protection.

The key to implementing the main functional area strategy lies in strictly implementing the main functional area planning, realizing the multi-level decomposition and implementation of the national, provincial, municipal and county levels, strictly guarding the bottom line for prohibited and restricted development areas, and at the same time implementing accountability mechanisms to punish acts that undermine the delineation of national main functional areas. On September 26, 2017, the General Office of the CPC Central Committee and the General Office of the State Council issued and implemented the Overall Plan for the Establishment of the National Park System, which reasonably divided the central and local powers, established a coordinated management mechanism between the central and local governments of national parks with clear subjects, clear responsibilities and mutual cooperation, and clarified that other constructive activities such as development are prohibited except for the transformation of indigenous people's production and living facilities and natural tourism, scientific research, education and tourism that do not harm the ecosystem. The establishment of a nature reserve system with national parks as the main body is a complex reform task, which requires strengthening the top-level design, introducing an overall plan for the national nature conservation system as soon as possible, and building a national protection network.

Establish a governance system with the participation of the government, enterprises, society and the public. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "The construction of ecological civilization is closely related to everyone, and everyone should be a practitioner and promoter.<sup>1</sup> The construction of ecological civilization should shift from a government-led situation to a model of "government responsibility, enterprise implementation, social coordination, and public participation."

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 396.

And form a pattern of shared responsibility and participation of the government, enterprises, society and citizens. Only by cooperating and interacting with each other and supervising and restraining each other can governance entities jointly protect the ecological environment.

With the joint participation of multiple subjects, it is necessary to clarify the responsibilities of each subject in the construction of ecological civilization. Give play to the functions of various government departments, promote the implementation of environmental public welfare projects, and improve environmental supervision mechanisms. Give full play to the role of the market and guide enterprises to implement ecological projects. Actively cultivate the strength of social organizations, stimulate the vitality of social organizations, promote social participation, effectively guide the role of social organizations in the provision of environmental protection volunteer services, make up for the lack or inefficiency of government supply, and improve the level of ecological environment governance. In addition, it is necessary to further deepen reforms in the transformation of government functions, the cultivation of corporate environmental awareness, and the participation of multiple channels in society, and continuously improve China's ecological civilization governance system.

Reform and improve the ecological environment inspection, assessment and evaluation system. Reforming and improving the supervision and assessment system of ecological civilization is an important guarantee to ensure that the construction of ecological civilization achieves practical results. As a major institutional arrangement of the Party Central Committee and the State Council on promoting the construction of ecological civilization and environmental protection since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the central environmental protection inspectorate links environmental issues with political achievements, liberates environmental protection from the siege of local protectionism, and provides a strong driving force for fighting the battle against pollution. Central environmental protection inspectors should strengthen their authority, strengthen their strength, develop in depth, grasp the principle of "being strict, accurate, and to the point", effectively give play to the supervisory role of the long-term mechanism of environmental protection inspection, and further increase the intensity and intensity of environmental protection inspection; improve the overall planning of the environmental protection inspection system, further expand the scope of supervision to all fields of production and life, and achieve pollution prevention on a global scale.

The assessment of ecological civilization construction is an important basis for the reward, punishment and promotion of leading groups and leading cadres at all levels, and an important part of the performance assessment of cadres of party and government organs in the new era. In December 2016, the General Office of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China and the General Office of the State Council issued the Measures for the Evaluation and Assessment of Ecological Civilization Construction Goals, after which the National Development and Reform Commission, the National Bureau of Statistics, the Ministry of Ecology and Environment, and the Central Organization Department formulated the Green Development Index System and the Ecological Civilization Construction Assessment Target System. It is necessary to refine the responsibilities of the main functional areas of the region, further improve the assessment system, and implement the assessment work.

## Chapter XIII: A Strong Guarantee for National Rejuvenation

Safeguarding national security, strengthening military support, and realizing the complete reunification of the motherland are the inevitable requirements for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and are also a strong guarantee for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has grasped the overall strategic situation of realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, conducted in-depth theoretical and practical explorations, creatively put forward the adherence to the overall concept of national security, established and formed Xi Jinping Thought on strengthening the military, profoundly expounded the basic position and major principles of adhering to "one country, two systems" and promoting the great cause of the complete reunification of the motherland, and raised the CPC's understanding of the law of national security, the law of strengthening the people's army and the practical law of "one country, two systems" to a new height: The new realm has become an important part of Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era.

### Section 1: Adhere to the overall concept of national security

Adhering to the overall concept of national security is put forward by Comrade Xi Jinping based on the new characteristics and new trends of the development of the national security situation, on the basis of better coordinating the overall situation at home and abroad, security and development, in order to better solve the new problems and challenges facing national security. The overall concept of national security profoundly reveals the essence of China's national security, scientifically answers how as a large developing socialist country can solve the common security problems faced in the process of development and the special security problems faced by itself, and realize the party's historic leap in national security theory.

It is the latest achievement of China's national security theory, which provides a program of action and scientific guide for better safeguarding national security in the new era.

### 1. national security is a top priority

National security is the basic prerequisite for the survival and development of the country, and the fundamental guarantee for ensuring that the Party will never degenerate, that the red rivers and mountains will never change color, and that the process of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation will not be slowed down or interrupted.

Since the founding of New China, the party has always attached great importance to the issue of national security, always regarded safeguarding national security as a basic task of the party and the state, accumulated rich experience in practice, formed national security thinking in different periods, and provided a strong guarantee for safeguarding the fundamental interests of the people of all ethnic groups and promoting the historic achievements of the cause of the party and the country. In the early days after the founding of New China, the main characteristic of national security was to safeguard sovereignty and security. Comrade Mao Zedong regarded defending the newborn regime, ensuring national independence, and safeguarding national sovereignty and territorial integrity as the primary tasks of safeguarding national security, and made full use of the characteristics and main contradictions of the world pattern at that time to effectively safeguard and improve the national security environment. In the new period of reform and opening up, the main feature of national security is to maintain development security. Comrade Deng Xiaoping pointed out that peace and development are the two major themes in today's world, and national security should escort economic construction. We must adhere to the four basic principles and adhere to "stability above all", not only to ensure the socialist direction of reform and opening up, but also to create a stable domestic and international environment for socialist modernization. In view of the complex and ever-changing regional environment, Comrade Jiang Zemin put forward a new security concept of "mutual trust, mutual benefit, equality, and cooperation." Comrade Hu Jintao stressed the need to examine national security issues from a broader perspective, put forward the concept of peaceful development, and promote the building of a harmonious world of lasting peace and common prosperity.

Socialism with Chinese characteristics has entered a new era, the connotation and extension of China's national security are richer than at any time in history, the field of time and space is broader than at any time in history, internal and external factors are more complex than at any time in history, and various foreseeable and unforeseeable security risks and challenges are unprecedented. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Enhancing the awareness of adversity and being prepared for danger in times of peace is a major principle that we must always adhere to in administering the party and the country."

Our party should consolidate its ruling position, unite and lead the people to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, and ensure national security as the top priority.”<sup>1</sup>

From the perspective of the external environment, the world today is in a major change unprecedented in a century, and the instability and uncertainty it faces are becoming increasingly prominent. Great development brings great changes, and great changes promote great adjustments. The trend of peace, development, cooperation and win-win results of the times has become stronger, but in the changing world, dangerous shoals and reefs have become prominent, and various risks and challenges have accelerated the accumulation. First, the complexity is prominent. The momentum of world economic growth is insufficient, protectionism and unilateralism are becoming increasingly serious, competition among major countries is becoming increasingly fierce, regional hot spots are emerging one after another, non-traditional security threats such as terrorism, cyber security, and climate change are complex and severe, and continue to spread, and various security risks are transmitted and superimposed, accumulating and escalating. Second, the transnational nature is prominent. The security shortcomings of any country will lead to a large influx of external risks, forming a security risk depression. The accumulation of security risks in any country to a certain extent will spill over into regional or even global security issues. Third, diversity is outstanding. Old problems have emerged under the means of new technologies, and security threats in new fields such as the deep sea, polar regions, outer space, and the Internet are constantly breeding. Fourth, the linkage is outstanding. Security issues are closely linked to political, economic, cultural, religious and ethnic issues, and traditional and non-traditional security threats are intertwined. Various security issues are intertwined and interact with each other, creating a fission effect. The probability of small risks evolving into large risks, individual risks into comprehensive risks, local risks into systemic risks, economic risks into socio-political risks, and international risks into domestic risks has increased significantly. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Change will give rise to new opportunities, but the process of change is often full of risks and challenges, and mankind once again stands at a crossroads."<sup>2</sup>

Judging from its own situation, China is in a new historical position, and the connotation and extension of national security have undergone profound changes. At present, China is in a critical period of development and transformation from a big country to a strong country. This is not only a period of historical convergence for the realization of the "two centenary goals", but also a period of mutual agitation that is synchronously intertwined with the great changes in the world that have not been seen in a century; it is not only a period of important strategic opportunities, but also a period of highlighting major security risks; it is not only a period of shaping global security, but also a critical period for improving capabilities, making up for shortcomings, and strengthening weaknesses.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, page 200.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "Working Together to Create a Better Future – Keynote Speech at the APEC Business Leaders Summit," People's Daily, November 18, 2018.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is by no means easy and can be achieved by banging gongs and drums.<sup>1</sup> In modern times, the process of the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation has been interrupted many times, leaving us with a profound warning. Historical opportunities are fleeting, and risks and challenges are everywhere. The road ahead cannot be smooth, and the closer we get to the goal, the greater the resistance and risk pressure to move forward. In the face of the treacherous international situation, the complex and sensitive surrounding environment, the arduous and arduous tasks of reform, development, and stability, and the requirement of decisively building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way and marching toward the goal of the second centenary struggle, in order to win the initiative in the era of profound changes and win victory in the great struggle, it is necessary to grasp the new issues facing national security from a longer-term strategic perspective and constantly open up a new situation in national security.

In this context, the overall concept of national security came into being. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, China's national security work system and mechanism have been continuously improved, the national security legal system has gradually taken shape, the national security strategy has been continuously improved, and the national security capability has been significantly improved, which fundamentally lies in the strong leadership of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core and the strategic guidance of the overall national security concept.

## 2. Deeply grasp the overall concept of national security

On April 15, 2014, at the first plenary meeting of the Central National Security Commission, Comrade Xi Jinping put forward for the first time the major strategic thinking of the overall national security concept, emphasizing that the overall national security concept should be adhered to and the road of national security with Chinese characteristics should be followed. "Adhering to the overall concept of national security" was also written into the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China as the basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and was written into the revised Constitution of the Communist Party of China. This is the first time in the history of the Communist Party of China that the theory of national security has been included in the report of the party congress, and it is also the first time that the theory of national security has been taken as an important part of the party's guiding ideology. Adhering to the overall national security concept is not only an important part of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, but also a practical requirement for implementing Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

The philosophical implications of the overall view of national security. The overall is a concept, emphasizing the comprehensive and systematic nature of national security.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 12.



The overall emphasis is on "general security", which includes traditional security such as political, territorial and military, as well as non-traditional security such as economy, culture, society, network and ecology; includes both the current security field and new fields such as space, deep sea, polar and biological fields; and includes both physical and human security. In addition, the overall emphasis is on comprehensiveness rather than comprehensiveness, and security issues must not be generalized, and security boundaries must be grasped well. It is not feasible to talk about security without basic national conditions, security without the international environment, and security without development.

The overall is a state that emphasizes the relativity and sustainability of national security. Safety is relative, risk factors are always present, there is no absolute security. Overall security emphasizes maintaining a state of relative freedom from danger and internal and external threats. It is necessary to base ourselves on the present and the long term; we must base ourselves on the dynamic perception and dynamic assessment of the situation, and on the foresight of the medium- and long-term development trend; we must have a goal-oriented general idea, general framework, and general layout, and be good at adjusting the strategy and tactics of national security in a timely manner according to the new situation, new problems, and new tasks.

The overall is a methodology, emphasizing the scientific integration of national security. The overall goal is to build a national security system that integrates security in various fields and properly respond to various complex security challenges. In seeking overall national security, it is necessary to advance as a whole while highlighting key points; stress both principles and strategies; stress both needs and capabilities; and stress both safeguarding and reshaping. In particular, we must always grasp national security in the overall situation of the party and the country, fully mobilize the enthusiasm of all parties in all fields, perform their respective duties and work together, so as to unite a strong joint force.

The connotation and extension of the overall national security concept. The summary of the connotation and extension of national security in the overall national security concept can be summarized into five major elements and five pairs of relationships.

The five major elements are to take people's security as the purpose, political security as the foundation, economic security as the foundation, military, cultural and social security as the guarantee, and international security as the basis. Taking people's security as the purpose is to always put people's security in the highest position, adhere to the people-oriented and people-oriented, adhere to national security for the people and rely on the people, and consolidate the mass foundation of national security. Taking political security as the foundation means unswervingly adhering to the party's leadership and the socialist system with Chinese characteristics, putting institutional security and regime security in the first place, and providing political guarantees for national security. Basing on economic security is to ensure that the country's economic development is not encroached upon, promote sustained, healthy and stable economic development, improve the country's economic strength, and provide a material basis for national security.

Taking military, cultural and social security as the guarantee means paying attention to the new situations and problems facing these fields, following the security laws in different fields, establishing countermeasures to consolidate the foundation and turn dangers into disasters, and providing hard and soft power guarantees for safeguarding national security. Relying on promoting international security means unswervingly following the path of peaceful development, paying attention to safeguarding national interests, while paying attention to safeguarding common security and building a community with a shared future. These five aspects jointly support the overall structure of the national security system and determine the basic orientation of the national security path with Chinese characteristics.

The five-pair relationship is to attach importance to both external and internal security, emphasizing the interconnection and mutual influence of external security and internal security; attaching importance to both homeland security and national security, and emphasizing the organic unity of homeland security and national security; attaching importance to both traditional and non-traditional security, emphasizing that traditional security threats and non-traditional security threats affect each other and may be transformed into each other under certain conditions; and attaching importance to development issues. It also attaches importance to security issues, emphasizing that development and security are two sides of the same coin, that development is the foundation of security, and that security is the condition for development, so that a rich country can strengthen its troops and defend its country; it attaches importance to both its own security and common security, and stresses that the security of China and the world in the context of globalization are inseparable.

In short, national security is an inseparable security system, each element has its own focus, and each element is interrelated and affects each other. The five major elements and the five pairs of relationships accurately reflect the internal logic of China's national security, accurately reflect the dialectical, comprehensive and systematic concept of national security, and profoundly reveal the principle requirements and rich connotations of the overall national security concept. The overall concept of national security is the concentrated application and latest embodiment of Marxist positions and views and methods in the field of national security, which is both epistemological and methodological, embodies a high degree of unity between people's security, political security, and the supremacy of national interests, embodies a high degree of unity in historical thinking, world vision and the spirit of the times, and embodies a high degree of unity in theory, practice, and system.

### 3. Safeguard and shape national security with Chinese characteristics

National security with Chinese characteristics should be both safeguarded and shaped, and shaping is a higher-level and more forward-looking safeguard.

It is necessary to strengthen follow-up, study, and judgment of the national security situation, strive to grasp the law in the changing situation, seek advantages and avoid disadvantages in chaos, and strive for the initiative in struggle. It is necessary to strengthen strategic planning, persist in planning the layout with global thinking, and shape an overall favorable national security strategic situation.

Uphold the party's absolute leadership over national security work. This is the fundamental principle for doing a good job in national security work and the fundamental guarantee for safeguarding national security and social stability. "Absolute" means unconditional and without dead ends, that is, at any time and under any circumstances, take the party's banner as the banner, the party's direction as the direction, and the party's will as the will, strengthen the "four consciousness", strengthen the "four self-confidence", and achieve "two safeguards." Adhere to the party's overall control of the overall situation, coordinate all parties, resolutely safeguard the centralized, unified, efficient and authoritative national security leadership system, and fully implement the major strategic deployment of national security. Give full play to the role of the Central National Security Commission in coordinating national security affairs, do a good job in implementing national security principles and policies, improve the national security work mechanism, and focus on improving the party's strategic ability to grasp the star situation and plan for development. Conscientiously implementing the national security responsibility system is an important institutional guarantee for strengthening the party's leadership over national security work. Party committees (leading party groups) at all levels are the main body responsible for safeguarding national security, and should follow the decisions and arrangements of the Central National Security Commission, properly manage national security affairs in their respective regions and departments, lawfully exercise the functions and powers entrusted by national security laws and regulations, and ensure that they have a responsibility to defend the land and fulfill their responsibilities.

Complete and improve the national security system. It is necessary to improve national security strategies and policies, improve national security systems and mechanisms, strengthen the organization and coordination of national security work, and establish and improve cross-departmental and cross-regional joint work mechanisms. Improve the national security system, raise the level of national security rule of law, and make full use of legal means to preserve national security. On the basis of implementing the National Security Law and promulgating and implementing national security laws and regulations such as the Counter-espionage Law, the Counter-Terrorism Law, the Foreign NGO Domestic Activities Management Law, the Cybersecurity Law, and the Nuclear Security Law, accelerate the formation of a set of national security legal systems with Chinese characteristics that are based on the basic national conditions, reflect the characteristics of the times, adapt to the strategic security environment, have coordinated content, strict procedures, complete supporting facilities, and effective operation.

Safeguard national security in key areas. The key areas are the main position and the main battlefield for safeguarding national security. It is necessary to give prominence to security work in various aspects, such as political security, economic security, homeland security, social security, network security, biological security, and the security of overseas interests.

Persist in ensuring political security as the first priority, firmly hold the soul of political security, tighten the string of political security at all times, and promote national security work in key areas with political security as the guide; persist in administering the party strictly in an all-round way, firmly grasp the leadership, management and discourse power of ideological work, strictly guard against and resist "color revolutions", and ensure the safety of the party's governance; adhere to the basic economic system of socialism with Chinese characteristics without wavering, fight the battle of preventing and defusing financial risks, and resolutely guard the bottom line of not occurring systemic financial risks. Consolidate the foundation of economic security; strengthen the construction of border, coastal and air defense, crack down in depth on the "three forces", resolutely guard against "Xinjiang independence" and "Tibet independence", resolutely thwart any form of separatist attempts for "Taiwan independence", safeguard the prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao, and build a solid wall of homeland security; improve the three-dimensional social security prevention and control system, severely crack down on violent terrorist forces, properly respond to major natural disasters and emergencies, and vigorously promote the construction of a safe China; earnestly safeguard the sovereignty and security of cyberspace, and strengthen cyberspace governance in accordance with the law. Continuously enhance cybersecurity defense and deterrence capabilities; incorporate biosecurity into the national security system, systematically plan the establishment of a national biosecurity risk prevention and control and governance system, and comprehensively improve national biosecurity governance capabilities; adhere to peaceful development, take the path of common security, form a strong security guarantee system for overseas interests, and truly safeguard the security of overseas interests.

Strive to prevent and resolve major risks. Adhere to the basic judgment that China's development is still in a period of important strategic opportunities and will be for a long time, enhance the awareness of risk prevention and control, adhere to bottom-line thinking, keep pace with the times to understand and grasp various actual and potential major risks, guard the bottom line of no systemic and subversive risks, and look at the worst and strive for the best results. It is necessary to be highly vigilant against both "black swan" events and "gray rhino" incidents; it is necessary to have the first hand in preventing risks and also have high tactics to deal with and defuse risks and challenges; and it is necessary to fight a prepared battle to prevent and resist risks, and also to fight a strategic initiative battle to turn dangers into opportunities and turn crises into opportunities. Improve risk prevention and control capabilities, improve risk prevention and control mechanisms, grasp key points, make up for shortcomings, strengths and weaknesses, strictly prevent superimposed and upgraded risk transmission, and be good at solving complex problems, handling complex contradictions, and controlling complex situations. Comprehensively implement the party's mass line, strengthen national security education, enhance the national security awareness of the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country, and promote the formation of a strong joint force in the whole society to safeguard national security.

## Section 2: Continuously open up a new situation of strengthening the army and rejuvenating the army

A strong country must strengthen its military. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has focused on realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, closely focusing on what kind of strong people's army to build in the new era and how to build a strong people's army, forming Xi Jinping Thought on strengthening the army. Xi Jinping Thought on Strengthening the Army clarifies a series of fundamental directional, overall and major issues in national defense and army building in the new era, opens up the road to strengthening the army with Chinese characteristics, and creates a new situation of strengthening the army and rejuvenating the army.

### 1. Build a people's army that obeys the command of the party and has a good style of winning battles

Clearly defining the goal of army building is a successful experience of the CPC in building and managing the army. In various historical periods, in accordance with changes in the situation and tasks, the Party has clearly put forward the goals and requirements for the building and development of the people's army, leading the continuous development of the building of our army. Comrade Mao Zedong led the formulation of the general principle of building an excellent modern revolutionary army, Comrade Deng Xiaoping put forward the general goal of building a powerful modernized and regularized revolutionary army, and Comrade Jiang Zemin put forward the general requirements for army building that is politically qualified, competent in military affairs, excellent in work style, strict in discipline, and effective in guarantees. Comrade Hu Jintao put forward the important idea of strengthening the comprehensive building of the armed forces in accordance with the principle of combining revolutionization, modernization, and regularization, profoundly revealed the objective law governing army building, and guided our army to continuously win new victories from small to large and from weak to strong.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has focused on realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, adhered to and developed Marxist military theory, and established the principle of "building a team that obeys the command of the Party and can win battles, The goal of strengthening the people's army with a good work style" has issued the call of the times to "build the people's army into a world-class army in an all-round way."

Answering the major questions of why to strengthen the army, what is the goal of strengthening the army, and how to take the road of strengthening the army with Chinese characteristics is the general strategy of the CPC for building and managing the army in the new era, and provides fundamental guidance for promoting national defense and army building at a new starting point.

Obedying the party's command is the soul and determines the political direction of army building. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that obeying the command of the party is the primary task of our army construction and the lifeblood of our army. If this one is lost, no matter how other work is done, it will eventually be completely lost. The key to our army's invincibility and ultimate victory over all enemies without being overwhelmed by the enemy lies in resolutely obeying the command of the party, which is the soul of army building and strengthening the army. This is the fundamental magic weapon for the party's long-term ruling power and the country's long-term peace and stability, and it is also the point that all enemies fear us the most. Under the new situation, we must firmly obey the party's command, which is the soul of strengthening the army; persist in building and mastering the troops ideologically and politically, unswervingly adhere to the fundamental principle and system of the party's absolute leadership over the army, conscientiously implement the responsibility system of the chairman of the Central Military Commission, and resolutely maintain consistency, safeguard authority, and obey commands at all times and under all circumstances, and ensure the absolute loyalty, absolute purity, and absolute reliability of the troops.

Being able to win battles is the core, reflecting the fundamental functions of the army and the fundamental orientation of army building. The army is first and foremost a combat team, and it must persist in focusing all construction and work on winning battles. If the army cannot win on the battlefield, it will produce serious political backlash. As the saying goes, there is no first in literature and no second in martial arts. Our army has always been known for its ability to fight good battles and has created many brilliant achievements. However, the standard of ability to win wars is constantly changing with the development of war practice, and being able to win a war in the past does not mean that you can win a war now. Judging from the situation of the army's modernization construction and the fulfillment of the tasks of preparing for military struggle in recent years, the problem of our army's insufficient ability to fight a modern war and the insufficient ability of cadres at all levels to command a modern war have not yet been completely resolved. Under the new situation, we must grasp the key to being able to fight and win wars, firmly establish combat effectiveness as the only fundamental criterion, more firmly and consciously grasp the preparation for war and plan to win, carry forward our army's fearless heroic spirit and heroic and tenacious fighting style, enhance our army's deterrence and actual combat capability under the conditions of informationization, and ensure that it can fight when called upon, and win when it is called.

A good work style is a guarantee and has a bearing on the nature, purpose, and true colors of the military. Only with a good style can a heroic army be shaped, and a loose style can bring down a division that wins often.

In long-term practice, our army has cultivated and formed a whole set of glorious traditions and fine work styles, which are the distinctive characteristics and political advantages of the people's army. Whether or not we can maintain the glorious traditions and fine work style of our party and our army has a bearing on the survival of the army, on the success or failure of the cause of the party and the country, and on the fact that the red rivers and mountains of socialism will never change color. In the new era, we must consolidate the foundation of a strong army of managing the army according to law and administering the army strictly, regard the building of work style as a basic and long-term task of the army, pay close attention to it, adhere to the fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly, carry forward the spirit of arduous struggle, forge iron discipline, purify the atmosphere of the army, consolidate and develop good internal and external relations, and ensure that our army's bloodline is forever, its foundation is solid, and its superiority is eternal.

The goal of strengthening the army, which obeys the party's command, can win battles, and has a good work style, is consistent with the party's consistent guiding ideology and principles for building and managing the army, and is consistent with the comprehensive construction thinking that is unified with revolutionization, modernization, and regularization. Obedience to the party's command, ability to win battles, and excellent work style are interrelated and inseparable, and are unified in the great practice of building a strong people's army.

## 2. Promote political army building, reform and strengthening the army, rejuvenating the army with science and technology, and managing the army according to law

As the core of the Party Central Committee, the core of the whole Party and the commander-in-chief of the armed forces, Comrade Xi Jinping has made strategic plans for national defense and army building, put forward strategic ideas and strategic measures for adhering to political army building, reforming and strengthening the army, rejuvenating the army with science and technology, and managing the army according to law, fully promoting national defense and army building, and creating a new situation of strengthening the army and rejuvenating the army.

Persist in political army building. Political army building is the foundation of our army, and we must not slacken at any time or under any circumstances. The key to our army's ability to be loyal to the party, the people, and the country at all times, to forge ahead courageously and without flinching under any difficult and difficult circumstances, and to maintain a strong revolutionary will and combat effectiveness lies in always firmly adhering to political army building. The 19th CPC National Congress proposed that it is necessary to strengthen party building in the military, carry out education on the theme of "inheriting red genes and shouldering the heavy responsibility of strengthening the army", promote the construction of the honor system for soldiers, cultivate revolutionary soldiers in the new era with soul, ability, blood, and moral character, and always maintain the nature, purpose and true color of the people's army. First, uphold the party's absolute leadership over the military. At the celebration of the 90th anniversary of the founding of the Chinese People's Liberation Army, Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that on the issue of upholding the fundamental principle of the party's absolute leadership over the military:

"The mind must be particularly clear-headed, the attitude should be particularly clear, and the action should be particularly resolute, without any wavering, any hesitation, any ambiguity."<sup>1</sup> The key to upholding the party's absolute leadership over the military lies in meeting the requirements of the word "absolute" and upholding the uniqueness, thoroughness, and unconditional nature of the party's leadership. We must always maintain a high degree of unity with the party Central Committee in both ideology and action; we must obey the command in all our actions, whether in peacetime or wartime; we must implement to the letter the major principles and policies of the party and the army and the specific work arrangements. Second, it is necessary to establish four fundamental things: ideals and convictions, party spirit and principles, standards for combat effectiveness, and prestige in political work. Communists have always adhered to the party's principle first, the party's cause first, and the people's interests first as the creed of life and work, taken the initiative to speak for the party, worry about the party, and serve the party in the party, and consciously implement loving the party, worrying about the party, rejuvenating the party, and protecting the party in all links of work.

Persist in reforming and strengthening the army. Deepening the reform of national defense and the armed forces with greater wisdom and courage is the requirement of the times to realize the Chinese dream and the dream of strengthening the army, the only way to strengthen the army and rejuvenate the army, and also a key move to determine the future of the army. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, under the strong leadership of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core, a complete set of reform designs that solve deep-seated contradictions, make major innovations and breakthroughs, and reflect the characteristics of our army have emerged from the cocoon. It is necessary to break the long-practiced system of headquarters, military regions, and the army, form a new pattern in which the Central Military Commission is in charge of the overall operation, the theater is in charge of the battle, and the services are in charge of construction, and 15 functional departments of the five major theaters, five major services and arms, and organs of the Central Military Commission are readjusted and established. This is the biggest change in the military's leadership and command system since the founding of New China, and it is a structural the most active and revolutionary factors in military development, and every major scientific and technological progress and innovation will cause profound changes in the form of war and the mode of warfare. It is necessary to establish the idea that science and technology are the core combat effectiveness, promote major technological innovation and independent innovation, strengthen the construction of the military personnel and revolutionary reshaping of the system, which has a major and far-reaching impact on the construction and development of our army. Through major changes and reshaping, the people's army has a new system, structure, pattern, and appearance. In the new era, it is necessary to continue to deepen the reform of national defense and the armed forces, deepen the reform of major policies and systems such as the professional system of officers, the civilian personnel system, and the military service system, promote the revolution in military management, and improve and develop the socialist military system with Chinese characteristics.

Persist in rejuvenating the army through science and technology. Science and technology are training system, and build an innovative people's army.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 416.



Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that the ability to innovate is the core competitiveness of an army and an accelerator for generating and improving combat effectiveness. Historical experience and practical exploration tell us that the real core key technology cannot be bought with money. In order to take the initiative, occupy the high ground, and be undefeated in the fierce international military competition, we must persist in independent innovation and greatly enhance our ability to innovate independently in science and technology for national defense. To increase the contribution rate of scientific and technological innovation to army building and combat effectiveness, only by applying the results of scientific and technological innovation to the practice of national defense and army building in a timely and effective manner can it play an important role. At present, the development of China's national defense science and technology is in a critical period of climbing up the hill and crossing difficulties, and it is necessary to choose the breakthrough point, advance the layout, strengthen forward-looking, leading, exploratory, and subversive major technology research and new concept research, and actively seek military technological competitive advantages.

Persist in managing the army according to law. A modern army must be an army ruled by law. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly demanded that managing the army according to law and strictly managing the army should be included in the overall layout of governing the country according to law. He stressed: "The whole country is building a socialist rule of law system with Chinese characteristics and building a socialist country under the rule of law, and if the construction of the rule of law in the military is not stepped up, it will not be able to keep up at that time."<sup>1</sup> The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly proposed to comprehensively administer the army strictly, promote a fundamental change in the way of administering the army, and improve the level of rule of law in national defense and army building. To further promote the management of the army according to law and the strict management of the army, it is first necessary to make the spirit of the rule of law and the concept of the rule of law deeply rooted in the hearts of the people, so that all officers and men will believe in and adhere to the rule of law. The law must be observed, and the rule of law must be believed, otherwise it will be useless. It is necessary to carry out in-depth publicity and education on the rule of law throughout the army, incorporate education and training on the rule of law into the education and training system of the troops, regard the cultivation of the spirit of rule of law as an important part of the building of a culture of strengthening the army, and guide the vast number of officers and soldiers to internalize the rule of law into political conviction and moral accomplishment, and externalize it into a code of conduct and conscious action. It is necessary to let iron discipline exert its strength, and discipline inspection, inspection, and auditing departments must hold high their swords and perform their supervisory functions well. Through effective rule of law supervision, tighten the system of restraint and supervision of the operation of power, and ensure the correct use of power in accordance with the rules, prudent use of power, and clean use of power. It is necessary to bring about profound changes in the way of administering the armed forces, and bring about a fundamental change from the practice of relying solely on administrative orders to administering according to law, and from the way of carrying out work solely on habit and experience to carrying out work by relying on laws and regulations.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Exposition on Coordinating and Promoting the "Four Comprehensive" Strategic Layout", Central Literature Press, 2015 edition, p. 109.

The fundamental change from the method of grasping work by surprise and movement to the act of handling affairs according to rules and regulations has created a good situation in the whole army in which party committees make decisions according to law, organs give guidance according to law, troops act according to law, and officers and men perform their duties according to law.

### 3. Build the people's army into a world-class army

Speeding up the building of the people's army into a world-class army is the political demand and ardent expectation of the party and the people for the people's army in the new era, an inevitable requirement for realizing the "two centenary goals" and realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, and also a call to action for all officers and men to promote the practice of strengthening the army.

The people's army shoulders the historical mission of providing strategic support for the realization of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. In the new era, profound changes have taken place in the connotation and extension of China's security, in the field of time and space, and in internal and external factors. The period when we move from big to strong and strong is often a high-risk period for national security, and the more we develop and grow, the greater the pressure and resistance we face. This is an unavoidable challenge in the process of China's development from big to strong, and it is the threshold that cannot be bypassed to realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. "A strong country must strengthen its army, and a strong army can ensure national security."<sup>1</sup> National defense and army building are the strong backing of national security, military means are the means to guarantee the realization of great dreams, military struggle is an important aspect of waging great struggle, and the ability to win is a strategic capability for safeguarding national security. Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly pointed out that our military must provide strategic support for consolidating the leadership of the Communist Party of China and China's socialist system, providing strategic support for safeguarding national sovereignty, unity and territorial integrity, providing strategic support for expanding China's overseas interests, and providing strategic support for promoting world peace and development. This is the mission and task entrusted by the party and the people to the people's army in the new era, the strategic requirement to support the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, and the full value of our army. This requires the whole army to strengthen its mission responsibility, enhance its sense of distress and enterprising spirit, and accelerate its ability to fulfill its mission and tasks in the new era with a sense of urgency that time does not wait for us and only seize the day.

The people's army has taken firm steps on the road of strengthening the army with Chinese characteristics. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has focused on realizing the Chinese dream and the dream of strengthening the army

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governance, Volume 2; Foreign Languages Press, 2017, p. 55.

Comprehensively grasp the general international and domestic trends, closely focus on building a people's army that obeys the command of the party, can win battles and has a good work style, put forward a series of major principles and principles, made a series of major policy decisions and arrangements, promoted a series of major tasks, made every effort to promote the modernization of national defense and the army, led the people's army to take firm steps on the road of strengthening the army with Chinese characteristics, achieved historic achievements and historic changes, and led national defense and army building into a new era. This is mainly reflected in: revitalizing the political program, unwaveringly promoting political rectification and training, and effectively solving the conspicuous problem of weakening the party's absolute leadership over the army; reshaping the organizational form, boldly deepening reform in an all-round way, and effectively solving the conspicuous problems restricting the institutional structure of our army's construction; reorganizing the pattern of struggle, firmly defending the core interests of the country, and effectively solving the outstanding problems in the use and use of military forces; reconstructing the layout of construction, innovating development concepts and methods, and effectively solving the problem that our army's construction is not enough to focus on actual combat. The conspicuous problem of poor quality and efficiency; re-establishing the image of work style, vigorously promoting healthy tendencies, discipline and anti-corruption, and effectively solving the conspicuous problems of unhealthy tendencies and corruption breeding and spreading. The achievement of these historic achievements and the occurrence of historic changes fundamentally lie in the strong leadership of Comrade Xi Jinping, the core of the Party Central Committee, the core of the whole Party and the commander-in-chief of the armed forces, and in the scientific guidance of Xi Jinping's thinking on strengthening the military. Xi Jinping Thought on Strengthening the Army, leading the practice of strengthening the army and sublimating it in the practice of strengthening the army, is the crystallization of the practical experience and wisdom of the people's army since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, and is a fundamental achievement in building and managing the army and strengthening the army in the new era. To realize the modernization of national defense and the armed forces, we must firmly establish the guiding position of Xi Jinping's thinking on strengthening the military in national defense and army building.

Grasp the strategic arrangements for comprehensively promoting the modernization of national defense and the armed forces. The 19th CPC National Congress put forward a road map, timetable, and mission statement for comprehensively promoting the modernization of national defense and the armed forces. That is, to adapt to the development trend of the world's new military revolution and the needs of national security, improve the quality and efficiency of construction, ensure that mechanization is basically realized by 2020, major progress has been made in informationization construction, and strategic capabilities have been greatly improved. In line with the process of national modernization, we will comprehensively promote the modernization of military theory, the organizational form of the armed forces, the modernization of military personnel, and the modernization of weapons and equipment, strive to basically modernize national defense and the armed forces by 2035, and comprehensively build the people's army into a world-class army by the middle of this century. This strategic arrangement embodies the requirements of the times in line with the process of national modernization and development, embodies the strategic requirements of socialist construction with Chinese characteristics for strengthening the army in the new era, and demonstrates the determination and courage of the Communist Party of China to accelerate the pace of building a strong army.

The whole army should firmly grasp the goals and tasks of national defense and army building, concentrate efforts to tackle tough problems, grasp quick work, and work through to the end with a blueprint to ensure that it is built into a world-class army as scheduled.

Grasp the strategic priorities of national defense and army modernization. The modernization of national defense and the armed forces is a systematic project, with a myriad of problems, and it is necessary to pinpoint strategic priorities and promote overall improvement with key breakthroughs. The first is to build a joint operations command system, build a strong and efficient theater joint operations command organization, open up the command link of the whole system and process of joint operations, and promote the improvement of the joint operation capability of the whole army. The second is to build a new type of military management system, improve the strategic management link of "demand one planning, one budget, one implementation and one assessment", and improve the operational efficiency of military systems and the quality and efficiency of our military construction. The third is to build a modern military force system, coordinate the construction of all parties in various fields, coordinate the construction of combat forces, support and support forces, and promote the overall improvement of our military's force system. The fourth is to build a new-type military training system, persist in actual combat training and joint combat training, persist in promoting construction with training and combining training with application, and improve the level of actual combat training. Fifth, vigorously implement the strategic project of qualified personnel, strengthen the construction of a new-type military personnel training system of "trinity" in military academies and schools, military training practice, and military vocational education, and promote the overall leap in the level of personnel construction. Sixth, build a national defense science and technology innovation system, accelerate the development of high-tech weapons and equipment, and improve the quality of weapons and equipment and the scientific level of architecture. The seventh is to build a modern military policy and institutional system, systematically plan, forward-looking, and overall reshape the policy system, and create an institutional environment with strong constraints and effective incentives. The eighth is to build a military-civilian integration development system, gradually realize the integration of the country's strategic layout in all fields, the integration of strategic resources, and the integrated use of strategic forces, accelerate the formation of an all-factor, multi-field, and high-efficiency pattern of in-depth development of military-civilian integration, give play to the political advantages of the socialist system that can concentrate on major things, and maximize the comprehensive benefits of economic construction and national defense construction. At the same time, we should vigorously carry forward the glorious tradition of loving the people and supporting the army, improve and implement the honor system for military personnel, strengthen the management and guarantee of retired servicemen, safeguard the legitimate rights and interests of military personnel and their families, strengthen national defense education for the whole people, improve the national defense mobilization system, consolidate and develop rock-solid military-government and military-civilian relations, and unite the powerful force for building a world-class army.

### Section 3: Promoting the complete reunification of the motherland

Accomplishing the reunification of the motherland is one of the three major historical tasks of the CPC and is where the fundamental interests of the Chinese nation lie.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping, based on the long-term development of the cause of the party and the country, has systematically summed up the successful experience of the practice of "one country, two systems", profoundly expounded the basic position and major principles of adhering to the principle of "one country, two systems" and promoting the great cause of the reunification of the motherland, and clearly established adherence to "one country, two systems" and the promotion of the reunification of the motherland as the basic strategy for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, fully reflecting that the party's understanding of the law of the practice of "one country, two systems" has reached a new height.

## 1. National reunification is a historical necessity for the Chinese nation to move toward great rejuvenation

National rejuvenation and national reunification are the trend of the times, the great righteousness, and the aspiration of the people. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Maintaining the long-term prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao and realizing the complete reunification of the motherland are inevitable requirements for realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.<sup>1</sup> "Unification is strong, division must be chaotic", this is a historical law. The American Civil War stopped the division of the country, safeguarded the unity of the United States, and laid an objective foundation for the United States to become a world power. As a country with an ancient civilization of 5,000 years, China has encountered many times in history and has a profound understanding of the harm of national division. After the modern era, due to the corruption and incompetence of the feudal ruling clique, the gradual decline of national strength, and the deep suffering of the Chinese nation, Macao and Hong Kong were forced to leave the embrace of the motherland, especially after the Sino-Japanese War in 1894, the Qing Dynasty was forced to cede Taiwan to Japan, and Taiwan was invaded and occupied by foreign peoples for half a century, "leaving heart-wrenching pain for compatriots on both sides of the strait."<sup>2</sup> At that time, the history of China was full of national humiliation and the sorrow and indignation of the people. In 1945, the victory of the War of Resistance and the restoration of Taiwan washed away half a century of national humiliation. In 1949, the Communist Party of China led the Chinese people to win national independence and people's liberation, established New China, and achieved the complete reunification of the mainland of the motherland by 1951.<sup>3</sup> But Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macao are still floating away. After several generations of Chinese Communists' relay struggle, in the 90s of the 20th century, Hong Kong and Macao successively returned to the embrace of the motherland, and the great cause of the motherland's reunification took solid steps.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 20.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 238.

<sup>3</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 7, People's Publishing House, 1999 edition, p. 204.

Resolving the Taiwan issue and realizing the complete reunification of the motherland is the common aspiration of all the sons and daughters of the Chinese nation and the fundamental interests of the Chinese nation.

The fact that the two sides of the strait have not yet been completely reunified is a wound left by history to the Chinese nation. Cross-strait Chinese should make joint efforts to seek national reunification and heal the wounds of history. The broad masses of Taiwan compatriots are all members of the Chinese nation, and they should do their Chinese in an upright manner and regard promoting the complete reunification of the country and jointly seeking the great rejuvenation of the nation as the most glorious cause. At present, to grasp the overall situation of cross-strait relations from the overall interests of the Chinese nation, the most fundamental and core thing is to safeguard national sovereignty and territorial integrity. Since 2016, Taiwan's political situation has undergone major changes, and the Taiwan authorities do not recognize that both sides of the strait belong to "one China", which has undermined the political foundation for the peaceful development of cross-strait relations. Comrade Xi Jinping has made many important speeches on the situation in the Taiwan Strait, expounding the principled position of adhering to the "consensus of '92" and safeguarding the peaceful development of cross-strait relations, and declaring his firm will and determination to oppose and curb any form of "Taiwan independence." Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "We have firm will, full confidence and sufficient ability to thwart any form of 'Taiwan independence' separatist attempt." We will never allow anyone, any organization, any political party, at any time, in any form, to separate any piece of Chinese territory from China!"<sup>1</sup> These solemn declarations of "any" embody the firm will of the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups throughout the country to resolutely safeguard national sovereignty and territorial integrity.

To realize the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, Taiwan compatriots will certainly not be absent. Taiwan's future lies in national reunification, and the well-being of Taiwan compatriots depends on national rejuvenation. The peaceful development of cross-strait relations is the correct path for safeguarding cross-strait peace, promoting common development between the two sides of the strait and benefiting compatriots on both sides of the strait. The peaceful development of cross-strait relations should be jointly promoted by compatriots on both sides of the strait, jointly safeguarded by compatriots on both sides of the strait, and shared by compatriots on both sides of the strait. The Chinese dream is the common dream of compatriots on both sides of the strait, and only when the nation is rejuvenated and the country is strong and prosperous can the Chinese on both sides of the strait live a prosperous and beautiful life. In the process of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, compatriots on both sides of the strait should join hands to realize the Chinese dream, shoulder the responsibility of national rejuvenation, and share the glory of national rejuvenation. The Taiwan issue arises from national weakness and chaos, and it is bound to end with national rejuvenation! Supporting and pursuing national reunification is a national righteousness and should be affirmed by the whole nation. After peaceful reunification,

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 46.

With a strong motherland to rely on, Taiwan will always maintain peace, the people will live and work in peace and contentment, the livelihood and well-being of Taiwan compatriots will be better, the space for development will be greater, and the waist pole will be harder, the confidence will be more sufficient, and it will be safer and more dignified in the international arena.

## 2. "peaceful reunification and one country, two systems" is the best way to achieve national reunification

The principle of "one country, two systems" on how to resolve the problem of relations between regions with two different social systems within a country and the reunification of one country is an invention of the Chinese Communists, a great initiative in the history of mankind, a new idea and new plan provided by China for the international community to solve similar problems, and a new contribution made by the Chinese nation to world peace and development. The concept of "one country, two systems" adheres to the "one China" principle, maintains the coexistence of "two systems," and allows Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Macao a high degree of autonomy, which not only embodies the principle of realizing the reunification of the motherland and safeguarding national sovereignty, but also fully considers the history and reality of Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Macao, embodies a high degree of flexibility, and is the basic principle for promoting the great cause of the peaceful reunification of the motherland. Adhering to the principle of "one country, two systems" and deeply promoting the practice of "one country, two systems" conforms to the interests of Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macao residents, the actual needs of prosperity and stability in Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macao, the fundamental interests of the country, and the common will of the people of the whole country. With regard to the implementation of the principle of "one country, two systems," the CPC should pay special attention to two points: First, it should be unswerving, unchanging, and unwavering; second, it should be comprehensive and accurate, ensuring that "one country, two systems" will not deviate or deform in practice, and will always advance in the correct direction.

The core of "one country, two systems" lies in "one country." Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "'One country' is the root, and deep roots can make Ye Mao; 'One country' is the foundation, and the foundation can prosper.<sup>1</sup> 'One country' is the premise and basis for the implementation of 'two systems', which are subordinate to and derived from 'one country' and unified within 'one country.'" The "two systems" within "one country" are not equal and shoulder to shoulder, and the main body of the country must implement the socialist system. Under this premise, proceeding from reality, we should fully take into account the historical and current conditions of Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macao, and allow them to keep the capitalist system unchanged for a long time. Therefore, the adherence of the main body of the state to the socialist system is the premise and guarantee for Hong Kong and Macao to implement the capitalist system and maintain prosperity and stability. The proposal of "one country, two systems" is first of all to realize and safeguard national unity.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 435.

During the Sino-British negotiations on Hong Kong's return, the Chinese government made a clear statement that the sovereignty issue could not be discussed. After Hong Kong's return to the motherland, it is all the more necessary to firmly safeguard national sovereignty, security and development interests. In the practice of governance in Hong Kong and Macao, it is necessary to firmly establish the awareness of "one country", adhere to the principle of "one country", and correctly handle the relationship between the SAR and the central government. Any activity that endangers national sovereignty and security, challenges the authority of the central authorities and the Basic Law of the Special Administrative Region, and uses Hong Kong and Macao to infiltrate and sabotage the mainland is a violation of the bottom line and must not be allowed. On the basis of "one country," the relationship between the "two systems" should and can be harmonious and mutually reinforcing.

"One country, two systems" is the best solution to problems left over from history and realize national reunification. Different systems are not an obstacle to unification, let alone an excuse for division. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that to solve the Taiwan issue and realize the complete reunification of the motherland, we must continue to adhere to the principle of "peaceful reunification and one country, two systems", promote the peaceful development of cross-strait relations, and advance the peace process of the motherland's reunification. "One country, two systems" is not only the best solution to the Hong Kong and Macao issues left over from history, but also the best way to resolve the Taiwan issue and realize the complete reunification of the motherland, and the best system for maintaining Taiwan's long-term prosperity and stability after cross-strait reunification. "One country, two systems" "embodies the Chinese wisdom of being inclusive and tolerant, fully considers Taiwan's actual situation, and is conducive to Taiwan's long-term peace and stability after reunification."<sup>1</sup>

### 3. Maintain the long-term prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao

Since the return of Hong Kong and Macao, the practice of "one country, two systems" has achieved universally recognized success. For more than 20 years, "one country, two systems" has been successfully practiced in Hong Kong and Macao, and has grown vigorously and yielded fruitful results in the storm. Since Hong Kong's return to the motherland, Hong Kong's economic growth rate has been in the forefront of developed economies, and its status as an international financial, shipping and trade center has been further consolidated, and it has become one of the most dynamic cities in Asia, one of the freest economies in the world and one of the most competitive economies in the world. Since Macao's return to the motherland, Macao has enjoyed social stability, economic development, residents living and working in peace and contentment, and multiculturalism has developed well, and is striving to achieve its goal of becoming a world center of tourism and leisure. The development of Hong Kong and Macao has fully proved that the principle of "one country, two systems" is correct and that the practice of "one country, two systems" is successful.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 744.



To maintain the long-term prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao, it is necessary to fully and accurately implement the principles of "one country, two systems", "Hong Kong people administering Hong Kong", "Macao people administering Macao" and a high degree of autonomy, improve the system for the central authorities to exercise overall jurisdiction over the SAR in accordance with the Constitution and the Basic Law, improve the system and mechanism for the appointment and removal of the chief executive and principal officials of the SAR, the system of interpretation of the Basic Law by the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress, and exercise the powers entrusted to the Central Committee by the Constitution and the Basic Law in accordance with the law. Persist in administering Hong Kong and Macao in accordance with the law, safeguard the constitutional order established by the Constitution and the Basic Law, establish and improve the SAR's legal system and enforcement mechanisms for safeguarding national security, and support the SAR in strengthening its law enforcement forces; improve the degree of accountability of the Chief Executive of the Special Administrative Region to the Central Government, and support the Chief Executive and the SAR Government in their administration in accordance with the law. To fully and accurately implement the principles of "one country, two systems", "Hong Kong people administering Hong Kong", "Macao people administering Macao" and a high degree of autonomy, it is necessary to combine upholding the principle of "one country" with respecting the differences between the "two systems", safeguarding the central government's overall jurisdiction over the SAR and guaranteeing the SAR's right to a high degree of autonomy, giving play to the strong backing role of the motherland's hinterland, and enhancing the SAR's own competitiveness. Improve the SAR's systems and mechanisms related to the implementation of the Constitution and the Basic Law, adhere to the principle of "Hong Kong people governing Hong Kong" and "Macao people administering Macao" with patriots as the main body, and improve the SAR's ability and level of governance according to law.

To maintain the long-term prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao, we will never tolerate any behavior that challenges the bottom line of "one country, two systems" and any act of separatism, and resolutely prevent and curb the interference of external forces in Hong Kong and Macao affairs and separatism, subversion, infiltration and sabotage activities. Hong Kong is a pluralistic society, and it is not surprising that there are different opinions or even major differences on some specific issues, but it should not fall into the vortex of "pan-politicization" and trample on the political bottom line of "one country, two systems." Hong Kong is an inseparable part of the country, and under no circumstances will it be allowed to engage in "Hong Kong independence" or so-called "self-determination" in any form, which is the untouchable bottom line under "one country, two systems." In September 2014, a small number of people in Hong Kong launched an illegal assembly to "Occupy Central", which seriously affected Hong Kong's rule of law tradition, disrupted Hong Kong's social order, and affected the lives of Hong Kong people. The CPC Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping at the core has fully and accurately implemented the principle of "one country, two systems", firmly grasped the central government's overall jurisdiction over Hong Kong and Macao under the Constitution and the Basic Law, and thwarted the "Occupy Central" farce plotted by separatist forces at home and abroad to disrupt Hong Kong, and has maintained the prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao. On 7 November 2016, the 24th Session of the Standing Committee of the 12th National People's Congress adopted the Interpretation of Article 104 of the Basic Law of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region.

This interpretation of the law conforms to the voice of the people and declares the central government's firm stand of safeguarding national security and the strong will of the entire Chinese people to oppose separatism. On September 24, 2018, the Secretary for Security of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region Government issued an order prohibiting the pro-independence "Hong Kong National Party" from operating in Hong Kong. On 19 February 2019, the Chief Executive of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region in Council made a decision confirming the validity of the order of the Secretary for Security and that the Central People's Government supports the Government of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region in banning the "Hong Kong National Party" operate in accordance with the law. In April 2019, the Government of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region introduced into the Legislative Council the Fugitive Offenders and Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters (Amendment) Bill 2019 to enable Hong Kong to commence case-by-case co-operation with jurisdictions that do not yet have long-term mutual legal assistance arrangements. The initial aim was to address the issue of the transfer of Hong Kong residents suspected of murder in Taiwan while closing loopholes in Hong Kong's existing legal system. On June 9, the Hong Kong opposition and "Hong Kong independence" forces carried out various radical protest activities in the name of "anti-extradition bill" peaceful marches and rallies, causing a "storm over the amendment of the extradition bill." ". With the demagoguery and incitement of the opposition and the intervention of external forces, various illegal activities such as "Hong Kong independence", separatism, violent terrorist activities have intensified, and the national security risks of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region have become increasingly prominent. In this regard, Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that the continuous radical and violent crimes in Hong Kong have seriously trampled on the rule of law and social order, seriously undermined Hong Kong's prosperity and stability, and seriously challenged the bottom line of the "one country, two systems" principle. The Chinese government is unswerving in its determination to safeguard national sovereignty, security and development interests, unswervingly in its determination to implement the principle of "one country, two systems", and unswerving in its determination to oppose interference in Hong Kong affairs by any external forces.<sup>1</sup> This provides important guidelines for safeguarding national sovereignty, security and development interests, adhering to and improving the "one country, two systems" institutional system, safeguarding Hong Kong's long-term prosperity and stability, and safeguarding the legitimate rights and interests of Hong Kong residents.

On 28 May 2020, the Third Session of the 13th National People's Congress voted to adopt the Decision of the National People's Congress on Establishing and Improving the Legal System and Implementation Mechanism for Safeguarding National Security in the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region. On June 30, the 20th meeting of the Standing Committee of the 13th National People's Congress unanimously passed the vote

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping Makes the Chinese Government's Solemn Stance on the Current Situation in Hong Kong Stopping Violence, Curbing Chaos, and Restoring Order is the Most Urgent Task in Hong Kong at present," People's Daily, November 15, 2019.

The Law of the People's Republic of China on Safeguarding National Security in the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region (hereinafter referred to as the "Hong Kong National Security Law") and listed it in Annex III of the Basic Law of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the People's Republic of China (hereinafter referred to as the "Hong Kong Basic Law"). The Hong Kong National Security Law clearly stipulates the duties and institutions of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region for safeguarding national security, four types of crimes and punishments: secession, subversion of state power, terrorist activities, collusion with foreign countries or external forces to endanger national security, case jurisdiction, application of law and procedures, and the organs of the Central People's Government in the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region for safeguarding national security, etc., and establishes a legal system and enforcement mechanism for safeguarding national security in the Region. This is the second important law specially formulated by the central government for Hong Kong after the Hong Kong Basic Law, which is of great and far-reaching significance for adhering to and improving the "one country, two systems" institutional system, safeguarding national sovereignty, security and development interests, and ensuring Hong Kong's long-term peace and stability, long-term prosperity and stability. In accordance with the relevant provisions of the Hong Kong National Security Law, the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region has established a Committee for Safeguarding National Security, which is responsible for safeguarding national security affairs in the Region, assumes the primary responsibility for safeguarding national security, and accepts supervision and accountability from the Central People's Government. The Central People's Government shall establish the Office for Safeguarding National Security in the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region to perform its duties and exercise relevant powers in accordance with law. Since its promulgation and implementation, the Hong Kong National Security Law has formed a powerful deterrent to various anti-China and destabilizing forces inside and outside Hong Kong, providing a solid institutional guarantee for safeguarding Hong Kong's long-term prosperity and stability.

To maintain the long-term prosperity and stability of Hong Kong and Macao, it is necessary to improve the mechanism for integrating Hong Kong and Macao into the overall development of the country, complementing each other's advantages with the mainland and coordinating development, promoting the development of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area, supporting Hong Kong and Macao in developing the economy and improving people's livelihood, and focusing on resolving deep-seated contradictions and problems affecting social stability and long-term development. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed: "In the process of national reform and opening up in the new era, Hong Kong and Macao still have special status and unique advantages, and can still play an irreplaceable role." "For Hong Kong and Macao, 'one country, two systems' is the biggest advantage, the country's reform and opening up is the biggest stage, and the implementation of national strategies such as the joint construction of the 'Belt and Road' and the construction of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area is a new major opportunity.<sup>1</sup> The construction of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area is a new measure to promote the formation of a new pattern of comprehensive opening up in the new era, and it is also a new practice to promote the development of the cause of "one country, two systems."

---

<sup>1</sup> "Xi Jinping's Speech at the Meeting with the Delegation from All Walks of Life in Hong Kong and Macao to Celebrate the 40th Anniversary of National Reform and Opening Up"  
People's Daily, November 13, 2018.

Since the reform and opening up, especially after the return of Hong Kong and Macao to the motherland, the cooperation between Guangdong, Hong Kong and Macao has been continuously deepened, the economic strength and regional competitiveness of the Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macao Greater Bay Area have been significantly enhanced, and the basic conditions for building a world-class bay area and a world-class city cluster have been met. The Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge spans the Lingding Ocean, connects Hong Kong to the east, Zhuhai and Macao to the west, connecting the world's most dynamic economic circle, and is of far-reaching significance to the integration of Hong Kong, Macao and Zhuhai. Relying on the advantages of Hong Kong and Macao as free and open economies and Guangdong as the vanguard of reform and opening up, we should continue to deepen reform and expand opening up, lead the country in building an institutional mechanism for high-quality economic development, play an exemplary and leading role, accelerate institutional innovation and pilot projects, build a modern economic system, better integrate into the global market system, build a base for emerging industries, advanced manufacturing and modern service industries in the world, and build a world-class city cluster.

#### 4. Resolutely advance the process of peaceful reunification of the motherland

The motherland must and will be reunified. This is the historical conclusion of the development of cross-strait relations, and it is also an inevitable requirement for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation in the new era. Cross-strait Chinese and the sons and daughters of China at home and abroad should shoulder the great national righteousness, conform to the general trend of history, and jointly promote the peaceful development of cross-strait relations and the process of peaceful reunification of the motherland.

First, explore the "one country, two systems" Taiwan plan to enrich the practice of peaceful reunification. "One country, two systems" was originally proposed to take care of Taiwan's actual situation and safeguard the interests and well-being of Taiwan compatriots. The specific form of realizing "one country, two systems" in Taiwan will give full consideration to Taiwan's actual situation, fully absorb the opinions and suggestions of all circles on both sides of the strait, and fully take into account the interests and feelings of Taiwan compatriots. Under the premise of ensuring national sovereignty, security and development interests, after peaceful reunification, the social system and way of life of Taiwan compatriots will be fully respected, and their private property, religious beliefs and legitimate rights and interests will be fully guaranteed.

Cross-strait political consultations will be held on the basis of the one-China principle. Compatriots on both sides of the strait are one family, and cross-strait affairs are family affair of compatriots on both sides of the strait, and of course they should also be discussed and handled by family members. Peaceful reunification means consultation on an equal footing and joint discussion of reunification. The long-standing political differences between the two sides of the strait are the general root cause affecting the stability and long-term development of cross-strait relations, and they cannot be passed on from generation to generation.

The two sides of the strait should adopt an attitude of responsibility to the nation and future generations, pool wisdom, give play to creativity, converge and assimilate differences, strive to resolve political confrontation at an early date, realize lasting peace in the Taiwan Strait, and achieve the vision of national reunification. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that on the basis of the one-China principle, there are no obstacles to any political party or group in Taiwan interacting with us. Only by replacing confrontation with dialogue, replacing strife with cooperation, and replacing zero-sum with win-win can cross-strait relations be stable and far-reaching. We are willing to conduct dialogue and communication with all political parties, organizations and personages in Taiwan on cross-strait political issues and issues related to promoting the process of peaceful reunification of the motherland, extensively exchange views, seek social consensus and advance political negotiations. Comrade Xi Jinping also proposed that "on the common political basis of adhering to the '92 consensus' and opposing 'Taiwan independence', all political parties and sectors on both sides of the strait should nominate representative personages to carry out extensive and in-depth democratic consultations on cross-strait relations and the future of the nation, and reach institutional arrangements for promoting the peaceful development of cross-strait relations."<sup>1</sup>

Second, adhere to the one-China principle and safeguard the prospects for peaceful reunification. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "Reunification is the general trend of history and the right path. 'Taiwan independence' is a historical countercurrent and a dead end."<sup>2</sup> Although the two sides of the Taiwan Strait have not yet been completely reunified, China's sovereignty and territory have never been divided, and the fact that the mainland and Taiwan belong to the same China has never changed. The reunification of the two sides of the strait is an end to political confrontation, not a rebuilding of territory and sovereignty. The one-China principle is the political foundation of cross-strait relations. By adhering to the one-China principle, cross-strait relations can be improved and developed, and Taiwan compatriots will benefit. Deviating from the one-China principle will lead to tension and turbulence in cross-strait relations and harm the vital interests of Taiwan compatriots. We adhere to the policy of pinning our hopes on the Taiwan people, respect Taiwan compatriots, care for them, unite with Taiwan compatriots, rely on Taiwan compatriots, and wholeheartedly do practical things, do good deeds, and solve difficulties for Taiwan compatriots. We are willing to create broad space for peaceful reunification, but we will never leave any space for various forms of "Taiwan independence" separatist activities. Chinese don't hit Chinese. We do not undertake to renounce the use of force and reserve the option of taking all necessary measures, which are aimed at the interference of external forces and the very small number of "Taiwan independence" separatists and their separatist activities, and absolutely not at Taiwan compatriots. Compatriots on both sides of the strait should work together for peace, safeguard peace, and share peace.

Third, deepen cross-strait integration and development and lay a solid foundation for peaceful reunification. Compatriots on both sides of the strait are linked by blood.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 edition, page 745.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 19th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2019 Edition, page 745.

Dear friends, Chinese to help Chinese. We treat Taiwan compatriots equally, take the lead in sharing mainland development opportunities with Taiwan compatriots, and provide equal treatment for Taiwan compatriots and Taiwan enterprises, so that everyone can have more sense of gain. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the degree of cross-strait economic and cultural exchanges and cooperation has been continuously deepened, and the integration and development of the two sides of the strait has reached a new level. In 2018, the mainland's trade volume with Taiwan reached US\$226.24 billion, and Taiwan is the mainland's fifth largest trading partner and third largest source of imports, and the mainland is Taiwan's largest trading partner and source of trade surplus. Among them, the mainland's exports to Taiwan were \$48.647 billion, up 10.6 percent, imports from Taiwan were \$177.598 billion, up 13.9 percent, and the mainland's trade deficit with Taiwan was \$128.951 billion. By the end of 2018, a total of 107,190 Taiwan-funded projects had been approved, accounting for 11.2% of the total number of foreign-funded projects actually used. By the end of 2018, more than 100 million Taiwan residents had come to the mainland. The two associations have continuously strengthened consultations in the economic fields such as finance, agriculture, shipping, taxation and nuclear power, as well as in the fields of people's livelihood such as medicine and health, disaster monitoring and food safety, and established institutionalized contact mechanisms for information exchange, personnel exchange visits and crisis management, greatly expanding the fields of cross-strait exchanges and cooperation and enhancing the well-being of compatriots on both sides of the strait.

It is necessary to actively promote the institutionalization of cross-strait economic cooperation, build a cross-strait common market, add impetus to development, add vitality to cooperation, and strengthen the economy of the Chinese nation. The two sides of the strait should make every effort to improve smooth economic and trade cooperation, infrastructure connectivity, energy and resource connectivity, and common industry standards, and take the lead in realizing water, electricity, gas, and bridges between Kinmen and Matsu and the coastal areas of Fujian. It is necessary to promote cross-strait cooperation in culture and education, medical and health care, social security and sharing of public resources, and support the equalization, universalization and convenience of basic public services in areas adjacent to the two sides of the strait or with similar conditions. The 2017 Central Work Conference on Taiwan proposed to provide "national treatment" for the Taiwanese people. On February 28, 2018, the Taiwan Affairs Office of the State Council, the Organization Department of the Central Committee of the National Development and Reform Commission and other departments issued *Several Measures on Promoting Cross-Strait Economic and Cultural Exchanges and Cooperation* ("31 Measures to Benefit Taiwan from the Mainland"). It clearly points out that we should actively promote the acceleration of equal treatment for Taiwan-funded enterprises and mainland enterprises in the field of investment and economic cooperation, and gradually provide Taiwan compatriots with the same treatment as mainland compatriots in studying, starting businesses, employment, and living on the mainland. On November 4, 2019, 20 relevant departments, including the Taiwan Affairs Office of the State Council and the Organization Department of the Central Committee of Economic and Commercial Affairs of the National Development and Reform Commission, issued *Several Measures on Further Promoting Cross-Strait Economic and Cultural Exchanges and Cooperation* ("26 Measures");

It involves 13 measures to provide equal treatment for Taiwan enterprises to participate in investment and construction of major technical equipment, 5G, circular economy, civil aviation, theme parks, new financial organizations, etc., and 13 measures to provide more convenience and support for Taiwan compatriots in consular protection, agricultural cooperation, transportation, communication fees, housing purchase qualifications, culture and sports, title evaluation, classified recruitment, etc. These measures have brought great opportunities and a real sense of gain to Taiwan-funded enterprises and Taiwan compatriots.

Fourth, realize the spiritual unity of compatriots on both sides of the strait and enhance the identity of peaceful reunification. The soul of the country is forged by culture. Compatriots on both sides of the strait share the same roots, the same language, and the same species, and Chinese culture is the root vein and belonging of the hearts of compatriots on both sides of the strait. The national reunification we are pursuing is not only formal reunification, but more importantly, the spiritual unity of compatriots on both sides of the strait. We understand the mentality formed by Taiwan compatriots due to special historical encounters and different social environments, respect the social system and way of life chosen by Taiwan compatriots themselves, and are willing to use sincerity, goodwill and family affection to narrow the psychological distance between compatriots on both sides of the strait. At the same time, Taiwan compatriots also need to know and understand more about the feelings and mentality of mainland compatriots, and respect the choices and pursuits of mainland compatriots. The fellowship of people is in the heart. No matter how many disturbances and obstacles we encounter, exchanges and cooperation between compatriots on both sides of the strait cannot be stopped, interrupted, or reduced. Compatriots on both sides of the strait should jointly inherit the excellent traditional Chinese culture and promote its creative transformation and innovative development. Compatriots on both sides of the strait should exchange and learn from each other, engage in dialogue and tolerance, promote themselves and others, compare hearts to hearts, deepen mutual understanding, and enhance mutual trust and recognition. It is necessary to uphold the feelings of compatriots and empathy, educate future generations with a correct view of history, nationality, and country, and carry forward the great national spirit. Between relatives, there is no knot that cannot be untied. After a long period of meritorious service, we will certainly be able to achieve the spiritual harmony of compatriots on both sides of the strait.

In short, "one country, two systems" has strong vitality, and realizing the complete reunification of the motherland in accordance with the principle of "one country, two systems" is the common aspiration of all Chinese people and the fundamental interests of the Chinese nation. As long as all the sons and daughters of China, including Hong Kong, Macao and Taiwan compatriots, conform to the general trend of history, shoulder the great national righteousness, and firmly hold the destiny of the nation in their own hands, they will certainly be able to realize the peaceful reunification of the motherland and jointly create a bright future for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

## Chapter XIV: Building a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, faced with the new situation that the world is undergoing major changes unprecedented in a century, and with China approaching the center of the world stage as never before, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has conformed to the trend of the times, based on China's reality, effectively coped with the changing international situation, won many big battles, accomplished many major and difficult things, and blazed a new path of major country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics. In the process of guiding practice innovation, Comrade Xi Jinping insisted on using Marxist positions and views, closely centering on the general goal of promoting the construction of a new type of international relations and promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind, which is a major country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics, and put forward a series of new concepts, propositions and initiatives with Chinese characteristics, embodying the spirit of the times and leading the trend of human development and progress, forming Xi Jinping Diplomatic Thought. Xi Jinping Diplomatic Thought is an important part of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, and is the fundamental compliance and action guide for China's foreign affairs work in the new era.

### Section 1: China's Plan for Human Development and the Future of the World

Today's world is in a period of great development, great change and great adjustment, and peace and development are still the main themes of the times. World multipolarization, economic globalization, social informatization and cultural diversification have developed in depth, the reform of the global governance system and international order has accelerated, countries are increasingly interconnected and interdependent, the balance of international power is becoming more balanced, and the general trend of peaceful development is irreversible. At the same time, the world is facing outstanding instability and uncertainty, deep-seated contradictions in global development are sharp, hegemonism and power politics still exist, protectionism and unilateralism are on the rise, regional hotspot issues are emerging one after another, traditional and non-traditional security issues are complex and intertwined, and the international community is facing a governance deficit, trust deficit, peace deficit, and Four major challenges to the development deficit.



What is wrong with the world? What should we do? Cooperation or confrontation? Openness or closure; mutual benefit or zero-sum game? The Communist Party of China has not only sought happiness for the Chinese of the people but also struggled for the cause of human progress, and has made its own unique answers to these questions concerning the future and destiny of mankind. Concentrated on one point, it is the major strategic thinking of "building a community with a shared future for mankind" put forward by Comrade Xi Jinping. This major strategic thinking shows China's good image as a world peace builder, a contributor to global development and a defender of international order, points out the right direction for promoting the improvement of global governance and building a better world, and becomes a clear banner for China to lead the trend of the times and the direction of human civilization progress.

1. build a world of lasting peace, universal security, common prosperity, openness, inclusiveness, cleanliness and beauty

The concept of "building a community with a shared future for mankind" demonstrates Comrade Xi Jinping's responsibility as a world-class leader. In March 2013, he delivered a speech at the Moscow Institute of International Relations, in which he clearly put forward the idea of "you have me and I have your community of common destiny." In September 2015, when attending the general debate of the 70th session of the United Nations General Assembly, he made the first comprehensive and systematic exposition of the idea of a community with a shared future for mankind. In December 2017, in his keynote speech at the high-level dialogue between the Communist Party of China and political parties around the world, Comrade Xi Jinping once again gave a profound explanation, pointing out: "A community with a shared future for mankind, as the name implies. That is, the future and destiny of every nation and country are closely linked, and we should share hardships and hardships, share glory and disgrace, and strive to build the planet where we were born and grew up in Sri Lanka into a big harmonious family, and turn the aspirations of the people of the world for a better life into reality."<sup>1</sup> In March 2020, he pointed out in a telephone conversation with UN Secretary-General António Guterres: "The outbreak of the new crown pneumonia epidemic once again shows that mankind is a community with a shared future"

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Promoting the Construction of a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, p. 510.

"The international community must establish a sense of a community with a shared future for mankind, watch over each other, work together to cope with risks and challenges, and jointly build a better home for the earth."<sup>1</sup> In May 2020, in his speech at the opening ceremony of the 73rd World Health Assembly video conference, Comrade Xi Jinping put forward the initiative of "unity and cooperation to overcome the epidemic and jointly build a human health community."

The idea of a community with a shared future for mankind is extremely rich and profound, and its core is what the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China pointed out: "Build a world of lasting peace, universal security, common prosperity, openness, inclusiveness, cleanliness and beauty."<sup>2</sup> The proposal of this initiative has undoubtedly pointed out the direction and realistic path of common development, common progress, common security and common prosperity for the international relations that are in confusion in the world today, and for the countries of the world that are in constant strife, so it has been welcomed and recognized by more and more countries and peoples, and has been written into important documents of the United Nations.

Adhere to dialogue and consultation to build a world of lasting peace. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that if the country is peaceful, the world will be safe; if the country fights, the world will be chaotic. Building a world of lasting peace fundamentally lies in building a partnership of equal treatment and mutual understanding among nations. All countries should adhere to the common values of all mankind, namely peace, development, fairness, justice, democracy and freedom; adhere to the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence; and inherit and carry forward the purposes and principles of the Charter of the United Nations; Persist in resolving differences and disputes between countries by peaceful means through dialogue and consultation; Adhere to multilateralism and do not engage in unilateralism. Countries should build a partnership of dialogue, non-confrontation, partnership and non-alignment; Big countries should respect each other's core interests and major concerns, manage contradictions and differences, and strive to build a new type of relationship; big countries should treat small countries as equals, and not engage in hegemony of self-respect, forced buying and selling.

Adhere to joint construction and sharing, and build a world of universal security. There is no perfect security in the world, the security of one country cannot be built on the turmoil of other countries, and the threat of other countries may become a challenge for one's own country. All countries should abandon all forms of Cold War mentality, establish a new security concept that is common, comprehensive, cooperative and sustainable, promote all countries to take the road of jointly building a win-win security, and strive to create a fair, just and generally stable security pattern

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Unity and cooperation are the most powerful weapons for the international community to defeat the epidemic", *Qiushi*, No. 8, 2020.

<sup>2</sup> *Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China*, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 47.

Promote the building of a platform for regional security dialogue and cooperation, establish a framework for equal, transparent, open and inclusive regional and international security cooperation, and jointly eliminate the root causes of war and endangering security; give full play to the central role of the United Nations and its Security Council in stopping war and peacekeeping, and turn conflict into a victory through peaceful settlement of disputes and coercive action; promote international cooperation in the economic and social fields to advance in parallel to comprehensively respond to traditional and non-traditional security threats and oppose all forms of terrorism.

Adhere to win-win cooperation and build a world of common prosperity. Economic development is the material foundation for human existence, and prosperity is an important cornerstone of national progress. All countries, especially major economies, should seize the historic opportunity of a new round of scientific and technological revolution and industrial transformation, transform the mode of economic development, adhere to innovation-driven, further develop social productive forces and release social creativity; on the other hand, strengthen macro policy coordination, enhance mutual assistance and mutual benefit, jointly create new technologies, new industries, new formats and new models, and embark on a fair, open, comprehensive and innovative development path. All countries should make good use of the "invisible hand" and the "visible hand" to organically unify and promote each other's role and create a normative pattern that balances efficiency and fairness; uphold the rules of the World Trade Organization and support an open, transparent, inclusive and non-discriminatory multilateral trading system; strengthen coordination and improve governance, promote the construction of an open, inclusive, inclusive, balanced and win-win economic globalization, and promote strong, sustainable and balanced growth of the world economy.

Adhere to exchanges and mutual learning to build an open and inclusive world. The diversity of human civilizations is a fundamental feature of the world and a source of human progress. "The beauty of harmony lies in the harmony of differences." We should adhere to the principles of diversity, equality and inclusiveness among civilizations, transcend civilizational barriers through exchanges among civilizations, transcend conflicts among civilizations through mutual learning among civilizations, and transcend civilizational superiority through civilizational coexistence, and promote dialogue among different civilizations and different development models. Exchanges and mutual learning among civilizations are a bridge for enhancing friendship among peoples of all countries and a link for safeguarding world peace. All civilizations should learn from each other's strong points in competition and comparison, develop together through exchanges and mutual learning, and jointly resist conceptual barriers that hinder the interaction between human hearts, so that the people of the world can enjoy a more connotative spiritual life, gather more civilizational wisdom, and create a better future with more choices.

Adhere to green and low-carbon, and build a clean and beautiful world. It is necessary to follow the concept of the unity of nature and nature, and promote the construction of an ecological system that respects nature and green development;

Adhere to the care of nature, not above nature, solve the contradictions brought by industrial civilization, take harmonious coexistence between man and nature as the goal, achieve sustainable development of the world and comprehensive development of man; promote the international community to work hand in hand to seek the road of global ecological civilization construction, firmly establish the awareness of respecting, complying with and protecting nature, adhere to the road of green, low-carbon, circular and sustainable development; persist in taking action to address climate change, and promote 2030 in a balanced manner. The sustainable development agenda of the year, constantly open up the development path of civilization with production development, rich life and good ecology.

## 2. Build a new type of international relations featuring mutual respect, fairness and justice, and win-win cooperation

Building a community with a shared future for mankind and building a world of lasting peace, universal security, common prosperity, openness, inclusiveness, cleanliness and beauty is a historical process, which cannot be achieved overnight and smooth sailing, and it is necessary to advance along the basic path of promoting the construction of a new type of international relations featuring mutual respect, fairness and justice, and win-win cooperation. The essence of building a new type of international relations is to embark on a new path of state-to-state exchanges based on dialogue rather than confrontation and partnership rather than alliance, so as to open up the way and accumulate conditions for building a community with a shared future for mankind.

As early as March 2013, in a speech at the Moscow Institute of International Relations, Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that in the face of the objective requirement that all countries in the world work together in the same boat, "to keep up with the pace of the times, we cannot enter the 21st century physically, and our heads are still stuck in the past, in the old era of colonial expansion, in the Cold War mentality, and in the Cold War mentality." Inside the old box of zero-sum games. "All countries should jointly promote the establishment of a new type of international relations with win-win cooperation as the core, and the people of all countries should work together to safeguard world peace and promote common development."<sup>1</sup> To this end, it is necessary to go beyond those ideas and principles in traditional international relations that do not adapt to the trend of the times and should also be abandoned, such as the law of the jungle, the law of the jungle, you die and I live, you lose and I win, zero-sum game, etc.; It is also necessary to inherit a series of universally recognized principles and spirits accumulated in the evolution of international relations in modern times, including the principles of equality and sovereignty established by the Peace of Westphalia more than 370 years ago, the spirit of international humanism established by the Geneva Conventions more than 150 years ago, the four major purposes and seven principles clearly defined in the Charter of the United Nations more than 70 years ago, and the Bandung Conference more than 60 years ago, "Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence", etc.;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Promoting the Construction of a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 6.

It is all the more necessary to actively advocate and firmly practice the principle of mutual respect among all countries in the inheritance, jointly pursue fairness and justice in international relations and international order, and work together for mutual benefit and win-win results.

Mutual respect is a prerequisite. All countries, big or small, strong or weak, rich or poor, are equal members of the international community and have the right to participate in international affairs on an equal footing. The sovereignty and territorial integrity of all countries brook no infringement, interference in the internal affairs of all countries, respect for the social system and development path independently chosen by the people of all countries, and respect for the core interests and major concerns of all countries. It is necessary to oppose the use of illegal means to subvert the legitimate regimes of other countries out of one's own interests or one's own opinions. These are the last truths that must not be discarded at any time and should not be shaken at any time.

Fairness and justice are the norm. "The journey of the avenue is also the world's public. "Fairness and justice are the lofty goals pursued by the peoples of the world in the field of international relations. All countries should jointly promote the democratization of international relations, so that the people of all countries can jointly control the destiny of the world and jointly discuss and handle the affairs of the world. Jointly promote the rule of law in international relations, ensure that all parties abide by international law and the universally recognized basic principles of international relations, use uniformly applicable rules to clarify right and wrong, promote peace and seek development, and refrain from double standards and distortions of international law and oppose the use of "rule of law." In the name of infringing on the legitimate rights and interests of other countries and undermining peace and stability, we will promote the rationalization of international relations, adapt the reform of the global governance system to the new changes in the international balance of power, reflect the concerns and demands of all parties, and better safeguard the legitimate rights and interests of the vast number of developing countries.

Win-win cooperation is the goal. "Harmony is strong, solitude is weak. "Win-win cooperation is a universally applicable principle, not only applicable to the economic field, but also to politics, security, culture and other fields, and should become the basic policy orientation of all countries in handling international affairs." All countries should combine their national interests with common interests, strive to expand the convergence of common interests of all parties, and should not build a stage here and tear it down there, but should complement each other and play a good show. All countries should actively establish a new concept of win-win, multi-win and win-win, and abandon the old thinking that you lose and I win, and the winner takes all. "The beauty of each is the beauty of the beauty, the beauty of the beauty, the beauty of the world." "All countries should adhere to the principle of working together in the same boat, sharing rights and responsibilities, working together to address the increasing number of global issues such as climate change, energy resource security, cyber security, and major natural disasters, and jointly protect the earth home on which human beings depend."

### 3. consolidate the humanistic foundation for building a community with a shared future for mankind

Civilizations communicate through diversity, learn from each other through exchanges, and develop through mutual learning. Comrade Xi Jinping vigorously advocates strengthening exchanges and mutual learning among different countries, ethnic groups and cultures in the world, and consolidating the humanistic foundation for jointly building a community with a shared future for mankind. He clearly proposed to establish a civilizational concept of equality, mutual learning, dialogue and inclusiveness, seek wisdom and nourishment from different civilizations, provide spiritual support and spiritual comfort for people, and work together to solve various challenges facing mankind. In May 2019, China successfully hosted the Conference on Dialogue of Asian Civilizations, and in his keynote speech at the opening ceremony, Comrade Xi Jinping interpreted the ideas of civilization self-confidence, mutual learning among civilizations and tolerance among civilizations, setting the tone for dialogue among civilizations and mutual learning among civilizations. This is China's practical action to promote dialogue and mutual learning among civilizations, and has far-reaching exemplary significance for Asia and the world.

Uphold harmony without difference and safeguard the diversity of civilizations. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that all achievements of civilization deserve respect and should be recognized and cherished. All countries and nationalities should not only cherish and safeguard their own civilization, especially their own ideology and culture, but also recognize and respect the ideology and culture of other nationalities; on the one hand, they should enhance their own ideological and cultural self-respect, self-confidence, and self-reliance. Especially in the era of globalization, while paying attention to maintaining and highlighting their own characteristics and iconic symbols, different civilizations are forming more and more common elements and symbols in the process of exchanges and blending. There are no so-called "universal values" in the world that can be transmitted or even imposed on other civilizations, and openness, inclusiveness, diversity and mutual learning and diversity integration have become the main keynote of the great homeland of human civilization in the 21st century. The pattern of one civilization being high above and others following the marginalized is dissolving; The intention and practice of treating one's own civilization as the sole central or powerful civilization and denigrating or even transforming other civilizations will only seriously undermine the achievements of civilization and will eventually endanger itself.

Adhere to equality and mutual respect, and strengthen dialogue and exchanges among civilizations. Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out:

"Every civilization is rooted in its own soil of survival, embodies the extraordinary wisdom and spiritual pursuit of a country and a nation, and has its own value for existence. Human beings only have the difference between skin color and language, and civilization only has the difference between surname Ziyan and red, but there is absolutely no distinction between high and low."<sup>1</sup> Civilizations should uphold an attitude of humility and mutual respect, avoid arrogance, prejudice and one-sided narrow cognition, and oppose mutual isolation, mutual exclusion and mutual substitution. If a civilization treats another civilization condescendingly, it will not only fail to understand the mystery of this civilization, understand the true meaning of this civilization, and cannot learn from the strengths and essence of this civilization, but will also be incompatible with it. If you see that other civilizations are different from your own, you feel unpleasant, attack and belittle them, and do everything possible to transform, assimilate, or even try to impose your own civilization on others, which will only widen differences and even cause conflicts. Both history and reality show that arrogance and prejudice are the biggest obstacles to exchanges and mutual learning among civilizations, and equality and respect are the prerequisites for exchanges and mutual learning among civilizations. Any attempt to resolve the differences between civilizations by coercive means will not succeed, and the hegemony of civilizations and the "clash of civilizations" can only bring disaster to world peace and human civilization.

Adhere to inclusiveness and mutual learning and promote the development and prosperity of civilization. Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "The diversity of human civilization gives this world a red color, diversity brings exchanges, exchanges breed integration, and integration produces progress." "Only by respecting each other, learning from each other, and coexisting harmoniously in diversity can the world be rich and prosperous."<sup>2</sup> "To learn alone and have no friends is to be lonely and unheard." "Exchange and mutual learning are the essential requirements of the development of civilization, and human history is originally a magnificent picture of mutual exchanges, mutual learning and harmony among different civilizations. Of course, exchanges and mutual learning among civilizations should be reciprocal and equal, pluralistic and multi-directional, not coercive and coercive, and should not be single and unidirectional. Only through equal exchanges and mutual learning can we seek common ground while reserving differences, learn from each other's strengths, lead the excellent cultural genes of human civilization to adapt to contemporary culture, harmonize with modern society, and lead the excellent cultural spirit to be promoted. Only in this way can human civilization be full of vitality, continuous creative transformation and innovative development, and all countries and peoples can find a way to achieve common development, work together to cope with challenges, and jointly create a bright future of a community with a shared future for mankind.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Deepening Exchanges and Mutual Learning among Civilizations and Building a Community with a Shared Future in Asia - Keynote Speech at the Opening Ceremony of the Conference on Dialogue of Asian Civilizations", *People's Daily*, May 16, 2019.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Promoting the Construction of a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind", *Central Literature Publishing House*, 2018, p. 256.

## Section 2: Responsibilities and Responsibilities of Great Power Diplomacy in the New Era

Contemporary China is an emerging developing country and a major country with decisive influence on the world stage. The history, reality and humanistic endowments of major countries determine that every big country is different, each big country has its own characteristics, and every big country must follow a development path that suits its own characteristics. Historical inheritance and historical encounters, national missions, cultural endowments, domestic and international environments, objectively require that China's diplomacy in the new era must be a major country diplomacy with distinctive Chinese characteristics. Guided by the grand goal of building a community with a shared future for mankind, China's diplomacy has vigorously promoted innovation in concepts and methods, fully demonstrated the responsibility and responsibility of major-country diplomacy in the new era, demonstrated the distinctive character of major-country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics, and created good external conditions for realizing the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and jointly creating a better future for mankind.

Major country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics is a global-oriented diplomacy, with a major pattern, vision and layout being a major feature. Major country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics is based on China's diplomacy as a major country, which makes greater contributions to human society with the responsibility and responsibility of a major country, not only seeks its own growth and development, but also focuses on promoting the prosperity and development of human society, not diplomacy against major powers, nor diplomacy competing with other major powers in the world for dominance and hegemony.

### 1. Unswervingly follow the path of peaceful development

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has emphasized: "Taking the path of peaceful development is a strategic choice made by our Party in accordance with the development trend of the times and the fundamental interests of our country."<sup>1</sup> China is a country with a long civilization, a country that has experienced great suffering, a country that practices socialism with Chinese characteristics, the largest developing country in the world, and a country that is undergoing profound changes.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 247.



"Chinese people have unforgettable memories of the suffering caused by war, have a tireless pursuit of peace, and cherish a peaceful and stable life. What the people are afraid of Chinese is turmoil, what they seek is stability, and what they hope for is peace in the world.<sup>1</sup> The socialist system with Chinese characteristics, historical and cultural traditions, basic national conditions, the trend of the times and the fundamental interests of the country all determine that China can only take the path of peaceful development. This road was not easy to come by, and it was gradually formed by the CPC through arduous exploration and continuous practice since the founding of New China, especially in the more than 40 years of reform and opening up.

Over the years, with China's rapid development, some people in the world are worried that China will follow the path of "national strength must be hegemonic", believing that China's development must be a "threat", which is a deep-rooted prejudice. In this regard, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly pointed out on different occasions that "a strong country must hegemon." It is not the law of history, the Chinese nation does not have the gene in its blood to invade others and dominate the world, and the Chinese people are willing to live in harmony and develop harmoniously with the peoples of the world, and seek peace, protect peace and share peace. And that's exactly what happened. The goal of China's development is to enable Chinese people to live a good life. China's path and way to achieve development is based on the base point of its own strength, unswervingly follows its own path, persists in exploring its own development path and solutions to problems from the Chinese land, relies on its own continuous development strength to better follow the path of peaceful development, and is committed to promoting open development, cooperative development and win-win development. China's development will never come at the expense of the interests of other countries, and it will never do anything that harms others and interests itself and beggars its neighbors. No matter how the international situation changes, no matter how it develops, China will never seek hegemony, never expand, and never seek spheres of influence. This has not wavered in the past and will continue to do so in the future.

Comrade Xi Jinping declared to the international community China's firm belief in taking the path of peaceful development, and at the same time deepened and developed the strategic thinking of peace development at a new historical starting point, that is, "two intrinsically unified."

First, it is intrinsically integrated to adhere to the path of peaceful development with resolutely defending the core interests of the country. Comrade Xi Jinping solemnly declared at the meeting to celebrate the 95th anniversary of the founding of the Communist Party of China:

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 247-248.

"China does not covet the rights and interests of other countries and is not jealous of the development of other countries, but it will never give up our legitimate rights and interests." Chinese people do not believe in evil and are not afraid of evil, do not cause trouble or fear trouble, and no foreign country should expect us to trade with our core interests, and do not expect us to swallow the bitter fruit that harms China's sovereignty, security and development interests.<sup>1</sup> When discussing the adherence to the overall national security concept, Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "we must adhere to the supremacy of national interests."<sup>2</sup> Some countries, some forces, and some public opinion one-sidedly interpret China's path of peaceful development, believing that China's decision to take the path of peaceful development as a national strategic choice will constrain its determination, means, and ability to safeguard national interests; that China's external declaration on taking the path of peaceful development is unwilling or daring to adopt non-peaceful means to defend its core interests; and that China will lower or even give up its principles and bottom line in order to seek development and stability. Constant provocations and even attempts to touch the red line of China's core interests. This kind of thinking and behavior, which regards China's restraint and tolerance as weakness and deception, and regards China's advocacy of resolving disputes through political dialogue and diplomatic channels as an opportunity, is bound to pay a huge price. China will never separate the path of peaceful development from safeguarding national interests; while adhering to the path of peaceful development, it will never sacrifice its core national interests; only by effectively safeguarding its core national interests can it more calmly and confidently adhere to the path of peaceful development; China will adopt all necessary means to resolutely safeguard its territorial sovereignty and maritime rights and interests, and resolutely safeguard national unity and national dignity.

The second is to intrinsically integrate China's adherence to the path of peaceful development with its active advocacy and promotion of all countries in the world to jointly follow the path of peaceful development. For China to follow the path of peaceful development smoothly, other countries in the world need to follow the path of peaceful development; it needs to transform the world's opportunities into China's opportunities and China's opportunities into world opportunities; it needs to strive for a peaceful international environment to develop China, and use China's development to maintain and promote world peace. Without peace, neither China nor the world can develop smoothly, and without development, there can be no lasting peace between China and the world. China is unswervingly a practitioner of peaceful development and a promoter of common development, and at the same time calls on, drives and urges other countries to walk shoulder to shoulder and meet each other halfway. If certain countries and forces dare to undermine peace, wantonly provoke, create conflicts or even impose wars, China will resolutely struggle and will not give in.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 42.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 19.

Only when all countries abandon the Cold War mentality and zero-sum game, oppose power politics and hegemonism, and follow the path of peaceful development can they coexist peacefully and develop together.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, under the strong leadership of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping at the core, China's struggle practice on a series of issues involving major core interests has not only demonstrated China's position and conviction in adhering to the path of peaceful development, but also demonstrated its determination and will to defend national sovereignty and security interests, greatly inspired the Party's heart, the military and the people's heart, and won the wide respect of the international community.

## 2. build a more complete global partnership network

At the end of November 2014, Comrade Xi Jinping proposed at the Central Foreign Affairs Work Conference that we should make friends and form a global partnership network on the premise of adhering to the principle of non-alignment. Over the past few years, on the basis of the various forms of partnership it has established with many countries in the world, China has comprehensively planned and promoted diplomatic and multilateral cooperation among major countries, neighboring countries and developing countries to build a more inclusive and constructive global partnership. By building a global partnership network, China's "circle of friends" is getting bigger and bigger, creating a favorable external environment and strategic support for domestic development.

It is of great importance to plan the relations between major countries, promote coordination and cooperation among major countries, and build a framework for relations between major countries with overall stability and balanced development. With the United States, we should firmly grasp the general direction of the development of bilateral relations, adhere to the principles of non-conflict and non-confrontation, mutual respect and win-win cooperation, respect each other's core interests and major concerns, pay attention to strategic communication, strengthen pragmatic cooperation, manage differences in an equal and consultative manner, strive to maintain bilateral relations based on coordination, cooperation and stability, and promote the sustained, healthy and stable development of bilateral relations. Regarding the trade frictions provoked by the United States, China has clearly expressed its position and attitude: China does not want to fight, does not want to fight, and is not afraid of fighting, China will not succumb to any external pressure, and has the determination and ability to defend its legitimate rights and interests. With Russia, we regard each other as the most important and important comprehensive strategic cooperation partner, give priority to the overall diplomatic situation and foreign policy of the two countries, transform the advantages of high-level political relations between the two sides into practical results of practical cooperation, work together to maintain international and regional strategic balance and stability, and set an example for a new type of international relations featuring mutual respect, fairness and justice, and win-win cooperation.

With the EU, focusing on the trend of historical change, maintaining strategic dialogue on major international affairs, enhancing strategic mutual trust, coordinating relations with 16 Central and Eastern European countries and Western European powers, actively promoting the construction of the four major partnerships of peace, growth, reform and civilization, transcending ideological differences, making the comprehensive strategic partnership of mutual benefit and win-win achieve greater development and global influence, and at the same time resolutely fighting against the EU's policies and behaviors that harm China's core national interests. While resolutely defending core interests, Japan has worked hard to establish a crisis management and control mechanism to avoid unexpected situations, and strive to transform the consensus of "mutual partnership and mutual non-threat" into a broad social consensus, carry out exchanges in various fields, and ensure that bilateral relations develop in the right direction. With India, carry forward the tradition of mutual learning among civilizations, seize opportunities, eliminate interference, strengthen strategic communication, properly handle and manage differences, jointly do a good job in all-round cooperation between the two countries, work together to achieve peaceful development, cooperative development and common development, and promote the strategic cooperative partnership to a new height. With other developed and developing countries, we will actively promote pragmatic cooperation through the frameworks of the G20 and BRICS countries to achieve healthy competition.

The surrounding area is the place where China settles down and the foundation for development and prosperity. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out at the October 2013 Peripheral Diplomacy Work Forum that it is necessary to promote peripheral diplomacy from the strategic layout and build a community with a shared future in the surrounding region. Adhere to the principle of good-neighborliness, good-neighborliness and prosperity, highlight the concept of affinity, sincerity, benefit and tolerance, deepen mutually beneficial cooperation and interconnection with neighboring countries under the framework of the "Belt and Road" construction, strive to make their own development better benefit neighboring countries, and strive to make political relations between neighboring countries and China more friendly. Economic ties have become stronger, security cooperation has deepened, and people-to-people ties have become a reliable strategic support. At the same time, he stressed that efforts should be made to build new mechanisms and rules for peripheral regional cooperation, focus on deepening the pattern of mutual benefit and win-win results, focus on promoting regional security cooperation, focus on consolidating and expanding the foundation of social public opinion, and let the sense of community of common destiny take root in neighboring countries.

The vast number of developing countries are China's natural allies in international affairs. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that "we must adhere to the correct concept of righteousness and interests, and do a good job in solidarity and cooperation with developing countries."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Promoting the Construction of a Community with a Shared Future for Mankind", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 540.

Politically, we should adhere to justice, fairness and morality; economically, we should adhere to mutual benefit and common development, especially for those countries that have been friendly to China for a long time and have arduous tasks for their own development, we must give more consideration to each other's interests and provide assistance within our capacity. He personally promoted the establishment of the China-Latin America Cooperation Forum, raised the level of cooperation between China and Africa and China-Arab countries, enabled China-developing countries to achieve global coverage, effectively broadened and strengthened solidarity, cooperation and common development with developing countries, and further consolidated the position of developing countries as the foundation of China's foreign strategy.

### 3. Actively lead and promote the reform of the global governance system

In today's world, with the ebb and flow of international forces and the increasing number of global challenges, it is the general trend to strengthen global governance and promote the reform of the global governance system. Comrade Xi Jinping attaches great importance to the issue of global governance, and presided over the collective study of the Politburo on this topic twice in October 2015 and September 2016. With a broad global vision and a world mind, he asked "what is wrong with the world and what should we do? "It also accurately grasps the development trend of increasingly interdependent countries in the world, puts forward the global governance concept of consultation, co-construction and sharing, and leads the innovative development of global governance concepts and practices with Chinese wisdom, Chinese propositions and Chinese solutions.

As a builder of world peace, a contributor to global development and a defender of international order, China insists on proceeding from its national conditions and actively playing its role as a responsible major country in accordance with the principle of consistency of responsibilities, rights and capabilities. Comrade Xi Jinping called on all countries to have the spirit of taking the world as their own responsibility, actively acting as action-oriented and not spectators, and working together to take the future and destiny of mankind into their own hands. He clearly proposed to "adhere to fairness and reasonableness and solve the governance deficit", "Adhere to mutual consultation and mutual understanding and solve the trust deficit", "Stick to working together to solve the peace deficit", "Adhere to mutual benefit and win-win results, and solve the development deficit."<sup>1</sup> In terms of global economic governance, it emphasizes equality as the basis, better reflects the new reality of the world economic pattern, increases the representation and voice of emerging economies and developing countries, and ensures equal rights, equal opportunities and equal rules for all countries in international economic cooperation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping, "Contributing Wisdom and Strength to Building a Better Earth Home – Speech at the Closing Ceremony of the China-France Global Governance Forum," *People's Daily*, March 27, 2019.

Guided by openness, adhere to the openness of concepts, policies and mechanisms, adapt to changes in the situation, collect good opinions, fully listen to the suggestions and demands of all sectors of society, and encourage all parties to actively participate and integrate; take cooperation as the driving force, strengthen communication and coordination, take each other's interests and concerns, discuss rules together, jointly build mechanisms, and meet challenges together; take sharing as the goal, advocate the participation of all people, benefit everyone, and do not engage in one company or winner-take-all. In terms of the reform and construction of the global governance system, it emphasizes firmly upholding the international order with the purposes and principles of the UN Charter as the core, promoting the democratization and rule of law of global governance rules, promoting a more balanced global governance system that reflects the wishes and interests of the majority of countries, and actively participating in the formulation of governance rules in the fields of oceans, polar regions, cyber, outer space, nuclear security, anti-corruption and climate change. In dealing with major international and regional hotspot issues and global challenges, we emphasize constructive participation in political settlements, expand participation in peacekeeping operations under the framework of the United Nations, and strive to make greater contributions to the maintenance of world peace, security and stability. In terms of global human rights governance, it emphasizes adhering to the new human rights concept of promoting development through cooperation and promoting human rights through development. In terms of strengthening global public health governance, it emphasizes the need to improve the public health safety governance system, improve the emergency response speed of public health emergencies, and establish global and regional epidemic prevention material reserve centers in view of the shortcomings and shortcomings exposed by the new crown pneumonia epidemic. In terms of participation in global governance, it emphasizes efforts to enhance the ability to formulate rules, set agendas, publicize public opinion, and coordinate as well.

It is under the guidance of these new ideas and concepts that in recent years, China has taken the initiative and courageously taken responsibility in the field of global governance, striving to promote the reform of unfair and unreasonable arrangements in the global governance system, which has won universal praise from the international community.

### **Section 3: The Belt and Road Initiative is an important platform for building a community with a shared future for mankind**

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has organically combined China's development with the common development of the world, drawn nourishment from the ancient Silk Road, and creatively proposed the "Silk Road Economic Belt" and "The "21st Century Maritime Silk Road" initiative has created a new pattern of China's all-round opening up, created a new platform for China and the world to share development opportunities, and opened up a new model for international cooperation.

In May 2017 and April 2019, China successfully hosted the first and second Belt and Road Forum for International Cooperation. Over the past few years, from top-level design to project implementation, from planning to specific practice, the joint construction of the "Belt and Road" has changed from initiative to action, and has changed from drawing "big letters" Turned to carving "Gongbi Painting."

### 1. the top-level design of China's opening up and economic diplomacy in the new era

As socialism with Chinese characteristics enters a new era, the situation of international economic cooperation and competition is undergoing profound changes, the global economic governance system and rules are facing major adjustments, China's introduction and going out are incomparable in depth, breadth and rhythm in the past, and the pressure to deal with external economic risks and maintain national economic security is also incomparable in the past. And "China's level of opening up to the outside world is not high enough, the ability to make good use of the two markets and resources at home and abroad is not strong enough, the ability to deal with international economic and trade frictions and win the right to speak in the international economy is still relatively weak, and the ability to use international economic and trade rules is not strong enough, and it needs to be made up for it faster."<sup>1</sup> To this end, we must adhere to the basic national policy of opening up to the outside world, pursue a mutually beneficial and win-win opening strategy, persist in attaching equal importance to bringing in and going out, deepen people-to-people exchanges, improve the layout of opening up to the outside world, foreign trade layout and investment layout, form a new system of opening up to the outside world, and develop a higher-level open economy, so as to expand opening up to drive innovation, promote reform and promote development.

The construction of the "Belt and Road" not only makes overall planning for China's open space layout in the new era, but also carries out the top-level design of the path for China and the world to achieve openness and win-win results. For China, the construction of the "Belt and Road" is "developed", China starts from a global perspective, consciously coordinates the overall situation at home and abroad, and comprehensively plans the grand strategy of all-round opening up. It is a major measure to go to the world with a more proactive attitude and maintain sustained and healthy economic development.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 199.

It has and will continue to push China to further improve the level of opening up to the outside world and enhance its ability to participate in international competitiveness, and at the same time, it will also force the transformation of economic development mode and the optimization of economic structure, and constantly expand new space for reform and development. For the world, the construction of the "Belt and Road" requires China to actively guide the global economic agenda, safeguard the multilateral trading system, accelerate the implementation of the free trade area strategy, improve the level of trade and investment liberalization and facilitation, and strive to shoulder international responsibilities and obligations commensurate with China's capabilities and status. China has taken the "Belt and Road" construction as an opportunity to carry out cross-border connectivity, improve the level of trade and investment cooperation, and promote international production capacity and equipment manufacturing cooperation, essentially to generate new demand and achieve world economic rebalancing by improving effective supply. Especially in the context of the continuous downturn in the world economy and the rapid development of developing countries to achieve economic independence and national rejuvenation, China conforms to the aspirations of all countries, especially the vast number of developing countries, to promote peace and seek development, and supports the vast number of developing countries along the Belt and Road to promote industrialization, modernization and improve the level of infrastructure. This is a milestone in the history of world development.

The construction of the "Belt and Road" is based on the basic principle of consultation, joint construction and sharing. "Consultation" means communication and consultation, fully respecting the differences in the development level, economic structure, legal system, business environment and cultural traditions of various countries. "Co-construction" means joint participation, in-depth docking with relevant national and regional development strategies, establishing cooperation projects and jointly promoting them. "Sharing" means mutual benefit and win-win results, and all parties maximize their interests through cooperation. These three complement each other and are inseparable, forming an organic and unified whole. The construction of the "Belt and Road" firmly grasps the greatest common denominator of development, aims to share China's development opportunities with countries along the route and other countries, welcomes all parties to take the "fast train" and "free ride" of China's development, and promotes all countries and international organizations to work together to meet the challenges of human development and achieve complementary advantages and mutual benefit and win-win results.

"One Belt, One Belt" construction focuses on the continents of Asia, Europe and Africa, while naturally extending to Oceania, Latin America and the Caribbean. The construction of the Silk Road Economic Belt focuses on connecting the Eurasian continent, mainly including the construction of six major economic corridors, namely the New Eurasian Land Bridge marked by the China-Europe Express, the China-Central Asia-West Asia Economic Corridor, the China-Mongolia-Russia Economic Corridor, the China-Indochina Peninsula Economic Corridor, the China-Pakistan Economic Corridor, and the Bangladesh-China-India-Myanmar Economic Corridor.



The construction of the 21st Century Maritime Silk Road focuses on connecting the Pacific Ocean and the Indian Ocean, mainly through the construction of fulcrums along the coasts of the Indian Ocean, Red Sea and Mediterranean Sea, such as Kyaukpyu Port and Sittwe Port in Myanmar, Colombo Port and Hambantota Port in Sri Lanka, Gwadar Port in Pakistan, Djibouti Support Base, and Piraeus Port in Greece. The connectivity of North Africa, Europe, the Pacific Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean promotes economic and trade ties and common development among countries and regions along the route. As an open and inclusive process, the construction of the "Belt and Road" is open to all like-minded friends across different regions, different stages of development and different civilizations, and is neither excluded nor targeted at any party. It is not about closing the door to engage in closed and exclusive circles or "China clubs"; it is not about geopolitical alliances or military alliances; Moreover, it is not demarcated by ideology, does not engage in zero-sum games, and does not buy and sell by force.

## 2. strive to build an interconnected partnership

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The key to jointly building the Belt and Road is connectivity."<sup>1</sup> The core here is policy communication, facility connectivity, unimpeded trade, financial integration, and people-to-people bonds. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly explained the connotation of the "five links" and put forward pragmatic measures to deepen the cooperation between the "five links." To promote international cooperation along the "Belt and Road" is to take the "five links" as the starting point, widely condense cooperation consensus, and comprehensively improve the level of cooperation.

First, strengthen policy communication. It is mainly to form a joint force of policy coordination and planning docking, promote relevant countries to learn from each other, establish policy coordination mechanisms, jointly formulate cooperation plans, and jointly take cooperative actions, form a situation of planning convergence, development integration, benefit sharing, and coordinated development, and continuously consolidate the "Belt and Road." The political foundation of construction. Relevant countries have fully exchanged economic development strategies and countermeasures, based on the contact points and commonalities of development strategies, to achieve resource reallocation, strategic docking and complementary advantages, and achieve the effect of "one plus one is greater than two."

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Working together to create a better future for the "Belt and Road" - in the second "Belt and Road" Keynote speech at the opening ceremony of the International Cooperation Summit, People's Daily, April 27, 2019.

Based on the principle of seeking common ground while reserving differences, we will consult and formulate plans and measures to promote regional cooperation, and give the "green light" to regional economic integration in terms of policies and laws. This includes docking and cooperation with the EU's Eurasian Connectivity Strategy, ASEAN's Connectivity Master Plan, Russia's Eurasian Economic Union, Kazakhstan's "Bright Road", Turkey's "Middle Corridor", Mongolia's "Development Road", Vietnam's "Two Corridors and One Circle", the Philippines' "Great Construction and Special Construction", the UK's "Northern Economic Center", and Poland's "Amber Road."

Second, strengthen facility connectivity. Mainly guided by major projects and key projects, we will promote land, sea, air and online connectivity, build high-quality, sustainable, risk-resistant, affordable, inclusive and accessible infrastructure, and continuously improve the infrastructure network of the "Belt and Road" construction. Relevant countries negotiate and sign and implement transportation facilitation agreements, actively explore and improve cross-border transportation infrastructure, and build a complex infrastructure network led by economic corridors such as the New Eurasian Land Bridge, with China-Europe Express and New Land-Sea Corridor and other large corridors and information highways as the framework, and relying on railway and port pipe networks, so as to facilitate the economic development and personnel exchanges of various countries.

Third, strengthen unimpeded trade. It is mainly to promote trade and investment liberalization and facilitation, take a clear stand against protectionism, and continuously release the vitality of mutually beneficial cooperation. Relevant countries will discuss and make appropriate arrangements on trade and investment facilitation, eliminate trade barriers, reduce trade and investment costs, strengthen the compatibility of rules and standard systems, improve the speed and quality of regional economic circulation, provide better business environment and institutional guarantees, and achieve mutual benefit and win-win results. China will sign high-standard free trade agreements with more countries, strengthen cooperation in customs, taxation, auditing and supervision, establish a cooperation mechanism for tax collection and administration under the Belt and Road Initiative, accelerate the promotion of international mutual recognition and cooperation among "authorized operators", and build a broader platform for all parties to enter the Chinese market by holding the China International Import Expo. From 2013 to 2018, China's trade in goods with Belt and Road-related countries exceeded US\$6 trillion and its outward direct investment exceeded US\$90 billion.

Fourth, strengthen financial integration. It is mainly to deepen cooperation in the financial field and continuously improve the diversified investment and financing system of the "Belt and Road" construction. Relevant countries carry out various forms of financial cooperation to achieve local currency exchange and settlement under current and capital accounts, so as to greatly reduce circulation costs, enhance the ability to resist financial risks, and enhance the international competitiveness of the region's economy.

The "Silk Road Fund" founded by China, the BRICS New Development Bank and Emergency Reserve Fund jointly established by China, Russia, India, Brazil and South Africa, the Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank, and the "16+1" financial holding company and banking consortium established by China and Central and Eastern European countries. Complement each other and form a clear and large-scale "Belt and Road" financial cooperation network. The Roundtable Summit of the Second Belt and Road Forum for International Cooperation formulated the Guiding Principles for Financing the Belt and Road and released the Belt and Road Initiative, The Framework for Debt Sustainability Analysis provides guidance for financing cooperation along the Belt and Road.

Fifth, strengthen people-to-people bonds. The main thing is to continuously build friendly bridges along the route and other countries around the world. Carry out in-depth humanities cooperation in education, science, culture, sports, tourism, health, archaeology and other fields, strengthen exchanges between parliaments, political parties and non-governmental organizations, and close exchanges among women, youth, disabled persons and other groups, forming a pattern of diversified and interactive people-to-people exchanges. Relevant countries should strengthen friendly people-to-people exchanges, jointly carry forward the spirit of the Silk Road, and jointly build the "Belt and Road", The Sustainable Cities Alliance, the International Alliance for Green Development and other mechanisms and the implementation of the "Clean Silk Road Beijing Initiative", actively carry out the construction of a healthy Silk Road, a green Silk Road, a clean Silk Road, etc., extensively carry out people's livelihood cooperation, jointly carry out a series of training projects in the fields of environmental protection and anti-corruption, as well as various humanities cooperation projects such as the Silk Road Culture Year, Tourism Year, Art Festival, Film and Television Bridge, Seminar, Think Tank Dialogue, etc., to enhance mutual understanding and traditional friendship, so that the general public can become The main force and beneficiaries of the Belt and Road construction have laid a solid foundation of public opinion and social foundation for regional cooperation.

On this basis, as an advocate, practitioner and promoter of the "Belt and Road" construction, China will also vigorously promote the realization of the trinity of policies, rules and standards of relevant countries, and put the "Belt and Road" in the "Belt and Road"; Cooperation in construction is coordinated and aligned with the implementation of the United Nations 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development and with international and regional development initiatives such as the G20, APEC, ASEAN, African Union, Eurasian Economic Union, European Union, CELAC and other international and regional development initiatives, and strive to complement and promote each other; Promote the formation of a framework led by the "Belt and Road" Forum for International Cooperation and supported by multilateral and bilateral cooperation in various fields, focus on building mutually beneficial cooperation networks, new cooperation models, and diversified cooperation platforms, strengthen bilateral and third-party market cooperation, and enable cooperation to lead existing concepts and follow up actions. There is also a mechanism guarantee, with points leading the surface, from line to piece, gradually forming a new situation of regional cooperation.

### 3. Jointly build a new platform for international cooperation that conforms to the trend of economic globalization

The construction of the "Belt and Road", from initiative to action, from concept to practice, from vision to reality, has continuously achieved fruitful results, has become a global public good welcomed by all countries, and has become a process of promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind and making new progress. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, jointly building the "Belt and Road" is becoming China's plan to participate in global opening and cooperation, improve the global economic governance system, promote global common development and prosperity, and promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind. "We should focus on jointly building the Belt and Road, work with all parties to build a new platform for international cooperation, and add new impetus to the common development of the world."<sup>1</sup> China will follow the Strategic Plan for the Construction of the Silk Road Economic Belt and the 21st Century Maritime Silk Road adopted in 2014, the Vision and Actions for Jointly Building the Silk Road Economic Belt and the 21st Century Maritime Silk Road issued in 2015, and the Maritime Cooperation Vision for the Construction of the Belt and Road in 2017, focus on key points, intensive cultivation, promote the joint construction of the "Belt and Road" in the direction of high-quality development, and make it a common road of opportunity and prosperity.

First, build the Belt and Road into a road of peace. The ancient Silk Road, the rise of the times, the decline of wars. Once "the place of milk and honey", many places are now synonymous with conflict and crisis. To promote the building of a new type of international relations and a community with a shared future for mankind, countries along the Belt and Road need to respect each other's sovereignty, dignity and territorial integrity, respect each other's development paths and social systems, respect each other's core interests and major concerns, and create a security pattern of joint construction and sharing. Especially in view of the characteristics of the security situation in the regions through which the "Belt and Road" passes, China will work with countries along the route to resolve hot spots and adhere to political solutions; Focus on mediation, adhere to fairness and justice, and strive to promote counter-terrorism, treat both the symptoms and the root causes, eliminate poverty and backwardness and social injustice, and contribute to the "Belt and Road"; Build an environment of peace and tranquility.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "On Persisting in Comprehensively Deepening Reform", Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 520.

Second, build the Belt and Road into a road to prosperity. Development is the overall key to solving all problems. China's promotion of the "Belt and Road" is precisely in view of the characteristics that most countries along the route are developing countries, focusing on the fundamental issue of development, and by redeploing their respective advantageous resources, releasing the development potential of all countries, and realizing great economic integration, development linkage and sharing of achievements. Grasp the industry as the foundation of the economy, promote in-depth industrial cooperation among countries, run economic and trade and industrial cooperation parks, make industrial development plans compatible and promote each other, especially grasp the construction of large projects, strengthen international production capacity and equipment manufacturing cooperation, seize the development of new opportunities of the new industrial revolution, cultivate new business forms, and maintain the vitality of economic growth. Grasp finance, the bloodline of the modern economy, promote all countries to jointly establish a stable, sustainable and risk-controllable financial security system, innovate investment and financing models, promote public-private cooperation, build a diversified financing system and multi-level capital market, develop inclusive finance, and improve the financial service network. In particular, we will seize the trend of a new round of energy structure adjustment and energy technology change, build a global energy Internet, and achieve green and low-carbon development. In addition, China will work with countries along the Belt and Road to improve the construction of cross-regional logistics networks.

Third, build the "Belt and Road" into an open road. Openness leads to progress, closure leads to backwardness. China promotes the construction of the "Belt and Road" with openness as the guide, works with countries along the route to build an open cooperation platform, maintain and develop an open world economy, and create an environment conducive to open development; promote the construction of a fair, reasonable and transparent system of international economic, trade and investment rules, promote the orderly flow of production factors, efficient allocation of resources and deep market integration; jointly safeguard the multilateral trading system, promote the construction of free trade areas, further promote trade and investment liberalization and facilitation, and solve the imbalance of economic growth and development, governance dilemmas, Digital divide, distribution gap and other issues; help developing countries better integrate into and benefit from global value chains, industrial chains and supply chains. At the same time, China supports countries to actively develop an open economy in light of their own national conditions, participate in regional and global governance, jointly create more public goods, and work together to build a broad community of interests.

Fourth, build the "Belt and Road" into a road of innovation. Innovation is an important force for development. The construction of the "Belt and Road" itself is an initiative, and to do a good job in the construction of the "Belt and Road", we must also seek impetus for innovation. While China adheres to innovation-driven development,

Strive to work with countries along the Belt and Road to conform to the development trend of the fourth industrial revolution, jointly grasp the opportunities of digital, networked and intelligent development, jointly explore new technologies, new formats and new models, explore new growth drivers and development paths, strengthen cooperation in frontier fields such as digital economy, artificial intelligence, nanotechnology, quantum computers, etc., promote the construction of big data, cloud computing and smart cities, and build a digital Silk Road and innovative Silk Road in the 21st century. We will continue to implement the "Belt and Road" action plan for science and technology innovation, and work with all parties to promote the four major measures of scientific and technological people-to-people exchanges, joint construction of joint laboratories, cooperation in science and technology parks, and technology transfer; promote the deep integration of science and technology with industry and science and technology with finance, optimize the innovation environment, and gather innovation resources; Create entrepreneurial spaces and entrepreneurial workshops for young people from all over the world in the Internet era, and realize the youthful dreams of the future generation. At the same time, China will work with countries along the Belt and Road to formulate the Green Investment Principles of the Belt and Road, work together to build a "Green Silk Road", jointly implement the new concept of green development, and advocate green, low-carbon, circular and Sustainable production and lifestyle, strengthen ecological and environmental protection cooperation, build ecological civilization, and jointly achieve the 2030 sustainable development goals.

Fifth, build the "Belt and Road" into a road of civilization. "The friendship between countries lies in the affinity of the people, and the affinity of the people lies in the common heart." China is committed to working with other countries to promote exchanges and mutual learning among other countries, taking into account the rich and diverse characteristics of religions and civilizations along the "Belt and Road", so as to enhance mutual understanding, mutual respect and mutual trust, and make cooperation more inclusive; Make the foundation of cooperation more solid; promote the establishment of a multi-level humanities cooperation mechanism, build more cooperation platforms, open up more cooperation channels, and deepen exchanges; Promote educational cooperation, expand the scale of mutual exchange of international students, improve the level of cooperation in running schools, and continue to implement the "Silk Road"; Chinese Government Scholarship Program, running "Chinese Bridge" summer camp for young students and other activities; Promote the joint construction of the "Belt and Road" International Think Tank Cooperation Committee, News Cooperation Alliance and other mechanisms, and jointly build the "Intellectual Silk Road"; promote innovative culture, sports, In the field of health, we will actively carry out practical projects, promote the good use of historical and cultural heritage, jointly create tourism products with Silk Road characteristics and do a good job in heritage protection, and hold the "Belt and Road" Youth Creativity and Heritage Forum.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, under the guidance of Xi Jinping Diplomatic Thought, China's foreign affairs work has made all-round historic achievements, greatly enhanced China's international influence, appeal and shaping power, created a peaceful international environment and a good surrounding environment for China's development, improved China's ability and level to participate in global governance, and won the strategic initiative for China's development in the international arena. Practice has proved the greatness of Xi Jinping's diplomatic thought.

Facing the future, China in the new era will deeply practice Xi Jinping Diplomatic Thought, firmly grasp the main line of serving national rejuvenation and promoting human progress, promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind, strive to create a new situation in major-country diplomacy with Chinese characteristics, and create better external conditions for the realization of the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

## Chapter XV: Unswervingly Promoting Comprehensive and Strict Party Management

The key to adhering to and developing the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics lies in the party, and the key lies in administering the party strictly in an all-round way. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has started from the beginning of style building, firmly grasped political construction, which is the fundamental construction of the Party, and promoted the comprehensive and strict management of the Party with firm determination, tenacious will and unprecedented intensity, promoted the right style and discipline, and fought corruption and punishment, opening up a new situation in the new great project of Party building. Adhering to the strict management of the party in an all-round way is always on the road, having the courage to carry out self-revolution, constantly enhancing the party's political leadership, ideological leadership, mass organization and social appeal, and always maintaining the party's vigorous vitality and strong combat effectiveness, which has become a clear symbol and goal requirement for promoting party building in the new era.

### Section 1: Comprehensively and strictly administering the party is always on the way

Strictly administering the party in an all-round way has been a distinct theme of party building since the 18th CPC National Congress. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed that the Communist Party of China is the core of leadership in our cause, and iron must be hardened by itself. In the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, to accomplish the great cause, the party must have a new atmosphere and new achievements, must lead the party in an all-round strict management to a deeper depth with perseverance that will always be on the road, unswervingly uphold and improve the party's leadership, and unswervingly build the party into a stronger and more powerful party.



## 1. The strategic choice of comprehensively administering the party strictly

The fact that the party should manage the party and administer the party strictly is a consistent requirement and fundamental guideline for party building. The key to waging the great struggle with many new historical characteristics, advancing the great cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation lies in constantly advancing the new great project of party building. Compared with the development situation at home and abroad, compared with the missions and tasks undertaken, there is still a considerable gap between the party's leadership level and ruling level, the state of party organization building, and the quality, ability, and work style of party members and cadres. In particular, for a period of time, the problem of lax and soft management of the party in some localities and departments was very prominent, and negative and corrupt phenomena were breeding and spreading. Some people ignore the party's political discipline and political rules, and for the sake of their so-called career and influence, some engage in cronyism and exclusion of dissidents, some engage in gangs and gangs, some engage in anonymous false accusations and rumors, some engage in buying people's hearts and minds and pulling votes, some engage in sealing official wishes and celebrating each other's crowns, some engage in acting on their own and acting in a negative way, and some engage in making big mistakes and making vain criticism of the central authorities.<sup>1</sup> Comrade Xi Jinping clearly pointed out that "only when the party manages the party can it manage the party well, and only by administering the party strictly can it cure the party well."<sup>2</sup>

On October 8, 2014, Comrade Xi Jinping put forward for the first time the major proposition of "comprehensively promoting strict party management" at the summary meeting of the party's mass line education practice activities. In December 2014, during his investigation in Jiangsu, he further pointed out that it is necessary to coordinate and promote the comprehensive construction of a moderately prosperous society, comprehensively deepen reform, comprehensively govern the country according to law, and comprehensively administer the party strictly, so as to promote reform, opening up and socialist modernization to a new level. The Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core put forward the idea of "comprehensively administering the party strictly" and incorporated the comprehensive strict management of the party into the "four comprehensive" strategic layout. A new plan for managing the party and ruling the party in the new era was given.

Comrade Xi Jinping has always attached great importance to how to comprehensively and strictly administer the party and made a series of important expositions. At the Second Plenary Session of the 19th Central Commission for Discipline Inspection,

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, p. 105-106.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 4.

Comrade Xi Jinping has profoundly grasped the important experience of comprehensively administering the party strictly since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, and summarized the adherence to the "six unifications", that is: adhere to the unity of ideological party building and system party management, adhere to the unity of mission guidance and problem orientation, adhere to the unity of grasping the "key minority" and managing the "overwhelming majority", adhere to the unity of exercising power and assuming responsibility, adhere to the unity of strict management and concern and trust, and adhere to the unity of supervision within the party and the supervision of the masses. At the Third Plenary Session of the 19th Central Commission for Discipline Inspection, Comrade Xi Jinping summed up the scientific law of strictly managing the party and ruling the party with the "five musts" from the practice of reform and opening up over the past 40 years, that is: we must resolutely safeguard the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership to ensure that the whole party is in step and acts in unison; We must persist in administering the country before administering the party, and we must be strict in administering the party to ensure that the party becomes the mainstay of the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics; we must persist in taking the people as the center and ensure that the party is built for the public and the government is for the people; We must adhere to the style of reform and innovation and arduous struggle to ensure that the party always walks in the forefront of the times; We must resolutely struggle against negative and corrupt phenomena and ensure that the party always maintains its upright and honest political character. These understandings of laws and new experiences are hard-won and precious, and need to be upheld and deepened for a long time to become an important principle of party building in the new era.

The core of comprehensively administering the party strictly is to strengthen the party's leadership. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "In order to unite and lead the people to carry out great struggles, advance great causes, and realize great dreams, the Party must unswervingly adhere to and improve the Party's leadership and unswervingly build the Party into a stronger and more powerful party."<sup>1</sup> If the Party's leadership is weakened, or even abandoned, the Party's political status will be lost, the nature of socialism with Chinese characteristics will change, and the great achievements made by the Chinese people in their continuous struggle will be destroyed. To strengthen the party's leadership, it is necessary to strictly manage the party and administer the party. Administering the party strictly in an all-round way is an inevitable requirement for strengthening the party's leadership and is also an inevitable choice for strengthening the party's leadership.

The foundation for comprehensively administering the party strictly lies in comprehensiveness. Comrade Xi Jinping once pointed out that the so-called comprehensive means to manage the whole party and the whole party, covering all fields, aspects and departments of party building. Obviously, administering the party strictly in an all-round way requires that all aspects of party building be strict, that the content has no dead ends, runs through the entire process, involves all subjects, all aspects, and all departments, and relies on the whole party, manages the whole party, and governs the whole party.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 49.

The focus of comprehensively administering the party strictly is to grasp the "key minority." "If a person does not lead the way, he will not obey, and if he does not be first, he will not believe. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "the key to strictly administering the party is to grasp the 'key minority' of leading cadres and strictly manage leading cadres at all levels."<sup>1</sup> The Sixth Plenary Session of the 18th CPC Central Committee stressed: "To strengthen party building, we must do a good job in leading cadres, especially senior cadres, and the key is to do a good job in the composition of the Central Committee, the Political Bureau of the Central Committee, and the Standing Committee of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee." Only by firmly grasping the "key minority" and paying attention to giving play to their "head geese effect" can we achieve remarkable results in comprehensively administering the party strictly.

The key to running the party strictly in an all-round way lies in strictness. The so-called strictness means that the real management is really strict, the dare to manage the strict, and the long-term management is strict. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed that there is no "Danshu iron ticket" for impunity in the party, and there is no "iron hat king", and "serious inner-party political life is the basis for comprehensively and strictly administering the party." To manage the party, the party must first manage its inner-party political life; to administer the party strictly, it must first start from the party's inner-party political life."<sup>2</sup> At the same time, it is necessary to grasp ideological strictness and replenish the "calcium" of spirit; grasp discipline strictly, and put discipline in the forefront; grasp the strict management of officials and adhere to the standards for good cadres in the new era; grasp the strict work style and persist in the building of work style always on the road; grasp the anti-corruption strictness and punish corruption with a zero-tolerance attitude; grasp the system of strict management of the party, and regard the building of the party's internal laws and regulations system with the party constitution as the fundamental observance as a major strategic task that has a bearing on the party's long-term ruling power.

The key to administering the party strictly in an all-round way lies in administering the party. The so-called governance means that from the party Central Committee to the provincial, municipal, and county party committees, from the central ministries and commissions, the party leading groups (party committees) of state organs and departments, to grass-roots party branches, they must shoulder the main responsibility; party committee secretaries must regard doing a good job in party building as a matter within their scope and must shoulder their duties; discipline inspection commissions at all levels must shoulder the responsibility of supervision, dare to stare at black faces, and dare to enforce discipline and accountability. In the past, we also talked about administering the party strictly, but the biggest reason why it did not work well and achieved little results in many places was that the main body of responsibility for managing the party and the party was not clear, the accountability was ineffective, and the accountability was not strict. To administer the party strictly in an all-round way means to be determined to solve this difficult problem, grasp the "bull's nose" of the main responsibility of administering the party and the party, so that all the requirements for administering the party and the party will become mandatory requirements, and the habit and consciousness of administering the party strictly will be formed through long-term meritorious service.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 138.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 44.

## 2. Undergoing revolutionary forging in the course of comprehensively administering the party strictly

Comprehensively administering the party strictly is a prominent highlight of the party Central Committee's governance with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China. After the implementation of this major strategy, the inner-party political life has been renewed, the inner-party political ecology has noticeably improved, the party's creativity, cohesion, and combat effectiveness have been significantly enhanced, the party's unity and unity have been further consolidated, the relationship between the party and the masses has improved significantly, and the party has become stronger in the revolutionary forging.

Comprehensively strengthen the party's leadership. The Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core clearly emphasizes that the Party, government, military, and civilian studies, the Party is the leader of everything, and emphasizes that the Communist Party of China is the strong leadership core and the highest political leading force for the cause of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Through strict political discipline and political rules of the Party and the implementation of the political responsibility of administering the Party at all levels, the political awareness, overall situation, core awareness, and awareness of alignment of the whole Party have been continuously enhanced, the political consciousness of safeguarding the authority of the Party Central Committee and centralized and unified leadership has been continuously enhanced, and the loose and soft situation of managing the Party and the Party has been greatly changed.

Strengthen the ideals and convictions of the whole party. Revolutionary ideals are higher than heaven. Adhering to the goals and pursuit of communists has always been the foundation for communists to live and survive. Noble beliefs and firm convictions do not arise spontaneously. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out, "To refine the 'King Kong not bad body', we must arm our minds with scientific theories and constantly cultivate our spiritual home."<sup>1</sup> Since the 18th CPC National Congress, the CPC Central Committee has demanded that cadres at all levels, especially senior cadres, regard the systematic mastery of Marxist theory as their housekeeping skills, and that party members should study the basic theory of Marxism in their original form, the latest achievements of the Sinicization of Marxism, and base their ideals and convictions on rational identification with scientific theories, on a correct understanding of historical laws, and on an accurate grasp of the basic national conditions. Under the strong promotion of the Party Central Committee, the theoretical study of the whole party, especially the study of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, has been continuously advanced, and the belief in Marxism, the belief in socialism with Chinese characteristics, and the realization of the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation have been further strengthened.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 61.

Focus on the building of the party's work style. The party's work style is the party's image, which has a bearing on people's hearts and minds and on the party's survival. The party Central Committee has firmly grasped the strengthening of the party's work style, put discipline in the forefront, started with the formulation and implementation of the eight central regulations, and issued a mobilization order to solve the problem of the party's work style. The party Central Committee has intensively carried out the party's mass line education and practice activities, focusing on solving the "four winds" problem, and achieved major results; it has carried out special education on "three strictness and three realities", and carried out a concentrated "calcium supplement" and "refueling" for leading cadres at and above the county and department level in terms of ideology, work style, and party spirit; promoted the normalization and institutionalization of the "two studies and one doing" study and education, and further solved the problems existing in the party member contingent in terms of ideology, organization, work style, discipline, and so on. The education on the theme of "not forgetting the original intention and remembering the mission" as the general requirement has achieved the specific goals of making gains in theoretical study, being baptized ideologically and politically, daring to take on responsibilities for entrepreneurship, serving the people and solving problems, and setting an example of honesty and integrity.

Build a large contingent of high-quality cadres. The key to building socialism with Chinese characteristics lies in building a large contingent of high-quality cadres and cultivating a contingent of cadres with iron general belief, iron general discipline, and iron general responsibility. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee has put forward the party's organizational line for the new era: fully implement Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, focus on the construction of the organizational system, focus on cultivating high-quality cadres who are loyal, clean and responsible, focus on gathering outstanding talents in all aspects who are patriotic and dedicated, adhere to both ability and political integrity, put virtue first, and appoint people on merit, and provide a strong organizational guarantee for upholding and strengthening the party's overall leadership, adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. In accordance with the standards of good cadres in the new period of "firm conviction, serving the people, being diligent and pragmatic, daring to take on responsibilities, and being honest and honest," efforts should be made to train and select good cadres who are loyal, clean, and responsible for the needs of the party and the people, and strive to crack down on "only votes", "only points", "only GDP", "only age", and "only education." We should resolutely investigate and deal with such behaviors as interceding and greeting, asking for official posts, buying and selling official posts, and soliciting votes and bribing votes, and earnestly solve the problems of weakening, weakening, and marginalizing grassroots party organizations, and the situation and atmosphere of selecting and employing people have noticeably improved, and the organizational foundation of the party's ruling power has been continuously consolidated.

An overwhelming trend in the fight against corruption has been formed. Corruption is a social cancer and the biggest threat facing the party. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, the CPC Central Committee has cracked down on corruption, adhered to no forbidden areas, full coverage, and zero tolerance, unswervingly "fought tigers," "flapped flies," and "hunted foxes," seriously investigated and dealt with a number of corrupt and degenerate elements such as Zhou Yongkang, Bo Xilai, Guo Boxiong, Xu Caihou, Sun Zhengcai, and Ling Jihua; and investigated and dealt with a series of major cases, such as "systematic corruption" in Shanxi, election sabotage in Hengyang, Hunan Province, vote solicitation and bribery in Nanchong, Sichuan, and vote

solicitation and bribery in Liaoning, which have formed a strong deterrent effect on corruption. We should deepen the reform of the discipline inspection and supervision system, strengthen supervision and restraint over power, focus on promoting the extension of strict party management to the grassroots level in an all-round way, and initially realize the goal of not daring to be corrupt, the cage that cannot be corrupted is getting stronger and stronger, the that does not want to be corrupt is being built, and the anti-corruption struggle has won an overwhelming victory.

Use systems to manage the party and govern the party. Strengthening the building of inner-party laws and regulations is a long-term and fundamental policy for comprehensively and strictly administering the party. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee has adhered to the principle of governing the country according to law and the system, governing the party according to regulations, and promoting overall planning and integrated construction. The central authorities have promulgated or revised more than half of the existing internal party regulations, and the system of internal party laws and regulations has been continuously improved, initially forming an internal party laws and regulations system with the party constitution as the foundation, democratic centralism as the core, and guidelines, regulations and other internal party regulations as the main trunk.

### 3. Promote the development of strict party management in an all-round way and in depth

Since the 18th CPC National Congress, historic achievements have been made in administering the party strictly, but we must not be blindly optimistic. Reality warns us that there is still a heavy task and a long way to go in comprehensively administering the party strictly, and we must not slacken our efforts in administering the party for a moment. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out in his report to the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China: "The whole party must soberly realize that the ruling environment facing our party is complex, the factors affecting the advanced nature of the party and weakening the purity of the party are also complex, and the outstanding problems existing in the party such as impure ideology, impure organization, and impure work style have not yet been fundamentally resolved." It is necessary to profoundly understand the long-term nature and complexity of the tests facing the party in ruling, reform and opening up, market economy, and external environment, and profoundly understand the sharpness and severity of the dangers of spiritual slackness, lack of ability, separation from the masses, and passive corruption that the party is facing, persist in being problem-oriented, maintain strategic concentration, and promote the development of strict party management in an all-round way and in depth."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, page 49.

The 19th CPC National Congress put forward the general requirements for party building in the new era, that is: uphold and strengthen the party's comprehensive leadership, insist that the party should manage the party and administer the party strictly in an all-round way, take strengthening the party's long-term ruling capacity building, advanced and purity building as the main line, take the party's political construction as the command, take firm ideals and convictions as the foundation, and mobilize the enthusiasm, initiative, and creativity of the whole party as the focus of efforts to comprehensively promote the party's political, ideological, organizational, and work style building. The building of discipline should run through the building of systems, promote the anti-corruption struggle in depth, continuously improve the quality of party building, and build the party into a Marxist ruling party that is always in the forefront of the times, wholeheartedly supported by the people, brave in self-revolution, and able to withstand the tests of all kinds of storms. This general requirement establishes the principles, principles, objectives, main line, overall layout, and strategic arrangements for party building in the new era, and provides the basic guidelines for comprehensively promoting party building in the new era and comprehensively administering the party strictly in depth.

Upholding and strengthening the party's comprehensive leadership is the fundamental principle of party building in the new era. We must understand the relationship between party building, the party's overall leadership, and the strict management of the party from a political perspective. The fundamental purpose of strengthening party building is to properly safeguard the party's leading position and consolidate the party's ruling position and ruling foundation; while to uphold and strengthen the party's comprehensive leadership, we must achieve the goal of strengthening party building while promoting strict party management in an all-round way, so that the party can better withstand the "four major tests" and "four dangers." Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that China's affairs must be handled well, first of all, the affairs of the Communist Party of China must be handled well. "If the party is not managed effectively and strictly... Then sooner or later our party will lose its qualification to govern and will inevitably be eliminated by history."<sup>1</sup> The common adherence to party building, the party's overall leadership, and the strict management of the party in the new era is to "build the party into a Marxist ruling party that is always in the forefront of the times, wholeheartedly supported by the people, brave in self-revolution, and able to withstand the tests of all kinds of storms."<sup>2</sup>

The overall layout of party building in the new era aims to solve the major issue of "how to build the party" in the new era, including political construction, ideological construction, organizational construction, work style building, and discipline building, and to penetrate the system building and promote the anti-corruption struggle in depth. The main line of party building is to strengthen the party's long-term ruling capacity building and the building of its advanced nature and purity. Strengthening the party's long-term ruling capacity emphasizes that the party should be prepared for danger in times of peace and always maintain a high degree of vigilance against the risks faced by the party's long-term ruling. keep

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 5.

<sup>2</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017 edition, p. 50.

The advanced nature and purity of the party is the fundamental task and eternal task of the self-building of a Marxist political party.

The foothold of party building in the new era is to continuously improve the quality of party building. For the first time in the history of the Party, the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly put forward the proposition of "improving the quality of Party building", and it has a clear sense of the times and problem-oriented. Party building in the new era is not only the development of the scale of the party's organization, but also the improvement of the quality of party building, including the quality of party members, grassroots organizations, and internal party laws and regulations.

In order to implement the general requirements of party building in the new era, the party Central Committee has made new arrangements for party building in the new era, emphasizing the need to put the party's political construction in the first place, arm the whole party with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, build a team of high-quality and professional cadres, strengthen the building of grassroots organizations with a focus on improving organizational strength, persist in upright conduct and discipline, win an overwhelming victory in the anti-corruption struggle, improve the supervision system of the party and the state, enhance the party's self-purification ability, and comprehensively enhance its ruling ability. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "To lead a large socialist country with more than 1.3 billion people, our party must not only be strong in politics, but also have strong skills."<sup>1</sup> The whole party, especially leading cadres, should earnestly enhance the eight skills, including the ability to study, political leadership, reform and innovation, scientific development, ruling according to law, mass work, vigorously grasping implementation, and controlling risks, and continuously improve their leadership ability and ruling level. As long as the party builds itself well and strongly, and ensures that the party is always with the people, it will certainly be able to lead the ship carrying the great dream of the Chinese people to break the waves.

## Section 2: The political building of the Party is the fundamental building of the Party

The political building of the Party is the fundamental building of the Party and determines the direction and effect of Party building.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compilation of Documents of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, People's Publishing House, 2017, p. 54-55.



Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized that party building in the new era should be guided by the party's political construction and put the party's political construction in the first place. This is a major proposition put forward by the party based on the new mission of the new era, with a profound insight into its own nature, historical experience, and the law of construction, and is a programmatic requirement for comprehensively promoting the new great project of party building in the new era.

### 1. Put the party's political construction in the first place

Putting the party's political building in the first place and leading party building in this way is fundamentally determined by the core position of political construction in building the party and rejuvenating the party, by the fundamental nature and purpose of the party, and by the party's ruling mission and fighting goals in the new era. By grasping the "bull's nose" of political construction, we can grasp the soul and grasp the program.

Political attributes are the first attributes of political parties, and political construction is the first requirement for party building. Political parties in the modern sense are all political organizations condensed around a certain political program, political line, and political goals, and different political objectives and political propositions not only reflect the essential differences of political parties, but also determine the future and fate of political parties. If you don't talk about politics, you can't become a political party, and losing your political nature means changing your course.

Classic writers of Marxism have always attached importance to political issues and the political construction of political parties. Engels emphasized that the political domination of the proletariat is a means of eliminating classes, therefore, "the question is only how to engage in politics and what kind of politics." And for us it is impossible to abandon politics."<sup>1</sup> He added: "After all, a new program is always a banner that has been raised publicly, and the outside world will judge the party by it."<sup>2</sup> Lenin clearly pointed out: "Politics cannot fail to occupy the first place in comparison with the economy." To not affirm this is to forget the minimum common sense of Marxism.<sup>3</sup> These expositions on the nature of political parties embody the distinctive characteristics of the Communist Party.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 169.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 350.

<sup>3</sup> "Lenin's Essays on Dialectical Materialism and Historical Materialism", People's Publishing House, 2009 edition, p. 302.

Paying attention to the party's political building and placing the party's political building in an important position is a high degree of consciousness that the CPC has consistently and consciously carried out. During the revolutionary period, Comrade Mao Zedong put forward the famous thesis that "party building must be closely linked with the party's political line" and demanded that the whole party step up political training and raise its political level. After the founding of New China, Comrade Mao Zedong attached greater importance to the party's political construction, pointing out: "Political work is the lifeline of all economic work."<sup>1</sup> In the new period of reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping stressed that we must always stress politics, "Socialist modernization is our biggest politics at present, because it represents the greatest interests and the most fundamental interests of the people."<sup>2</sup> Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has clearly pointed out: "As a Marxist political party, our party emphasizes politics as an outstanding feature and advantage. .... Is the Communist Party still called the Communist Party if it doesn't talk about politics?"<sup>3</sup> Along the way, the Communist Party of China has continuously won one major victory after another in revolution, construction, and reform, which is inseparable from the party's clear-cut emphasis on politics and its emphasis on strengthening political construction.

Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the most fundamental reason why the Party and the country have made historic achievements and undergone historic changes is that the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has insisted on considering the overall work from the political point of view, led China's development with strong political determination, overcome difficulties with strong political courage, and gathered strength with lofty political character, thus promoting the solution of many difficult problems that have been wanted to be solved for a long time but have not been solved, accomplishing many major things that were wanted to be done in the past but failed to accomplish, and opening up a new realm of governing the country and managing the party and the party.

Putting the party's political construction in the first place is an important choice for the party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core to comprehensively and strictly administer the party and eliminate the threat to the development of the party's cause. Due to reasons such as lax and soft management of the party during a period of time, some tendencies within the party that do not stress politics, downplay politics, and depoliticize have not been fundamentally resolved. The phenomena of not taking politics seriously, believing that stressing politics is false and "leftist," phenomena of not abiding by political discipline and political rules, and not being able to follow orders or prohibitions, lack of political consciousness and political determination, and the phenomenon of protecting oneself on major issues of principle exist in large quantities.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Collected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 6, People's Publishing House, 1999 edition, p. 449.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994 edition, p. 163.

<sup>3</sup> "Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Administering the Party Strictly, ed.", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 80.

These are all manifestations of political vacillation and weakening. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that "political problems are fundamental and big problems at all times"<sup>1</sup> and that "political problems among cadres are no less harmful to the party than corruption, and some are even more serious than corruption."<sup>2</sup> To maintain the true political character of a Marxist party and maintain the party's vigorous vitality, we must grasp political construction as a basic project and a life project, and make efforts to consolidate the foundation and build the foundation so that the party will always be strong politically.

## 2. Earnestly strengthen the party's political building

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that it is necessary to set the political direction, adhere to the party's political leadership, consolidate the political foundation, conserve the political ecology, prevent political risks, always maintain the true political color, improve political ability, and provide an important guarantee for the continuous development and growth of our party and from victory to victory.

Put the quasi-political direction. Political direction is the first issue for the survival and development of the party, and it has a bearing on the party's future and destiny and the success or failure of its cause. To strengthen the party's political building in the new era, we must regard adherence to the correct political orientation as the fixed star and ballast stone. If the political direction goes astray, we will make disastrous and subversive mistakes.<sup>6</sup> The correct political direction is principled and concrete, and the most important thing is to adhere to the Marxist guidance and position, adhere to the lofty ideal of communism and the common ideal of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the "two centenary goals", adhere to the party's leadership over all work, and adhere to the party's basic theory, basic line, and basic strategy, adhere to the purpose of the party. We must take these fundamental political principles as the coordinates for planning all work, run through all aspects and the entire process of administering the party, and resolutely oppose all phenomena that weaken, question, and negate the party's leadership and China's socialist system.

Adhere to the party's political leadership. The most important thing is to achieve "two safeguards", the most important thing is to resolutely safeguard the core position of Comrade Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party. It is necessary to adhere to the party's overall control of the overall situation, coordinate all parties, establish and improve the institutional system for upholding and strengthening the party's comprehensive leadership, and provide a solid institutional guarantee for implementing the party's leadership in all aspects and links in all fields of governance.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 87.

<sup>2</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Strict Party Discipline and Rules", Central Literature Publishing House, China Founder Publishing House, 2016 edition, p. 23

Upholding the party's political leadership inevitably requires improving the party's leadership style, which means adhering to democratic centralism as the fundamental leadership system, adhering to the mass line as the basic leadership method, and adhering to the basic leadership method of ruling according to law, strengthening scientific thinking, and resolutely implementing the party's line, principles, and policies.

Firm political beliefs. Only when we are sober in theory and firm in theory can we strengthen our political beliefs. To strengthen our ideals and convictions, we must firmly establish the lofty ideal of communism and the common ideal of socialism with Chinese characteristics, stand up the spiritual backbone of communists, resolutely prevent believing in Marxism and Leninism, ghosts and gods, and money without believing in truth, and resolutely oppose all kinds of erroneous ideas that distort, tamper with, and negate Marxism. Adhere to the guiding position of Marxism, insist on arming the whole party and educating the people with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, consolidate the ideological foundation, and remember the original mission. The party's basic line in the initial stage of socialism is the lifeline of the party and the country and the happiness of the people, and it must be resolutely defended and firmly implemented. The more we face the severe and complicated international and domestic situations and the more we are in the crucial period of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, the more we must keep a sober mind and strategic determination and implement the party's political line.

Purify the political ecology. We must take the creation of a clean political ecology as a basic and regular task. It is necessary to start with serious inner-party political life, strictly implement the "Several Guidelines for Inner-Party Political Life in the New Situation," focus on improving the quality of inner-party political life, continuously enhance the political, epochal, principled, and combative nature of inner-party political life, and strive to form a political situation in the whole party that is both centralized and democratic, disciplined and free, unified in will, and comfortable and lively in the individual. Strictly observe the party's political discipline and political rules, regard resolutely fulfilling the "two safeguards" as the primary political discipline, properly observe and implement it, adhere to the "five musts," and seriously investigate and deal with the "seven haves" problem. Develop a positive and healthy inner-party political culture, adhere to the "three strictness and three truths", vigorously carry forward the values of loyalty and honesty, fairness and decency, seeking truth from facts, honesty and integrity, and vigorously advocate refreshing comradely relations, well-behaved relations between superiors and subordinates, and clean government-business relations. We should give prominence to political criteria in selecting and appointing personnel, always put political criteria in the first place, pay attention to selecting and promoting cadres who comprehensively implement the party's theory, line, principles, and policies, and are loyal and clean and responsible, and implement a "one-vote veto" for politically unqualified cadres. Resolutely oppose corruption and build clean politics, adhere to heavy containment, strong pressure, and long-term deterrence, and use the "four forms" of supervision and discipline to continue to maintain a high-pressure situation against corruption. Tighten the institutional cage, improve the supervision system of the party and the state, and cut off the chain of interest transmission through reform and institutional innovation.

Guard against political risks. Political risk is a major issue directly related to the party's ruling position and the long-term peace and stability of the party and the country. Preventing political risks is an important part of strengthening the party's political construction, and is a political prerequisite for ensuring the stability of the political power and making the party always the core of socialist leadership with Chinese characteristics. On the journey of winning the great victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, it is necessary not only to guard against major domestic political risks, win the battle of comprehensively deepening reform, and consolidate the overwhelming victory in the anti-corruption struggle for development, but also calmly deal with risks and challenges from foreign politics, strengthen the correct political stance, and avoid making subversive mistakes on fundamental issues. Resolutely implement the overall concept of national security, implement the requirements of the Party Central Committee on maintaining political security, and ensure China's political security.

### **3. Continuously improve the political ability of Party organizations and Party members and cadres at all levels**

The strength of the party comes from the organization and from the vast number of party members and cadres. The key to putting the party's political building in the first place and strengthening the party's political building lies in improving the political ability of party organizations at all levels and party-member cadres. On the basis of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China clearly requiring the whole party to strengthen its political leadership skills, Comrade Xi Jinping also specially advised that senior party cadres should pay attention to improving their political ability and match their political ability with their leadership responsibilities.

Constantly strengthening the political nature of party organizations at all levels is an important way to improve the political ability of party organizations. Political attributes are the fundamental attributes of party organizations, and political attributes must be highlighted from the party Central Committee to local party committees, from grassroots party organizations at all levels to party groups in various localities and departments, and from party discipline inspection commissions at all levels to party work organs. All Party members should strengthen the Party's consciousness and organizational concept, and all Party organizations and all Party members must firmly establish a sense of playing chess, work in unison under the centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee, and form the overall joint force of the Party's organizational system.

Giving play to the political functions of state organs, mass organizations, and state-owned enterprises and institutions is an inevitable requirement for enhancing the party's political ability. First of all, state organs are essentially political organs, and it is their duty to speak clearly about politics. State organs should always adhere to the implementation of economic and social management activities in accordance with the law under the leadership of the party, and actively and proactively implement the party's leadership propositions and major policy decisions and arrangements.

It is necessary to improve the political position, set the political orientation, pay attention to political results, consider political influence, resolutely prevent and correct erroneous understandings and practices that separate and oppose politics and business, and ensure that politics and business are integrated and highly unified. Second, mass organizations are political organizations under the leadership of the Party, and they must actively play their political role. It is necessary to conscientiously perform political duties, give full play to the role of the bridge and link linking the masses of the people, increase the intensity of political mobilization, political guidance, and political education, and better undertake the political task of guiding the masses to listen to and follow the party. Deepen the implementation of the Party Central Committee's decision-making and deployment on the reform of the masses, and earnestly enhance the political, advanced, and mass nature of the masses. Third, strengthen the political orientation of state-owned enterprises and institutions. State-owned enterprises and institutions are an important force to rely on for the party to govern and rejuvenate the country, and they must always adhere to the party's leadership, conscientiously implement the decisions and arrangements of the party central committee on promoting the reform and development of state-owned enterprises and institutions, earnestly strengthen the party building work of the units, give full play to the important role of party organizations, and ensure that their units adhere to the correct political direction and achieve good political results.

Improving the political skills of party members and cadres is the key to enhancing the party's political ability. Party-member cadres are the backbone of the party's ruling and rejuvenating the country, and they must earnestly improve their ability to grasp the direction, the overall trend, and the overall situation, and their ability to distinguish between right and wrong in politics, maintain political concentration, control the political situation, and prevent political risks through strengthening political ability training and political practice experience. Efforts should be made to enhance political awareness and political standing, take a clear-cut attitude in the face of major issues of right and wrong, and always maintain a high degree of consistency with the Party Central Committee in terms of political stance, political direction, political principle, and political road. He is good at studying and judging the situation and analyzing problems politically, consciously thinking about problems and doing work under the overall situation of the work of the party and the state, and doing everything to obey the overall situation and serve the overall situation. Enhance awareness of danger and risk, take the initiative to shoulder the political responsibility of daring to struggle, dare to shoulder, and dare to be responsible, consciously plunge into the tests of various struggles, improve political skills in practical work and concrete actions, enhance political sensitivity and political discernment, strengthen resolutely resist behaviors that violate political discipline and endanger political security, be "fighters" who have the courage to struggle, and do not be "gentlemen" who cherish feathers.

### **Section 3: Courageous to self-revolution**

The courage to self-revolution is the most distinctive character of the Communist Party of China and the greatest advantage of the Party.

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "The greatness of the Communist Party of China does not lie in not making mistakes, but in never hiding from medical treatment, daring to face problems head-on, daring to self-revolution, and having a strong ability to repair itself."<sup>1</sup> The Party can lead the people in a great social revolution and can also carry out a great self-revolution.

### 1. The courage to self-revolution is the most distinctive character of the Party

Upholding self-revolution is an inevitable requirement of the nature of a Marxist political party. In order to maintain its advanced nature and purity and realize its lofty mission, a Marxist political party must unswervingly solve its own problems and build and temper itself with the spirit of courageous self-revolution. The fundamental mission and lofty ideal of a Marxist political party is to realize communism. Realizing such lofty missions and ideals is the most majestic and magnificent undertaking in the history of human society, as well as the most arduous and complex task. This means the continuous transformation of the objective world and the subjective world, the continuous change of productive forces and production relations, the economic base and superstructure, and the continuous opening up of a new history and new era of human society, and its internal logical premise is to carry out the most resolute and thorough revolution. This is why Lenin, in his evaluation of Marxism, emphasized the profound truth that it is "critical and revolutionary in nature." In the revolution carried out by the Marxist party, the self-revolution bears the brunt of the revolution, and it is necessary to fight against all problems that weaken the advanced nature and undermine the purity, so as to cure the disease and heal the wounds, and promote the turbidity. Marx also said that the proletarian revolution differs from other revolutions in that it criticizes itself and grows by criticizing itself.

Self-revolution has always run through the struggle of the Communist Party of China in the past 100 years. A history of the Party is a history of the Party's courage to revolutionize itself. In the early days of the founding of the party, the resolute struggle against the "left" adventurous mistakes existing in the party before the Long March, against the errors of "left" dogmatism during the Long March, and against Zhang Guochuan's separatist behavior was a self-revolution; the resolute struggle against subjectivism, sectarianism, and the eight strands of the party existing in the party through rectification during the Yan'an period was a self-revolution; the struggle against corruption, anti-waste, and waste carried out after the founding of New China was a self-revolution; Anti-bureaucracy and the like are also self-revolution.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 589.

It is precisely in the continuous self-revolution that the Party has turned crises into security and turned crises into opportunities, constantly growing from small to large and from weak to strong, leading the Chinese people from victory to victory.

Reform is another self-revolution of the Party. This revolution has profoundly changed Chinese society, the Chinese nation, and the Communist Party of China itself. From taking class struggle as the keynote to taking economic construction as the center, from being closed and semi-closed to opening up to the outside world in an all-round way, and from a planned economy to a socialist market economy, the reform and opening up over the past 40 years and more have fully embodied the party's self-revolution in the process of socialist construction of some ideologies, behavioral habits, and institutional mechanisms that do not meet the requirements of modernization. It was precisely such a profound self-revolution that the Party began the great journey of leading the Chinese people to build socialism with Chinese characteristics. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has started by strictly managing the Party and ruling the Party, and has opened a knife to the stubborn and stubborn diseases in the Party with the political courage of the blade inward, which has more clearly embodied the Party's firm determination, strong will and consistent revolutionary spirit to dare to self-revolution. It is precisely by relying on the courage of self-revolution and the spirit of strong men breaking their wrists that the party has constantly cracked the curse of "historical cycle rate" and achieved another "phoenix nirvana", has achieved a strong improvement in its own combat effectiveness, realized the strong cohesion of the party's heart, the army's heart, and the people's heart, constantly created a new situation in managing the party and the party, and successfully opened up a new realm of socialism with Chinese characteristics.

The courage of self-revolution is an important way for the CPC to adhere to the problem-oriented approach to promote the development of the cause, demonstrating its fearless revolutionary courage. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that under the circumstances of profound changes in the conditions of the world, the country, and the party, "whether there is a strong spirit of self-revolution, whether there is a strong characteristic of self-purification, and whether it can persistently fight against its own problems and mistakes has become a key factor determining the success or failure of the party."<sup>1</sup> In order to rejuvenate and strengthen the party, we must build and temper ourselves with the spirit of courageous self-revolution. On the one hand, the decisive victory in building a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, the comprehensive construction of a modern socialist country, and the realization of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation have put forward unprecedented new challenges and new requirements for the party. On the other hand, the "four major tests" and "four dangers" have existed for a long time, and the party can only face the problems head-on and eliminate all viruses that erode the healthy body of the party. Only by ensuring that the Party has vigorous vitality and strong combat effectiveness can we provide a strong guarantee for the development of the cause of the Party and the country.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 591.



## 2. the essence of courageous self-revolution

Revolution, in its original sense, is to reform the old and innovate, to keep the right and to bring out the new, and its value direction is to improve, to the new, and to the good. Self-revolution means that this revolution is the subject's conscious, spontaneous, and automatic behavior towards itself. The self-revolution of the Communist Party of China is, in a nutshell, not forgetting its original mission, keeping in mind its purpose of serving the people, insisting on proceeding from reality in everything, and achieving self-purification, self-improvement, self-innovation and self-improvement through self-vigilance, self-denial, self-reflection and self-transcendence.

The noble pursuit of upholding truth and correcting mistakes. History always follows a tortuous path, smooth sailing is ideal, and zigzagging forward is the norm. The development of world history shows that the greatness of a political party does not depend on riding lightly and striding forward in good times, but on whether it can go against the trend in adversity, whether it can be reborn in desperate situations, whether it can correct chaos after mistakes, and whether it can resolutely rise up after setbacks. In the past hundred years, the Communist Party of China has had the glory of triumphant performance, but also the trough of mistakes and setbacks, and even stood on the precipice of life and death for a time. However, at critical junctures in history, the Party has always been able to turn the tide and turn dangers into dangers because it dares to uphold the truth, correct mistakes, and always maintain the courage to revolutionize itself and start all over again; it always has a strong ability to correct mistakes and repair itself. Comrade Mao Zedong pointed out in his article "Serving the People": "Because we serve the people, if we have shortcomings, we are not afraid of criticism and pointing them out."<sup>1</sup> "As long as we uphold the good for the interests of the people and correct the wrong for the interests of the people, our team will surely prosper."<sup>2</sup> The Communist Party of China is open-minded and open-minded, and has always adopted a materialist attitude towards the mistakes made by the Party in its understanding and practice. As Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Our party has always maintained the spirit of self-revolution, maintained the courage to admit and correct mistakes, picked up a scalpel again and again to eliminate its own diseases, and solved its own problems again and again by itself."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 1004.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 1004.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 590.

Inward, selfless and fearless political courage. Self-revolution means "revolutionizing" one's own life and "using a knife" on one's own existing problems; it means introspecting oneself, denying oneself, abandoning oneself, and surpassing oneself. However, the blade inward and self-revolution is not a metaphysical view of negation, but a dialectical view of negation: that is, the purpose of self-revolution is not to overthrow oneself and completely deny oneself, not to change course and change the banner, but to ensure that the Party always becomes a strong leadership core for the great cause and that the socialist system with Chinese characteristics is more mature and more stereotyped. A mature and powerful Marxist political party has both the determination to uphold itself and the courage to renew itself; the self-confidence to be beautiful and the consciousness to expose the shortcomings and ugliness; and the courage to "change other people's lives" and the courage to "change one's own life." The party's self-revolution is arduous work; it breaks the barriers of interests, and it is more difficult to touch interests than to touch the soul; it is the malpractice of the system that is eliminated and the cancer of corruption removed, so it is a very difficult revolution. Since the 18th CPC National Congress, the party has fought many "tigers," slapped "flies," and opposed the "four winds" for a long time, which has exceeded the expectations of the Chinese people and surprised outsiders. Such a self-revolution could not have been achieved without the courage to break the cauldron and sacrifice others, and without the courage to scrape bones to cure poison and break the wrists of strong men.

The historical responsibility of all-round and whole-process change. All political parties that carry out revolution have more or less taken some self-revolutionary actions, but the breadth and intensity of self-revolution determine the realm that different political parties can achieve. The self-revolution of the Communist Party of China is an all-round revolution and a revolution of the whole process, and it has the characteristics of active planning, conscious initiation, and independent control, including both revolution to itself and the cause it promotes, and is the unity of advancing the party's cause and strengthening self-construction. It is precisely on the basis of a sober understanding of "whether China's problems are going to occur or within the Communist Party" that the Party's revolution for itself is not only a kind of soberness, a consciousness, and a kind of responsibility, but also a practical action of managing the party and administering the party, and it is the unity of knowledge and action. Such a revolution emphasizes self-supervision and self-repair, but does not exclude external supervision such as mass supervision, social supervision, and public opinion supervision; it is the result of the joint efforts of all quarters and the unity of self-discipline and other disciplines. Such a revolution, covering all aspects and fields of party building, is to make ideology and theory full of creativity, to make the organizational system more mobilizing, to make the style and image more affinity, to make the institutional system more mature and formalized, and to make the fight against corruption and clean government more symptomatic and cure. There is no end to such revolutions; as far as specific stages and goals are concerned, the revolution has already succeeded; in terms of a larger scope and a longer historical period, the revolution has not yet succeeded, and comrades still need to make efforts.

Of course, self-revolution has different historical tasks in different historical stages, embodies different phased characteristics, and is the unity of stages and processes."

Reform the old and innovate, keep the right and produce new practical actions. Social life is practical and changing in nature, dialectics is critical and revolutionary in nature, and self-revolution embodies the practical character and critical spirit of Marxism. The party's self-revolution is a will, a spirit, a pursuit, and a courage, but in the final analysis it is an action, a practical action that breaks through stereotypes and opens up and innovates. The Party has always had the courage to open up a new situation in its undertakings with practical actions of self-renewal. During the revolutionary years, the Party led the Chinese people to create a "revolutionary world miracle," and the fundamental reason was that we did not follow the old path of the Western democratic revolution and did not copy the path of the "October Revolution" in Russia, but embarked on a new democratic revolutionary road of encircling the cities in the countryside and seizing political power by force; during the construction era, the CPC led the Chinese people to create a "world miracle of development." The fundamental thing lies in the fact that we have not simply continued the master version of China's history and culture, simply applied the template envisaged by the classic writers of Marxism, did not copy the model of socialist practice in other countries, did not copy the experience of foreign modernization development, but embarked on a path of socialism with Chinese characteristics. The successful opening up of the road of the new democratic revolution and the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics is a true portrayal of the party's spirit of self-revolution and a great achievement of the practice of self-revolution.

### 3. there is no end to the self-revolution

A century of great deeds. The Party leads the people in carrying out the great social revolution and constantly advances, and the Party's great self-revolution will never stop.

Maintain the strategic focus of self-revolution in firm faith and conviction. Engels once pointed out: "The movement of the proletariat must go through various stages of development; at each stage there are some people who stop and no longer advance."<sup>1</sup> There may be many reasons why these people are not moving forward, but the most important is the loss of faith or abandonment of faith;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 4, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 514.

They will even "use the party to do private dirty work",<sup>1</sup> let alone self-revolution. Therefore, as far as the Communist Party of China is concerned, in order to maintain the strategic strength of self-revolution, it must attach importance to strengthening the soul with ideals and beliefs, and the firmer the faith and conviction, the more it dares to "throw away all the old and dirty things in oneself."<sup>2</sup> In today's China, the trend of social thought is becoming increasingly diverse and diverse, the principle of commodity exchange in the market economy penetrates widely into social and political life, and there is still a market among some Communist Party members, such as the communist "theory of obscurity" and the "theory of obsolescence" of Marxism. This will have a certain impact on maintaining the determination to self-revolutionize. We must make good use of the magic weapon of ideological party building, promote the "study of the heart" of communists, focus on educating party members and cadres with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, the latest achievement of Marxism in Sinicization, and continue to strengthen the cultivation of party spirit of the whole party. Only when theoretical attainment and party spirit cultivation are strengthened, and there is no shortage of "calcium" in spirit, will we always maintain the backbone and confidence of self-revolution.

Adhere to the correct direction of self-revolution in accordance with the will of the people. The people's position is the fundamental political stand of the CPC, and taking the people as the center is the starting point and foothold of the CPC's cause development. Without the people, all the Party's struggles and ideals will not only be in vain, but will also become meaningless. The same is true of self-revolution. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Only by not seeking selfish interests can we seek fundamental and great benefits, and only then can we proceed from the nature and fundamental purpose of the party and the fundamental interests of the people, and examine ourselves."<sup>3</sup> To comply with the will of the people, it is necessary to always grasp the ruling logic of building the party for the public and ruling for the people, strictly prevent and investigate all phenomena of abusing power for personal gain, and resolutely prevent the emergence of vested interest groups within the party. To comply with the will of the people, we must dare to break down the barriers of interests, so that the people can share the fruits of reform and development and have a greater sense of gain. As long as we truly carry out self-revolution in accordance with the will of the people, we can eliminate formalism, bureaucratism, hedonism and extravagance, avoid the danger of separation from the masses, and constantly consolidate the solid mass foundation for the Party to create a new history.

A powerful impetus to inspire self-revolution in solving outstanding problems. Comrade Xi Jinping stressed,

---

<sup>1</sup> The Complete Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 29, People's Publishing House, 1972 edition, p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Marx and Engels, vol. 1, People's Publishing House, 2012, p. 171.

<sup>3</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part II), Central Literature Publishing House, 2018 edition, page 590.

Our party has always led the people to carry out revolution, construction, and reform for the purpose of solving China's practical problems. Only by properly resolving various problems in reform, development and stability, especially the problems of party building itself, can we stimulate the powerful driving force of the CPC's self-revolution. Because every successful solution to a problem is constantly gathering a powerful force to promote the orderly governance of the country, the happiness and well-being of the people, and the prosperity and progress of society; every solution to a problem will give the party an opportunity for self-reflection and a starting point for reform and innovation. In order to properly manage and cure more than 90 million party members and more than 4.6 million grassroots party organizations, the party must persist in facing and following problems, focus on solving problems wherever they are prominent, inject impetus into rectification and reform of problems, and win the hearts and minds of the people with rectification and reform of problems. In the past hundred years, the Party has not relaxed in solving its own problems, gradually forming a set of endogenous mechanisms for deepening self-revolution, which has become the driving force support for the Party to continuously promote self-revolution.

Improve the level of self-revolution in innovative institutional mechanisms. Comrade Mao Zedong pointed out at the Second Plenary Session of the Eighth CPC Central Committee: "The productive forces are the most revolutionary factor. When the productive forces develop, they always want revolution.<sup>1</sup> It should be noted that with the institutional revolution brought about by the development of productive forces, it will greatly promote the innovation of institutions and mechanisms; and each innovation of institutional mechanisms will in turn promote further revolutions and continue to liberate and develop productive forces. Similarly, through self-revolution, the Party has continuously promoted the innovation of systems and mechanisms, and constantly promoted the maturity and formalization of systems. In turn, the innovation of systems and mechanisms has provided a guarantee for the party to gnaw hard bones, wade into deep waters, and further self-revolution, thus improving the ability and level of self-revolution. Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, the Party has vigorously broken the shackles of systems and mechanisms, continuously promoted institutional innovation, and focused on establishing a relatively mature institutional system in all aspects, greatly improving its self-revolutionary ability in promoting the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity, and improving its overall promotion." The overall layout of the five-in-one and the ability to coordinate and promote the self-revolution in the "four comprehensive" strategic layout are the most convincing proof.

Carry forward the spirit of self-revolution and constantly promote the party's self-revolution. Self-revolution is endless, and whether or not there is a strong spirit of self-revolution is the key factor determining the success or failure of the party. The spirit of self-revolution, as the soul of the party's spirit of pursuing progress and self-improvement, and as the basic concept of overcoming difficulties and risks, can be fully called the way to build the party, rejuvenate the party, and strengthen the party.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Special Excerpts of Mao Zedong's Works" (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2003 edition, p. 160.

After the reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping demanded that the vast number of party members and cadres "carry forward the revolutionary and desperate spirit" and stressed that "the revolutionary spirit is very valuable, and without the revolutionary spirit, there will be no revolutionary action."<sup>1</sup> Since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly emphasized: "We should more consciously strengthen the principles of the Party spirit, carry forward the spirit of thorough self-revolution, and continuously enhance the Party's ability to purify, improve, renew and improve itself."<sup>2</sup> Only by holding an attitude of never being complacent and never slackening, and solving our own problems with the vigor of always being on the road, can we continuously realize the party's self-building and new development and new transcendence in various undertakings while enhancing the initiative, and forge ahead courageously towards the goal of strengthening the party and the country.

## Section 4: Building the world's most powerful party

Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "Our party should do a good job in self-construction and truly become the most powerful political party in the world."<sup>3</sup> This exposition clearly expresses the lofty aspiration and lofty pursuit of the Communist Party of China to comprehensively promote the new great project of party building, embodies the firm determination and high self-confidence of the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core in managing the party and administering the party, and reflects the broad vision and historical responsibility of a Marxist political party like ours.

Looking at the whole world, no other political party has the courage and self-confidence of the Communist Party of China, and has such a sense of mission and responsibility. The reason for building the Communist Party of China into the most powerful political party in the world is that our Party is a Marxist political party ruling in a large developing country with a population of 1.4 billion, shouldering the historic heavy task of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and promoting the development of human civilization. Pursuing and realizing communist ideals is the strength for our party to become the most powerful political party.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 2, People's Publishing House, 1994 edition, p. 146.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Forum Commemorating the 120th Anniversary of the Birth of Comrade Zhou Enlai", People's Publishing House, 2018, p. 14-15.

<sup>3</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Politburo Standing Committee Meeting Deliberating on the "Two Learnings and One Doing" Study and Education Plan (excerpt), Party Building Research, No. 5, 2016.

Realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation is the most arduous mission entrusted to our Party by history, and opening up a brand-new path of human development of world significance is the unswerving goal of our Party. For the sake of lofty ideals, sacred missions, and great causes, we must build the Party into the most powerful political party in the world.

What are the most powerful political parties in the world, what are the hallmark characteristics of the most powerful political parties, different angles will have different criteria, and different answers will be given to different types of political parties. Obviously, for any political party, innate does not equal strong, big does not equal strong, strong in a certain aspect does not equal strong, only when it is strong in all aspects can it be called the strongest. As a Communist Party of China with lofty aspirations, the most basic thing to achieve the goal of becoming the most powerful political party in the world is to always walk in the forefront of the times, win the heartfelt support of the people, be brave in self-revolution, withstand the tests of various storms, and constantly enhance political leadership, ideological leadership, mass organization and social appeal. When these "four forces" are strong, the Communist Party of China can truly build the most powerful political party in the world.

### 1. continuously enhance political leadership

Political leadership occupies a primary position in the leadership and governing ability of a political party, and is the basic measure of party leadership. Political leadership is composed of factors such as the nature, purpose, objectives and behavior of a political party, which is mainly reflected in the ability to formulate and implement political programs, political lines, principles and policies, etc., showing the actual state and effect of party building and political capacity operation. The history of political parties in ancient and modern China and abroad shows that if a political party is lost in its political direction and political pursuit, it will not be able to formulate a correct political program and political line, and it will lose its political leadership and inevitably decline. To build the Communist Party of China into the most powerful political party in the world, we must constantly strengthen the party's political leadership.

Demonstrate political leadership in grasping the direction of social progress. The size and level of political leadership depend to a large extent on whether a political party can establish a program of action that conforms to the general trend of historical development. Marx believed that the formal program of a political party is a banner that is publicly erected, a boundary marker by which people judge the nature and level of the party's activities.

The highest program of the Communist Party of China is to realize communism, which is the direction of social development that the entire human society strives to pursue. At the same time, in different historical periods, the Party has always put forward inspiring goals in accordance with the state of social development, the will of the people and the needs of cause development, and united and led the people to fight for them. The Communist Party of China adheres to the correct political direction, unifies the maximum program with the realistic program, and ensures that it can always stand at the forefront of the development of the times and lead the masses to constantly open up a way forward in vivid practical practice.

Be good at formulating and implementing correct lines, guidelines and policies. A very important reason why many big and old parties in the world have lost their ruling position or even lost their party and country is that they have failed to keep pace with the times, formulate lines, principles and policies based on the reality of their own parties, and consistently implement them. The Communist Party of China shoulders a major historical mission, paying special attention to the democratization, scientificization and rule of law in the process of formulating lines, principles and policies, so as to ensure that the cause of the Party and the country advances on the right track. Comrade Mao Zedong once pointed out that "without a comprehensive strategic viewpoint and policy viewpoint, the Chinese revolution can never be victorious"<sup>1</sup> and that "only when the party's policies and tactics are all on the right track can the Chinese revolution have the possibility of victory"<sup>2</sup>. Policies and tactics are the life of the party. This profoundly reveals the importance of policy for a political party. If the policy is right, the life of the political party will continue; if the policy is wrong, the life of the political party will be shortened. In the final analysis, the reason why the party has been able to overcome difficulties and continue to develop and grow is that we persist in proceeding from reality and constantly formulate correct lines, principles, and policies. Since the beginning of reform and opening up, on the basis of summing up lessons and lessons, the party has established the party's basic line in the initial stage of socialism, and the 19th CPC National Congress has enriched and developed this in accordance with the conditions of the new era and the requirements of practice. It is precisely because it firmly grasps and adheres to this lifeline and happiness line of the Party and the country that the Party has won the heartfelt support of the people in promoting China's historical progress.

There must be strong political will. To develop and grow, a political party must not only have the most advanced political program that makes people aspire to, but also have the ability to formulate correct policies to implement the political program, and more importantly, it must have strong political determination to "not be afraid of floating clouds to cover its eyes" and "fly through chaotic clouds calmly." Just as when a group of people and horses move forward, if the leader "retreats", the team will inevitably scatter. Take the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, for example,

---

<sup>1</sup> "Mao Zedong Chronology (1893.... 949) (Revised Edition), vol. II, Central Literature Press, 2013, p. 295.

<sup>2</sup> Selected Works of Mao Zedong, vol. 4, People's Publishing House, 1991 edition, p. 1298.



At that time, it was also one of the most "powerful" in world politics, but it collapsed. Although the factors for its downfall are manifold, as a Marxist political party, the most fatal thing is political degeneration and vacillation, either rigid dogma or extreme rashness, which cannot continue, and finally changes the banner of Jiangshan Mountain. Therefore, Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed: "In today's world, the situation is changing, and what is most needed is strategic determination.<sup>1</sup> This strategic determination is the determination of political direction and political prospects, that is, the unceasing struggle and perseverance that does not achieve the goal.

## 2. constantly enhance the power of ideological leadership

The power of thought is enormous. Napoleon once said that there are only two powers in the world, the sword and the mind, and in the long run, the sword always defeats the mind. Correct thinking can lead people forward smoothly, while wrong thinking can cause the development of a political party and a country to encounter twists and turns or even disastrous consequences. History shows that whether or not there is a strong ideological leadership force is directly related to the rise and fall of a political party. The ideological leadership of the Communist Party of China refers to the ability to continuously promote theoretical innovation, arm the mind with the party's innovative theory, unify thinking, guide practice, advance work, and resist the interference of erroneous ideological trends.

To enhance the leadership of ideas, we must continuously improve the ability of theoretical innovation. The Communist Party of China has a fine tradition and excellent character of theoretical innovation. During the revolutionary years, the Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Mao Zedong, did not stick to rules, actively opposed dogmatism and empiricism, integrated the basic tenets of Marxism with the reality of the Chinese revolution, founded Mao Zedong Thought, successfully opened up the road of revolution with Chinese characteristics, and seized national power. During the years of construction and reform, the Chinese Communists continued to integrate the basic tenets of Marxism with China's specific conditions, formed a theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and opened up a road of socialism with Chinese characteristics. In the new era, the Chinese Communists, mainly represented by Comrade Xi Jinping, inherit the fine tradition of theoretical innovation and deepen their understanding of the three laws with a new perspective

(1)

---

<sup>1</sup> "Thirty Lectures on Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era", Learning Press, 2018, p. 329.

He founded Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era and opened up a new realm of Marxism. Practice never ends, and so does theoretical innovation. To promote theoretical innovation in the new era, we must not only base ourselves on the new situations and new problems facing China in the new era, but also focus on the new situations and new problems in the development and change of the international situation; we must not only occupy the commanding heights of theory and morality, but also always pay attention to enhancing the practical character of innovation theory. Only in this way can theoretical innovation have a source of living water, and innovation theory can better play its role in ideological leadership.

To enhance ideological leadership, we should also attach great importance to the work of arming ourselves with theory. Scientific theories do not spontaneously go to the masses, and attention must be paid to theoretical indoctrination. During the years of revolution and construction, our Party vigorously promoted the study and propaganda of Mao Zedong Thought, influencing and educating several generations. In the new period and new era of reform and opening up, our party has continuously promoted the study and publicity of Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents", the scientific outlook on development, and Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era, and has given full play to the ideological guide role of the party's theoretical innovation achievements. To do a good job in arming ourselves with theory, we must make overall plans to promote theoretical research, theoretical education, and theoretical propaganda; on the one hand, we must conduct in-depth study and rational study of the party's innovative theory, and profoundly explain the background, basis, rich connotation, essence, and basic characteristics of the innovative theory; and on the other hand, we must persist in using the means and methods that the masses like to hear and see to carry out theoretical education and theoretical propaganda in various forms. Focusing on the times, the world, the country, the party, and the people's feelings, vigorously promote the innovation of the discourse system, discourse expression, and discourse logic, do not follow the book, do not apply rigid routines, do not swallow jujubes, avoid propaganda that does not ask the needs of the masses and does not care about the feelings of the masses, so that theoretical propaganda and education can truly win the masses, and the party's innovative theories will "fly into the homes of ordinary people."

### 3. Continuously strengthen the mass organizational strength

Mass organization is the ability to rely on the masses, mobilize the masses, and organize the masses to promote social development. As a strong political party, it should have the organizational power to "cheer up and respond." The mass organizational power of the Communist Party of China is universally recognized, but the mass organizational strength will not "preserve" or "increase value" forever. To build the most powerful political party in the world, it is necessary to continuously strengthen the mass organizational force, stimulate the great power contained in the masses, and condense it into a majestic force to promote the development of the cause.

To strengthen the strength of mass organization, the premise is to bless the recognition and support of the masses. A political party is a political organization that gathers together to realize certain political ideals or political aspirations, and these political ideals or political aspirations must be closely integrated with the interests of the masses and supported by the masses, otherwise nothing will be achieved. The masses of the people are the true heroes, the creators of history, and the driving force for the advancement of social development. The will of the people determines the rise or fall of a political party. Comrade Mao Zedong said that communists are seeds and the common people are the land. Without the fertile soil of the common people, no matter how good the seeds are, they will not germinate, blossom, or bear fruit. The key to the continuous development and growth of the Communist Party of China in the past 100 years lies in closely integrating its political ideals, political aspirations and the interests of the people, and is committed to seeking happiness for the Chinese people, rejuvenation of the Chinese nation and human progress. To build the most powerful political party in the world, we must put the people in the central position and take the interests of the people as the starting point and foothold of all policies, and only in this way can we win the heartfelt love and support of the broad masses.

To enhance the strength of mass organization, it is important to strengthen the consciousness and feelings of serving the people. Only with one heart and one mind can we walk in the same direction. Enhancing the awareness of the whole party, especially the leading cadres at all levels, of serving the people is the basic prerequisite and key to enhancing the strength of mass organizations. In response to a Russian reporter's question about "what is the governing philosophy", Comrade Xi Jinping replied succinctly and brightly, serving the people and shouldering his due responsibility. When Comrade Xi Jinping visited the local area, some people praised him in simple words for "doing a good job", and Comrade Xi Jinping said with a smile, I am the people's orderly. These dialogues are simple and plain, but they show the people's feelings of contemporary Chinese communists. The broad masses of party members and cadres consciously adhere to the party's mass line, adhere to the party's fine tradition of maintaining close ties with the masses, mingle with the people, want to work together, and lead the masses to work and show the masses, and the masses of the people will spontaneously rise up and work together with the party.

To enhance the organizational strength of the masses, it is also necessary to learn and master the law of organizing the masses. Only by combining the characteristics of the new era and the characteristics and practice of the masses in the new era, thoroughly studying and mastering the law of organizing the masses, thinking about problems and doing things in accordance with the characteristics of the law of organizing the masses, can we carry out work effectively and achieve the predetermined goal. It is necessary to persist in asking the needs of the people, asking the people's plans, and benefiting the people, go deep into the masses to investigate and study, understand what the people think and think, humbly ask the masses for advice, be good students of the masses, draw wisdom and nourishment from the practice of the masses, and seek policies, measures, and methods for organizing the masses from the creation of the masses.

#### 4. Continuously enhance social appeal

The social appeal of a political party, especially the ruling party, refers to its ability to mobilize for different groups, strata and forces in society, which is reflected in many aspects such as cohesion, mobilization and guidance. The party already has a strong social appeal, and in the face of the new conditions and new requirements of the new era, it is necessary to continuously enhance the social appeal in order to build the party into the most powerful party in the world.

The social appeal comes from the party itself, especially the quality of grassroots party organizations and party members and cadres. The ancients said, "The ruler is righteous", "his body is right, but he does not order; his body is not right, although he does not obey the order." As long as grassroots party organizations are built into strong fighting fortresses, and as long as party members and cadres can take the lead in setting an example, the party's calling role will naturally increase. Therefore, it is necessary to vigorously practice internal strength, strengthen the building of the party's grassroots organizations, implement the main responsibility, give play to the political and service functions of grass-roots party organizations, and enable the broad masses of grass-roots party organizations to truly become a strong position for serving the people; properly handle the relationship between the size of party members and the quality of party members, put the quality of party members in a prominent position, and promote party members to truly play a vanguard and exemplary role; give play to the role of leading cadres as "locomotives," prevent the phenomenon of bad money driving out good money in accordance with the standards of good cadres, and promote the formation of capable people and mediocre people down. The employment orientation of the survival of the inferior has formed a good situation of clean air, outstanding talents, and abundant talents.

To enhance social appeal, we should pay attention to carrying forward the party's fine traditions, persist in inspiring people with lofty goals, and inspire people with the pursuit of a better life. Carry out extensive and in-depth education on the situation and policies, fully demonstrate the progress results and development trend of reform, opening up and socialist modernization, and persist in using the "two centenary goals" and the Chinese dream of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation to inspire people's enthusiasm for entrepreneurship. Marxism believes that the pursuit of interests is the fundamental reason for all human social activities and the deep driving force for the forward development of human society. To enhance social appeal, we must also safeguard the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people. It is necessary to actively improve the mechanism for expressing the demands of the masses, the balance mechanism and the adjustment mechanism, and accurately and timely respond to the demands of the masses by improving social integration, so that the masses can improve their social appeal while feeling fairness and justice. With the development and popularization of Internet technology, the Internet has become the "biggest variable" affecting the relationship between the party and the masses and the foundation of governance. It is necessary to pay attention to taking the mass line on the Internet, and actively build an information platform that reflects public opinion, gathers people's wisdom, and gathers consensus;

Actively respond to the concerns of netizens, resolve doubts and confusions, and make the Internet a strong position to unite, inspire and lead people to struggle together.

"Decorating this Guanshan is even better today." "Compared with the past, this is the best era for China and the best era for Chinese people. Shouldering the great trust of the people and the nation, the Communist Party of China, the world's largest party, will also build itself into "the most powerful political party in the world." Under the strong leadership of the CPC Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping at the core, the CPC is adhering to its original mission and full of pride and confidence, and is striding forward on the road of rejuvenating the party and strengthening the party.

## Conclusion: The guiding ideology that the party and the state must adhere to for a long time

Today's world is undergoing drastic and profound changes, and contemporary China is engaged in a great struggle with many new historical characteristics. Walking on the magnificent journey of the new era, the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation has ushered in unprecedented bright prospects, but also faced unprecedented risks and tests. To fulfill the historical mission entrusted by the new era, Chinese communists must unswervingly adhere to Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, and enrich and develop this idea in practice with the times.

### 1. Deeply grasp the great significance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era as the guiding ideology of the Party and the state

"The true content of all epoch-making systems is the needs of the times that produced them. Each such system is based on the entire development of the country's past, on the historical form of class relations and its political, moral, philosophical and other results."<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the inheritance and development of Marxism-Leninism, Mao Zedong Thought, Deng Xiaoping Theory, the important thinking of "three represents" and the scientific outlook on development. This thinking closely focuses on the new situation, new problems and new challenges faced by socialism with Chinese characteristics since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China.

---

<sup>1</sup> Marx and Engels: *German Ideology* (Abridged Edition), People's Publishing House, 2018, p. 91.

From the combination of theory and practice, it creatively answers the major questions of the times of what kind of socialism with Chinese characteristics to uphold and develop in the new era and how to uphold and develop socialism with Chinese characteristics, which is of great political, historical, theoretical, practical and world significance. In contemporary China, adhering to and developing Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is to truly adhere to and develop Marxism and scientific socialism.

The great political significance of this ideology lies in the fact that it provides an irreplaceable and indispensable ideological guarantee and theoretical foundation for the formation, establishment and consolidation of the core position of Comrade Xi Jinping as the core of the Party Central Committee and the whole Party.

Marxism has always held that revolutionary leaders play a particularly important role in the development of history, which is consistent with respecting the initiative of the masses. As early as 1873, Engels profoundly revealed in "On Authority" the extreme importance of the authority of the party leader to the proletarian party. Lenin also pointed out that a fighting revolutionary party needs strong and authoritative leadership. The core of the Party should be composed of cultivated, capable, experienced and tested professional revolutionaries. However, the core of leadership of a Marxist political party has never been self-appointed or born, but has been formed and established in the test of practice, especially in the difficult test at a major historical turning point. Such a core of leadership must not only have the profound insight and strategic foresight of Marxist politicians, but also have the extraordinary theoretical attainments and profound cultural heritage of Marxist theorists. It is necessary not only to have the strong historical responsibility and fearless dedication of professional revolutionaries, but also to have the rich practical experience and outstanding leadership skills of strategic doers; it is necessary to prove practical leadership with the achievements of governing the country, and to demonstrate ideological leadership with scientific theories. It is necessary not only to let the masses of the people resolutely follow in action, but also to make the masses of the people consciously align themselves ideologically.

Judging from historical practice, the formation and establishment of the leader of a Marxist political party and the advancement of the party's guiding ideology with the times are interrelated, mutually dependent, interactive, and mutually complementary. Leaders create ideas, ideologically arm political parties, political parties guide the people, the people plunge into practice, and practice creates leaders; this is the basic law and internal logic of the development of Marxism and scientific socialism over the past 170 years. The more the theory created by the leader of a Marxist political party meets the needs of the times, the broader and more profound it is, the more it occupies the commanding height of ideology, the more pragmatic and effective it is, the more supreme theoretical authority it has, and the more solid and irreplaceable his leadership status and political authority will be.

In the history of the Communist Party of China, in the course of leading the Chinese revolution, Comrade Mao Zedong wrote one magnificent work after another on the Sinicization of Marxism, founded Mao Zedong Thought, which was recognized by the whole party and integrated Marxism with China's reality, and established the position of Marxist theoretician and theoretical authority in the central leadership and the whole party, and this theoretical authority in turn guaranteed Comrade Mao Zedong's position as the core of leadership in the whole party with its practical guidance. In the process of leading the people to promote reform and opening up, Comrade Deng Xiaoping successfully created socialism with Chinese characteristics, formed Deng Xiaoping Theory, and established its core position in the central leading collective. He clearly pointed out: "Any leadership collective must have a core, and leadership without a core is unreliable."<sup>1</sup>

Comrade Xi Jinping is the core of the Party Central Committee and the core of the whole Party formed in the new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and the establishment of this status comes from the historic achievements and historic changes that he has made since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, and also from the strong creativity, cohesion, combat effectiveness and leading force of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, which was mainly founded by him. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China named the Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era after Comrade Xi Jinping and wrote it into the Party Constitution as a guiding ideology that the whole Party must adhere to for a long time, and the constitutional amendment adopted by the First Session of the 13th National People's Congress enshrined this idea in the Constitution and became the guiding ideology that the whole Party and the whole country must adhere to for a long time. This is a conscious adherence to and scientific adherence to the Marxist concept of authority and leadership, the highest recognition of Comrade Xi Jinping's ideological authority as the democratic backbone of the whole party and all ethnic groups in the country, and the most important political achievement and far-reaching historical contribution of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China.

The great historical significance of this idea lies in the fact that its formation, development and extensive practice have made China the theoretical source, practical innovation and development guide of scientific socialism in the 21st century, and the mainstay of revitalizing world socialism.

World socialism has gone through a historical process from utopia to science, from theory to practice, from practice in one country to development in many countries, from suffering serious setbacks to gradually coming out of the low tide and moving towards revitalization, and socialism with Chinese characteristics has become an important part of its unique practical exploration.

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Works of Deng Xiaoping, vol. 3, People's Publishing House, 1993 edition, p. 310.



In the new era, Comrade Xi Jinping focused on the new great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics to carry out unremitting theoretical exploration, and formed Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Under the guidance of this thinking, the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics has become broader and broader, not only promoting China's all-round pioneering historical achievements in various undertakings and taking place profound and fundamental historical changes, but also using ironclad facts to forcefully counter the conspiracies and attempts to subvert socialism such as the "end of history", so that scientific socialism in China in the 21st century will radiate unprecedented strong vitality and hold high the great banner of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the world.

Looking back at history, scientific socialism has revealed the law of the development of human society. It has pointed out the way for mankind to leap from the kingdom of necessity to the kingdom of freedom, pointed out the path for the working class and working people to achieve freedom and liberation, guided the independent liberation movement of a large number of nation-states such as China, and profoundly changed the development process of human society and the pattern of the entire world. Looking at the present, under the guidance of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, socialism with Chinese characteristics has become the most promising and important component of world socialism in the 21st century, composing a brilliant chapter in the past 500 years of socialism, bringing about new and profound changes in the balance of forces between capitalism and socialism in the world, and reshaping the political and economic map of the world. It has created a new glory in the history of world socialism, greatly boosted the confidence of the people of the world in socialism, and brought bright prospects for the development of world socialism and the progress of human society. Looking forward to the future, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era will surely lead China to carry on the past and forge ahead into the decisive achievements of building a modern socialist power in an all-round way, and more eloquently prove the truth of scientific socialism and the strong advantages of the socialist system.

The great theoretical significance of this thinking lies in the fact that it is the result of another historical leap in integrating Marxism with China's reality, and is another dazzling peak of contemporary Chinese Marxism and Marxism in the 21st century.

Social history is eternally developed, and theoretical innovation in grasping the law of social development is also endless. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era not only adheres to the basic principles of Marxism, but also adheres to emancipating the mind, seeking truth from facts, and advancing with the times, which is a model of innovative development of Marxism, contemporary Chinese Marxism, and Marxism in the 21st century.

This ideology has integrated the unremitting pursuit of the Communist Party of China for more than 90 years, the arduous struggle of New China for more than 70 years, and the pioneering and innovative work of reform and opening up for more than 40 years with more than 170 years of arduous exploration in modern times and the development of civilization of the Chinese nation for more than 5,000 years. Mao Zedong Thought and the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics are connected, and a series of new concepts, ideas and strategies have been creatively put forward around the theme of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics, fully demonstrating its broad and profound ideological background and theoretical logic.

This thinking focuses on the application of Marxist theory, on new practice and new developments, and has said many "new words" that no one has said before, thus making a major original contribution to the enrichment and development of Marxism. These original contributions are rich in content and systematically run through the three major components of Marxist philosophy, political economy and scientific socialism, covering all aspects and fields of the cause of the party and the state. In terms of philosophy, this ideology adheres to the world outlook methodology of dialectical materialism and historical materialism, adheres to the fundamental position of taking the people as the center, creatively uses the viewpoint of practice, contradiction, the masses, and all-round development, and establishes strategic thinking, historical thinking, dialectical thinking, innovative thinking, legal thinking, and bottom-line thinking, giving Marxist philosophy a new connotation of the times; In terms of political economy, this idea delves into the trend of world economic development and the new situations and new problems facing our economy, and answers the questions that Marxist classic writers have not talked about, and our predecessors have never encountered. Many major theoretical and practical problems that Western economic theories have been unable to solve, made a major judgment that China's economic development has entered a new normal, put forward a new development concept of innovation, coordination, green, openness and sharing, established major strategic deployments such as deepening supply-side structural reform and building a modern economic system, and written a new chapter in Marxist political economy. In terms of the theory of scientific socialism, we have deepened our understanding of the path, theory, system and culture of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and enriched and developed the essence, value stance, development stage, development momentum, construction layout, strategic arrangement and goal of socialism with Chinese characteristics with the times. It has greatly expanded the theoretical connotation of scientific socialism. These major theoretical innovations have pushed forward Marxism as a whole, in all aspects, and in all fields, and opened up a new realm for the development of Marxism. In today's China, only Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, and no other thought can solve China's practical problems.

The fundamental practical significance of this idea lies in the fact that it has brought socialism with Chinese characteristics into a new era and provided theoretical guidance and action guidelines for building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way and realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is rooted in the Chinese land, reflects the will of the people, adapts to the characteristics of the new era and the requirements of China's development and progress, is a theoretical summary and theoretical sublimation of the great practice of socialism with Chinese characteristics since the 18th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, and is a powerful ideological weapon of Marxism that comes from practice, has been tested by practice and guides practice. This ideology adheres to the unity of goal-oriented and problem-oriented, deeply examines the problems encountered in the current and long-term, partial and overall, theory and practice, puts forward strategic ideas and measures, and provides scientific guidance for coping with major challenges, resisting major risks, overcoming major resistances and resolving major contradictions.

In terms of overall orientation, this thinking profoundly answers a series of fundamental questions such as what banner the Communist Party of China should raise, what road to take, what mental state it should take, what historical mission it should undertake, and what goal of struggle it would achieve, and once again declare to the world that China will neither follow the old road of closure and rigidity, nor take the evil road of changing the banner, but will unswervingly take the clear position of unswervingly following the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, and point out the way forward for China in the new era. In terms of strategic deployment, these three ideas connect the great struggle, the great project, the great cause, and the great dream, put forward the overall layout of the "five-in-one" and the coordinated promotion of the "four comprehensive" strategic layout, and carry out top-level design and systematic planning in important aspects such as reform, development, stability, internal and foreign affairs, national defense, and party and military management, thus providing a strategic guiding bow for the realization of the "two centenary goals." In terms of practical requirements, this ideology emphasizes that all comrades in the party must take a long-term view, be prepared for danger in times of peace, be bold in making changes and innovations, never become rigid and never stagnate, always breathe with the people, share a common destiny, and link hearts with hearts, and continue to forge ahead toward the grand goal with an unslackening mental state and an indomitable stance of struggle.

The fundamental significance of this idea in the world lies in the fact that it provides a brand-new path choice for countries and nations in the world that wish to accelerate development while maintaining their independence, and contributes Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to solving human problems.

Great ideas are never narrowly closed, but run through the world's vision, world consciousness, and world feelings.

Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is based on China, taking the happiness of the Chinese people and the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation as its sacred mission and main purpose; at the same time, facing the world, it is his unshirkable responsibility and responsibility to strive for the cause of human progress and make new and greater contributions to mankind.

In today's world, challenges such as governance deficit, trust deficit, peace deficit and development deficit are emerging one after another, problems such as the gap between the rich and the poor, terrorism, climate change and other problems are emerging one after another, the international political and economic system dominated by Western capitalist developed countries is full of drawbacks, and the global governance system is undergoing profound changes. In the face of the complex and changeable international situation, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, with a broad vision and strategic thinking, clearly puts forward a series of new concepts, ideas and propositions on the future and destiny of mankind, providing new directions, new plans and new choices for the development of human society.

This idea clearly puts forward the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind, advocates and promotes the "Belt and Road", advocates the use of economic methods and the bond of interests to closely aggregate countries along the route, and realizes policy communication, facility connectivity, unimpeded trade, financial integration and people-to-people bonds, contributing Chinese wisdom to promoting global governance and further enhancing the political leading role of the Communist Party of China in solving major human problems. This idea has broken the situation that the Western modernization model has been "fixed on one statue" since modern times, opened up a new way for developing countries to achieve modernization, provided Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions for mankind's exploration of a better social system, and greatly encouraged the confidence of developing countries to explore a development path that suits their national conditions, especially for those developing countries that blindly adopt the Western political system and fall into the quagmire. The Chinese path advocated by this ideology is not only a path of political development and social development, but also a path of civilization development, which brings an ancient civilization that has lasted for thousands of years without interruption to the center of the world stage with a new attitude, manifests the light of Chinese civilization, further enriches the diversity of human civilization, and demonstrates the ideological power of making civilizational exchanges transcend civilizational barriers, mutual learning between civilizations transcend civilizational conflicts, and civilizational coexistence surpass civilizational superiority. Under the guidance of this thinking, the Communist Party of China, as a great political party, China as a great country and the Chinese nation as a great nation, while planning and realizing its own development and progress, will also have a comprehensive and profound impact on the world and forcefully promote the noble cause of mankind's pursuit of peace and development.

## 2. Strive to master the Marxist standpoints and viewpoints that run through it

To learn and implement Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, we must not only seriously understand its rich connotation, ideological system and practical requirements, but also further deeply understand and master the Marxist positions and views and methods that run through it, so as to know what is true and why it is. Only in this way can we continuously improve our ability to use dialectical materialism and historical materialism to observe and analyze problems, and continuously improve our ability to use Marxist ideological methods and working methods to understand and transform the world.

First, adhere to the fundamental position of people-centeredness. The people's stand is the fundamental political stand of Marxism. Always standing on the people's standpoint, not departing from this position, and not wavering is a major issue in mastering the Marxist world outlook, and it is also a major issue to be solved in studying and implementing Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. As contemporary Chinese Marxism and 21st century Marxism, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, on the basis of adhering to the fundamental position of Marxism, explains the value purpose of "people-centered", which is the inheritance and development of Marxist value pursuit, and a clear expression of the Chinese communists' never forget their original intention and remember their mission.

In terms of values, this idea puts the "people" in the highest position in governing the country, and is epitomized as putting the people first, for the people, relying on the people, and judging by the people. In terms of strategic layout, this idea has always adhered to the standpoint of the people and carried out strategic planning: to build a moderately prosperous society in an all-round way, "the people's living standards and quality of life will be generally improved" as one of the basic goals; The starting point and foothold of comprehensively deepening reform is to promote social fairness and justice and improve the well-being of the people; Comprehensively governing the country according to law emphasizes the need to let the people feel fairness and justice in every judicial case; comprehensively administering the party strictly, focusing on solving the virus that erodes the healthy body of the party and the prominent problems that the people strongly resent, and further consolidating and deepening the flesh-and-blood ties between the party and the people. On the path of implementation, this idea firmly grasps the people's yearning for a better life, and implements the people-centered development thinking in the entire process and all aspects of socialist modernization: economic construction pays more attention to improving the people's material living standards, political construction pays more attention to ensuring that the people are masters of the country with a sound system and system, and cultural construction pays more attention to satisfying the people's multifaceted and multifaceted needs. Multi-level spiritual and cultural needs, social construction pays more attention to ensuring and improving people's livelihood, and ecological civilization construction pays more attention to meeting people's needs for a beautiful ecological environment.

Second, adhere to the ideological line of seeking truth from facts. Seeking truth from facts is the fundamental viewpoint of Marxism, the fundamental requirement for Chinese communists to understand and transform the world, and the basic ideological method, work method, and leadership method of our party. The ideological line of seeking truth from facts embodies the world outlook and methodology of Marxist philosophy, and its theoretical basis is the "principle of the unity of the world's material" and "the principle of dialectical unity of human understanding and practice." "Facts" are all things that exist objectively, "is" is the internal relationship of objective things, that is, objective laws, and "seeking" means exploring and studying. Comrade Xi Jinping profoundly expounded the great significance of adhering to seeking truth from facts, profoundly expounded the relationship between seeking truth from facts as the fundamental ideological method of our party and Marxist philosophy, and emphasized that "we must consciously strengthen the belief in seeking truth from facts, enhance the ability to seek truth from facts, and always and everywhere keep seeking truth from facts in mind and put it into practice."<sup>1</sup>

The basis for persisting in seeking truth from facts lies in understanding "facts," that is, understanding reality and grasping the facts. In the face of the complex and ever-changing domestic and international situations and new problems that are emerging one after another, the most fundamental requirement for persisting in seeking truth from facts is to persist in proceeding from reality in everything. The biggest national condition and reality of contemporary China is that China is still in the primary stage of socialism, which is the objective basis for us to understand the present, plan for the future, formulate policies, and promote the cause, and is the general basis for building socialism with Chinese characteristics. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "When we think about problems, make decisions, and do things, we must not forget or ignore the basic national conditions and basic characteristics of the primary stage of socialism in our country."<sup>2</sup> "Under all circumstances, we must firmly grasp this maximum national condition, and promote reform and development in all aspects must be firmly based on this greatest reality." We must always keep in mind the primary stage not only in economic construction, but also in political, cultural, social and ecological civilization construction; not only when the economic aggregate is low, but also after the economic aggregate is improved, we must still keep in mind the primary stage;

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping, "Adhere to the Ideological Line of Seeking Truth from Facts," Study Times, May 28, 2012.

Not only should we base ourselves on the initial stage when planning for long-term development, but we must also keep the initial stage in mind in our daily work.<sup>1</sup> At the same time, objective reality is not static, but constantly evolving. Proceeding from reality, we must also accurately grasp the phased characteristics of China's economic and social development, accurately grasp the new changes and new characteristics of different stages of development, and make the subjective world better conform to the objective reality of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era.

The key to persisting in seeking truth from facts lies in "seeking truth", that is, exploring and mastering the law of the development of things. Law is the intrinsic, essential, and inevitable connection of things themselves, and it is the inevitable trend of development. Respecting the law, following the law, and constantly deepening the understanding and grasp of the law are a major feature of the governance of the country by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era itself is the result of scientifically grasping objective laws, and it is "sought" by exploring the "facts" of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era. This ideology upholds the organic unity of governing the country with party building and deepens the understanding of the law governing the Communist Party; upholds the basic principles of scientific socialism with the reality of China and the characteristics of the times and deepens the understanding of the law governing socialist construction; upholds the organic unity of China's development and the development of human society, and deepens the understanding of the law governing the development of human society. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era epitomizes our party's new understanding of the "three laws", provides a fundamental basis for adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era, and is the action guide for the whole party and the people of all ethnic groups in the country to strive for the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation.

Third, adhere to materialist dialectics. Materialist dialectics reveals the characteristics of the universal connection and eternal development of the material world, requires people to fully use dialectical methods to observe and deal with problems in the process of understanding the world and transforming the world, and is the basic method for us to observe the world, judge the situation, and understand problems. The essence and core of materialist dialectics is the law of unity of opposites, that is, to recognize contradictions, analyze contradictions, resolve contradictions, grasp unity in opposition, grasp opposition in unity, so as to achieve the purpose of analyzing and solving problems.

Comrade Xi Jinping emphasized: "Learn to master the fundamental method of materialist dialectics, continuously enhance the ability of dialectical thinking, and improve the ability to control complex situations and deal with complex problems."

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 76.

"The deeper our career goes, the more we must continue to strengthen our ability to think critically.<sup>1</sup> He grasped the most fundamental principle of materialist dialectics, the law of unity of opposites, paid attention to applying dialectical thinking to strategic planning, and persisted in observing things in a developmental rather than static, comprehensive rather than one-sided, systematic rather than piecemeal, and universally linked rather than single and isolated manner; properly handled the relationship between the local and the overall situation, the present and the long-term, and the key and non-key points, paid attention to grasping the critical issues related to the overall situation, long-term development, and the people's well-being, and pursued advantages and avoided disadvantages in weighing the pros and cons. Make the most advantageous strategic choices. In practical application, Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era not only emphasizes two points but also focuses on key points; it not only pays attention to overall planning, "playing the piano with ten fingers", but also is good at highlighting key points, grasping key points, leading areas with points, and driving overall advancement and overall work with key breakthroughs, providing us with effective methods and "keys" for understanding problems, analyzing problems and solving problems.

Methodology is the theoretical basis of the way of thinking, and the way of thinking is the specific application of methodology. Comrade Xi Jinping attaches great importance to the mastery and application of Marxist methodology, creatively combines Marxist methodology with traditional Chinese cultural wisdom and modern scientific thinking methods, and clarifies the basic connotations and principles of strategic thinking, historical thinking, dialectical thinking, innovative thinking, rule of law thinking, bottom-line thinking and other ways of thinking in the new era. Strategic thinking is a way of thinking that is far-sighted, takes charge of the overall situation, and is good at grasping the overall trend and direction of the development of things; historical thinking is a way of thinking that knows the past and learns from the present, and is good at using historical vision to understand the law of development, grasp the direction of progress, and guide practical work; dialectical thinking is to be good at grasping the key and pinpointing the key points, grasping the law of development of things in the process of the unity of opposites between the two sides of the contradiction, and preventing extreme and one-sided thinking methods; innovative thinking means breaking superstitions, transcending stereotypes, and being good at adapting measures to the times and conditions. Thinking about the rule of law is a way of thinking that enhances the awareness of respecting the law and abiding by the law and being good at using the rule of law to govern the country; bottom-line thinking is a way of thinking that objectively sets the lowest goal, bases itself on the lowest point, and strives for the greatest expectations. In the practice of building a modern and powerful socialist country in an all-round way,

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Dialectical Materialism is the World View and Methodology of Chinese Communists", *Qiushi*, No. 1, 2019.



Comrade Xi Jinping unified these scientific ways of thinking, emphasized strategic thinking to lay out the overall situation, historical thinking to view the general trend, dialectical thinking to grasp the fundamentals, innovative thinking to increase vitality, rule of law thinking to seek good governance, bottom-line thinking to make up for shortcomings, formed a new era of scientific thinking methodology, endowed the materialist dialectic ideological methods and working methods with new era connotation and practical value, and creatively elevated the application of Marxist methodology to a new realm.

Fourth, adhere to the practical concept of integrating understanding the world and transforming the world. The practical perspective is the primary basic viewpoint of Marxist philosophy, and it is also the basic theoretical character of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. Marxist philosophy is not only committed to explaining the world, but also to transforming it. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era was founded to change the historical destiny of the contemporary Chinese people and even mankind, and was formed in the great practice of the Communist Party of China in uniting and leading the people from prosperity to strength.

Highlighting problem-orientation is the realistic premise of the scientific outlook on practice. The practice of governing the country by the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core is generally centered on analyzing and solving problems. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out: "We must have a strong sense of problems, be guided by major issues, grasp key issues for further research and thinking, and focus on promoting the resolution of a series of prominent contradictions and problems facing our country's development." We Chinese Communists have always engaged in revolution, construction, and reform for the purpose of solving China's practical problems.<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era takes what we are doing as the center, focuses on the major theoretical and practical issues facing our party, the practical problems of reform and opening up and socialist modernization, the hot and difficult issues that the people care about, and the issues of common concern to the international community, actively provides effective solutions to problems, and adheres to and develops the practical character of Marxist philosophy.

Promoting theoretical innovation on the basis of practice is an important connotation of the scientific outlook on practice. The understanding of the laws of objective things can only be done in practice. Practice determines understanding, is the source and driving force of understanding, is also the purpose and destination of understanding, and the fundamental thing is to rely on practice to produce true knowledge. Comrade Xi Jinping uses the Marxist outlook on practice, proceeding from the changing reality, and insists on summarizing and summarizing and sublimating the theory of fresh and rich practical experience;

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected Important Documents Since the 18th National Congress (Part I), Central Literature Publishing House, 2014 edition, page 497.

And he has continuously promoted theoretical innovation on the basis of practice, so that Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era has a solid practical foundation and practical support. At the same time, this idea has been tested in practice and has continued to develop, guiding the process of China's reform and opening up and socialist modernization, and realizing the benign interaction between theoretical innovation and practical innovation.

Persisting in doing solid work is the fundamental requirement of the scientific outlook on practice. Comrade Xi Jinping has repeatedly stressed advocating practical work, vigorously avoiding empty talk, making one point of deployment and nine points of implementation, stepping on stones to leave a mark, and grasping iron with traces; clearly requiring that implementation be grasped in the spirit of nails and comprehensively enhancing the ability to pay close attention to implementation; vigorously advocating adhering to the unity of knowledge and action, taking the initiative to take action, doing in a down-to-earth manner, and walking in the forefront; clearly putting forward that happiness is achieved by struggle, and we must maintain the mental state of arduous struggle, unremitting struggle, and continuous struggle; and so on. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era flexibly uses the practical methodology that unifies theory and practice and unifies knowledge and action, and earnestly combines the party's lofty goals and struggle program with down-to-earth and hard work. It is precisely in the vivid practice of leading the people to take charge of the great struggle, great project, great cause, and great dream that our party has "rolled up its sleeves and worked hard" with practical actions and handed over a satisfactory answer to history and the people.

### 3. Promote the study and implementation of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era and continuously achieve practical results

The party's historical experience and actual development tell us that without the great study of the whole party, there will be no great development of the cause. "The Chinese Communists have relied on study to get to this day, and they must also rely on study to move into the future."<sup>1</sup> In the new era, studying and implementing Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the primary political task of the whole party and the whole country. It is necessary to pay attention to learning, understanding, understanding and doing practical work, adhere to comprehensive and systematic study, timely follow-up study, in-depth thinking, and practical study, and effectively unify thinking and action with Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era. The party's leading cadres at all levels should take the lead in studying, put themselves, their duties, and their work into it, so as to ensure that study and thinking are thoroughly applied, knowledge and belief are unified, and they can truly learn to be loyal to the party.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020 Edition, page 540.

We should study and truly understand the true faith and apply them to promote the whole party to achieve better and more practical study results.

"The highest virtue in the world is greater than loyalty." "Loyalty to the party is an excellent character that communists must have, and it is also an important value position and spiritual background that runs through Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era." Loyalty to the party is not abstract but concrete, not conditional but unconditional. Learning to be loyal to the Party must be embodied in loyalty to the Party's beliefs. It is necessary to strengthen our faith in Marxism and in socialism and communism, build a solid foundation of faith, replenish the calcium of the spirit, stabilize the rudder of thinking, refine the "body of King Kong", and truly become firm believers and loyal practitioners of the lofty ideal of communism and the common ideal of socialism with Chinese characteristics. Learning to be loyal to the Party must be reflected in loyalty to the Party organization. It is necessary to firmly establish the "four consciousnesses", resolutely safeguard the core position of General Secretary Xi Jinping of the Party Central Committee and the whole Party, resolutely safeguard the authority and centralized and unified leadership of the Party Central Committee, strictly abide by the Party's political discipline and political rules, and maintain a high degree of consistency with the Party Central Committee in ideology, politics, and action; and always "remember that your first identity is a member of the Communist Party and your first duty is to work for the Party",<sup>1</sup> always put the party in the highest position in the heart, and at all times be of one heart and one mind with the party. Learning to be loyal to the party must be embodied in loyalty to the party's theories, lines, principles, and policies. It is necessary to consciously arm the mind, guide practice, and promote work with the achievements of the party's theoretical innovations, and earnestly transform the results of study into conscious action and social practice; it is necessary to comprehensively implement the party's line, principles, and policies, so as to ensure that the party Central Committee's call is resolutely responded to, the requirements are resolutely complied with, the prohibitions are resolutely refused, and the arrangements are resolutely implemented, so as to ensure the unimpeded implementation of the central decrees.

Learn the feelings of the people. The people's will is the greatest politics, and the people's position is the most fundamental position. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era comes from, for, and relies on the people, vividly interprets the fundamental purpose of serving the people wholeheartedly, fully demonstrates the value orientation of people-oriented and people-oriented, and deeply practices the ruling philosophy of building the party for the public and ruling for the people, which is a scientific theory truly written in the hearts of hundreds of millions of people. To deeply understand the feelings of the people that run through them, it is necessary to put the people in the highest position ideologically, adhere to the people's dominant position, respect the people's initiative, and pay attention to drawing wisdom and strength from the masses of the people.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Digest of Xi Jinping's Expositions on Comprehensively Managing the Party Strictly", Central Literature Publishing House, 2016 edition, page 101.

"Whether the people support or disapprove, whether they approve or disapprove, whether they are happy or unhappy, and whether they agree or not agree are the fundamental criteria for measuring the gains and losses of all work"<sup>1</sup> To deeply understand the people's feelings that run through it, it is necessary to implement the people-centered development thinking in terms of policy arrangements, adhere to the principle that development is for the people, development depends on the people, and the fruits of development are shared by the people, do more things that are convenient for the people, benefit the people and benefit the people, and embody the people-centered value scale in all links of economic and social development and implement it in various specific policies. To profoundly understand the people's feelings that run through them, it is necessary to always conform to the people's yearning for a better life in terms of the implementation of work, realize, safeguard, and develop well the fundamental interests of the broadest masses of the people, think about what the people think, be anxious about the people's concerns, and worry about the people's worries, strive to solve the problems of the people's vital interests, and constantly enhance the people's sense of gain, happiness, and security.

Learn to take responsibility. Cadres dare to take on responsibilities, which is not only political character, but also political duty. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era focuses on answering contemporary China's practice and issues of the times, and reflects a strong sense of responsibility and spirit of responsibility and responsibility in all aspects. To learn to take responsibility, the premise is to find the correct position in grasping the overall situation. It is necessary to establish a sense of the overall situation, bear in mind the overall strategic situation of the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation, accurately grasp the overall situation of the work of the party and the state, soberly understand the period of important strategic opportunities and the severe challenges faced, be good at finding their respective positions in grasping the overall situation, be good at planning career development in grasping the overall situation, be good at strengthening responsibility in grasping the overall situation, and be good at improving the ability to perform duties in grasping the overall situation. The key to learning to take responsibility lies in the unity of knowledge and action, and really doing hard work. It is necessary to persist in applying what we have learned, using it to promote learning, and learning from each other, truly transform the results of study into concrete actions to grasp implementation, always keep in mind the truth of "empty talk misleads the country, practical work to prosper the country", implement well the requirement of "one point of deployment and nine points of implementation", take the responsibility of guarding the land with responsibility, be responsible for defending the territory, and fulfill the responsibility of guarding the land, be in his position, seek his administration, do practical things, and seek practical results, and take new actions to open up a new situation in the development of his cause. Learn to take responsibility, the focus is on showing a new atmosphere in undertaking urgent, difficult, dangerous and heavy tasks. It is necessary to bear in mind the great trust placed in us by the party and the people, carry forward the spirit of struggle, enhance the ability to struggle, and "dare to show our sword in the face of major right and wrong, dare to rise to difficulties in the face of contradictions, dare to stand up in the face of crises, dare to assume responsibility in the face of mistakes, and dare to resolutely struggle in the face of unhealthy trends and evil tendencies."

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the Celebration of the 95th Anniversary of the Founding of the Communist Party of China", People's Publishing House, 2016 edition, p. 18.

<sup>1</sup> Stand up and stand up at critical moments, and strive to make achievements worthy of the times, people and history.

Acquire the level of competence. Leading cadres must not only have broad shoulders to shoulder responsibilities, but also have the true ability to accomplish things. The fundamental purpose of studying Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is to enhance work skills and improve the ability to solve practical problems. To raise the level of capacity, first and foremost to improve political capacity. It is necessary to take a clear-cut stand and stress politics as the first requirement, constantly strengthen political experience, accumulate political experience, consciously stress politics throughout the entire process of tempering party spirit, and match one's political ability with the leadership responsibilities they hold; they must be good at observing problems and planning work politically, and "pay attention to improving political ability, especially the ability to grasp the direction, the general trend, and the overall situation, and the ability to maintain political concentration, control the political situation, and prevent political risks"<sup>2</sup> To improve the level of ability, the focus should be on improving the ability of theoretical thinking. It is necessary to systematically study and study Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, focus on understanding the Marxist positions, viewpoints and methods that run through it, be good at grasping and applying scientific ways of thinking and ideological methods, pay attention to transforming ideological methods into leadership methods and working methods, and continuously improve the ability and level of discovering problems, analyzing problems and solving problems. Improving the level of competence must ultimately be implemented in improving the ability to work. It is necessary to strengthen the awareness of problems, establish problem-orientation, continuously improve leadership art, improve work methods, and effectively transform learning results into a thinking mode of precise efforts and solving problems, into the ability to pioneer and innovate and overcome difficulties, and into practical actions to perform duties and do a good job.

#### 4. Continuously enrich and develop Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era in the great practice of the new era

The vitality of theory lies in continuous innovation, and promoting the continuous development of Marxism is the sacred duty of Chinese communists. Comrade Xi Jinping pointed out that under the conditions of the new era,

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 3, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2020, p. 522.

<sup>2</sup> Xi Jinping: "Speech at the First Plenary Session of the 19th Central Committee of the Communist Party of China", Qiushi, No. 1, 2018.

"It is still necessary to maintain and carry forward the theoretical character of a Marxist party that keeps pace with the times and have the courage to promote theoretical innovation on the basis of practice"<sup>1</sup> Contemporary China is experiencing the most extensive and profound social changes, and is also carrying out the most grand and unique practical innovation in human history, which provides a strong impetus and broad space for theoretical exploration and creation. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is a scientific theoretical system with distinct and open character, which will surely deepen the understanding of the laws governing the Communist Party, socialist construction and the development of human society in the magnificent and magnificent practice of the new era, and constantly open up a new realm of contemporary Chinese Marxism and Marxism in the 21st century.

It has been constantly enriched and developed in the new great project of promoting party building. The profound changes in Shiqian's national conditions and party conditions have put forward higher requirements for the party to scientifically grasp the trend of the times and conform to the wishes of the people, and have put forward higher requirements for the party's ability and determination to set directions, seek overall interests, formulate policies, and promote reform. The more important the mission and the more arduous the task, the more it is necessary to continue to promote the new great project of party building, continuously improve the party's ruling ability and leadership level, and enhance its ability to resist corruption and degeneration, and resist risks.

At what stage the cause of the party and the people has developed, the new great project of party building will be advanced, and the party's theory will also develop. Party building is a never-ending process of dynamic development, which determines that the Party's theoretical innovation is always on the road. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is a scientific theoretical guidance and action guide for realizing the long-term rule of the Party and the long-term peace and stability of the country. It is bound to be constantly enriched and developed along with new explorations in party building. The 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China put forward the general requirements and key tasks of party building in the new era, and made top-level design and strategic arrangements for promoting party building. These requirements and tasks are not only an important part of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, but also constitute the practical foundation and practical source for the continuous innovation and development of this thought itself. The Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core has consistently promoted the new great project of Party building, and will certainly continue to deeply answer and solve the historical issues of the Party in managing the Party under the condition of long-term ruling in the process of studying new situations and solving new problems, and continue to improve the Party's politics and ideology. New theoretical creations have been made in various aspects such as organization, work style, discipline, anti-corruption and clean government, systems, and ruling capacity building, and constantly deepened the understanding of the ruling law of the Communist Party, so as to provide useful reference for the governance of major parties and major countries and the political development of political parties in the world.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 2, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2017, p. 62.

We will continue to enrich and develop the cause of adhering to and developing socialism with Chinese characteristics. "Marxism must continue to develop with the development of the times, practice, and science, and cannot remain static, and socialism has always advanced in exploration.<sup>1</sup> On the one hand, the more the socialist cause advances and develops, the more new situations and problems it will have, and the more risks and challenges it will face; on the other hand, socialism in our country is still in its initial stage, there are still many problems that have not yet been clarified and difficult problems to be solved, and the understanding and handling of many major issues are still in the process of constantly deepening. All this requires a new scientific answer from a theoretical perspective.

Standing at a new historical starting point, the Party Central Committee with Comrade Xi Jinping as the core will certainly continue to base itself on China's reality, examine the contemporary development of Marxism with a high degree of theoretical consciousness and theoretical self-confidence, and respond to the new expectations for theoretical innovation in the further development of socialism with Chinese characteristics. On the basis of refining and sublimating practical experience, new ideas, new viewpoints and new theories are put forward, and the understanding of the law of socialist construction is continuously deepened with new visions, new words and new creations, and continues to inject new era content into the theoretical system of socialism with Chinese characteristics. It can be said that the process of winning the great victory of socialism with Chinese characteristics in the new era is the process of realizing the great rejuvenation of the Chinese nation on the road of socialism with Chinese characteristics, the process of ushering in bright prospects for the scientific socialist movement, and the process of continuous enrichment and development of the party's theory.

It has been continuously enriched and developed in the process of promoting the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind. In the 21st century, the world pattern is in the process of accelerating its evolution, giving rise to a large number of profound and complex practical problems and putting forward a large number of theoretical topics that need to be answered urgently. Continuously contributing Chinese wisdom and Chinese solutions to better advance the cause of human progress is itself an important content of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era.

---

<sup>1</sup> Xi Jinping on Governing the Country, Volume 1, Foreign Languages Publishing House, 2018, p. 23.

A series of new ideas and propositions, such as building a community with a shared future for mankind, put forward by Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era, have received extensive attention and enthusiastic response from the international community, and are rising from a Chinese concept to an international consensus, and will surely be transformed from an international consensus into common action. At the same time, the great practice of building a community with a shared future for mankind has provided a profound fertile soil for nourishing Chinese theory. Standing at the height of developing Marxism in the 21st century, contemporary Chinese communists with Comrade Xi Jinping as the main representative will be guided by the common problems facing mankind, learn from and absorb all the beneficial achievements of human civilization, adhere to the organic unity of particularity and universality, cosmopolitan and national character, and further integrate the Chinese issue, Chinese discourse and world issues. The world discourse is effectively docked, focusing on the interpretation of unique views that embody Chinese characteristics, Chinese style and Chinese style, bringing new enlightenment, providing new solutions and creating new experiences for the development of all countries in the world and the progress of human civilization. The theoretical appeal, ideological appeal, practical vitality and international influence of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era will certainly unite international forces to promote the construction of a community with a shared future for mankind on a larger scale, promote international cooperation and global governance to a new level, and create new practical conditions and broad space for continuously deepening the understanding of the laws of human social development.

Times and theories always intersect. The new era of socialism with Chinese characteristics is an era that needs theories and can certainly produce theories, and an era that needs ideas and can certainly produce ideas. Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era is the crystallization of the theories and ideas of this era, which not only originates from and leads this era, but is the essence of the spirit of this era. While guiding the great practice of contemporary China, this scientific theory itself will continue to add vivid content of the times, and will surely show a stronger and more convincing force of truth in the history of the development of Marxism, in the history of the development of world socialism, and in the process of the development of human society, and write a more brilliant and immortal chapter.



## Postscript

Organizing the compilation of "Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era" is the number one project implemented by the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration) after the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China, which embodies the collective wisdom and painstaking efforts.

The central leading comrades were very concerned about and attached importance to the compilation of this book, reviewed the plan, outline, and entire contents of this book, and put forward specific guiding opinions on the revision and improvement of relevant contents.

The preparation of this book was carried out under the leadership of the school (academy) committee of the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration). The school (college) committee listed the compilation of this book as a special topic of the school (college) teaching and think tank construction innovation project, and held many meetings to discuss the specific work of the book manuscript. Comrade He Yiting, vice president in charge of the daily work of the school (college), put forward the general idea and writing requirements of the whole book, revised and approved the outline and all the manuscripts. Comrade Zhen Zhanmin, vice president of the university (academy), is specifically responsible for organizing the writing of manuscripts, presided over the formulation of outlines, discussion of first drafts, centralized drafting, and other work. Comrades Li Ji, Li Yi, and Xie Chuntao, vice presidents of the university (academy), gave guidance. The Scientific Research Department and Research Office of the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration) undertook specific organizational coordination and service guarantee work.

Those who participated in the writing of the first draft of this book (in alphabetical order): Wang Zongheng,

Wang Huxue, Wang Xiaolin, Wang Haibin, Wang Haiyan, Wang Daoyong, Niu Xianxian, Yin Jianjun, Feng Pengzhi, Sun Dongfang, Sun Yaoliang, Liu Jianfei, Liu Chenguang, Li Hongwei, Li Haiqing, Li Xinsheng, Yang Weidong, Shi Hexing, Wu Xiaoxue, Wu Zhongmin, Xin Ming, Shen Chuanliang, Zhang Zhanbin, Zhang Shirong, Zhang Jun, Zhang Xiaode, Zhang Zhiming, Zhang Yan, Chen Jiangsheng, Chen Yuanzhang, Chen Shuguang, Lin Zhenyi, Luo Pinghan, Meng Xin, Zhao Feng, Hao Yongping, Zhu Lingjun, Qin Gang, Qin Lu, Ni Degang, Gao Hongcun, Gao Zugui, Tang Aijun, Huang Xianghuai, HUANG Zhuankun, CAO Li, PENG Jinsong, PENG Suining, DONG Zhenhua, HAN Qingxiang, JIAO Peifeng, FAN Jida.

He Yiting and Zhen Zhanmin, Lin Zhenyi, Hao Yongping, Qin Gang, Xin Ming, Gao Zugui, Chen Yuanzhang, Chen Qiqing, Chen Shuguang, Shen Chuanliang, Huang Xianghuai, Chen Shu, Ge Wei, Chen Miao, and Wu Xiaoxue participated in the overall manuscript work.

In the process of compiling this book, the opinions and suggestions of comrades of the former Central Party School and the former State Academy of Administration and a number of senior experts and scholars were extensively solicited, as well as the opinions and suggestions of relevant responsible comrades of various units directly under the school (academy).

The Central Policy Research Office, the Central Research Institute of Party History and Literature, the Cadre Education Bureau of the Organization Department of the CPC Central Committee, and the Theory Bureau of the Central Propaganda Department provided strong guidance and assistance for the compilation of this book.

After being trialed within the Central Party School (National Academy of Administration) in the fall semester of 2019, this book incorporates the opinions and suggestions of some students and lecturers, and further revises.

Xi Jinping's thought on socialism with Chinese characteristics for a new era is broad and profound. Although great efforts have been made in the compilation of this book, it is inevitable that there will be omissions and deficiencies. It is hoped that readers will put forward valuable comments and suggestions for further revision and improvement.

The book writing team  
August 2020

*Basic Issues of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era*

Responsible editor: Ren Xiao

Cover design: Shi Xiaomeng

Responsible Proofreader: Liang Yue Lv Fei

Cataloguing in Publication (CIP) data

Xi Jinping's Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era: Basic Issues / Party School of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China (National Academy of Administration).

Beijing: Party School Publishing House of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China: People's Publishing House, 2020.8

ISBN 978-7-5035-6878-7

I (1) Xi II.(1) Medium... III (1) Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era-Study Reference

IV.①D610

China Edition Library CIP Data Core Word (2020) No. 160816

**Basic Issues of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era**

XI JINPING XINSHIDAI ZHONGGUO TESE SHEHEIZHUYI JIBEN WENTI

Party School of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China (National Academy of Administration)

People's Publishing House

Central Party School Press

Publication and distribution

Printed by Beijing Shengtong Printing Co., Ltd Distributed by Xinhua Bookstore

August 2020 Version 1 The first printing in Beijing in August 2020

Folio: 787 mm X 1092 mm 1/16 sheet: 27.75

Word count: 380,000 words

ISBN 978-7-5035-6878-7 Pricing:\$68.00

Phone (010) 68922233 65289539

All rights reserved and infringement will be investigated

Where we purchase our books, if there is a problem with the quality of printing, our company is responsible for exchange.

# Basic Issues of Xi Jinping Thought on Socialism with Chinese Characteristics for a New Era

16811978-7-5035-6878-7  
978750356878

Price: ¥68.00